



**McKEE & ASSOCIATES**  
ARCHITECTS, INC.

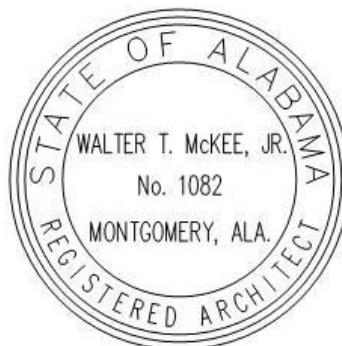
# Project Manual



**New Admin Building**  
At  
**Red Bay High School**  
for the  
**Franklin County Board of Education**  
Russellville, Alabama

Project No: **23.251**  
May 18, 2024

Alabama Division of Construction Management No.



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

# New Admin Building At Red Bay High School for the Franklin County Board of Education Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. **23.251**

### **BIDDING REQUIREMENTS**

- Advertisement For Bids
- Instructions to Bidders (DCM Form C-2 August 2021)
- Request For Information (McKee Form)
- Prior Approval/Substitution Request Form (McKee Form)
- Proposal Form (DCM Form C-3 August 2021)
- Form Of Bid Bond (DCM Form C-4, August 2021)
- Special Instructions to Bidders (McKee Form April 2024)

### **CONTRACT FORMS**

- Preparation and Approval of Construction Contracts and Bonds (DCM Form B-7 July 2022)
- Construction Contract (DCM Form C-5, December 2021)
- Performance Bond (DCM Form C-6, August 2021)
- Payment Bond (ABC Form C-7, August 2021)
- General Conditions of the Contract (DCM Form C-8, Revised October 2022)
- Instructions for Contractor's Insurance Company (Article 37 of DCM Form C-8, Revised October 2022)
- Supplement to General Conditions of the Contract (McKee Form April 2024)
- State of Alabama Disclosure Statement Form, Required by Article 3B of Title 41, Code of Alabama 1975(Revised 09/2013) with Information and Instructions regarding Relationships Between Contractor/Grantees and Public Officials/Employees.
- Alabama Department of Revenue – Sales and Use Tax Division – Application for Sales and Use Tax Certificate of Exemption (ST:EX-01 June 2021)
- State of Alabama E-Verify Memorandum of Understanding Instructions (Revised August 2021) *with* ABC Bulletin (May 29, 2012) *and* Revised Alabama Immigration Law Guidance for School Boards (Revised May 2012).

TABLE OF CONTENTS  
Page 1 of 5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

April 2024  
LOCAL FUNDED PROJECT

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- Alabama Department of Finance, Real Property Management – Division of Construction Management – Permit Fee & Permit Re-Inspection Fee Calculation Worksheet (December 2021)

## **GENERAL CONDITIONS**

- Pre-Construction Conference Checklist (DCM Form B-8 June 2023)
- Detail Of Project Sign (DCM Form C-15, Revised December 2021)
- Application and Certificate for Payment (DCM Form C-10, Revised July 2022)
- Schedule Of Values, (DCM Form C-10SOV, Revised October 2021) Attachment to DCM Form C-10
- Inventory Of Stored Materials, (DCM Form C-10SM, Revised October 2021) Attachment to DCM Form C-10
- Progress Schedule and Report (DCM Form C-11, August 2021)
- Change Order Checklist, (DCM Form B-12, August 2021) For Use with DCM Form C-12
- Contract Change Order (DCM Form C-12 (fully locally funded K-12 Schools), August 2021)
- Change Order Justification (DCM Form B-11, August 2021) Attachment to DCM Form C-12
- General Contractor’s Roofing Guarantee (DCM Form C-9, August 2021)
- Certificate of Substantial Completion (DCM Form C-13 & 13A, Revised November 2022)
- Form of Advertisement for Completion (DCM Form C-14, August 2021)
- Certification of Structural Observation (DCM Form B-14 Revised December 2021)
- Final Payment Checklist (DCM Form B-13, Revised October 2022)
- Contractor’s Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims (DCM Form C-18, August 2021)
- Contractor’s Affidavit of Release of Liens (DCM Form C-19, August 2021)
- Consent of Surety to Final Payment (DCM Form C-20, August 2021)
- Form of Advertisement for Completion (DCM Form C-14, August 2021)
- Certificate of Asbestos Free Building Materials (McKee Form)

## **TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS**

### **DIVISION 01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

01010	Scope of Work
01011	Contingency Allowances
01250	Contract Modification Procedures
01290	Payment Procedures
01320	Construction Progress Documentation
01322	Photographic Documentation
01330	Submittal Requirements
01410	Schedule of Special Inspections (For Blackburn Daniels O’Barr Projects)
01500	Temporary Facilities and Controls

TABLE OF CONTENTS  
Page 2 of 5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

April 2024  
LOCAL FUNDED PROJECT

01600	Product Requirements
01700	Execution Requirements
01770	Closeout Procedures
01781	Project Record Documents
01782	Operation and Maintenance Data
01820	Demonstration and Training

**DIVISION 02 SITE WORK**

02070	Selective Demolition
02100	Site Preparation
02200	Earthwork
02282	Termite Control
02513	Asphaltic Concrete Paving
02514	Portland Cement and Concrete Paving
02660	Water Distribution System
02720	Storm Sewers
02730	Sanitary Sewers
02810	Sodding and Topsoil

**DIVISION 03 CONCRETE**

03310	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03950	Concrete Sealer

**DIVISION 04 MASONRY**

04200	Unit Masonry
-------	--------------

**DIVISION 05 METAL**

05272	Aluminum Handrails and Railings
05500	Miscellaneous Steel Fabrications

**DIVISION 06 CARPENTRY**

06100	Rough Carpentry
06192	Wood Trusses
06200	Finish Carpentry

**DIVISION 07 MOISTURE PROTECTION**

07115	Bituminous Damp-proofing
07200	Insulation

07310 Shingles (Architectural)  
07600 Flashing and Sheet Metal  
07900 Joint Sealers

**DIVISION 08 DOORS, WINDOWS AND GLASS**

08100 Steel Door Frames  
08211 Wood Doors  
08220 Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic (FRP) Doors  
08410 Aluminum Storefronts  
08520 Aluminum Windows  
08700 Finish Hardware  
08800 Glazing

**DIVISION 09 FINISHES**

09250 Gypsum Drywall  
09301 Porcelain Tile  
09510 Acoustical Ceilings  
09650 Rubber Base  
09651 Luxury Vinyl Tile (LVT)  
09680 Carpet  
09900 Painting

**DIVISION 10 SPECIALTIES**

10410 Identifying Devices  
10440 Fire Extinguishers, Cabinets and Accessories  
10800 Toilet Accessories

**DIVISION 11 – 12**

Not Applicable

**DIVISION 13 SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION**

13670 Extruded Aluminum Walkway Cover

**DIVISION 14 CONVEYING SYSTEM**

Not Applicable

**DIVISION 15 MECHANICAL**

15010	General Mechanical Provisions
15400	Plumbing
15700	Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning

**DIVISION 16 ELECTRICAL**

16100	Electrical
16715	Telecom

**END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS**

## ADVERTISEMENT FOR BIDS

### NEW ADMINISTRATION BUILDING AT RED BAY HIGH SCHOOL FOR THE FRANKLIN COUNTY BOARD OF EDUCATION RUSSELLVILLE, ALABAMA

#### Project No. 23-251

Sealed proposals shall be received for the above referenced project by Mr. Greg Hamilton, Superintendent, Franklin County Schools, 500 Coffee Avenue NE, Russellville, AL 35653 | Phone: (256) 332-1360, until **2:00 PM, Thursday, June 27, 2024**, then publicly opened and read aloud.

The project shall be bid excluding taxes. Bids must be submitted on proposal forms furnished by the Architect or copies thereof. The Owner reserves the right to reject any or all proposals and to waive technical errors if, in the Owners judgment, the best interests of the Owner will thereby be promoted.

A certified check or Bid Bond payable to the **Franklin County Schools** in an amount not less than five percent (5%) of the amount of the bid, but in no event more than \$10,000.00 must accompany the bidder's proposal. Performance and statutory labor and material payment bonds will be required at the signing of the Contract.

All bidders bidding in amounts exceeding that established by the State Licensing Board for General Contractors must be licensed under the provisions of Title 34, Chapter 8, Code of Alabama, 1975, and must show evidence of license before bidding or bid will not be received or considered by the Architect. All bidders shall show such evidence by clearly displaying their current license number on the outside of the sealed envelope in which the proposal is delivered.

PDFs of the project can be reviewed by going to the McKee website at [www.mckeeassoc.com](http://www.mckeeassoc.com) and selecting "Project Bid List". Also, if you are not receiving NOTIFICATIONS from us, please register on our website, "Project Bid List" by selecting manage your bid list profile. The documents may be viewed on-line and printed by General Contractors, Sub-Contractors and Suppliers. Documents published through this procedure are the only documents endorsed by the Architect. The Architect is unable to monitor, confirm and maintain other websites that provide documents. Addendums will be provided to entities that have *CONFIRMED* bidding for this particular project. The Architect retains ownership and copyrights of the documents. If bidders require printed sets, please submit request to the Architect at [mckeeplans@gmail.com](mailto:mckeeplans@gmail.com). Include your first & last name, company name, address, phone number and the project name and number. Print sets are to be returned, in reusable condition, within ten days after bid opening.

All RFIs and RFAs regarding the bid documents shall be sent and addressed through emails found on the RFI and RFA forms in the project manual. **NOTE: ONLY THE RFI**

**AND RFA FORMS IN THE PROJECT MANUAL WILL BE ACCEPTED.** The Architect will not accept inquiries via telephone or fax.

Completion Time: See scope of work in Project Manual.

Supervision: Contractor to ensure proper supervision of all work.

Owner: Mr. Greg Hamilton, Superintendent, Franklin County Schools, 500 Coffee Avenue NE, Russellville, AL 35653 | Phone: (256) 332-1360

Architect: McKee and Associates Architects, Inc., 631 South Hull Street ,Montgomery, Alabama 36104 | Phone: (334) 834-9933



# INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

## CONTENTS

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Bid Documents</u>   | 9. <u>Withdrawal or Revision of Bids</u>                        |
| 2. <u>General Contractor's<br/>State Licensing Requirements</u>         | 10. <u>Opening of Bids</u>                                      |
| 3. <u>Qualifications of Bidders<br/>and Prequalification Procedures</u> | 11. <u>Incomplete and Irregular Bids</u>                        |
| 4. <u>Preference to Resident Contractors</u>                            | 12. <u>Bid Errors</u>   |
| 5. <u>Examination of Bid Documents and<br/>the Site of the Work</u>     | 13. <u>Disqualification of Bidders</u>                          |
| 6. <u>Explanations and Interpretations</u>                              | 14. <u>Consideration of Bids</u>                                |
| 7. <u>Substitutions</u>   | 15. <u>Determination of Low Bidder by<br/>Use of Alternates</u> |
| 8. <u>Preparation and Delivery of Bids</u>                              | 16. <u>Unit Prices</u>  |
|   | 17. <u>Award of Contract</u>                                    |

### 1. BID DOCUMENTS:

The Bid Documents consist of the Advertisement for Bids, these Instructions to Bidders, any supplements to these Instructions to Bidders, the Proposal Form and the Accounting of Sales Tax, and the proposed Contract Documents. The proposed Contract Documents consist of the Construction Contract, the Performance Bond and Payment Bond, the Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplemental, and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications and all addenda issued prior to execution of the Construction Contract. Bid Documents may be obtained or examined as set forth in the Advertisement for Bids.

### 2. GENERAL CONTRACTOR'S STATE LICENSING REQUIREMENTS:

When the amount bid for a contract exceeds \$50,000, the bidder must be licensed by the State Licensing Board for General Contractors and must show the Architect evidence of license before bidding or the bid will not be received by the Architect or considered by the Awarding Authority. A bid exceeding the bid limit stipulated in the bidder's license, or which is for work outside of the type or types of work stipulated in the bidder's license, will not be considered. In case of a joint venture of two or more contractors, the amount of the bid shall be within the maximum bid limitation as set by the State Licensing Board for General Contractors of the combined limitations of the partners to the joint venture.

### 3. QUALIFICATIONS of BIDDERS and PREQUALIFICATION PROCEDURES:

a. Any special qualifications required of general contractors, subcontractors, material suppliers, or fabricators are set forth in the Bid Documents.

b. The Awarding Authority may have elected to prequalify bidders. Parties interested in bidding for this contract are directed to the Advertisement for Bids and Supplemental Instructions to Bidders to determine whether bidders must be prequalified and how they may obtain copies of the Awarding Authority's published prequalification procedures and criteria.

c. Release of Bid Documents by the Architect to a prospective bidder will not constitute any determination by the Awarding Authority or Architect that the bidder has been found to be qualified, prequalified, or responsible.

**4. PREFERENCE to RESIDENT CONTRACTORS:**

(If this project is federally funded in whole or in part, this Article shall not apply.)

a. In awarding the Contract, preference will be given to Alabama resident contractors and a nonresident bidder domiciled in a state having laws granting preference to local contractors shall be awarded the Contract only on the same basis as the nonresident bidder's state awards contracts to Alabama contractors bidding under similar circumstances.

b. A nonresident bidder is a contractor which is neither organized and existing under the laws of the State of Alabama, nor maintains its principal place of business in the State of Alabama. A nonresident contractor which has maintained a permanent office within the State of Alabama for at least five continuous years shall not thereafter be deemed to be a non-resident contractor so long as the contractor continues to maintain a branch office within Alabama.

**5. EXAMINATION of BID DOCUMENTS and the SITE of the WORK:**

Before submitting a bid for the Work, the bidders shall carefully examine the Bid Documents, visit the site, and satisfy themselves as to the nature and location of the Work, and the general and local conditions, including weather, the general character of the site or building, the character and extent of existing work within or adjacent to the site and any other work being performed thereon at the time of submission of their bids. They shall obtain full knowledge as to transportation, disposal, handling, and storage of materials, availability of water, electric power, and all other facilities in the area which will have a bearing on the performance of the Work for which they submit their bids. The submission of a bid shall constitute a representation by the bidder that the bidder has made such examination and visit and has judged for and satisfied himself or herself as to conditions to be encountered regarding the character, difficulties, quality, and quantities of work to be performed and the material and equipment to be furnished, and as to the contract requirements involved.

**6. EXPLANATIONS and INTERPRETATIONS:**

a. Should any bidder observe any ambiguity, discrepancy, omission, or error in the drawings and specifications, or in any other bid document, or be in doubt as to the intention and meaning of these documents, the bidder should immediately report such to the Architect and request clarification.

b. Clarification will be made only by written Addenda sent to all prospective bidders. Neither the Architect nor the Awarding Authority will be responsible in any manner for verbal answers or instructions regarding intent or meaning of the Bid Documents.

c. In the case of inconsistency between drawings and specifications or within either document, a bidder will be deemed to have included in its bid the better quality or greater quantity of the work involved unless the bidder asked for and obtained the Architect's written clarification of the requirements before submission of a bid.

## 7. SUBSTITUTIONS:

a. The identification of any product, material, system, item of equipment, or service in the Bid Documents by reference to a trade name, manufacturer's name, model number, etc. (hereinafter referred to as "source"), is intended to establish a required standard of performance, design, and quality and is not intended to limit competition unless the provisions of paragraph "d" below apply.

b. When the Bid Documents identify only one or two sources, or three or more sources followed by "or approved equal" or similar wording, the bidder's proposal may be based on a source not identified but considered by the bidder to be equal to the standard of performance, design and quality as specified; however, such substitutions must ultimately be approved by the Architect. If the bidder elects to bid on a substitution without "Pre-bid Approval" as described below, then it will be understood that proof of compliance with specified requirements is the exclusive responsibility of the bidder.

c. When the Bid Documents identify three or more sources and the list of sources is not followed by "or approved equal" or similar wording, the bidder's proposal shall be based upon one of the identified sources, unless the bidder obtains "Pre-bid Approval" of another source as described below. Under these conditions it will be expressly understood that no product, material, system, item of equipment, or service that is not identified in the Bid Documents or granted "Pre-Bid Approval" will be incorporated into the Work unless such substitution is authorized and agreed upon through a Contract Change Order.

d. If the Bid Documents identify only one source and expressly provide that it is an approved sole source for the product, material, system, item of equipment, or service, the bidder's proposal must be based upon the identified sole source.

e. **Procedures for "Pre-bid Approval".** If it is desired that a product, material, system, piece of equipment, or service from a source different from those sources identified in the Bid Documents be approved as an acceptable source, application for the approval of such source must reach the hands of the Architect at least ten days prior to the date set for the opening of bids. At the Architect's discretion, this ten day provision may be waived. The application for approval of a proposed source must be accompanied by technical data which the applicant desires to submit in support of the application. The Architect will give consideration to reports from reputable independent testing laboratories, verified experience records showing the reputation of the proposed source with previous users, evidence of reputation of the source for prompt delivery, evidence of reputation of the source for efficiency in servicing its products, or any other pertinent written information. The application to the Architect for approval of a proposed source must be accompanied by a schedule setting forth in which respects the materials or equipment submitted for consideration differ from the materials or equipment designated in the Bid Documents. The burden of proof of the merit of the proposed substitution is upon the proposer. To be approved, a proposed source must also meet or exceed all express requirements of the Bid Documents. Approval, if granted, shall not be effective until published by the Architect in an addendum to the Bid Documents.

## 8. PREPARATION and DELIVERY of BIDS:

### a. DCM Form C-3: Proposal Form:

- (1) Bids must be submitted on the Proposal Form as contained in the Bid Documents; only one copy is required to be submitted. A completed DCM Form C-3A: Accounting of Sales Tax must be submitted with the Proposal Form.
- (2) All information requested of the bidder on the Proposal Form must be filled in. The form must be completed by typewriter or hand-printed in ink.
- (3) Identification of Bidder: On the first page of the Proposal Form the bidder must be fully identified by completing the spaces provided for:
  - (a) the legal name of the bidder,
  - (b) the state under which laws the bidder's business is organized and existing,
  - (c) the city (and state) in which the bidder has its principal offices,
  - (d) the bidder's business organization, i.e., corporation, partnership, or individual (to be indicated by marking the applicable box and writing in the type of organization if it is not one of those listed), and
  - (e) the partners or officers of the bidder's organization, if the bidder is other than an individual. If the space provided on the Proposal Form is not adequate for this listing, the bidder may insert "See Attachment" in this space and provide the listing on an attachment to the Proposal Form.
- (4) Where indicated by the format of the Proposal Form, the bidder must specify lump sum prices in both words and figures. In case of discrepancy between the prices shown in words and in figures, the words will govern.
- (5) All bid items requested in the Proposal Form, including alternate bid prices and unit prices for separate items of the Work, must be bid. If a gross sum of bid items is requested in the Proposal Form, the gross sum shall be provided by the bidder.
- (6) In the space provided in the Proposal Form under "Bidder's Alabama License", the bidder must insert his or her current general contractor's state license number, current bid limit, and type(s) of work for which bidder is licensed.
- (7) The Proposal Form shall be properly signed by the bidder. If the bidder is:
  - (a) **an individual**, that individual or his or her "authorized representative" must sign the Proposal Form;
  - (b) **a partnership**, the Proposal Form must be signed by one of the partners or an "authorized representative" of the Partnership;
  - (c) **a corporation**, the president, vice-president, secretary, or "authorized representative" of the corporation shall sign and affix the corporate seal to the Proposal Form.

As used in these Instructions to Bidders, "authorized representative" is defined as a person to whom the bidder has granted written authority to conduct business in the bidder's behalf by signing and/or modifying the bid. Such written authority shall be signed by the bidder (the individual proprietor, or a member of the Partnership, or an officer of the Corporation) and shall be attached to the Proposal Form.

(8) Interlineation, alterations or erasures on the Proposal Form must be initialed by the bidder or its “authorized representative”.

**b. DCM Form C-3A: Accounting of Sales Tax**

A completed DCM Form C-3A: Accounting of Sales Tax must be submitted with DCM Form C-3: Proposal Form. Submission of DCM Form C-3A is required, it is not optional. A proposal shall be rendered non-responsive if an Accounting of Sales Tax is not provided.

**c. Bid Guaranty**

(1) The Proposal Form must be accompanied by a cashier’s check, drawn on an Alabama bank, or a Bid Bond, executed by a surety company duly authorized and qualified to make such bonds in the State of Alabama, payable to the Awarding Authority.

(2) If a Bid Bond is provided in lieu of a cashier’s check, the bond shall be on the Bid Bond form as stipulated in the Bid Documents.

(3) The amount of the cashier’s check or Bid Bond should not be less than five percent of the contractor’s bid, but is not required to be in an amount more than ten thousand dollars.

**d. Delivery of Bids:**

(1) Bids will be received until the time set, and at the location designated, in the Advertisement for Bids unless notice is given of postponement. Any bid not received prior to the time set for opening bids will be rejected absent extenuating circumstances and such bids shall be rejected in all cases where received after other bids are opened.

(2) Each bid shall be placed, together with the bid guaranty, in a sealed envelope. On the outside of the envelope the bidder shall write in large letters “Proposal”, below which the bidder shall identify the Project and the Work bid on, the name of the bidder, and the bidder’s current general contractor’s state license number.

(3) Bids may be delivered in person, or by mail if ample time is allowed for delivery. When sent by mail, the sealed envelope containing the bid, marked as indicated above, shall be enclosed in another envelope for mailing.

**9. WITHDRAWAL or REVISION of BIDS:**

**a.** A bid may be withdrawn prior to the time set for opening of bids, provided a written request, executed by the bidder or the bidder’s “authorized representative”, is filed with the Architect prior to that time. The bid will then be returned to the bidder unopened.

**b.** A bid which has been sealed in its delivery envelope may be revised by writing the change in price **and date** on the outside of the delivery envelope over the signature of the bidder or the bidder’s “authorized representative”. In revising the bid in this manner, the bidder must only write the amount of the change in price on the envelope **and must not reveal the bid price**.

c. Written communications, signed by the bidder or its “authorized representative”, to revise bids will be accepted if received by the Architect prior to the time set for opening bids. The Architect will record the instructed revision upon opening the bid. Such written communication may be by facsimile if so stipulated in Supplemental Instructions to Bidders. In revising the bid in this manner, the bidder must only write the amount of the change in price **and must not reveal the bid price.**

d. Except as provided in Article 12 of these Instructions to Bidders, no bid shall be withdrawn, modified, or corrected after the time set for opening bids.

## 10. OPENING of BIDS:

a. Bids will be opened and read publicly at the time and place indicated in the Advertisement for Bids. Bidders or their authorized representatives are invited to be present.

b. A list of all proposed major subcontractors and suppliers will be submitted by Bidders to the Architect at a time subsequent to the receipt of bids as established by the Architect in the Bid Documents but in no event shall this time exceed twenty-four (24) hours after receipt of bids. If the list includes a fire alarm contractor and/or fire sprinkler contractor, Bidders will also submit a copy of the fire alarm contractor’s and/or fire sprinkler contractor’s permits from the State of Alabama Fire Marshal’s Office.

## 11. INCOMPLETE and IRREGULAR BIDS:

A bid that is not accompanied by data required by the Bid Documents, or a bid which is in any way incomplete, may be rejected. Any bid which contains any uninitialed alterations or erasures, or any bid which contains any additions, alternate bids, or conditions not called for, or any other irregularities of any kind, will be subject to rejection.

## 12. BID ERRORS:

a. **Errors and Discrepancies in the Proposal Form.** In case of error in the extension of prices in bids, the unit price will govern. In case of discrepancy between the prices shown in the figures and in words, the words will govern.

b. **Mistakes within the Bid.** If the low bidder discovers a mistake in its bid, the low bidder may seek withdrawal of its bid without forfeiture of its bid guaranty under the following conditions:

(1) **Timely Notice:** The low bidder must notify the Awarding Authority and Architect in writing, within three working days after the opening of bids, that a mistake was made. This notice must be given within this time frame whether or not award has been made.

(2) **Substantial Mistake:** The mistake must be of such significance as to render the bid price substantially out of proportion to the other bid prices.

(3) **Type of Mistake:** The mistake must be due to calculation or clerical error, an inadvertent omission, or a typographical error which results in an erroneous sum. A mistake of law, judgment, or opinion shall not constitute a valid ground for withdrawal without forfeiture.

**(4) Documentary Evidence:** Clear and convincing documentary evidence of the mistake must be presented to the Awarding Authority and the Architect as soon as possible, but no later than three working days after the opening of bids.

The Awarding Authority's decision regarding a low bidder's request to withdraw its bid without penalty shall be made within 10 days after receipt of the bidder's evidence or by the next regular meeting of the Awarding Authority. Upon withdrawal of bid without penalty, the low bidder shall be prohibited from (1) doing work on the project as a subcontractor or in any other capacity and (2) bidding on the same project if it is re-bid.

### **13. DISQUALIFICATION of BIDDERS:**

Any bidder(s) may be disqualified from consideration for contract award for the following reasons:

**a. Collusion.** Any agreement or collusion among bidders or prospective bidders in restraint of freedom of competition to bid at a fixed price or to refrain from bidding or otherwise shall render the bids void and shall cause the bidders or prospective bidders participating in such agreement or collusion to be disqualified from submitting further bids to the Awarding Authority on future lettings. (See § 39-2-6, Code of Alabama 1975, for possible criminal sanctions.)

**b. Advance Disclosure.** Any disclosure in advance of the terms of a bid submitted in response to an Advertisement for Bids shall render the proceedings void and require re-advertisement and rebid.

**c. Failure to Settle Other Contracts.** The Awarding Authority may reject a bid from a bidder who has not paid, or satisfactorily settled, all bills due for labor and material on other contracts in force at the time of letting.

### **14. CONSIDERATION of BIDS:**

**a.** After the bids are opened and read publicly, the bid prices will be compared and the results of this comparison will be available to the public. Until the final award of the contract, however, the Awarding Authority shall have the right to reject any or all bids, and it shall have the right to waive technical errors and irregularities if, in its judgment, the bidder will not have obtained a competitive advantage and the best interests of the Awarding Authority will be promoted.

**b.** If the Bid Documents request bids for projects or parts of projects in combination or separately, the Bid Documents must include supplements to, these Instructions to Bidders setting forth applicable bid procedures. Award or awards will be made to the lowest responsible and responsive bidder or bidders in accordance with such bid procedures.

### **15. DETERMINATION of LOW BIDDER by USE of ALTERNATES:**

**a.** The Awarding Authority may request alternate bid prices (alternates) to facilitate either reducing the base bid to an amount within the funds available for the project or adding items to the base bid within the funds available for the project. Alternates, if any, are listed in the

Proposal Form in the order in which they shall cumulatively deduct from or add to the base bid for determining the lowest bidder.

**b.** If alternates are included in the Proposal Form, the Awarding Authority shall determine the dollar amount of funds available and immediately prior to the opening of bids shall announce publicly the funds available for the project. The dollar amount of such funds shall be used to determine the lowest bidder as provided herein below, notwithstanding that the actual funds available for the project may subsequently be determined to be more or less than the expected funds available as determined immediately prior to the time of the opening of bids.

**c.** If the base bid of the lowest bidder exceeds the funds available and alternate bid prices will reduce the base bids to an amount that is within the funds available, the lowest bidder will be determined by considering, in order, the fewest number of the alternates that produces a price within the funds available. If the base bid of the lowest bidder is within the funds available and alternate bid prices will permit adding items to the base bid, the lowest bidder will be determined by considering, in order, the greatest number of the alternates that produces a price within the funds available.

**d.** After the lowest bidder has been determined as set forth above, the Awarding Authority may award that bidder any combination of alternates, provided said bidder is also the low bidder when only the Base Bid and such combination of alternates are considered.

## **16. UNIT PRICES:**

**a. Work Bid on a Unit Price Basis.** Where all, or part(s), of the planned Work is bid on a unit price basis, both the unit prices and the extensions of the unit prices constitute a basis of determining the lowest responsible and responsive bidder. In cases of error in the extension of prices of bids, the unit price will govern. A bid may be rejected if any of the unit prices are obviously unbalanced or non-competitive.

**b. Unit Prices for Application to Change Orders.** As a means of predetermining unit costs for changes in certain elements of the Work, the Bid Documents may require that the bidders furnish unit prices for those items in the Proposal Form. Unit prices for application to changes in the work are not a basis for determining the lowest bidder. Non-competitive unit prices proposed by the successful bidder may be rejected and competitive prices negotiated by the Awarding Authority prior to contract award. Unit prices for application to changes in the work are not effective unless specifically included and agreed upon in the Construction Contract.

## **17. AWARD of CONTRACT:**

**a.** The contract shall be awarded to the lowest responsible and responsive bidder unless the Awarding Authority finds that all the bids are unreasonable or that it is not in the best interest of the Awarding Authority to accept any of the bids. A responsible bidder is one who, among other qualities determined necessary for performance, is competent, experienced, and financially able to perform the contract. A responsive bidder is one who submits a bid that complies with the terms and conditions of the Advertisement for Bids and the Bid Documents. Minor irregularities in the bid shall not defeat responsiveness.

**b.** A bidder to whom award is made will be notified by telegram, confirmed facsimile, or letter to the address shown on the Proposal Form at the earliest possible date. Unless other



time frames are stipulated in Supplemental Instructions to Bidders, the maximum time frames allowed for each step of the process between the opening of bids and the issuance of an order to proceed with the work shall be as follows:

(1) Award of contract by Awarding Authority	30 calendar days after the opening of bids
(2) Contractor's return of the fully executed contract, with bonds and evidence of insurance, to the Awarding Authority	15 calendar days after the contract has been presented to the contractor for signature (from the Lead Design Professional)
(3) Awarding Authority's approval of the contractor's bonds and evidence of insurance and completion of contract execution	20 calendar days after the contractor presents complete and acceptable documents to the Architect
(4) Notice To Proceed issued to the contractor along with distribution of the fully executed construction contract to all parties.	15 calendar days after final execution of contract by the Awarding Authority, by various State Agencies if required and by the Governor if his or her signature on the contract is required by law

The time frames stated above, or as otherwise specified in the Bid Documents, may be extended by written agreement between the parties. Failure by the Awarding Authority to comply with the time frames stated above or stipulated in Supplemental Instructions to Bidders, or agreed extensions thereof, shall be just cause for the withdrawal of the contractor's bid and contract without forfeiture of bid security.

**c.** Should the successful bidder or bidders to whom the contract is awarded fail to execute the Construction Contract and furnish acceptable Performance and Payment Bonds and satisfactory evidence of insurance within the specified period, the Awarding Authority shall retain from the bid guaranty, if it is a cashier's check, or recover from the principal or the sureties, if the guaranty is a bid bond, the difference between the amount of the contract as awarded and the amount of the bid of the next lowest responsible and responsive bidder, but not more than \$10,000. If no other bids are received, the full amount of the bid guaranty shall be so retained or recovered as liquidated damages for such default. Any sums so retained or recovered shall be the property of the Awarding Authority.

**d.** All bid guaranties, except those of the three lowest bona fide bidders, will be returned immediately after bids have been checked, tabulated, and the relation of the bids established. The bid guaranties of the three lowest bidders will be returned as soon as the contract bonds and the contract of the successful bidder have been properly executed and approved. When the award is deferred for a period of time longer than 15 days after the opening of the bids, all bid guaranties, except those of the potentially successful bidders, shall be returned. If no award is made within the specified period, as it may by agreement be extended, all bids will be rejected, and all guaranties returned. If any potentially successful bidder agrees in writing to a stipulated extension in time for consideration of its bid and its bid was guaranteed with a cashier's check, the Awarding Authority may permit the potentially successful bidder to substitute a satisfactory bid bond for the cashier's check.

# REQUEST FOR INFORMATION

**(RFI)**

**Email this form in its entirety to Project Manager listed below.**

The Architect reserves the right not to answer any Request For Information received after **2:00 p.m., Two (2) days prior to the bid date.**

To: McKee & Associates, Architects  
Jacky Barganier, Project Manager  
[barganierj@mckeeassoc.com](mailto:barganierj@mckeeassoc.com)  
*Email*

From: \_\_\_\_\_  
*Name*  
\_\_\_\_\_  
*Company*  
\_\_\_\_\_  
*Email*

Project: \_\_\_\_\_

Project Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Request For Information Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Issue Date: \_\_\_\_\_

BID PHASE

CONSTRUCTION PHASE

## Procedures for "Explanations and Interpretations":

- a. Should any bidder observe any ambiguity, discrepancy, omission, or error in the drawings and specifications, or in any other bid document, or be in doubt as to the intention and meaning of these documents, the bidder should immediately report such to the Architect and request clarification.
- b. **Clarification will be made only by written Addenda sent to all prospective bidders or can be accessed by going to the McKee web site - [mckeeassoc.com](http://mckeeassoc.com) and clicking on the tab "Files" to retrieve the Addendums.** Neither the Architect nor the Owner will be responsible in any manner for verbal answers or instructions regarding intent or meaning of the Bid Documents.
- c. **In the case of inconsistency between drawings and specifications or within either document, a bidder will be deemed to have included in its bid the better quality or greater quantity of the work involved unless the bidder asked for and obtained the Architect's written clarification of the requirements before submission of a bid.**

**REQUEST FOR INFORMATION DESCRIPTION:** *(Fully describe the question or type of information requested.)*

**REFERENCES/ATTACHEMENTS:** *(List specific documents researched when seeking the information requested.)*

Specification Title: \_\_\_\_\_ Description: \_\_\_\_\_  
Section: \_\_\_\_\_ Page: \_\_\_\_\_ Article/Paragraph: \_\_\_\_\_

Drawing Sheet Number: \_\_\_\_\_ Title: \_\_\_\_\_

REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)  
0000- 1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

Plan: \_\_\_\_\_ Elevation: \_\_\_\_\_ Section: \_\_\_\_\_ Detail: \_\_\_\_\_

Other:

---

**RECEIVERS REPLY:**

REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)  
0000- 2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

Signed by: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_ Copies to: \_\_\_\_\_

---

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)  
0000- 3

**REQUEST FOR APPROVAL (RFA)**  
**PRIOR APPROVAL/SUBSTITUTION REQUEST**

---

Email this form in its entirety to Project Manager listed below.

All products, materials, systems, equipment and services requested for prior approval must be submitted to the architect for approval **no later than 2:00 p.m., Ten (10) days prior to the bid date.**

To: McKee & Associates, Architects Substitution Request Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Jacky Barganier From: \_\_\_\_\_

[barganierj@mckeeassoc.com](mailto:barganierj@mckeeassoc.com) Date: \_\_\_\_\_  
*Email*

Project: \_\_\_\_\_ A/E Project Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Re: \_\_\_\_\_ Contract For: \_\_\_\_\_

---

Specification Title: \_\_\_\_\_ Description: \_\_\_\_\_

Section: \_\_\_\_\_ Page: \_\_\_\_\_ Article/Paragraph: \_\_\_\_\_

---

**Procedures for “Substitutions” and “Pre-Bid Approval”:**

- a. The identification of any product, material, system, item of equipment, or service in the Bid Documents by reference to a trade name, manufacturer’s name, model number, etc. (hereinafter referred to as “source”), is intended to establish a required standard of performance, design, and quality and is not intended to limit competition unless the provisions of paragraph “D” below apply.
- b. When the Bid Documents identify only one or two sources, or three or more sources followed by “or approved equal” or similar wording, the bidder’s proposal may be based on a source not identified but considered by the bidder to be equal to the standard of performance, design and quality as specified; however, such substitutions must ultimately be approved by the Architect. If the bidder elects to bid on a substitution without “Pre-bid Approval” as described below, then it will be understood that proof of compliance with specified requirements is the exclusive responsibility of the bidder.
- c. When the Bid Documents identify three or more sources and the list of sources is not followed by “or approved equal” or similar wording, the bidder’s proposal shall be based upon one of the identified sources, unless the bidder obtains “Pre-bid Approval” of another source as described below. Under these conditions it will be expressly understood that no product, material, system, item of equipment, or service that is not identified in the Bid Documents or granted “Pre-Bid Approval” will be incorporated into the Work unless such substitution is authorized and agreed upon through a Contract Change Order.
- d. If the Bid Documents identify only one source and expressly provide that it is an approved sole source for the product, material, system, item of equipment, or service, the bidder’s proposal must be based upon the identified sole source.
- e. **Procedures for “Pre-Bid Approval”.** If it is desired that a product, material, system, piece of equipment, or service from a source different from those sources identified in the Bid Documents be approved as an acceptable source, application for the approval of such source must reach the hands of the Architect **at least ten days prior to the date set for the opening of bids.** At the Architect’s discretion, this ten day provision may be waived. **The application for approval of a proposed source must be accompanied by technical data which the applicant desires to submit in support of the application.** The Architect will give consideration to reports from reputable independent testing laboratories, verified experience records showing the reputation of the proposed source with previous users, evidence of reputation of the source for prompt delivery, evidence of reputation of the source for efficiency in servicing its products, or any other pertinent written information. **The application to the Architect for approval of a proposed**

PRIOR APPROVAL / SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM  
0000-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

source must be accompanied by a schedule setting forth in which respects the materials or equipment submitted for consideration differ from the materials or equipment designated in the Bid Documents.

**The burden of proof of the merit of the proposed substitution is upon the proposer.** To be approved, a proposed source must also meet or exceed all express requirements of the Bid Documents. Approval, if granted, shall not be effective until published by the Architect in an addendum to the Bid Documents.

---

**The undersigned requests consideration of the following product substitution:**

Proposed Substitution: \_\_\_\_\_

Manufacturer: \_\_\_\_\_ Address: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone: \_\_\_\_\_

Trade Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Model No.: \_\_\_\_\_

**Supporting Data Attached:**  Product Description  Drawings  Photographs  Performance & Test Data  Specifications

Attached data includes product description, specifications, drawings, photographs, and performance and test data adequate for evaluation of the request; applicable portions of the data are clearly identified.

Attached data also includes a description of changes to the Contract Documents that the proposed substitution will require for its proper installation.

---

**The Undersigned states and certifies the following: (Mark Boxes as Applicable)**

Proposed substitution has been fully investigated and determined to be equal or superior in all respects to specified product.

*or*

Proposed substitution differs from what is specified in the Bid Documents. Submitted Data clearly identifies all differences from what is specified in the Bid Documents.

No changes will be required to the Contract Documents for the proper installation of the proposed product substitution.

*or*

Changes will be required to the Contract Documents for the proper installation of the proposed product substitution. Submitted Data clearly identifies description of changes.

*and*

Warranty will be furnished for proposed substitution  Equal to or  Superior to specified product.

Proposed substitution does not affect dimensions shown on the drawings and functional clearances.

No changes will be required to the building design, engineering design or detailing by the proposed substitution.

Proposed substitution will have no adverse effect on other trades and will not affect or delay construction progress schedule.

No maintenance is required by the proposed substitution other than that required for originally specified product.

Other Information:

---

**The undersigned further states that they have read the corresponding specification sections in the project manual and confirms that the function, appearance and quality of the proposed substitution are equivalent to or superior to the originally specified product.**

Submitted by: (Print)

Signature:

Date:

Firm:

Address:

Email:

Telephone:

---

**A/E REVIEW AND ACTION**

Substitution Approved

Substitution Approved as noted

Substitution Rejected

Substitution Request Received to Late

Comments:

PRIOR APPROVAL / SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM  
0000-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

Signed by:

Date:

---

PRIOR APPROVAL / SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM  
0000-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

# PROPOSAL FORM

To: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Awarding Authority)

In compliance with the Advertisement for Bids and subject to all the conditions thereof, the undersigned  
\_\_\_\_\_  
(Legal Name of Bidder)

hereby proposes to furnish all labor and materials and perform all work required for the construction of  
**WORK** \_\_\_\_\_

in accordance with Drawings and Specifications, dated \_\_\_\_\_, prepared by  
\_\_\_\_\_, Architect/Engineer.

The Bidder, which is organized and existing under the laws of the State of \_\_\_\_\_,  
having its principal offices in the City of \_\_\_\_\_,  
is:  a Corporation  a Partnership  an Individual  (other) \_\_\_\_\_.

**LISTING OF PARTNERS OR OFFICERS:** If Bidder is a Partnership, list all partners and their addresses; if Bidder is a Corporation, list the names, titles, and business addresses of its officers:  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**BIDDER'S REPRESENTATION:** The Bidder declares that it has examined the site of the Work, having become fully informed regarding all pertinent conditions, and that it has examined the Drawings and Specifications (including all Addenda received) for the Work and the other Bid and Contract Documents relative thereto, and that it has satisfied itself relative to the Work to be performed.

**ADDENDA:** The Bidder acknowledges receipt of Addenda Nos. \_\_\_\_\_ through \_\_\_\_\_ inclusively.

**BASE BID:** For construction complete as shown and specified, the sum of \_\_\_\_\_ Dollars (\$ \_\_\_\_\_)

**ALTERNATES:** If alternates as set forth in the Bid Documents are accepted, the following adjustments are to be made to the Base Bid:

For Alternate No. 1 ( ..... )  (add)  (deduct) \$ \_\_\_\_\_  
(Insert key word for Alternate)

For Alternate No. 2 ( ..... )  (add)  (deduct) \$ \_\_\_\_\_

For Alternate No. 3 ( ..... )  (add)  (deduct) \$ \_\_\_\_\_

For Alternate No. 4 ( ..... )  (add)  (deduct) \$ \_\_\_\_\_

For Alternate No. 5 ( ..... )  (add)  (deduct) \$ \_\_\_\_\_

For Alternate No. 6 ( ..... )  (add)  (deduct) \$ \_\_\_\_\_



**UNIT PRICES** - (Attach to this Proposal Form the unit prices, if any, on a separate sheet.)

**BID SECURITY:** The undersigned agrees to enter into a Construction Contract and furnish the prescribed Performance and Payment Bonds and evidence of insurance within fifteen calendar days, or such other period stated in the Bid Documents, after the contract forms have been presented for signature, provided such presentation is made within 30 calendar days after the opening of bids, or such other period stated in the Bid Documents. As security for this condition, the undersigned further agrees that the funds represented by the Bid Bond (or cashier's check) attached hereto may be called and paid into the account of the Awarding Authority as liquidated damages for failure to so comply.

Attached hereto is a: *(Mark the appropriate box and provide the applicable information.)*

- Bid Bond, executed by \_\_\_\_\_ as Surety,  
 a cashier's check on the \_\_\_\_\_ Bank of \_\_\_\_\_,  
for the sum of \_\_\_\_\_  
Dollars (\$ \_\_\_\_\_) made payable to the Awarding Authority.

**BIDDER'S ALABAMA LICENSE:**

State License for General Contracting: \_\_\_\_\_  
License Number Bid Limit Type(s) of Work

**CERTIFICATIONS:** The undersigned certifies that he or she is authorized to execute contracts on behalf of the Bidder as legally named, that this proposal is submitted in good faith without fraud or collusion with any other bidder, that the information indicated in this document is true and complete, and that the bid is made in full accord with State law. Notice of acceptance may be sent to the undersigned at the address set forth below.

The Bidder also declares that a list of all proposed major subcontractors and suppliers will be submitted at a time subsequent to the receipt of bids as established by the Architect in the Bid Documents but in no event shall this time exceed twenty-four (24) hours after receipt of bids.

**Legal Name of Bidder** \_\_\_\_\_

Mailing Address \_\_\_\_\_

\* **By (Legal Signature)** \_\_\_\_\_

\* Name & Title (print) \_\_\_\_\_ (Seal)

Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

Email Address \_\_\_\_\_

\* If other than the individual proprietor, or an above named member of the Partnership, or the above named president, vice-president, or secretary of the Corporation, attach written authority to bind the Bidder. Any modification to a bid shall be over the initials of the person signing the bid, or of an authorized representative.

Note: A completed DCM Form C-3A: Accounting of Sales Tax must be submitted with DCM Form C-3: Proposal Form. Submission of DCM Form C-3A is required, it is not optional. A proposal shall be rendered non-responsive if an Accounting of Sales Tax is not provided.

**CONTRACTOR COMPLETION TIME FORM**

This Form **MUST** be submitted with the sealed Proposal.

**New Admin Building**  
At  
**Red Bay High School**  
for the  
**Franklin County Board of Education**  
**Russellville, Alabama**

**MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251**

**Legal Name of Bidder** \_\_\_\_\_

Mailing Address \_\_\_\_\_

Per Section 01010, Scope of Work, the General Contractor MUST state his/her completion time on their Bid Proposal Form. The Contractor's Completion Time will be taken into consideration for award of the construction contract.

The General Contractor MUST use this Completion Time Form to state his/her completion time. This Form MUST be submitted with the sealed Proposal.

**COMPLETION TIME:**

All work shall be completed in **Calendar days** from Notice to Proceed issued by the Architect.

**Legal Signature of Bidder** \_\_\_\_\_

UNIT PRICE ITEM LEGEND

**New Admin Building**  
At  
**Red Bay High School**  
for the  
**Franklin County Board of Education**  
**Russellville, Alabama**

**MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251**

Legal Name of Bidder \_\_\_\_\_

Mailing Address \_\_\_\_\_

The General Contractor shall include the Unit Prices below in their Base Bid Proposal. **The quantities assigned below are above and beyond the amounts required to complete the work required by the bid documents.** This Unit Price Item Legend shall be submitted with the sealed Proposal.

**SCHEDULE OF UNIT PRICES:**

**UNIT PRICES:** The Unit Prices below establishes Unit Prices so that the Owner can delete/add quantities from the Contract(s) required.

**UNIT PRICE #1:** The Contractor shall include in his Base Bid proposal the cost for an **Additional 100** Cubic Yards Measured In Place (CYMIP) of removal and off-site disposal of unsuitable soil and furnishing, placing and compacting of acceptable fill material from below the finished subgrade and tested to meet requirements specified for the affected area, in accordance with the Geotechnical Report and Section 02200 "Earthwork."

**100 CYMIP @ \_\_\_\_\_/CYMIP = \$ \_\_\_\_\_ Included in Base Bid**

**UNIT PRICE #2:** The Contractor shall include in his Base Bid proposal **50** Cubic Yards Measured In Place (CYMIP) for excavation of unsuitable soils, disposal off site of excavated material and furnishing and installation of lean concrete mud footing "mud sill" in accordance with the Geotechnical Report and Section 02200 "Earthwork."

**50 CYMIP @ \_\_\_\_\_ per CYMIP = \$ \_\_\_\_\_ Included in Base Bid**

Note: This unit price is not applicable to cost of mud footings that are required due to over-excavation, or due to not pouring footings the same date they are excavated, or other reasons indicated in Section 02200 - "Earthwork," or Section 03310 - "Concrete."

# ACCOUNTING OF SALES TAX

## Attachment to DCM Form C-3: Proposal Form

To: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Awarding Authority)

NAME OF PROJECT \_\_\_\_\_

### SALES TAX ACCOUNTING

Pursuant to Act 2013-205, Section 1(g) the Contractor accounts for the sales tax NOT included in the bid proposal form as follows:

#### ESTIMATED SALES TAX AMOUNT

**BASE BID:** \$ \_\_\_\_\_

**Alternate No. 1** (.....)  (add)  (deduct) \$ \_\_\_\_\_  
(Insert key word for Alternate)

**Alternate No. 2** (.....)  (add)  (deduct) \$ \_\_\_\_\_

**Alternate No. 3** (.....)  (add)  (deduct) \$ \_\_\_\_\_

**Alternate No. 4** (.....)  (add)  (deduct) \$ \_\_\_\_\_

**Alternate No. 5** (.....)  (add)  (deduct) \$ \_\_\_\_\_

**Alternate No. 6** (.....)  (add)  (deduct) \$ \_\_\_\_\_

**Failure to provide an accounting of sales tax shall render the bid non-responsive. Other than determining responsiveness, sales tax accounting shall not affect the bid pricing nor be considered in the determination of the lowest responsible and responsive bidder.**

**Legal Name of Bidder** \_\_\_\_\_

Mailing Address \_\_\_\_\_

**\*By (Legal Signature)** \_\_\_\_\_

\*Name (type or print) \_\_\_\_\_

*(Seal)*

\*Title \_\_\_\_\_

Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

Email Address \_\_\_\_\_

Note: A completed DCM Form C-3A: Accounting of Sales Tax must be submitted with DCM Form C-3: Proposal Form. Submission of DCM Form C-3A with DCM Form C-3 is required, it is not optional. A proposal shall be rendered non-responsive if an Accounting of Sales Tax is not provided.

# BID BOND

The **PRINCIPAL** (*Bidder's company name and address*)

Name:  
Address:

The **SURETY** (*Company name and primary place of business*)

Name:  
Address:

The **OWNER** (*Entity name and address*)

Name:  
Address:

The **PROJECT** for which the Principal's Bid is submitted: (*Project name as it appears in the Bid Documents*)

**KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS**, that we, the undersigned Principal and Surety, jointly and severally, hereby bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors, and assigns to the Owner in the **PENAL SUM of five percent (5%) of the amount of the Principal's bid, but in no event more than Ten-thousand Dollars (\$10,000.00).**

**THE CONDITION OF THIS OBLIGATION** is that the Principal has submitted to the Owner the attached bid, which is incorporated herein by reference, for the Project identified above.

**NOW, THEREFORE**, if, within the terms of the Bid Documents, the Owner accepts the Principal's bid and the Principal thereafter either:

- (a) executes and delivers a Construction Contract with the required Performance and Payment Bonds (each in the form contained in the Bid Documents and properly completed in accordance with the bid) and delivers evidence of insurance as prescribed in the Bid Documents, or
  - (b) fails to execute and deliver such Construction Contract with such Bonds and evidence of insurance, but pays the Owner the difference, not to exceed the Penal Sum of this Bond, between the amount of the Principal's Bid and the larger amount for which the Owner may award a Construction Contract for the same Work to another bidder,
- then**, this obligation shall be null and void, otherwise it shall remain in full force and effect.

The Surety, for value received, hereby stipulates and agrees that the obligation of the Surety under this Bond shall not in any manner be impaired or affected by any extension of the time within which the Owner may accept the Principal's bid, and the Surety does hereby waive notice of any such extension.

**SIGNED AND SEALED** this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

ATTEST:

\_\_\_\_\_

**PRINCIPAL:**

\_\_\_\_\_  
By \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name and Title

**SURETY:**

ATTEST:

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
By \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name and Title

## SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

### 1.1 INTENT OF INSTRUCTIONS

- A. The Special Instructions to Bidders are intended to amplify the abbreviated Advertisement and to give other details which shall allow interested parties to prepare bids which accurately reflect the scope of the Work. The Special Instructions to Bidders are meant to be viewed as a complement to the general Instructions to Bidders found in the Project Manual. Should any discrepancy or ambiguity be noted, the Special Instructions to Bidders shall defer to the general Instructions to Bidders.

### 1.2 EXPLANATION AND INTERPRETATION

- A. Should any Bidder or subcontractor find any ambiguity, discrepancy, omission, or error in the Drawings and Project Manual, or insufficient information to provide a complete job, or be in doubt as to the intent and meaning thereof, he should at once report such in writing to Architect and request clarification prior to bidding
- B. Clarification shall be made only by written Addenda during the bid period and sent to all perspective Bidders. The Architect and Consultants shall not be responsible for verbal answers regarding intent or meaning of the Contract Documents, or for any verbal instructions, by whomsoever made, prior to the award of the Contract.
- C. Additionally, all designed systems and/or assemblies are to be proposed and bid as complete assemblies or operational systems. Drawings are indicating intent and not attempting to fully obtain or detail required work.

### 1.3 BIDDER REQUIREMENTS

- A. **All Bidders must honor their bid proposals for a period of 90 calendar days from date of bid opening.**
- B. **The Contractor MUST Field Verify all existing conditions prior to submitting bid proposal.**
- C. **The Apparent Low Bidder AND Apparent Second Lowest Bidder** must submit to the **Architect a direct Contact Name, Phone Number and Email Address for the Bonding Company and a list of the principal Subcontractors, suppliers, and fabricators he plans to use for each category of work.** The list of Subcontractors, Suppliers and Fabricators must be received by the Architect within **24 hours following the Bid Opening** (email to: [rawlinsonk@mckeeassoc.com](mailto:rawlinsonk@mckeeassoc.com)). Once the successful bidder has obtained approval from the Owner, no changes in Subcontractors, Suppliers or Fabricators shall be made without the express, written consent of the Owner. Contractor shall request consent in writing from the Owner and Architect and provide specific and reasonable explanation as to the necessity of said change. Should said change be approved by the Owner, the Contractor must submit the desired replacement Subcontractor to the Architect and obtain written approval of the Subcontractor.

### 1.4 OPENING OF PROPOSALS

- A. The Owner shall, according to applicable laws and regulations pertaining to bid openings, receive and review all Proposals submitted, according to the method selected below:
  - 1. Proposals shall be opened and read publicly at the time and place indicated in the Advertisement.
  - 2. Proposals may be rejected if they contain any omissions, alterations of forms, additions not called for, conditional bids, alternate bids unless called for, incomplete bids, erasures, or irregularities of any kind. Proposals in which the unit or lump sum prices bid are obviously unbalanced may be rejected. Additions to or deductions from the Bid amount may be written on the outside of the sealed bid, or by letter enclosed in the sealed bid envelope.

### 1.5 DETERMINATION of LOW BIDDER by USE of ALTERNATES

- A. The Awarding Authority may request alternate bid prices (alternates) to facilitate either reducing the base bid to an amount within the funds available for the project or adding items to the base

SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS  
PAGE-1

bid within the funds available for the project. Alternates, if any, are listed in the Proposal Form in the order in which they shall cumulatively deduct from or add to the base bid for determining the lowest bidder.

- B. If alternates are included in the Proposal Form, the Awarding Authority shall determine the dollar amount of funds available and immediately prior to the opening of bids shall announce publicly the funds available for the project. The dollar amount of such funds shall be **used to determine the lowest bidder** as provided herein below, notwithstanding that the actual funds available for the project may subsequently be determined to be more or less than the expected funds available as determined immediately prior to the time of the opening of bids.
- C. **If additional funds become available after the bid opening, the Owner may at his option elect to award to the lowest base bid bidder a contract based on the Contractors base bid amount and additional Alternates.**
- D. If the base bid of the lowest bidder **exceeds** the funds available and alternate bid prices will reduce the base bids to an amount that is **within** the funds available, the lowest bidder will be determined by considering, in order, the fewest number of the alternates that produces a price within the funds available.
- E. If the base bid of the lowest bidder is within the funds available and alternate bid prices will permit adding items to the base bid, the lowest bidder will be determined by considering, in order, the greatest number of the alternates that produces a price within the funds available.
- F. After the lowest bidder has been determined as set forth above, the Awarding Authority may award that bidder any combination of alternates, provided said bidder is also the low bidder when only the Base Bid and such combination of alternates are considered.

#### **1.6 AWARD OF CONTRACT**

- A. The Bidder to whom the award is made shall be notified by letter to the address shown on his Proposal at the earliest possible date. At such time, at the option of the Owner, additional information such as a complete financial statement may be required from the successful Bidder.

#### **1.7 EXECUTION OF CONTRACT**

- A. The Contract shall be signed by the successful Bidder, in the number of counterparts provided in the Contract Agreement and returned to the Owner with satisfactory Contract Bonds within ten (10) days after the date of Notice of Award.

#### **1.8 PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND**

- A. The intent of the Performance Bond is to ensure the faithful performance of each and every condition, stipulation, and requirements of the Contract and to indemnify and save harmless the Owner, Architect, and Consultants from any and all damages, either directly or indirectly (arising out of any failure to perform same). The successful Bidder to whom the Contract is awarded shall furnish at his expense an acceptable Performance Bond in an amount equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract Price of the Contract as awarded. Said Bond shall be made on the approved Bond form, shall be furnished by a surety company duly authorized and qualified to make such bonds in the State of Alabama, shall be countersigned by an authorized agent resident in the State who is qualified for the execution of such instruments, and shall have attached thereto power of attorney of the signing official. In case of default on the part of the Contractor, all expenses incident to ascertaining and collecting losses suffered by the Owner under the Bond, the direct costs of administration, architectural, engineering, and legal services, shall lie against the Contract Bond for Performance of the Work.
- B. In addition thereto, the successful Bidder to whom the Contract is awarded shall furnish at his expense a Payment Bond with good and sufficient surety payable to the Owner in an amount not less than one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract Price, with the obligation that the Contractor shall promptly make payment to all persons furnishing him or them with labor, material, feedstuffs, or supplies for or in prosecution of the Work provided for in the Contract and

for the payment or reasonable attorneys' fees, incurred by successful claimants or plaintiffs in suits on said Bond.

- C. **The Apparent Low Bidder AND Apparent Second Lowest Bidder** must submit to the Architect a direct Contact Name, Phone Number and Email Address for the Bonding Company within 24 hours of the bid opening.

#### 1.9 APPROVAL OF CONTRACT

- A. No Contract is binding upon the Owner until it has been executed by the Owner and the successful Bidder and copies delivered.

#### 1.10 CAD FILES

- A. McKee & Associates CAD Files shall not be provided. Should the contractor require CAD Files they are encouraged to seek online PDF to CAD File Conversion vendors and/or software.

#### 1.11 LIST OF SUBCONTRACTORS

- A. **The Apparent Low Bidder AND Apparent Second Lowest Bidder** must submit to the Architect a direct Contact Name, Phone Number and Email Address for the Bonding Company and a list of the principal Subcontractors, suppliers, and fabricators he plans to use for each category of work must be received by the Architect within twenty-four hours following the Bid Opening. Email to [rawlinsonk@mckeeassoc.com](mailto:rawlinsonk@mckeeassoc.com). Once the successful bidder has obtained approval from the Owner, no changes in Subcontractors, suppliers and fabricators shall be made without the express, written consent of the Owner.





**END OF SECTION**

SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS  
0000-5

**PREPARATION AND APPROVAL OF  
CONSTRUCTION  
CONTRACTS and BONDS  
SUBMITTED ON PAPER**

**CHECKLIST**

Use with DCM Forms C-5, C-6, & C-7  
and DCM Forms 9-A, 9-B, & 9-C

<p align="center"><b>CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT - DCM Form C-5 or DCM Form 9-A (PSCA Projects)</b></p> <p>Three copies of documents with original signatures required. The numbers in the left column below correspond to numbers in the left margin of the Contract form. If the project is funded partially or fully by the Alabama Public School and College Authority (PSCA), use DCM Form 9-A instead of DCM Form C-5.</p>	
(1)	<p><b>PROJECT NUMBER(S):</b> Insert the DCM (BC) Project Number in the block provided.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On DCM Form 9-A, also insert the PSCA Project Number in the block provided.</li> </ul>
(2)	<p><b>DATE:</b> Insert the date upon which the Contractor will sign the contract.</p>
(3)	<p><b>OWNER:</b> Insert the full, legal name, address, email, and telephone number of the Owner (Awarding Authority).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On DCM Form 9-A, insert the name, address, email, and telephone number of the Local Owner (city or county school board, college, university, etc.) after "Alabama Public School and College Authority"</li> </ul>
(4)	<p><b>CONTRACTOR:</b> Insert the Contractor's full, legal company name, correct mailing address, email, and telephone number. For State Agency projects, the Contractor Company name and address must match the name and address registered in the State of Alabama Accounting and Resource System (STAARS) used by the State to pay Vendors. The Contractor Company name and address must be consistent across all documents in the same contract package, in order to avoid STAARS rejection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On DCM Form 9-A: The Contractor Company name and address must match the name and address registered in STAARS used by the State to pay Vendors. The Contractor Company name and address must be consistent across all documents in the same contract package, in order to avoid STAARS rejection.</li> </ul>
(5)	<p><b>The WORK:</b> Insert the complete name of the Project; same as in the Bid Documents.</p>
(6)	<p><b>CONTRACT DOCUMENTS:</b> Insert the date of the Bid Documents</p>
(7)	<p><b>ADDENDA:</b> Identify, by number and date, all pre-bid Addenda that were issued to the Bid Documents. If none were issued, insert "None". All Addenda shall be submitted to DCM for review prior to contract issuance.</p>
(8)	<p><b>ARCHITECT:</b> Insert the full, legal name, address, email, and telephone number of the Project Architectural or Engineering firm.</p>
(9)	<p><b>CONTRACT SUM:</b> The Contract Sum is the total of the Contract's Base Bid and accepted Bid Alternate Prices, if any. Insert the Contract Sum in words and figures, verifying that this amount corresponds with the CERTIFIED TABULATION OF BIDS.</p>
(10)	<p><b>BID ALTERNATE PRICES:</b> Identify which, if any, Bid Alternate Prices are accepted and included in the Contract Sum by inserting either (a) "No Alternate Prices Requested in Bid", (b) "No Alternate Prices Accepted", or (c) a listing of the accepted Alternates by number and dollar amount.</p>
(11)	<p><b>The CONTRACT TIME:</b> State the Contract Time in words and in figures.</p>
(12)	<p><b>LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:</b> If the Owner has computed a daily rate for liquidated damages, insert the amount in both words and figures in the spaces provided.</p>
(13)	<p><b>SPECIAL PROVISIONS:</b> This space may be used to incorporate Special Provisions into the Contract, such as unit prices, compliance with enacted provisions, and value engineering. If the solicitation for bids required Unit Prices, insert a statement of which Unit Prices, if any, are accepted and incorporated into the Contract. If more space is needed, Special Provisions may be stated on an attachment that is cited in the Special Provisions section.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DCM Form 9-A is published bearing Special Provision "A. Severable Payments", which is where the portions of the Contract Sum to be paid by the PSCA and the Local Owner are to be stated. Obtain these amounts from Local Owner and insert them in the spaces provided. Other Special Provisions, such as disposition of Unit Prices, may be inserted below this provision.</li> </ul>
(14)	<p><b>STATE GENERAL CONTRACTOR'S LICENSE:</b> Insert the Contractor's current state general contracting license number, bid limit, and classification in the spaces provided.</p>

<b>(15)</b>	<b>SIGNATURES - APPROVING and CONTRACTING PARTIES</b> Signature spaces vary for different Owner types and funding sources. Download the appropriate document per Owner/funding type from <a href="http://www.dcm.alabama.gov/forms.aspx">www.dcm.alabama.gov/forms.aspx</a> . Original signatures required; copies of signatures will not be accepted.
-------------	---

**PERFORMANCE BOND, DCM Form C-6 or DCM Form 9-B (PSCA Projects), and  
PAYMENT BOND, DCM Form C-7 or DCM Form 9-C (PSCA Projects)**

Before forwarding the Construction Contract and Bonds to the Owner, verify that the Surety has accurately provided all information in the spaces provided. The information should be the same on both Bonds.

<b>(1)</b>	<b>SURETY’S BOND NUMBER</b> should be inserted in the block provided.
<b>(2)</b>	<b>PRINCIPAL:</b> Contractor’s name and address is to be the same as appears in the Construction Contract.
<b>(3)</b>	<b>SURETY:</b> The full, legal name and address of the bonding company.
<b>(4)</b>	<b>OWNER:</b> The Owner’s name and address is to be the same as appears in the Construction Contract.
<b>(5)</b>	<b>PENAL SUM:</b> The Penal Sum of each Bond is to be the Contract Sum of the Construction Contract and is to be inserted in both words and figures.
<b>(6)</b>	The <b>Date</b> of the Construction Contract: The date that appears on the Construction Contract.
<b>(7)</b>	The <b>PROJECT:</b> The same name or description as appears in the Construction Contract.
<b>(8)</b>	<b>DATE:</b> After “SIGNED AND SEALED” is to appear the date upon which Contractor and Surety sign the Bond. <b>THIS DATE CANNOT PRECEDE THE DATE OF THE CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT.</b>
<b>(9)</b>	<b>CONTRACTOR’S SIGNATURE:</b> The Contractor’s name must appear beneath “CONTRACTOR”, under which the signature of a member or officer of the firm must appear with the name and title of the signing party appearing LEGIBLY beneath the signature.
<b>(10)</b>	<b>SURETY’S SIGNATURE:</b> The full, legal name of the bonding company must appear under “SURETY”, under which the signature of an individual having power of attorney for the bonding company must appear with the individual’s name and title appearing LEGIBLY beneath the signature.
<b>(11)</b>	<b>ATTACHED POWER OF ATTORNEY:</b> Clipped to each copy of the Bonds must be a Power of Attorney, signed by an officer of the bonding company, for the individual signing the bond on behalf of the bonding company. <b>The date of the Power of Attorney <u>must</u> not precede the date of the bond.</b>

**ATTACHMENTS**

- The following documents must be attached to each of the three (3) Construction Contract copies:
- Insurance Certificate (attach copy): It is the responsibility of the design professional to ensure all insurance requirements are discussed with bidders prior to a bid and that Contractor has provided the requirements to their insurance provider. Contractor must obtain all insurance coverage specified in Article 37 of the General Conditions of the Contract - required per Section 39-2-8 of the Code of Alabama.
  - Performance Bond: required for contracts of \$50,000.0 or more, attach original with surety’s power-of-attorney original - required per Section 39-2-8 of the Code of Alabama.
  - Payment Bond: required for contracts of \$50,000.0 or more, attach original with surety’s power-of-attorney original - required per Section 39-2-8 of the Code of Alabama.
  - Certified Tabulation of Bids (attach copy): required for all projects including those with informal bids - required per Section 39-2-6 of the Code of Alabama.
  - DCM Form C-3: Proposal Form (attach copy): If bid proposal was adjusted by notation on outside of envelope, also attach copy of outside of envelope including notation.
  - DCM Form C-3A: Accounting of Sales Tax (attach copy): copy must be of the executed C-3A from the bid - required per Section 40-9-14.1 of the Code of Alabama.
  - E-Verify Memorandum of Understanding (attach copy): entire document required - required per Section 31-13-25(b) of the Code of Alabama.
  - Alabama Disclosure Statement (attach original) - required per Section 41-16-82 of the Code of Alabama.

**FORWARDING CONTRACT and ATTACHMENTS**

After determining that the Construction Contract (signed by the Contractor) and attachments are in order, the design professional shall forward all three (3) copies of these documents (with original signatures) to the Owner for signature. The Owner shall then forward the documents per the Review/Signature Flow instructions specified on the contract form underneath the signature block.

### **SUBMITTAL TO DCM:**

- All contract documents and attachments must be single-sided on letter-sized paper without staples; use clips. Purpose: quickly and efficiently scan thousands of documents into DCM's database. Scanners compatible with the database do not scan double-sided nor legal-sized paper.
- Contracts with double-sided printing will not be accepted.
- The Contract Document Administration Fee-CC and the Permit Fee must be paid by the time a Construction Contract for a state agency project, Alabama Community College System (ACCS) project or PSCA-funded project is submitted to DCM for review, or when a fully locally-funded project Construction Contract is converted to PSCA. Contract reviews can begin once the fees have been paid.
- The Permit Fee must be paid by the time a copy of a fully locally-funded K-12 school project's executed Construction Contract is received at DCM's office from the State Department of Education (SDE).

Basic Contract Document Administration (CDA) Fee: This fee covers review of the Agreement Between Owner and Architect (O/A Agreement) and Construction Contract for state agency projects, ACCS projects and partially or fully PSCA-funded projects of K-12 public schools and universities and the related amendments, change orders, service invoices and pay requests. This fee does not apply to fully locally-funded K-12 public school projects or fully locally-funded university projects. The Basic CDA Fee covers review of the original submitted document and one revision. The total basic CDA fee is 1/2 of 1% of the total construction cost, due in two parts: 1/4 of 1% (.25%) of the Project Budget for administration of the O/ A Agreement. 1/4 of 1% (.25%) of the Construction Contract Amount for administration of the Construction Contract.

Additional Revised Contract Document Fee: When more than one revision of a Construction Contract is required, an additional fee of \$200.00 will be charged to the design professional for each additional submittal until the document is executed.

Basic Permit Fee: This fee covers required project inspections. The Permit Fee is due when a construction contract or self-performance letter is received by DCM, and must be paid before a Pre-Construction Conference is scheduled with DCM Inspectors for any type of project. Note: although DCM does not review the construction contracts of non-ACCS public higher education institutions such as two and four-year universities, the permit fee must be paid before a required Pre-Construction Conference is scheduled with DCM Inspectors for such projects.

Fees may be paid online at [www.dcm.alabama.gov](http://www.dcm.alabama.gov) or paid with a physical check. Make check payable to: "Finance - Construction Management", include the DCM (BC) Project #, if assigned, on the check and attach the CDA Fees Calculation Worksheet (also available on [www.dcm.alabama.gov](http://www.dcm.alabama.gov)). Mail payment to: Finance - Construction Management, P.O. Box 301150, Montgomery, AL 36130-1150. For payments using Public School and College Authority (PSCA) funds and for state agency inter-fund transfers: contact Jennie Jones at 334-242-4808 or [jennie.jones@realproperty.alabama.gov](mailto:jennie.jones@realproperty.alabama.gov).

*This form is provided solely for the purpose of inclusion in the project manual. A Construction Contract for fully locally-funded K-12 projects must be initiated via the appropriate DocuSign link from DCM's webpage [https://dcm.alabama.gov/forms\\_publicK12.aspx](https://dcm.alabama.gov/forms_publicK12.aspx) by the Lead Design Professional Firm.*

**DCM (BC) Project No.**

Numbers in margin correspond to "Checklist", DCM Form B-7

# CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT

- (1) This Construction Contract is entered into this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ in the year of \_\_\_\_\_
- (2) between the **OWNER**,  
Entity Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Address: \_\_\_\_\_  
Email & Phone #: \_\_\_\_\_
- (3) and the **CONTRACTOR**,  
Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Address: \_\_\_\_\_  
Email & Phone #: \_\_\_\_\_
- (4) for the **WORK** of the Project, identified as: \_\_\_\_\_
- (5) The **CONTRACT DOCUMENTS** are dated \_\_\_\_\_ and have been amended by \_\_\_\_\_
- (6) **ADDENDA** \_\_\_\_\_
- (7) The **ARCHITECT** is \_\_\_\_\_  
Firm Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Address: \_\_\_\_\_  
Email & Phone #: \_\_\_\_\_
- (8) The **CONTRACT SUM** is \_\_\_\_\_ Dollars (\$ \_\_\_\_\_ ) and is the sum of the Contractor's Base Bid for the Work and the following
- (9) **BID ALTERNATE PRICES:** \_\_\_\_\_
- (10) The **CONTRACT TIME** is \_\_\_\_\_ ( \_\_\_\_\_ ) calendar days.

**THE OWNER AND THE CONTRACTOR AGREE AS FOLLOWS:** The Contract Documents, as defined in the General Conditions of the Contract (DCM Form C-8), are incorporated herein by reference. The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Owner will pay and the Contractor will accept as full compensation for such performance of the Work, the Contract Sum subject to additions and deductions (including liquidated damages) as provided in the Contract Documents. The Work shall commence on a date to be specified in a Notice to Proceed issued by the Owner (or by the Lead Design Professional on the Owner's behalf), and shall then be substantially completed within the Contract Time.

- (11) **LIQUIDATED DAMAGES** for which the Contractor and its Surety (if any) shall be liable and may be required to pay the Owner in accordance with the Contract Documents shall be equal to six percent interest per annum on the total Contract Sum unless a dollar amount is stipulated in the following space, in which case liquidated damages shall be determined at \_\_\_\_\_ dollars (\$ \_\_\_\_\_) per calendar day.

Numbers in margin correspond to "Checklist", DCM Form B-7

(13) **SPECIAL PROVISIONS** *(Insert any Special Provisions here, such as acceptance or rejection of unit prices. If Special Provisions are continued in an attachment, identify the attachment below):*

(14) **STATE GENERAL CONTRACTOR'S LICENSE:** The Contractor does hereby certify that Contractor is currently licensed by the Alabama State Licensing Board for General Contractors and that the certificate for such license bears the following:

License No.: \_\_\_\_\_ Classification(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Bid Limit: \_\_\_\_\_

The Owner and Contractor have entered into this Construction Contract as of the date first written above and have executed this Construction Contract in sufficient counterparts to enable each contracting party to have an originally executed Construction Contract each of which shall, without proof or accounting for the other counterparts, be deemed an original thereof.

The Owner does hereby certify that this Construction Contract was let in accordance with the provisions of Title 39, Code of Alabama 1975, as amended, and all other applicable provisions of law, and that the terms and commitments of this Construction Contract do not constitute a debt of the State of Alabama in violation of Article 11, Section 213 of the Constitution of Alabama, 1901, as amended by Amendment Number 26.

(15)

<b>APPROVAL</b>	<b>CONTRACTING PARTIES</b>
<div style="text-align: center; border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <b>ALABAMA STATE DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION (SDE)</b>  <i>(Required for locally-funded, SDE projects.)</i> </div> <p>By _____ Date: _____  <div style="text-align: center;">State Superintendent of Education</div> </p>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <p style="text-align: center;">_____ Contractor Company</p> <p>By _____  <div style="text-align: center;">Signature</div> </p> <p>Name &amp; Title _____</p> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p style="text-align: center;">_____ Owner Entity</p> <p>By _____  <div style="text-align: center;">Signature</div> </p> <p>Name(s) &amp; Title(s) _____</p> </div>

*Routing of the Construction Contract to reviewers and e-signers is automated through DocuSign. DocuSign links for fully locally-funded contract documents are available from DCM's webpage [https://dcm.alabama.gov/forms\\_publicK12.aspx](https://dcm.alabama.gov/forms_publicK12.aspx).*

**ARTICLE 37**  
**CONTRACTOR'S and SUBCONTRACTORS' INSURANCE**

*(Provide entire Article 37 to Contractor's insurance representative.)*

**A. GENERAL**

**(1) RESPONSIBILITY.** The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner from the time of the signing of the Construction Contract or from the beginning of the first work, whichever shall be earlier, for all injury or damage of any kind resulting from any negligent act or omission or breach, failure or other default regarding the work by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of who may be the owner of the property.

**(2) INSURANCE PROVIDERS.** Each of the insurance coverages required below shall be issued by an insurer licensed by the Insurance Commissioner to transact the business of insurance in the State of Alabama for the applicable line of insurance, and such insurer (or, for qualified self-insureds or group self-insureds, a specific excess insurer providing statutory limits) must have a Best Policyholders Rating of "A-" or better and a financial size rating of Class V or larger.

**(3) NOTIFICATION ENDORSEMENT.** Each policy shall be endorsed to provide that the insurance company agrees that the policy shall not be canceled, changed, allowed to lapse or allowed to expire for any reason until thirty days after the Owner has received written notice by certified mail as evidenced by return receipt or until such time as other insurance coverage providing protection equal to protection called for in the Contract Documents shall have been received, accepted and acknowledged by the Owner. Such notice shall be valid only as to the Project as shall have been designated by Project Name and Number in said notice.

**(4) INSURANCE CERTIFICATES.** The Contractor shall procure the insurance coverages identified below, or as otherwise required in the Contract Documents, at the Contractor's own expense, and to evidence that such insurance coverages are in effect, the Contractor shall furnish the Owner an insurance certificate(s) acceptable to the Owner and listing the Owner as the certificate holder. The insurance certificate(s) must be delivered to the Owner with the Construction Contract and Bonds for final approval and execution of the Construction Contract. The insurance certificate must provide the following:

- (a) Name and address of authorized agent of the insurance company
- (b) Name and address of insured
- (c) Name of insurance company or companies
- (d) Description of policies
- (e) Policy Number(s)
- (f) Policy Period(s)
- (g) Limits of liability
- (h) Name and address of Owner as certificate holder
- (i) Project Name and Number, if any
- (j) Signature of authorized agent of the insurance company
- (k) Telephone number of authorized agent of the insurance company
- (l) Mandatory thirty day notice of cancellation / non-renewal / change

**(5) MAXIMUM DEDUCTIBLE.** Self-insured retention, except for qualified self-insurers or



group self-insurers, in any policy shall not exceed \$25,000.00.

**B. INSURANCE COVERAGES**

Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall purchase the types of insurance coverages with liability limits not less than as follows:

**(1) WORKERS' COMPENSATION and EMPLOYER'S LIABILITY INSURANCE**

(a) Workers' Compensation coverage shall be provided in accordance with the statutory coverage required in Alabama. A group insurer must submit a certificate of authority from the Alabama Department of Industrial Relations approving the group insurance plan. A self-insurer must submit a certificate from the Alabama Department of Industrial Relations stating the Contractor qualifies to pay its own workers' compensation claims.

(b) Employer's Liability Insurance limits shall be at least:

- .1 Bodily Injury by Accident - \$1,000,000 each accident
- .2 Bodily Injury by Disease - \$1,000,000 each employee

**(2) COMMERCIAL GENERAL LIABILITY INSURANCE**

(a) Commercial General Liability Insurance, written on an ISO Occurrence Form (current edition as of the date of Advertisement for Bids) or equivalent, shall include, but need not be limited to, coverage for bodily injury and property damage arising from premises and operations liability, products and completed operations liability, blasting and explosion, collapse of structures, underground damage, personal injury liability and contractual liability. The Commercial General Liability Insurance shall provide at minimum the following limits:

<u>Coverage</u>	<u>Limit</u>
.1 General Aggregate	\$ 2,000,000.00 per Project
.2 Products, Completed Operations Aggregate	\$ 2,000,000.00 per Project
.3 Personal and Advertising Injury	\$ 1,000,000.00 per Occurrence
.4 Each Occurrence	\$ 1,000,000.00

(b) Additional Requirements for Commercial General Liability Insurance:

- .1 The policy shall name the Owner, Architect, Alabama Division of Construction Management, State Department of Education (if applicable), and their agents, consultants and employees as additional insureds, state that this coverage shall be primary insurance for the additional insureds; and contain no exclusions of the additional insureds relative to job accidents.
- .2 The policy must include separate per project aggregate limits.

**(3) COMMERCIAL BUSINESS AUTOMOBILE LIABILITY INSURANCE**

(a) Commercial Business Automobile Liability Insurance which shall include coverage for bodily injury and property damage arising from the operation of any owned, non-owned or hired automobile. The Commercial Business Automobile Liability Insurance Policy shall provide not less than \$1,000,000 Combined Single Limits for each occurrence.

(b) The policy shall name the Owner, Architect, Alabama Division of Construction Management, State Department of Education (if applicable), and their agents, consultants, and employees as additional insureds.

**(4) COMMERCIAL UMBRELLA OR COMMERCIAL EXCESS LIABILITY INSURANCE**

(a) Commercial Umbrella or Commercial Excess Liability Insurance to provide excess

coverage above the Commercial General Liability, Commercial Business Automobile Liability and the Workers' Compensation and Employer's Liability to satisfy the minimum limits set forth herein.

**(b) Minimum Combined Primary Commercial General Liability and Commercial Umbrella or Commercial Excess Limits of:**

- .1 \$ 5,000,000 per Occurrence
- .2 \$ 5,000,000 Aggregate

**(c) Additional Requirements for Commercial Umbrella or Commercial Excess Liability Insurance:**

- .1 The policy shall name the Owner, Architect, Alabama Division of Construction Management, State Department of Education (if applicable), and their agents, consultants, and employees as additional insureds.
- .2 The policy must be on an "occurrence" basis.

**(5) BUILDER'S RISK INSURANCE**

**(a)** The Builder's Risk Policy shall be made payable to the Owner and Contractor, as their interests may appear. The policy amount shall be equal to 100% of the Contract Sum, written on a Causes of Loss - Special Form (current edition as of the date of Advertisement for Bids), or its equivalent. All deductibles shall be the sole responsibility of the Contractor.

**(b)** The policy shall be endorsed as follows:

“The following may occur without diminishing, changing, altering or otherwise affecting the coverage and protection afforded the insured under this policy:

- (i)** Furniture and equipment may be delivered to the insured premises and installed in place ready for use; or
- (ii)** Partial or complete occupancy by Owner; or
- (iii)** Performance of work in connection with construction operations insured by the Owner, by agents or lessees or other contractors of the Owner, or by contractors of the lessee of the Owner.”

Exception: projects containing only abatement and/or only demolition do not require Builder's Risk insurance, unless required by the Owner. Note: projects containing any scope of work besides abatement and/or demolition require Builder's Risk insurance.

**C. SUBCONTRACTORS' INSURANCE**

**(1) WORKERS' COMPENSATION and EMPLOYER'S LIABILITY INSURANCE.** The Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to obtain and maintain Workers' Compensation and Employer's Liability Insurance coverages as described in preceding Paragraph B, or to be covered by the Contractor's Workers' Compensation and Employer's Liability Insurance while performing Work under the Contract.

**(2) LIABILITY INSURANCE.** The Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to obtain and maintain adequate General Liability, Automobile Liability, and Umbrella or Excess Liability Insurance coverages similar to those described in preceding Paragraph B. Such coverage shall be in effect at all times that a Subcontractor is performing Work under the Contract.

**(3) ENFORCEMENT RESPONSIBILITY.** The Contractor shall have responsibility to enforce its Subcontractors' compliance with these or similar insurance requirements; however, the Contractor shall, upon request, provide the Architect or Owner acceptable evidence of insurance for any Subcontractor.

**D. TERMINATION of OBLIGATION to INSURE**

Unless otherwise expressly provided in the Contract Documents, the obligation to insure as provided herein shall continue as follows:

**(1) BUILDER'S RISK INSURANCE.** The obligation to insure under Subparagraph B(5) shall remain in effect until the Date of Substantial Completion as shall be established in the Certificate of Substantial Completion. In the event that multiple Certificates of Substantial Completion covering designated portions of the Work are issued, Builder's Risk coverage shall remain in effect until the Date of Substantial Completion as shall be established in the last issued Certificate of Substantial Completion. However, in the case that the Work involves separate buildings, Builder's Risk coverage of each separate building may terminate on the Date of Substantial Completion as established in the Certificate of Substantial Completion issued for each building.

**(2) PRODUCTS and COMPLETED OPERATIONS.** The obligation to carry Products and Completed Operations coverage specified under Subparagraph B(2) shall remain in effect for two years after the Date(s) of Substantial Completion.

**(3) ALL OTHER INSURANCE.** The obligation to carry other insurance coverages specified under Subparagraphs B(1) through B(4) and Paragraph C shall remain in effect after the Date(s) of Substantial Completion until such time as all Work required by the Contract Documents is completed. Equal or similar insurance coverages shall remain in effect if, after completion of the Work, the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, returns to the Project to perform warranty or maintenance work pursuant to the terms of the Contract Documents.

**E. WAIVERS of SUBROGATION**

The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees, each of the other, and (2) the Architect, Architect's consultants, separate contractors performing construction or operations related to the Project, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees, for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss. But said waiver shall apply only to the extent the loss or damage is covered by builder's risk insurance applicable to the Work or to other property located within or adjacent to the Project, except such rights as they may have to proceeds of such insurance held by the Owner or Contractor as fiduciary. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require of the Architect, Architect's consultants, separate contractors, if any, and the subcontractor, sub-subcontractors, suppliers, agents and employees of any of them, by appropriate agreements, written where legally required for validity, similar waivers each in favor of other parties enumerated herein. The Policies shall provide such waivers of subrogation by endorsement or otherwise. A waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to the person or entity even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, and whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the property damaged. The waivers provided for in this paragraph shall not be applicable to loss or damage that occurs after final acceptance of the Work.

Numbers in margin correspond to second page of "Checklist", DCM Form B-7

# (1) PERFORMANCE BOND

SURETY'S BOND NUMBER
----------------------

*Do not staple this form; use clips.*

(2) The **PRINCIPAL** (*Company name and address of Contractor as appears in the Construction Contract*)

Name:  
Address:

(3) The **SURETY** (*Company name and primary place of business*)

Name:  
Address:

(4) The **OWNER** (*Entity name and address, same as appears in the Construction Contract*)

Name:  
Address:

(5) The **PENAL SUM** of this Bond (the Contract Sum)

Dollars (\$) \_\_\_\_\_).

(6) **DATE** of the Construction Contract :

(7) The **PROJECT**: (*Same as appears in the Construction Contract*)

**1. WE, THE PRINCIPAL (hereinafter "Contractor") AND THE SURETY**, jointly and severally, hereby bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors, and assigns to the Owner in the Penal Sum stated above for the performance of the Contract, and Contract Change Orders, in accord with the requirements of the Contract Documents, which are incorporated herein by reference. If the Contractor performs the Contract, and Contract Change Orders, in accordance with the Contract Documents, then this obligation shall be null and void; otherwise it shall remain in full force and effect.

**2.** The Penal Sum shall remain equal to the Contract Sum as the Contract Sum is adjusted by Contract Change Orders. All Contract Change Orders involving an increase in the Contract Sum will require consent of Surety by endorsement of the Contract Change Order form. The Surety waives notification of any Contract Change Orders involving only extension of the Contract Time.

3. Whenever the Architect gives the Contractor and the Surety, at their addresses stated above, a written Notice to Cure a condition for which the Contract may be terminated in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Surety may, within the time stated in the notice, cure or provide the Architect with written verification that satisfactory positive action is in process to cure the condition.
4. The Surety's obligation under this Bond becomes effective after the Contractor fails to satisfy a Notice to Cure and the Owner:
  - (a) gives the Contractor and the Surety, at their addresses stated above, a written Notice of Termination declaring the Contractor to be in default under the Contract and stating that the Contractor's right to complete the Work, or a designated portion of the Work, shall terminate seven days after the Contractor's receipt of the notice; and
  - (b) gives the Surety a written demand that, upon the effective date of the Notice of Termination, the Surety promptly fulfill its obligation under this Bond.
5. In the presence of the conditions described in Paragraph 4, the Surety shall, at its expense:
  - (a) On the effective date of the Notice of Termination, take charge of the Work and be responsible for the safety, security, and protection of the Work, including materials and equipment stored on and off the Project site, and
  - (b) Within twenty-one days after the effective date of the Notice of Termination, proceed, or provide the Owner with written verification that satisfactory positive action is in process to facilitate proceeding promptly, to complete the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, either with the Surety's resources or through a contract between the Surety and a qualified contractor to whom the Owner has no reasonable objection.
6. As conditions precedent to taking charge of and completing the Work pursuant to Paragraph 5, the Surety shall neither require, nor be entitled to, any agreements or conditions other than those of this Bond and the Contract Documents. In taking charge of and completing the Work, the Surety shall assume all rights and obligations of the Contractor under the Contract Documents; however, the Surety shall also have the right to assert "Surety Claims" to the Owner in accordance with the Contract Documents. The presence or possibility of a Surety Claim shall not be just cause for the Surety to fail or refuse to promptly take charge of and complete the Work or for the Owner to fail or refuse to continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.
7. By accepting this Bond as a condition of executing the Construction Contract, and by taking the actions described in Paragraph 4, the Owner agrees that:
  - (a) the Owner shall promptly advise the Surety of the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum and, upon request, shall make available or furnish to the Surety, at the cost of reproduction, any portions of the Project Record, and
  - (b) as the Surety completes the Work, or has it completed by a qualified contractor, the Owner shall pay the Surety, in accordance with terms of payment of the Contract Documents, the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum, less any amounts that may be or become due the Owner from the Contractor under the Construction Contract or from the Contractor or the Surety under this Bond.
8. In the presence of the conditions described in Paragraph 4, the Surety's obligation includes responsibility for the correction of Defective Work, liquidated damages, and reimbursement of any reasonable expenses incurred by the Owner as a result of the Contractor's default under the Contract, including architectural, engineering, administrative, and legal services.

Numbers in margin correspond to second page of "Checklist", DCM Form B-7

9. Nothing contained in this Bond shall be construed to mean that the Surety shall be liable to the Owner for an amount exceeding the Penal Sum of this Bond, except in the event that the Surety should be in default under the Bond by failing or refusing to take charge of and complete the Work pursuant to Paragraph 5. If the Surety should fail or refuse to take charge of and complete the Work, the Owner shall have the authority to take charge of and complete the Work, or have it completed, and the following costs to the Owner, less the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum, shall be recoverable under this Bond:

- (a) the cost of completing the Contractor's responsibilities under the Contract, including correction of Defective Work;
- (b) additional architectural, engineering, managerial, and administrative services, and reasonable attorneys' fees incident to completing the Work;
- (c) interest on, and the cost of obtaining, funds to supplement the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum as may be necessary to cover the foregoing costs;
- (d) the fair market value of any reductions in the scope of the Work necessitated by insufficiency of the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum and available supplemental funds to cover the foregoing costs; and
- (f) additional architectural, engineering, managerial, and administrative services, and reasonable attorneys' fees incident to ascertaining and collecting the Owner's losses under the Bond.

10. All claims and disputes arising out of or related to this bond, or its breach, shall be resolved in accordance with Article 24, General Conditions of the Contract.

(8) **SIGNED AND SEALED** this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

(9 & 10) **SURETY:**

**CONTRACTOR as PRINCIPAL:**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Company Name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Company Name

By \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

By \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name and Title

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name and Title

(11) NOTE: Original power of attorney for the Surety's signatory shall be furnished with each of the original three bond forms to be attached to each of the three contract copies (with original signatures) per project.

Do not staple this form; use clips. Purpose: quickly and efficiently scan thousands of documents into DCM's database.

Numbers in margin correspond to second page of "Checklist", DCM Form B-7

(1) **PAYMENT BOND**

SURETY'S BOND NUMBER

*Do not staple this form; use clips.*

(2) The **PRINCIPAL** (*Company name and address of Contractor, same as appears in the Construction Contract*)

Name:

Address:

(3) The **SURETY** (*Company name and primary place of business*)

Name:

Address:

(4) The **OWNER(s)** (*Entity name and address, same as appears in the Construction Contract*)

Name:

Address:

(5) The **PENAL SUM** of this Bond (the Contract Sum)

Dollars (\$) \_\_\_\_\_).

(6) **DATE** of the Construction Contract:

(7) The **PROJECT**: (*Same as appears in the Construction Contract*)

1. **WE, THE PRINCIPAL (hereinafter "Contractor") AND THE SURETY**, jointly and severally, hereby bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors, and assigns to the Owner in the Penal Sum stated above to promptly pay all persons supplying labor, materials, or supplies for or in the prosecution of the Contract, which is incorporated herein by reference, and any modifications thereof by Contract Change Orders. If the Contractor and its Subcontractors promptly pay all persons supplying labor, materials, or supplies for or in the prosecution of the Contract and Contract Change Orders, then this obligation shall be null and void; otherwise to remain and be in full force and effect.

2. The Penal Sum shall remain equal to the Contract Sum as the Contract Sum is adjusted by Contract Change Orders. All Contract Change Orders involving an increase in the Contract Sum will require consent of Surety by endorsement of the Contract Change Order form. The Surety waives notification of any Contract Change Orders involving only extension of the Contract Time.

Numbers in margin correspond to second page of "Checklist", DCM Form B-7

3. Any person that has furnished labor, materials, or supplies for or in the prosecution of the Contract and Contract Change Orders for which payment has not been timely made may institute a civil action upon this Bond and have their rights and claims adjudicated in a civil action and judgment entered thereon. Notwithstanding the foregoing, a civil action may not be instituted on this bond until 45 days after written notice to the Surety of the amount claimed to be due and the nature of the claim. The civil action must commence not later than one year from the date of final settlement of the Contract. The giving of notice by registered or certified mail, postage prepaid, addressed to the Surety at any of its places of business or offices shall be deemed sufficient. In the event the Surety or Contractor fails to pay the claim in full within 45 days from the mailing of the notice, then the person or persons may recover from the Contractor and Surety, in addition to the amount of the claim, a reasonable attorney's fee based on the result, together with interest on the claim from the date of the notice.
4. Every person having a right of action on this bond shall, upon written application to the Owner indicating that labor, material, or supplies for the Work have been supplied and that payment has not been made, be promptly furnished a certified copy of this bond and the Construction Contract. The claimant may bring a civil action in the claimant's name on this Bond against the Contractor and the Surety, or either of them, in the county in which the Work is to be or has been performed or in any other county where venue is otherwise allowed by law.
5. This bond is furnished to comply with Code of Alabama, §39-1-1, and all provisions thereof shall be applicable to civil actions upon this bond.
6. All claims and disputes between Owner and either the Contractor or Surety arising out of or related to this bond, or its breach, shall be resolved in accordance with Article 24, General Conditions of the Contract.

(8) **SIGNED AND SEALED** this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

(9 & 10) **SURETY:**

**CONTRACTOR as PRINCIPAL:**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Company Name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Company Name

By \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

By \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name and Title

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name and Title

(11) **NOTE:** Original power of attorney for the Surety's signatory shall be furnished with each of the original three bond forms to be attached to each of the three contract copies (with original signatures) per project.

Do not staple this form; use clips. Purpose: quickly and efficiently scan thousands of documents into DCM's database.



# GENERAL CONDITIONS of the CONTRACT

## CONTENTS

1. Definitions
2. Intent and Interpretation of the Contract Documents
3. Contractor's Representation
4. Documents Furnished to Contractor
5. Ownership of Drawings
6. Supervision, Superintendent, & Employees
7. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor
8. Surveys by Contractor
9. Submittals
10. Documents and Samples at the Site
11. "As-built" Documents
12. Progress Schedule
13. Materials, Equipment & Substitutions
14. Safety & Protection of Persons & Property
15. Hazardous Materials
16. Inspection of the Work
17. Correction of Work
18. Deductions for Uncorrected Work
19. Changes in the Work
20. Claims for Extra Cost or Extra Work
21. Differing Site Conditions
22. Claims for Damages
23. Delays
24. Resolution of Claims and Disputes
25. Owner's Right to Correct Work
26. Owner's Right to Stop or Suspend the Work
27. Owner's Right to Terminate Contract
28. Contractor's Right to Suspend or Terminate
29. Progress Payments
30. Certification & Approvals for Payments
31. Payments Withheld
32. Substantial Completion
33. Occupancy or Use Prior to Completion
34. Final Payment
35. Contractor's Warranty
36. Indemnification Agreement
37. Insurance
38. Performance and Payment Bonds
39. Assignment
40. Construction by Owner or Separate Contracts
41. Subcontracts
42. Architect's Status
43. Cash Allowances
44. Permits, Laws and Regulations
45. Royalties, Patents and Copyrights
46. Use of the Site
47. Cutting and Patching
48. In-progress and Final Cleanup
49. Liquidated Damages
50. Use of Foreign Material
51. Sign

## ARTICLE 1 DEFINITIONS

Whenever the following terms, or pronouns in place of them, are used in the Contract Documents, the intent and meaning shall be interpreted as follows:

- A. ALABAMA DIVISION OF CONSTRUCTION MANAGEMENT:** The Technical Staff of the Alabama Division of Construction Management.
- B. ARCHITECT:** The Architect is the person or entity lawfully licensed to practice architecture in the State of Alabama, who is under contract with the Owner as the primary design professional for the Project and identified as the Architect in the Construction Contract. The term "Architect" means the Architect or the Architect's authorized representative. If the employment of the Architect is terminated, the Owner shall employ a new Architect whose status under the Contract Documents shall be that of the former Architect. If the primary design professional for the Project is a Professional Engineer, the term "Engineer" shall be substituted for the term "Architect" wherever it appears in this document.

- C. COMMISSION:** The former Alabama Building Commission, for which the Alabama Division of Construction Management has been designated by the Legislature as its successor.
- D. CONTRACT:** The Contract is the embodiment of the Contract Documents. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the Owner and Contractor and supersedes any prior written or oral negotiations, representations or agreements that are not incorporated into the Contract Documents. The Contract may be amended only by a Contract Change Order or a Modification to the Construction Contract. The contractual relationship which the Contract creates between the Owner and the Contractor extends to no other persons or entities. The Contract consists of the following Contract Documents, including all additions, deletions, and modifications incorporated therein before the execution of the Construction Contract:
- (1) Construction Contract
  - (2) Performance and Payment Bonds
  - (3) Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplemental, and other Conditions)
  - (4) Specifications
  - (5) Drawings
  - (6) Contract Change Orders
  - (7) Modifications to the Construction Contract (applicable to PSCA Projects)
- E. CONTRACT SUM:** The Contract Sum is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents. The term “Contract Sum” means the Contract Sum stated in the Construction Contract as may have been increased or decreased by Change Order(s) in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- F. CONTRACT TIME:** The Contract Time is the period of time in which the Contractor must achieve Substantial Completion of the Work. The date on which the Contract Time begins is specified in the written Notice To Proceed issued to the Contractor by the Owner or Director. The Date of Substantial Completion is the date established in accordance with Article 32. The term “Contract Time” means the Contract Time stated in the Construction Contract as may have been extended by Change Order(s) in accordance with the Contract Documents. The term “day” as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.
- G. CONTRACTOR:** The Contractor is the person or persons, firm, partnership, joint venture, association, corporation, cooperative, limited liability company, or other legal entity, identified as such in the Construction Contract. The term “Contractor” means the Contractor or the Contractor’s authorized representative.
- H. DCM:** The Alabama Division of Construction Management.
- I. DCM PROJECT INSPECTOR:** The member of the Technical Staff of the Alabama Division of Construction Management to whom the Project is assigned relative to executing the respective inspections and authorities described in Article 16, Inspection of the Work.
- J. DEFECTIVE WORK:** The term “Defective Work” shall apply to: (1) any product, material, system, equipment, or service, or its installation or performance, which does not conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, (2) in-progress or completed Work the workmanship of which does not conform to the quality specified or, if not specified, to the quality produced by skilled workers performing work of a similar nature on similar projects in the state, (3) substitutions and deviations not properly submitted and approved or otherwise authorized, (4) temporary

supports, structures, or construction which will not produce the results required by the Contract Documents, and (5) materials or equipment rendered unsuitable for incorporation into the Work due to improper storage or protection.

- K. DIRECTOR:** The Director of the Alabama Division of Construction Management.
- L. DRAWINGS:** The Drawings are the portions of the Contract Documents showing graphically the design, location, layout, and dimensions of the Work, in the form of plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules, and diagrams.
- M. NOTICE TO PROCEED:** A proceed order issued by the Owner or Director, as applicable, fixing the date on which the Contractor shall begin the prosecution of the Work, which is also the date on which the Contract Time shall begin.
- N. OWNER:** The Owner is the entity or entities identified as such in the Construction Contract and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The term “Owner” means the Owner or the Owner’s authorized representative. The term “Owner” as used herein shall be synonymous with the term “Awarding Authority” as defined and used in Title 39 - Public Works, Code of Alabama, 1975, as amended.
- O. THE PROJECT:** The Project is the total construction of which the Work required by these Contract Documents may be the entirety or only a part with other portions to be constructed by the Owner or separate contractors.
- P. PROJECT MANUAL:** The Project Manual is the volume usually assembled for the Work which may include the Advertisement for Bids, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, General Conditions of the Contract, Supplementary Conditions, and Specifications of the Work.
- Q. SPECIFICATIONS:** The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents which set forth in writing the standards of quality and performance of products, equipment, materials, systems, and services and workmanship required for acceptable performance of the Work.
- R. SUBCONTRACTOR:** A Subcontractor is a person or entity who is undertaking the performance of any part of the Work by virtue of a contract with the Contractor. The term “Subcontractor” means a Subcontractor or its authorized representatives.
- S. THE WORK:** The Work is the construction and services required by the Contract Documents and includes all labor, materials, supplies, equipment, and other items and services as are necessary to produce the required construction and to fulfill the Contractor’s obligations under the Contract. The Work may constitute the entire Project or only a portion of it.

## **ARTICLE 2**

### **INTENT and INTERPRETATION of the CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

#### **A. INTENT**

It is the intent of the Contract Documents that the Contractor shall properly execute and complete the Work described by the Contract Documents, and unless otherwise provided in the Contract, the

Contractor shall provide all labor, materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work, in full accordance with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.

**B. COMPLEMENTARY DOCUMENTS**

The Contract Documents are complementary. If Work is required by one Contract Document, the Contractor shall perform the Work as if it were required by all of the Contract Documents. However, the Contractor shall be required to perform Work only to the extent that is consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.

**C. ORDER of PRECEDENCE**

Should any discrepancy arise between the various elements of the Contract Documents, precedence shall be given to them in the following order unless to do so would contravene the apparent Intent of the Contract Documents stated in preceding Paragraph A:

- (1) The Construction Contract.
- (2) Addenda, with those of later date having precedence over those of earlier date.
- (3) Supplementary Conditions (or other Conditions which modify the General Conditions of the Contract).
- (4) General Conditions of the Contract.
- (5) The Specifications.
- (6) Details appearing on the Drawings; large scale details shall take precedence over smaller scale details.
- (7) The Drawings; large scale drawings shall take precedence over smaller scale drawings.

**D. ORGANIZATION**

Except as may be specifically stated within the technical specifications, neither the organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections, or otherwise, nor any arrangement of the Drawings shall control how the Contractor subcontracts portions of the Work or assigns Work to any trade.

**E. INTERPRETATION**

(1) The Contract Documents shall be interpreted collectively, each part complementing the others and consistent with the Intent of the Contract Documents stated in preceding Paragraph A. Unless an item shown or described in the Contract Documents is specifically identified to be furnished or installed by the Owner or others or is identified as “Not In Contract” (“N.I.C.”), the Contractor’s obligation relative to that item shall be interpreted to include furnishing, assembling, installing, finishing, and/or connecting the item at the Contractor’s expense to produce a product or system that is complete, appropriately tested, and in operative condition ready for use or subsequent construction or operation of the Owner or separate contractors. The omission of words or phrases for brevity of the Contract Documents, the inadvertent omission of words or phrases, or obvious typographical or written errors shall not defeat such interpretation as long as it is reasonably inferable from the Contract Documents as a whole.

(2) Words or phrases used in the Contract Documents which have well-known technical or

construction industry meanings are to be interpreted consistent with such recognized meanings unless otherwise indicated.

(3) Except as noted otherwise, references to standard specifications or publications of associations, bureaus, or organizations shall mean the latest edition of the referenced standard specification or publication as of the date of the Advertisement for Bids.

(4) In the case of inconsistency between Drawings and Specifications or within either document not clarified by addendum, the better quality or greater quantity of Work shall be provided in accordance with the Architect's interpretation.

(5) Any portions of the Contract Documents written in longhand must be initialed by all parties..

(6) Any doubt as to the meaning of the Contract Documents or any obscurity as to the wording of them, shall be promptly submitted in writing to the Architect for written interpretation, explanation, or clarification.

**F. SEVERABILITY.**

The partial or complete invalidity of any one or more provision of this Contract shall not affect the validity or continuing force and effect of any other provision.

**ARTICLE 3**  
**CONTRACTOR'S REPRESENTATIONS**

By executing the Construction Contract the Contractor represents to the Owner:

- A. The Contractor has visited the site of the Work to become familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed and to evaluate reasonably observable conditions as compared with requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. The Contractor shall use its best skill and attention to perform the Work in an expeditious manner consistent with the Contract Documents.
- C. The Contractor is an independent contractor and in performance of the Contract remains and shall act as an independent contractor having no authority to represent or obligate the Owner in any manner unless authorized by the Owner in writing.

**ARTICLE 4**  
**DOCUMENTS FURNISHED to CONTRACTOR**

Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, twenty sets of Drawings and Project Manuals will be furnished to the Contractor by the Architect without charge. Other copies requested will be furnished at reproduction cost.

**ARTICLE 5**  
**OWNERSHIP of DRAWINGS**

All original or duplicated Drawings, Specifications, and other documents prepared by the Architect, and furnished to the Contractor are the property of the Architect and are to be used solely for this Project and not to be used in any manner for other work. Upon completion of the Work, all copies of Drawings and Specifications, with the exception of the Contractor's record set, shall be returned or accounted for by the Contractor to the Architect, on request.

**ARTICLE 6**  
**SUPERVISION, SUPERINTENDENT, and EMPLOYEES**

**A. SUPERVISION and CONSTRUCTION METHODS**

(1) The term "Construction Methods" means the construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures utilized by the Contractor in performing the Work. The Contractor is solely responsible for supervising and coordinating the performance of the Work, including the selection of Construction Methods, unless the Contract Documents give other specific instructions concerning these matters.

(2) The Contractor is solely and completely responsible for job site safety, including the protection of persons and property in accordance with Article 14.

(3) The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of not only the Contractor and its agents and employees, but all persons and entities, and their agents and employees, who are performing portions of the Work for or on behalf of the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors.

(4) The Contractor shall be responsible to inspect the in-progress and completed Work to verify its compliance with the Contract Documents and to insure that any element or portion of the Work upon which subsequent Work is to be applied or performed is in proper condition to receive the subsequent Work.

**B. SUPERINTENDENT**

(1) The Contractor shall employ and maintain a competent level of supervision for the performance of the Work at the Project site, including a superintendent who shall:

(a) have full authority to receive instructions from the Architect or Owner and to act on those instructions and (b) be present at the Project site at all times during which Work is being performed.

(2) Before beginning performance of the Work, the Contractor shall notify the Architect in writing of the name and qualifications of its proposed superintendent so that the Owner may review the individual's qualifications. If, for reasonable cause, the Owner refuses to approve the individual, or withdraws its approval after once giving it, the Contractor shall name a different superintendent for the Owner's review and approval. Any disapproved superintendent will not perform in that capacity thereafter at the Project site.

**C. EMPLOYEES**

The Contractor shall permit only fit and skilled persons to perform the Work. The Contractor shall enforce safety procedures, strict discipline, and good order among persons performing the Work. The Contractor will remove from its employment on the Project any person who deliberately or persistently produces non-conforming Work or who fails or refuses to conform to reasonable rules of personal conduct contained in the Contract Documents or implemented by the Owner and delivered to the Contractor in writing during the course of the Work.

**ARTICLE 7**

**REVIEW of CONTRACT DOCUMENTS and FIELD CONDITIONS by CONTRACTOR**

- A. In order to facilitate assembly and installation of the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, before starting each portion of the Work, the Contractor shall examine and compare the relevant Contract Documents, and compare them to relevant field measurements made by the Contractor and any conditions at the site affecting that portion of the Work.
- B. If the Contractor discovers any errors, omissions, or inconsistencies in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly report them to the Architect as a written request for information that includes a detailed statement identifying the specific Drawings or Specifications that are in need of clarification and the error, omission, or inconsistency discovered in them.
- (1) The Contractor shall not be expected to act as a licensed design professional and ascertain whether the Contract Documents comply with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, building codes, and rules and regulations, but the Contractor shall be obligated to promptly notify the Architect of any such noncompliance discovered by or made known to the Contractor. If the Contractor performs Work without fulfilling this notification obligation, the Contractor shall pay the resulting costs and damages that would have been avoided by such notification.
- (2) The Contractor shall not be liable to the Owner for errors, omissions, or inconsistencies that may exist in the Contract Documents, or between the Contract Documents and conditions at the site, unless the Contractor knowingly fails to report a discovered error, omission, or inconsistency to the Architect, in which case the Contractor shall pay the resulting costs and damages that would have been avoided by such notification.
- C. If the Contractor considers the Architect's response to a request for information to constitute a change to the Contract Documents involving additional costs and/or time, the Contractor shall follow the procedures of Article 20, Claims for Extra Cost or Extra Work.
- D. If, with undue frequency, the Contractor requests information that is obtainable through reasonable examination and comparison of the Contract Documents, site conditions, and previous correspondence, interpretations, or clarifications, the Contractor shall be liable to the Owner for reasonable charges from the Architect for the additional services required to review, research, and respond to such requests for information.

**ARTICLE 8**  
**SURVEYS by CONTRACTOR**

- A. The Contractor shall provide competent engineering services to assure accurate execution of the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall verify the figures given for the contours, approaches and locations shown on the Drawings before starting any Work and be responsible for the accuracy of the finished Work. Without extra cost to the Owner, the Contractor shall engage a licensed surveyor if necessary to verify boundary lines, keep within property lines, and shall be responsible for encroachments on rights or property of public or surrounding property owners.
  
- B. The Contractor shall establish all base lines for the location of the principal components of the Work and make all detail surveys necessary for construction, including grade stakes, batter boards and other working points, lines and elevations. If the Work involves alteration of or addition to existing structures or improvements, the Contractor shall locate and measure elements of the existing conditions as is necessary to facilitate accurate fabrication, assembly, and installation of new Work in the relationship, alignment, and/or connection to the existing structure or improvement as is shown in the Contract Documents.

**ARTICLE 9**  
**SUBMITTALS**

- A. Where required by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall submit shop drawings, product data, samples and other information (hereinafter referred to as Submittals) to the Architect for the purpose of demonstrating the way by which the Contractor proposes to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents. Submittals which are not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.
  
- B. The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for the accuracy of its Submittals and the conformity of its submitted information to the requirements of the Contract Documents. Each Submittal shall bear the Contractor's approval, evidencing that the Contractor has reviewed and found the information to be in compliance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. Submittals which are not marked as reviewed and approved by the Contractor may be returned by the Architect without action.
  
- C. The Contractor shall prepare and deliver its submittals to the Architect sufficiently in advance of construction requirements and in a sequence as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner or of separate contractors. In coordinating the Submittal process with its construction schedule, the Contractor shall allow sufficient time to permit adequate review by the Architect.
  
- D. By approving a Submittal the Contractor represents not only that the element of Work presented in the Submittal complies with the requirements of the Contract Documents, but also that the Contractor has:
  - (1) found the layout and/or dimensions in the Submittal to be comparable with those in the Contract Documents and other relevant Submittals and has made field measurements as necessary to verify their accuracy, and
  - (2) determined that products, materials, systems, equipment and/or procedures presented in the Submittal are compatible with those presented, or being presented, in other relevant Submittals and



with the Contractor's intended Construction Methods.

- E. The Contractor shall not fabricate or perform any portion of the Work for which the Contract Documents require Submittals until the respective Submittals have been approved by the Architect.
- F. In the case of a resubmission, the Contractor shall direct specific attention to all revisions in a Submittal. The Architect's approval of a resubmission shall not apply to any revisions that were not brought to the Architect's attention.
- G. If the Contract Documents specify that a Submittal is to be prepared and sealed by a registered architect or licensed engineer retained by the Contractor, all drawings, calculations, specifications, and certifications of the Submittal shall bear the Alabama seal of registration and signature of the registered/licensed design professional who prepared them or under whose supervision they were prepared. The Owner and the Architect shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy, accuracy and completeness of such a Submittal, provided that all performance and design criteria that such Submittal must satisfy are sufficiently specified in the Contract Documents. The Architect will review, approve or take other appropriate action on such a Submittal only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall not be responsible for the adequacy of the performance or design criteria specified in the Contract Documents.

#### **H. DEVIATIONS**

(1) The Architect is authorized by the Owner to approve "minor" deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents. "Minor" deviations are defined as those which are in the interest of the Owner, do not materially alter the quality or performance of the finished Work, and do not affect the cost or time of performance of the Work. Deviations which are not "minor" may be authorized only by the Owner through the Change Order procedures of Article 19.

(2) Any deviation from the requirements of the Contract Documents contained in a Submittal shall be clearly identified as a "Deviation from Contract Requirements" (or by similar language) within the Submittal and, in a letter transmitting the Submittal to the Architect, the Contractor shall direct the Architect's attention to, and request specific approval of, the deviation. Otherwise, the Architect's approval of a Submittal does not constitute approval of deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents contained in the Submittal.

(3) The Contractor shall bear all costs and expenses of any changes to the Work, changes to work performed by the Owner or separate contractors, or additional services by the Architect required to accommodate an approved deviation unless the Contractor has specifically informed the Architect in writing of the required changes and a Change Order has been issued authorizing the deviation and accounting for such resulting changes and costs.

#### **I. ARCHITECT'S REVIEW and APPROVAL**

(1) The Architect will review the Contractor's Submittals for conformance with requirements of, and the design concept expressed in, the Contract Documents and will approve or take other appropriate action upon them. This review is not intended to verify the accuracy and completeness of details such as dimensions and quantities nor to substantiate installation instructions or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor. However, the Architect shall advise the Contractor of any errors or omissions which the Architect

may detect during this review. The Architect's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.

(2) The Architect will review and respond to all Submittals with reasonable promptness to avoid delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner, Contractor or separate contractors, while allowing sufficient time to permit adequate review.

(3) No corrections or changes to Submittals indicated by the Architect will be considered as authorizations to perform Extra Work. If the Contractor considers such correction or change of a Submittal to require Work which differs from the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly notify the Architect in writing in accordance with Article 20, Claims for Extra Cost or Extra Work.

**J. CONFORMANCE with SUBMITTALS**

The Work shall be constructed in accordance with approved Submittals.

**ARTICLE 10  
DOCUMENTS and SAMPLES at the SITE**

**A. "AS ISSUED" SET**

The Contractor shall maintain at the Project site, in good order, at least one copy of all Addenda, Change Orders, supplemental drawings, written directives and clarifications, and approved Submittals intact as issued, and an updated construction schedule.

**B. "POSTED" SET**

The Contractor shall maintain at the Project site, in good order, at least one set of the Drawings and Project Manual into which the Contractor has "posted"(incorporated) all Addenda, Change Orders, supplemental drawings, clarifications, and other information pertinent to the proper performance of the Work. The Contractor shall assure that all sets of the Drawings and Project Manuals being used by the Contractor, Subcontractors, and suppliers are "posted" with the current information to insure that updated Contract Documents are used for performance of the Work.

**C. RECORD SET**

One set of the Drawings and Project Manual described in Paragraph B shall be the Contractor's record set in which the Contractor shall record all field changes, corrections, selections, final locations, and other information as will be duplicated on the "As-built" documents required under Article 11. The Contractor shall record such "as-built" information in its record set as it becomes available through progress of the Work. The Contractor's performance of this requirement shall be subject to confirmation by the Architect at any time as a prerequisite to approval of Progress Payments.

**D.** The documents and samples required by this Article to be maintained at the Project site shall be readily available to the Architect, Owner, DCM Project Inspector, and their representatives.

**ARTICLE 11**  
**“AS-BUILT” DOCUMENTS**

- A. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall deliver two (2) sets of “As-built” documents, as described herein, to the Architect for submission to the Owner upon completion of the Work. Each set of “As-built” documents shall consist of a copy of the Drawings and Project Manual, in like-new condition, into which the Contractor has neatly incorporated all Addenda, Change Orders, supplemental drawings, clarifications, field changes, corrections, selections, actual locations of underground utilities, and other information as required herein or specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
- B. The Contractor shall use the following methods for incorporating information into the “As-built” documents:
- (1) **Drawings**
- (a) To the greatest extent practicable, information shall be carefully drawn and lettered, in ink, on the Drawings in the form of sketches, details, plans, notes, and dimensions as required to provide a fully dimensioned record of the Work. When required for clarity, sketches, details, or partial plans shall be drawn on supplemental sheets and bound into the Drawings and referenced on the drawing being revised.
- (b) Where a revised drawing has been furnished by the Architect, the drawing of latest date shall be bound into the Drawings in the place of the superseded drawing.
- (c) Where a supplemental drawing has been furnished by the Architect, the supplemental drawing shall be bound into the Drawings in an appropriate location and referred to by notes added to the drawing being supplemented.
- (d) Where the Architect has furnished details, partial plans, or lengthy notes of which it would be impractical for the Contractor to redraw or letter on a drawing, such information may be affixed to the appropriate drawing with transparent tape if space is available on the drawing.
- (e) Any entry of information made in the Drawings that is the result of an Addendum or Change Order, shall identify the Addendum or Change Order from which it originated.
- (2) **Project Manual**
- (a) A copy of all Addenda and Change Orders, excluding drawings thereof, shall be bound in the front of the Project Manual.
- (b) Where a document, form, or entire specification section is revised, the latest issue shall be bound into the Project Manual in the place of the superseded issue.
- (c) Where information within a specification section is revised, the deleted or revised information shall be drawn through in ink and an adjacent note added identifying the Addendum or Change Order containing the revised information.
- C. Within ten days after the Date of Substantial Completion of the Work, or the last completed portion of the Work, the Contractor shall submit the “As-built” documents to the Architect for approval. If the Architect requires that any corrections be made, the documents will be returned in a reasonable time for correction and resubmission.

**ARTICLE 12**  
**PROGRESS SCHEDULE**

(Not applicable if the Contract Time is 60 days or less.)

- A. The Contractor shall within fifteen days after the date of commencement stated in the Notice to Proceed, or such other time as may be provided in the Contract Documents, prepare and submit to the Architect for review and approval a practicable construction schedule informing the Architect and Owner of the order in which the Contractor plans to carry on the Work within the Contract Time. The Architect's review and approval of the Contractor's construction schedule shall be only for compliance with the specified format, Contract Time, and suitability for monitoring progress of the Work and shall not be construed as a representation that the Architect has analyzed the schedule to form opinions of sequences or durations of time represented in the schedule.
- B. If a schedule format is not specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents, the construction schedule shall be prepared using DCM Form C-11, "Sample Progress Schedule and Report", (contained in the Project Manual) or similar format of suitable scale and detail to indicate the percentage of Work scheduled to be completed at the end of each month. At the end of each month the Contractor shall enter the actual percentage of completion on the construction schedule submit two copies to the Architect, and attach one copy to each copy of the monthly Application for Payment. The construction schedule shall be revised to reflect any agreed extensions of the Contract Time or as required by conditions of the Work.
- C. If a more comprehensive schedule format is specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents or voluntarily employed by the Contractor, it may be used in lieu of DCM Form C-11.
- D. The Contractor's construction schedule shall be used by the Contractor, Architect, and Owner to determine the adequacy of the Contractor's progress. The Contractor shall be responsible for maintaining progress in accordance with the currently approved construction schedule and shall increase the number of shifts, and/or overtime operations, days of work, and/or the amount of construction plant and equipment as may be necessary to do so. If the Contractor's progress falls materially behind the currently approved construction schedule and, in the opinion of the Architect or Owner, the Contractor is not taking sufficient steps to regain schedule, the Architect may, with the Owner's concurrence, issue the Contractor a Notice to Cure pursuant to Article 27. In such a Notice to Cure the Architect may require the Contractor to submit such supplementary or revised construction schedules as may be deemed necessary to demonstrate the manner in which schedule will be regained.

**ARTICLE 13**  
**EQUIPMENT, MATERIALS, and SUBSTITUTIONS**

- A. Every part of the Work shall be executed in a workmanlike manner in accordance with the Contract Documents and approved Submittals. All materials used in the Work shall be furnished in sufficient quantities to facilitate the proper and expeditious execution of the Work and shall be new except such materials as may be expressly provided or allowed in the Contract Documents to be otherwise.
- B. Whenever a product, material, system, item of equipment, or service is identified in the Contract Documents by reference to a trade name, manufacturer's name, model number, etc.(hereinafter

referred to as “source”), and only one or two sources are listed, or three or more sources are listed and followed by “or approved equal” or similar wording, it is intended to establish a required standard of performance, design, and quality, and the Contractor may submit, for the Architect’s approval, products, materials, systems, equipment, or services of other sources which the Contractor can prove to the Architect’s satisfaction are equal to, or exceed, the standard of performance, design and quality specified, unless the provisions of Paragraph D below apply. Such proposed substitutions are not to be purchased or installed without the Architect’s written approval of the substitution.

- C. If the Contract Documents identify three or more sources for a product, material, system, item of equipment or service to be used and the list of sources is not followed by “or approved equal” or similar wording, the Contractor may make substitution only after evaluation by the Architect and execution of an appropriate Contract Change Order.
- D. If the Contract Documents identify only one source and expressly provide that it is an approved sole source for the product, material, system, item of equipment, or service, the Contractor must furnish the identified sole source.

#### **ARTICLE 14**

#### **SAFETY and PROTECTION of PERSONS and PROPERTY**

- A. The Contractor shall be solely and completely responsible for conditions at the Project site, including safety of all persons (including employees) and property. The Contractor shall create, maintain, and supervise conditions and programs to facilitate and promote safe execution of the Work, and shall supervise the Work with the attention and skill required to assure its safe performance. Safety provisions shall conform to OSHA requirements and all other federal, state, county, and local laws, ordinances, codes, and regulations. Where any of these are in conflict, the more stringent requirement shall be followed. Nothing contained in this Contract shall be construed to mean that the Owner has employed the Architect nor has the Architect employed its consultants to administer, supervise, inspect, or take action regarding safety programs or conditions at the Project site.
- B. The Contractor shall employ Construction Methods, safety precautions, and protective measures that will reasonably prevent damage, injury or loss to:
  - (1) workers and other persons on the Project site and in adjacent and other areas that may be affected by the Contractor’s operations;
  - (2) the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated into the Work and stored by the Contractor on or off the Project site; and
  - (3) other property on, or adjacent to, the Project site, including trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, utilities, and other improvements not designated in the Contract Documents to be removed, relocated, or replaced.
- C. The Contractor shall be responsible for the prompt remedy of damage and loss to property, including the filing of appropriate insurance claims, caused in whole or in part by the fault or negligence of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable.

- D. The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, ordinances, rules, regulations and lawful orders of public authorities bearing on safety and protection of persons or property, including without limitation notices to adjoining property owners of excavation or other construction activities that potentially could cause damage or injury to adjoining property or persons thereon.
- E. The Contractor shall erect and maintain barriers, danger signs, and any other reasonable safeguards and warnings against hazards as may be required for safety and protection during performance of the Contract and shall notify owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities of conditions that may exist or arise which may jeopardize their safety.
- F. If use or storage of explosives or other hazardous materials or equipment or unusual Construction Methods are necessary for execution of the Work, the Contractor shall exercise commensurate care and employ supervisors and workers properly qualified to perform such activity.
- G. The Contractor shall furnish a qualified safety representative at the Project site whose duties shall include the prevention of accidents. The safety representative shall be the Contractor's superintendent, unless the Contractor assigns this duty to another responsible member of its on-site staff and notifies the Owner and Architect in writing of such assignment.
- H. The Contractor shall not permit a load to be applied, or forces introduced, to any part of the construction or site that may cause damage to the construction or site or endanger safety of the construction, site, or persons on or near the site.
- I. The Contractor shall have the right to act as it deems appropriate in emergency situations jeopardizing life or property. The Contractor shall be entitled to equitable adjustment of the Contract Sum or Contract Time for its efforts expended for the sole benefit of the Owner in an emergency. Such adjustment shall be determined as provided in Articles 19 and 20.
- J. The duty of the Architect and the Architect's consultants to visit the Project site to conduct periodic inspections of the Work or for other purposes shall not give rise to a duty to review or approve the adequacy of the Contractor's safety program, safety supervisor, or any safety measure which Contractor takes or fails to take in, on, or near the Project site.

**ARTICLE 15**  
**HAZARDOUS MATERIALS**

- A. A Hazardous Material is any substance or material identified as hazardous under any federal, state, or local law or regulation, or any other substance or material which may be considered hazardous or otherwise subject to statutory or regulatory requirements governing its handling, disposal, and/or clean-up. Existing Hazardous Materials are Hazardous Materials discovered at the Project site and not introduced to the Project site by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable.
- B. If, during the performance of the Work, the Contractor encounters a suspected Existing Hazardous Material, the Contractor shall immediately stop work in the affected area, take measures appropriate to the condition to keep people away from the suspected Existing Hazardous Material, and

immediately notify the Architect and Owner of the condition in writing.

- C. The Owner shall obtain the services of an independent laboratory or professional consultant, appropriately licensed and qualified, to determine whether the suspected material is a Hazardous Material requiring abatement and, if so, to certify after its abatement that it has been rendered harmless. Any abatement of Existing Hazardous Materials will be the responsibility of the Owner. The Owner will advise the Contractor in writing of the persons or entities who will determine the nature of the suspected material and those who will, if necessary, perform the abatement. The Owner will not employ persons or entities to perform these services to whom the Contractor or Architect has reasonable objection.
- D. After certification by the Owner's independent laboratory or professional consultant that the material is harmless or has been rendered harmless, work in the affected area shall resume upon written agreement between the Owner and Contractor. If the material is found to be an Existing Hazardous Material and the Contractor incurs additional cost or delay due to the presence and abatement of the material, the Contract Sum and/or Contract Time shall be appropriately adjusted by a Contract Change Order pursuant to Article 19.
- E. The Owner shall not be responsible for Hazardous Materials introduced to the Project site by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable unless such Hazardous Materials were required by the Contract Documents.

## **ARTICLE 16** **INSPECTION of the WORK**

### **A. GENERAL**

(1) The Contractor is solely responsible for the Work's compliance with the Contract Documents; therefore, the Contractor shall be responsible to inspect in-progress and completed Work, and shall verify its compliance with the Contract Documents and that any element or portion of the Work upon which subsequent Work is to be applied or performed is in proper condition to receive the subsequent Work. Neither the presence nor absence of inspections by the Architect, Owner, Director, DCM Project Inspector, any public authority having jurisdiction, or their representatives shall relieve the Contractor of responsibility to inspect the Work, for responsibility for Construction Methods and safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work, or from any other requirement of the Contract Documents.

(2) The Architect, Owner, Director, DCM Project Inspector, any public authority having jurisdiction, and their representatives shall have access at all times to the Work for inspection whenever it is in preparation or progress, and the Contractor shall provide proper facilities for such access and inspection. All materials, workmanship, processes of manufacture, and methods of construction, if not otherwise stipulated in the Contract Documents, shall be subject to inspection, examination, and test at any and all places where such manufacture and/or construction are being carried on. Such inspections will not unreasonably interfere with the Contractor's operations.

(3) The Architect will inspect the Work as a representative of the Owner. The Architect's inspections may be supplemented by inspections by the DCM Project Inspector as a representative of the Alabama Division of Construction Management.

(4) The Contractor may be charged by the Owner for any extra cost of inspection incurred by the Owner or Architect on account of material and workmanship not being ready at the time of inspection set by the Contractor.

**B. TYPES of INSPECTIONS**

(1) **SCHEDULED INSPECTIONS and CONFERENCES.** Scheduled Inspections and Conferences are conducted by the Architect, scheduled by the Architect in coordination with the Contractor and DCM Project Inspector, and are attended by the Contractor and applicable Subcontractors, suppliers and manufacturers, and the DCM Project Inspector. Scheduled Inspections and Conferences of this Contract include:

(a) **Pre-construction Conference.**

(b) **Pre-roofing Conference** (not applicable if the Contract involves no roofing work)

(c) **Above Ceiling Inspection(s):** An above ceiling inspection of all spaces in the building is required before the ceiling material is installed. Above ceiling inspections are to be conducted at a time when all above ceiling systems are complete and tested to the greatest extent reasonable pending installation of the ceiling material. System identifications and markings are to be complete. All fire-rated construction including fire-stopping of penetrations and specified identification above the ceiling shall be complete. Ceiling framing and suspension systems shall be complete with lights, grilles and diffusers, access panels, fire protection drops for sprinkler heads, etc., installed in their final locations to the greatest extent reasonable. Above ceiling framing to support ceiling mounted equipment shall be complete. The above ceiling construction shall be complete to the extent that after the inspection the ceiling material can be installed without disturbance.

(d) **Final Inspection(s):** A Final Inspection shall establish that the Work, or a designated portion of the Work, is Substantially Complete in accordance with Article 32 and is accepted by the Architect, Owner, and DCM Project Inspector as being ready for the Owner's occupancy or use. At the conclusion of this inspection, items requiring correction or completion ("punch list" items) shall be minimal and require only a short period of time for accomplishment to establish Final Acceptance of the Work. If the Work, or designated portion of the Work, includes the installation, or modification, of a fire alarm system or other life safety systems essential to occupancy, such systems shall have been tested and appropriately certified before the Final Inspection.

(e) **Year-end Inspection(s):** An inspection of the Work, or each separately completed portion thereof, is required near the end of the Contractor's one year warranty period(s). The subsequent delivery of the Architect's report of this inspection will serve as confirmation that the Contractor was notified of Defective Work found within the warranty period in accordance with Article 35.

(2) **PERIODIC INSPECTIONS.** Periodic Inspections are conducted throughout the course of the Work by the Architect, the Architect's consultants, their representatives, and the DCM Project Inspector, jointly or independently, with or without advance notice to the Contractor.

(3) **SPECIFIED INSPECTIONS and TESTS.** Specified Inspections and Tests include inspections, tests, demonstrations, and approvals that are either specified in the Contract Documents or required by laws, ordinances, rules, regulations, or orders of public authorities having jurisdiction, to be performed by the Contractor, one of its Subcontractors, or an independent testing laboratory or firm (whether paid for by the Contractor or Owner).

**C. INSPECTIONS by the ARCHITECT**



- (1) The Architect is not authorized to revoke, alter, relax, or waive any requirements of the Contract Documents (other than “minor” deviations as defined in Article 9 and “minor” changes as defined in Article 19), to finally approve or accept any portion of the Work or to issue instructions contrary to the Contract Documents without concurrence of the Owner.
- (2) The Architect will visit the site at intervals appropriate to the stage of the Contractor’s operations and as otherwise necessary to:
  - (a) become generally familiar with the in-progress and completed Work and the quality of the Work,
  - (b) determine whether the Work is progressing in general accordance with the Contractor’s schedule and is likely to be completed within the Contract Time,
  - (c) visually compare readily accessible elements of the Work to the requirements of the Contract Documents to determine, in general, if the Contractor’s performance of the Work indicates that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents when completed,
  - (d) endeavor to guard the Owner against Defective Work,
  - (e) review and address with the Contractor any problems in implementing the requirements of the Contract Documents that the Contractor may have encountered, and
  - (f) keep the Owner fully informed about the Project.
- (3) The Architect shall have the authority to reject Defective Work or require its correction, but shall not be required to make exhaustive investigations or examinations of the in-progress or completed portions of the Work to expose the presence of Defective Work. However, it shall be an obligation of the Architect to report in writing, to the Owner, Contractor, and DCM Project Inspector, any Defective Work recognized by the Architect.
- (4) The Architect shall have the authority to require the Contractor to stop work only when, in the Architect’s reasonable opinion, such stoppage is necessary to avoid Defective Work. The Architect shall not be liable to the Contractor or Owner for the consequences of any decisions made by the Architect in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise this authority.
- (5) “Inspections by the Architect” includes appropriate inspections by the Architect’s consultants as dictated by their respective disciplines of design and the stage of the Contractor’s operations.

**D. INSPECTIONS by the DCM PROJECT INSPECTOR**

- (1) The DCM Project Inspector will:
  - (a) participate in scheduled inspections and conferences as practicable,
  - (b) perform periodic inspections of in-progress and completed Work to ensure code compliance of the Project and general conformance of the Work with the Contract Documents, and
  - (c) monitor the Contractor's progress and performance of the Work.
- (2) The DCM Project Inspector shall have the authority to:
  - (a) reject Work that is not in compliance with the State Building Code adopted by the DCM, unless the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents in which case the DCM Project Inspector will advise the Architect to initiate appropriate corrective action, and
  - (b) notify the Architect, Owner, and Contractor of Defective Work recognized by the DCM Project Inspector.

(3) The DCM Project Inspector's periodic inspections will usually be scheduled around key stages of construction based upon information reported by the Architect. As the Architect or Owner deems appropriate, the DCM Project Inspector, as well as other members of the Technical Staff, can be requested to schedule special inspections or meetings to address specific matters. The written findings of DCM Project Inspector will be transmitted to the Owner, Contractor, and Architect.

(4) The DCM Project Inspector is not authorized to revoke, alter, relax, or waive any requirements of the Contract Documents, to finally approve or accept any portion of the Work or to issue instructions contrary to the Contract Documents without concurrence of the Owner. The Contractor shall not proceed with Work as a result of instructions or findings of the DCM Project Inspector which the Contractor considers to be a change to the requirements of the Contract Documents without written authorization of the Owner through the Architect.

**E. UNCOVERING WORK**

(1) If the Contractor covers a portion of the Work before it is examined by the Architect and this is contrary to the Architect's request or specific requirements in the Contract Documents, then, upon written request of the Architect, the Work must be uncovered for the Architect's examination and be replaced at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time.

(2) Without a prior request or specific requirement that Work be examined by the Architect before it is covered, the Architect may request that Work be uncovered for examination and the Contractor shall uncover it. If the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contract Sum shall be equitably adjusted under Article 19 to compensate the Contractor for the costs of uncovering and replacement. If the Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, uncovering, correction, and replacement shall be at the Contractor's expense unless the condition was caused by the Owner or a separate contractor in which event the Owner shall be responsible for payment of such costs.

**F. SPECIFIED INSPECTIONS and TESTS**

(1) The Contractor shall schedule and coordinate Specified Inspections and Tests to be made at appropriate times so as not to delay the progress of the Work or the work of the Owner or separate contractors. If the Contract Documents require that a Specified Inspection or Test be witnessed or attended by the Architect or Architect's consultant, the Contractor shall give the Architect timely notice of the time and place of the Specified Inspection or Test. If a Specified Inspection or Test reveals that Work is not in compliance with requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall bear the costs of correction, repeating the Specified Inspection or Test, and any related costs incurred by the Owner, including reasonable charges, if any, by the Architect for additional services. Through appropriate Contract Change Order the Owner shall bear costs of tests, inspections or approvals which become Contract requirements subsequent to the receipt of bids.

(2) If the Architect, Owner, or public authority having jurisdiction determines that inspections, tests, demonstrations, or approvals in addition to Specified Inspections and Tests are required, the Contractor shall, upon written instruction from the Architect, arrange for their performance by an entity acceptable to the Owner, giving timely notice to the architect of the time and place of their performance. Related costs shall be borne by the Owner unless the procedures reveal that Work is

not in compliance with requirements of the Contract Documents, in which case the Contractor shall bear the costs of correction, repeating the procedures, and any related costs incurred by the Owner, including reasonable charges, if any, by the Architect for additional services.

(3) Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, required certificates of Specified Inspections and Tests shall be secured by the Contractor and promptly delivered to the Architect.

(4) Failure of any materials to pass Specified Inspections and Tests will be sufficient cause for refusal to consider any further samples of the same brand or make of that material for use in the Work.

## **ARTICLE 17** **CORRECTION of DEFECTIVE WORK**

- A. The Contractor shall, at the Contractor's expense, promptly correct Defective Work rejected by the Architect or which otherwise becomes known to the Contractor, removing the rejected or nonconforming materials and construction from the project site.
- B. Correction of Defective Work shall be performed in such a timely manner as will avoid delay of completion, use, or occupancy of the Work and the work of the Owner and separate contractors.
- C. The Contractor shall bear all expenses related to the correction of Defective Work, including but not limited to: (1) additional testing and inspections, including repeating Specified Inspections and Tests, (2) reasonable services and expenses of the Architect, and (3) the expense of making good all work of the Contractor, Owner, or separate contractors destroyed or damaged by the correction of Defective Work.

## **ARTICLE 18** **DEDUCTIONS for UNCORRECTED WORK**

If the Owner deems it advisable and in the Owner's interest to accept Defective Work, the Owner may allow part or all of such Work to remain in place, provided an equitable deduction from the Contract Sum, acceptable to the Owner, is offered by the Contractor.

## **ARTICLE 19** **CHANGES in the WORK**

### **A. GENERAL**

(1) The Owner may at any time direct the Contractor to make changes in the Work which are within the general scope of the Contract, including changes in the Drawings, Specifications, or other portions of the Contract Documents to add, delete, or otherwise revise portions of the Work. The Architect is authorized by the Owner to direct "minor" changes in the Work by written order to the Contractor. "Minor" changes in the Work are defined as those which are in the interest of the Owner, do not materially alter the quality or performance of the finished Work, and do not affect the cost or time of performance of the Work. Changes in the Work which are not "minor" may be

authorized only by the Owner.

(2) If the Owner directs a change in the Work, the change shall be incorporated into the Contract by a Contract Change Order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Contractor, Owner, and other signatories to the Construction Contract, stating their agreement upon the change or changes in the Work and the adjustments, if any, in the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.

(3) Subject to compliance with Alabama's Public Works Law, the Owner may, upon agreement by the Contractor, incorporate previously unawarded bid alternates into the Contract.

(4) In the event of a claim or dispute as to the appropriate adjustment to the Contract Sum or Contract Time due to a directive to make changes in the Work, the Work shall proceed as provided in this article subject to subsequent agreement of the parties or final resolution of the dispute pursuant to Article 24.

(5) Consent of surety will be obtained for all Contract Change Orders involving an increase in the Contract Sum.

(6) Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Contract Documents and the Contractor shall proceed promptly to perform changes in the Work, unless otherwise directed by the Owner through the Architect.

(7) All change orders require DCM Form C-12: Contract Change Order and DCM Form B-11: Change Order Justification. Only Change Orders 10% or greater of the current contract amount require the Owner's legal advisor's signature on DCM Form B-11: Change Order Justification.

## **B. DETERMINATION of ADJUSTMENT of the CONTRACT SUM**

The adjustment of the Contract Sum resulting from a change in the Work shall be determined by one of the following methods, or a combination thereof, as selected by the Owner:

(1) **Lump Sum.** By mutual agreement to a lump sum based on or negotiated from an itemized cost proposal from the Contractor. Additions to the Contract Sum shall include the Contractor's direct costs plus a maximum 15% markup for overhead and profit. Where subcontract work is involved the total mark-up for the Contractor and a Subcontractor shall not exceed 25%. **Changes which involve a net credit to the Owner shall include fair and reasonable credits for overhead and profit on the deducted work, in no case less than 5%.** For the purposes of this method of determining an adjustment of the Contract Sum, "overhead" shall cover the Contractor's indirect costs of the change, such as the cost of bonds, superintendent and other job office personnel, watchman, job office, job office supplies and expenses, temporary facilities and utilities, and home office expenses.

(2) **Unit Price.** By application of Unit Prices included in the Contract or subsequently agreed to by the parties. However, if the character or quantity originally contemplated is materially changed so that application of such unit price to quantities of Work proposed will cause substantial inequity to either party, the applicable unit price shall be equitably adjusted.

(3) **Force Account.** By directing the Contractor to proceed with the change in the Work on a "force account" basis under which the Contractor shall be reimbursed for reasonable expenditures incurred by the Contractor and its Subcontractors in performing added Work and the Owner shall

receive reasonable credit for any deleted Work. The Contractor shall keep and present, in such form as the Owner may prescribe, an itemized accounting of the cost of the change together with sufficient supporting data. Unless otherwise stated in the directive, the adjustment of the Contract Sum shall be limited to the following:

- (a) costs of labor and supervision, including employee benefits, social security, retirement, unemployment and workers' compensation insurance required by law, agreement, or under Contractor's or Subcontractor's standard personnel policy;
- (b) cost of materials, supplies and equipment, including cost of delivery, whether incorporated or consumed;
- (c) rental cost of machinery and equipment, not to exceed prevailing local rates if contractor-owned;
- (d) costs of premiums for insurance required by the Contract Documents, permit fees, and sales, use or similar taxes related to the change in the Work;
- (e) reasonable credits to the Owner for the value of deleted Work, without Contractor or Subcontractor mark-ups; and
- (f) for additions to the Contract Sum, mark-up of the Contractor's direct costs for overhead and profit not exceeding 15% on Contractor's work nor exceeding 25% for Contractor and Subcontractor on a Subcontractor's work. **Changes which involve a net credit to the Owner shall include fair and reasonable credits for overhead and profit on the deducted work, in no case less than 5%.** For the purposes of this method of determining an adjustment of the Contract Sum, "overhead" shall cover the Contractor's indirect costs of the change, such as the cost of insurance other than mentioned above, bonds, superintendent and other job office personnel, watchman, use and rental of small tools, job office, job office supplies and expenses, temporary facilities and utilities, and home office expenses.

**C. ADJUSTMENT of the CONTRACT TIME due to CHANGES**

(1) Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contract Time shall be equitably adjusted for the performance of a change provided that the Contractor notifies the Architect in writing that the change will increase the time required to complete the Work. Such notice shall be provided no later than:

- (a) with the Contractor's cost proposal stating the number of days of extension requested, or
- (b) within ten days after the Contractor receives a directive to proceed with a change in advance of submitting a cost proposal, in which case the notice should provide an estimated number of days of extension to be requested, which may be subject to adjustment in the cost proposal.

(2) The Contract Time shall be extended only to the extent that the change affects the time required to complete the entire Work of the Contract, taking into account the concurrent performance of the changed and unchanged Work.

**D. CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES**

(1) If the Owner proposes to make a change in the Work, the Architect will request that the Contractor provide a cost proposal for making the change to the Work. The request shall be in writing and shall adequately describe the proposed change using drawings, specifications, narrative, or a combination thereof. Within 21 days after receiving such a request, or such other time as may be stated in the request, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Architect a written proposal, properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to facilitate evaluation. The stated

time within which the Contractor must submit a proposal may be extended if, within that time, the Contractor makes a written request with reasonable justification thereof.

(2) The Contractor may voluntarily offer a change proposal which, in the Contractor's opinion, will reduce the cost of construction, maintenance, or operation or will improve the cost-effective performance of an element of the Project, in which case the Owner, through the Architect, will accept, reject, or respond otherwise within 21 days after receipt of the proposal, or such other reasonable time as the Contractor may state in the proposal.

(3) If the Contractor's proposal is acceptable to the Owner, or is negotiated to the mutual agreement of the Contractor and Owner, the Architect will prepare an appropriate Contract Change Order for execution. Upon receipt of the fully executed Contract Change Order, the Contractor shall proceed with the change.

(4) In advance of delivery of a fully executed Contract Change Order, the Architect may furnish to the Contractor a written authorization to proceed with an agreed change. However, such an authorization shall be effective only if it:

- (a) identifies the Contractor's accepted or negotiated proposal for the change,
- (b) states the agreed adjustments, if any, in Contract Sum and Contract Time,
- (c) states that funds are available to pay for the change, and
- (d) is signed by the Owner.

(5) If the Contractor and Owner cannot agree on the amount of the adjustment in the Contract Sum for a change, the Owner, through the Architect, may order the Contractor to proceed with the change on a Force Account basis, but the net cost to the Owner shall not exceed the amount quoted in the Contractor's proposal. Such order shall state that funds are available to pay for the change.

(6) If the Contractor does not promptly respond to a request for a proposal, or the Owner determines that the change is essential to the final product of the Work and that the change must be effected immediately to avoid delay of the Project, the Owner may:

- (a) determine with the Contractor a sufficient maximum amount to be authorized for the change and
- (b) direct the Contractor to proceed with the change on a Force Account basis pending delivery of the Contractor's proposal, stating the maximum increase in the Contract Sum that is authorized for the change.

(7) Pending agreement of the parties or final resolution of any dispute of the total amount due the Contractor for a change in the Work, amounts not in dispute for such changes in the Work may be included in Applications for Payment accompanied by an interim Change Order indicating the parties' agreement with part of all of such costs or time extension. Once a dispute is resolved, it shall be implemented by preparation and execution of an appropriate Change Order.

## **ARTICLE 20**

### **CLAIMS for EXTRA COST or EXTRA WORK**

- A. If the Contractor considers any instructions by the Architect, Owner, DCM Project Inspector, or public authority having jurisdiction to be contrary to the requirements of the Contract Documents and will involve extra work and/or cost under the Contract, the Contractor shall give the Architect

written notice thereof within ten days after receipt of such instructions, and in any event before proceeding to execute such work. As used in this Article, “instructions” shall include written or oral clarifications, directions, instructions, interpretations, or determinations.

- B. The Contractor’s notification pursuant to Paragraph 20.A shall state: (1) the date, circumstances, and source of the instructions, (2) that the Contractor considers the instructions to constitute a change to the Contract Documents and why, and (3) an estimate of extra cost and time that may be involved to the extent an estimate may be reasonably made at that time.
- C. Except for claims relating to an emergency endangering life or property, no claim for extra cost or extra work shall be considered in the absence of prior notice required under Paragraph 20.A.
- D. Within ten days of receipt of a notice pursuant to Paragraph 20.A, the Architect will respond in writing to the Contractor, stating one of the following:
  - (1) The cited instruction is rescinded.
  - (2) The cited instruction is a change in the Work and in which manner the Contractor is to proceed with procedures of Article 19, Changes in the Work.
  - (3) The cited instruction is reconfirmed, is not considered by the Architect to be a change in the Contract Documents, and the Contractor is to proceed with Work as instructed.
- E. If the Architect’s response to the Contractor is as in Paragraph 20.D(3), the Contractor shall proceed with the Work as instructed. If the Contractor continues to consider the instructions to constitute a change in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall, within ten days after receiving the Architect’s response, notify the Architect in writing that the Contractor intends to submit a claim pursuant to Article 24, Resolution of Claims and Disputes

## **ARTICLE 21**

### **DIFFERING SITE CONDITIONS**

#### **A. DEFINITION**

**“Differing Site Conditions” are:**

- (1) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions at the Project site which differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents, or
- (2) unknown physical conditions at the Project site which are of an unusual nature, differing materially from conditions ordinarily encountered and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character required by the Contract Documents.

#### **B. PROCEDURES**

If Differing Site Conditions are encountered, then the party discovering the condition shall promptly notify the other party before the condition is disturbed and in no event later than ten days after discovering the condition. Upon such notice and verification that a Differing Site Condition exists, the Architect will, with reasonable promptness and with the Owner’s concurrence, make changes in the Drawings and/or Specifications as are deemed necessary to conform to the Differing

Site Condition. Any increase or decrease in the Contract Sum or Contract Time that is warranted by the changes will be made as provided under Article 19, Changes in the Work. If the Architect determines a Differing Site Condition has not been encountered, the Architect shall notify the Owner and Contractor in writing, stating the reason for that determination.

## **ARTICLE 22** **CLAIMS for DAMAGES**

If either party to the Contract suffers injury or damage to person or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, written notice of such injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time after the discovery. The notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter.

## **ARTICLE 23** **DELAYS**

- A. A delay beyond the Contractor's control at any time in the commencement or progress of Work by an act or omission of the Owner, Architect, or any separate contractor or by labor disputes, unusual delay in deliveries, unavoidable casualties, fires, abnormal floods, tornadoes, or other cataclysmic events of nature, may entitle the Contractor to an extension of the Contract Time provided, however, that the Contractor shall, within ten days after the delay first occurs, give written notice to the Architect of the cause of the delay and its probable effect on progress of the entire Work.
- B. Adverse weather conditions that are more severe than anticipated for the locality of the Work during any given month may entitle the Contractor to an extension of Contract Time provided, however;
  - (1) the weather conditions had an adverse effect on construction scheduled to be performed during the period in which the adverse weather occurred, which in reasonable sequence would have an effect on completion of the entire Work,
  - (2) the Contractor shall, within twenty-one days after the end of the month in which the delay occurs, give the Architect written notice of the delay that occurred during that month and its probable effect on progress of the Work, and
  - (3) within a reasonable time after giving notice of the delay, the Contractor provides the Architect with sufficient data to document that the weather conditions experienced were unusually severe for the locality of the Work during the month in question. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, data documenting unusually severe weather conditions shall compare actual weather conditions to the average weather conditions for the month in question during the previous five years as recorded by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) or similar record-keeping entities.
- C. Adjustments, if any, of the Contract Time pursuant to this Article shall be incorporated into the Contract by a Contract Change Order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Contractor, Owner, and other signatories to the Construction Contract or, at closeout of the Contract, by mutual



written agreement between the Contractor and Owner. The adjustment of the Contract Time shall not exceed the extent to which the delay extends the time required to complete the entire Work of the Contract.

- D. The Contractor shall not be entitled to any adjustment of the Contract Sum for damage due to delays claimed pursuant to this Article unless the delay was caused by the Owner or Architect and was either:
- (1) the result of bad faith or active interference or
  - (2) beyond the contemplation of the parties and not remedied within a reasonable time after notification by the Contractor of its presence.

## **ARTICLE 24**

### **RESOLUTION of CLAIMS and DISPUTES**

#### **A. APPLICABILITY of ARTICLE**

(1) As used in this Article, “Claims and Disputes” include claims or disputes asserted by the Contractor, its Surety, or Owner arising out of or related to the Contract, or its breach, including without limitation claims seeking, under the provisions of the Contract, equitable adjustment of the Contract Sum or Contract Time and claims and disputes arising between the Contractor (or its Surety) and Owner regarding interpretation of the Contract Documents, performance of the Work, or breach of or compliance with the terms of the Contract.

(2) “Resolution” addressed in this Article applies only to Claims and Disputes arising between the Contractor (or its Surety) and Owner and asserted after execution of the Construction Contract and prior to the date upon which final payment is made. Upon making application for final payment the Contractor may reserve the right to subsequent Resolution of existing Claims by including a list of all Claims, in stated amounts, which remain to be resolved and specifically excluding them from any release of claims executed by the Contractor, and in that event Resolution may occur after final payment is made.

#### **B. CONTINUANCE of PERFORMANCE**

An unresolved Claim or Dispute shall not be just cause for the Contractor to fail or refuse to proceed diligently with performance of the Contract or for the Owner to fail or refuse to continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.

#### **C. GOOD FAITH EFFORT to SETTLE**

The Contractor and Owner agree that, upon the assertion of a Claim by the other, they will make a good faith effort, with the Architect’s assistance and advice, to achieve mutual resolution of the Claim. If mutually agreed, the Contractor and Owner may endeavor to resolve a Claim through mediation. If efforts to settle are not successful, the Claim shall be resolved in accordance with paragraph D or E below, whichever applies.

#### **D. FINAL RESOLUTION for STATE-FUNDED CONTRACTS**

(1) If the Contract is funded in whole or in part with state funds, the final Resolution of Claims

and Disputes which cannot be resolved by the Contractor (or its Surety) and Owner shall be by the Director, whose decision shall be final, binding, and conclusive upon the Contractor, its Surety, and the Owner.

(2) When it becomes apparent to the party asserting a Claim (the Claimant) that an impasse to mutual resolution has been reached, the Claimant may request in writing to the Director that the Claim be resolved by decision of the Director. Such request by the Contractor (or its Surety) shall be submitted through the Owner. Should the Owner fail or refuse to submit the Contractor's request within ten days of receipt of same, the Contractor may forward such request directly to the Director. Upon receipt of a request to resolve a Claim, the Director will instruct the parties as to procedures to be initiated and followed.

(3) If the respondent to a Claim fails or refuses to participate or cooperate in the Resolution procedures to the extent that the Claimant is compelled to initiate legal proceedings to induce the Respondent to participate or cooperate, the Claimant will be entitled to recover, and may amend its Claim to include, the expense of reasonable attorney's fees so incurred.

**E. FINAL RESOLUTION for LOCALLY-FUNDED CONTRACTS**

If the Contract is funded in whole with funds provided by a city or county board of education or other local governmental authority and the Contract Documents do not stipulate a binding alternative dispute resolution method, the final resolution of Claims and Disputes which cannot be resolved by the Contractor (or its Surety) and Owner may be by any legal remedy available to the parties. Alternatively, upon the written agreement of the Contractor (or its Surety) and the Owner, final Resolution of Claims and Disputes may be by submission to binding arbitration before a neutral arbitrator or panel or by submission to the Director in accordance with preceding Paragraph D.

**ARTICLE 25**  
**OWNER'S RIGHT to CORRECT DEFECTIVE WORK**

If the Contractor fails or refuses to correct Defective Work in a timely manner that will avoid delay of completion, use, or occupancy of the Work or work by the Owner or separate contractors, the Architect may give the Contractor written Notice to Cure the Defective Work within a reasonable, stated time. If within ten days after receipt of the Notice to Cure the Contractor has not proceeded and satisfactorily continued to cure the Defective Work or provided the Architect with written verification that satisfactory positive action is in process to cure the Defective Work, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other remedy available to the Owner, correct the Defective Work and deduct the actual cost of the correction from payment then or thereafter due to the Contractor.

**ARTICLE 26**  
**OWNER'S RIGHT to STOP or SUSPEND the WORK**

**A. STOPPING the WORK for CAUSE**

If the Contractor fails to correct Defective Work or persistently fails to carry out Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner may direct the Contractor in writing to stop the Work, or any part of the Work, until the cause for the Owner's directive has been eliminated;

however, the Owner's right to stop the Work shall not be construed as a duty of the Owner to be exercised for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity.

**B. SUSPENSION by the OWNER for CONVENIENCE**

- (1) The Owner may, at any time and without cause, direct the Contractor in writing to suspend, delay or interrupt the Work, or any part of the Work, for a period of time as the Owner may determine.
- (2) The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted, pursuant to Article 19, for reasonable increases in the cost and time caused by an Owner-directed suspension, delay or interruption of Work for the Owner's convenience. However, no adjustment to the Contract Sum shall be made to the extent that the same or concurrent Work is, was or would have been likewise suspended, delayed or interrupted for other reasons not caused by the Owner.

**ARTICLE 27**  
**OWNER'S RIGHT to TERMINATE CONTRACT**

**A. TERMINATION by the OWNER for CAUSE**

- (1) **Causes:** The Owner may terminate the Contractor's right to complete the Work, or any designated portion of the Work, if the Contractor:
  - (a) should be adjudged bankrupt, or should make a general assignment for the benefit of the Contractor's creditors, or if a receiver should be appointed on account of the Contractor's insolvency to the extent termination for these reasons is permissible under applicable law;
  - (b) refuses or fails to prosecute the Work, or any part of the Work, with the diligence that will insure its completion within the Contract Time, including any extensions, or fails to complete the Work within the Contract Time;
  - (c) refuses or fails to perform the Work, including prompt correction of Defective Work, in a manner that will insure that the Work, when fully completed, will be in accordance with the Contract Documents;
  - (d) fails to pay for labor or materials supplied for the Work or to pay Subcontractors in accordance with the respective Subcontract;
  - (e) persistently disregards laws, ordinances, or rules, regulations or orders of a public authority having jurisdiction, or the instructions of the Architect or Owner; or
  - (f) is otherwise guilty of a substantial breach of the Contract.
- (2) **Procedure for Unbonded Construction Contracts (Generally, contracts less than \$100,000):**
  - (a) **Notice to Cure:** In the presence of any of the above conditions the Architect may give the Contractor written notice to cure the condition within a reasonable, stated time, but not less than ten days after the Contractor receives the notice.
  - (b) **Notice of Termination:** If, at the expiration of the time stated in the Notice to Cure, the Contractor has not proceeded and satisfactorily continued to cure the condition or provided the Architect with written verification that satisfactory positive action is in process to cure the condition, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner, give the Contractor written notice that the Contractor's right to complete the Work, or a designated portion of the Work, shall terminate seven days after the Contractor's receipt of the

written Notice of Termination.

(c) If the Contractor satisfies a Notice to Cure, but the condition for which the notice was first given reoccurs, the Owner may give the Contractor a seven day Notice of Termination without giving the Contractor another Notice to Cure.

(d) At the expiration of the seven days of the termination notice, the Owner may:

.1 take possession of the site, of all materials and equipment stored on and off site, and of all Contractor-owned tools, construction equipment and machinery, and facilities located at the site, and

.2 finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient.

(e) The Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment under the Contract until the Work is completed.

(f) If the Owner's cost of completing the Work, including correction of Defective Work, compensation for additional architectural, engineering, managerial, and administrative services, and reasonable attorneys' fees due to the default and termination, is less than the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum, the excess balance less liquidated damages for delay shall be paid to the Contractor. If such cost to the Owner including attorney's fees, plus liquidated damages, exceeds the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. Final Resolution of any claim or Dispute involving the termination or any amount due any party as a result of the termination shall be pursuant to Article 24.

(g) Upon the Contractor's request, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor a detailed accounting of the Owner's cost of completing the Work.

**(3) Procedure for Bonded Construction Contracts (Generally, contracts of \$100,000 or more):**

(a) **Notice to Cure:** In the presence of any of the above conditions the Architect may give the Contractor and its Surety written Notice to Cure the condition within a reasonable, stated time, but not less than ten days after the Contractor receives the notice.

(b) **Notice of Termination:** If, at the expiration of the time stated in the Notice to Cure, the Contractor has not proceeded and satisfactorily continued to cure the condition or provided the Architect with written verification that satisfactory positive action is in process to cure the condition, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner, give the Contractor and its Surety written notice declaring the Contractor to be in default under the Contract and stating that the Contractor's right to complete the Work, or a designated portion of the Work, shall terminate seven days after the Contractor's receipt of the written Notice of Termination.

(c) If the Contractor satisfies a Notice to Cure, but the condition for which the notice was first given reoccurs, the Owner may give the Contractor a Notice of Termination without giving the Contractor another Notice to Cure.

(d) **Demand on the Performance Bond:** With the Notice of Termination the Owner shall give the Surety a written demand that, upon the effective date of the Notice of Termination, the Surety promptly fulfill its obligation to take charge of and complete the Work in accordance with the terms of the Performance Bond.

(e) **Surety Claims:** Upon receiving the Owner's demand on the Performance Bond, the Surety shall assume all rights and obligations of the Contractor under the Contract. However, the Surety shall also have the right to assert "Surety Claims" to the Owner, which are defined as claims relating to acts or omissions of the Owner or Architect prior to termination of the Contractor which may have prejudiced its rights as Surety or its interest in the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum. If the Surety wishes to assert a Surety Claim, it shall give the Owner,

through the Architect, written notice within twenty-one days after first recognizing the condition giving rise to the Surety Claim. The Surety Claim shall then be submitted to the Owner, through the Architect, no later than sixty days after giving notice thereof, but no such Surety Claims shall be considered if submitted after the date upon which final payment becomes due. Final resolution of Surety Claims shall be pursuant to Article 24, Resolution of Claims and Disputes. The presence or possibility of a Surety Claim shall not be just cause for the Surety to fail or refuse to take charge of and complete the Work or for the Owner to fail or refuse to continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**(f) Payments to Surety:** The Surety shall be paid for completing the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents as if the Surety were the Contractor. The Owner shall have the right to deduct from payments to the Surety any reasonable costs incurred by the Owner, including compensation for additional architectural, engineering, managerial, and administrative services, and attorneys' fees as necessitated by termination of the Contractor and completion of the Work by the Surety. No further payments shall be made to the Contractor by the Owner. The Surety shall be solely responsible for any accounting to the Contractor for the portion of the Contract Sum paid to Surety by Owner or for the costs and expenses of completing the Work.

**(4) Wrongful Termination:** If any notice of termination by the Owner for cause, made in good faith, is determined to have been wrongly given, such termination shall be effective and compensation therefore determined as if it had been a termination for convenience pursuant to Paragraph B below.

**B. TERMINATION by the OWNER for CONVENIENCE**

**(1)** The Owner may, without cause and at any time, terminate the performance of Work under the Contract in whole, or in part, upon determination by the Owner that such termination is in the Owner's best interest. Such termination is referred to herein as Termination for Convenience.

**(2)** Upon receipt of a written notice of Termination for Convenience from the Owner, the Contractor shall:

- (a)** stop Work as specified in the notice;
- (b)** enter into no further subcontracts or purchase orders for materials, services, or facilities, except as may be necessary for Work directed to be performed prior to the effective date of the termination or to complete Work that is not terminated;
- (c)** terminate all existing subcontracts and purchase orders to the extent they relate to the terminated Work;
- (d)** take such actions as are necessary, or directed by the Architect or Owner, to protect, preserve, and make safe the terminated Work; and
- (e)** complete performance of the Work that is not terminated.

**(3)** In the event of Termination for Convenience, the Contractor shall be entitled to receive payment for the Work performed prior to its termination, including materials and equipment purchased and delivered for incorporation into the terminated Work, and any reasonable costs incurred because of the termination. Such payment shall include reasonable mark-up of costs for overhead and profit, not to exceed the limits stated in Article 19, Changes in the Work. The Contractor shall be entitled to receive payment for reasonable anticipated overhead ("home office") and shall not be entitled to receive payment for any profits anticipated to have been gained from the terminated Work. A proposal for decreasing the Contract Sum shall be submitted to the Architect

by the Contractor in such time and detail, and with such supporting documentation, as is reasonably directed by the Owner. Final modification of the Contract shall be by Contract Change Order pursuant to Article 19. Any Claim or Dispute involving the termination or any amount due a party as a result shall be resolved pursuant to Article 24.

**ARTICLE 28**  
**CONTRACTOR'S RIGHT to SUSPEND or TERMINATE the CONTRACT**

**A. SUSPENSION by the OWNER**

If all of the Work is suspended or delayed for the Owner's convenience or under an order of any court, or other public authority, for a period of sixty days, through no act or fault of the Contractor or a Subcontractor, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, then the Contractor may give the Owner a written Notice of Termination which allows the Owner fourteen days after receiving the Notice in which to give the Contractor appropriate written authorization to resume the Work. Absent the Contractor's receipt of such authorization to resume the Work, the Contract shall terminate upon expiration of this fourteen day period and the Contractor will be compensated by the Owner as if the termination had been for the Owner's convenience pursuant to Article 27.B.

**B. NONPAYMENT**

The Owner's failure to pay the undisputed amount of an Application for Payment within sixty days after receiving it from the Architect (Certified pursuant to Article 30) shall be just cause for the Contractor to give the Owner fourteen days' written notice that the Work will be suspended pending receipt of payment but that the Contract shall terminate if payment is not received within fourteen days (or a longer period stated by the Contractor) of the expiration of the fourteen day notice period.

(1) If the Work is then suspended for nonpayment, but resumed upon receipt of payment, the Contractor will be entitled to compensation as if the suspension had been by the Owner pursuant to Article 26, Paragraph B.

(2) If the Contract is then terminated for nonpayment, the Contractor will be entitled to compensation as if the termination had been by the Owner pursuant to Article 27, Paragraph B.

**ARTICLE 29**  
**PROGRESS PAYMENTS**

**A. FREQUENCY of PROGRESS PAYMENTS**

Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner will make payments to the Contractor as the Work progresses based on monthly estimates prepared and certified by the Contractor, approved and certified by the Architect, and approved by the Owner and other authorities whose approval is required.

**B. SCHEDULE of VALUES**

Within ten days after receiving the Notice to Proceed the Contractor shall submit to the Architect a DCM Form C-10SOV, Schedule of Values, which is a breakdown of the Contract Sum showing the value of the various parts of the Work for billing purposes. The Schedule of Values shall be printable on 8.5" × 11" for DCM's scanning purposes and shall divide the Contract Sum into as many parts ("line items") as the Architect and Owner determine necessary to permit evaluation and to show amounts attributable to Subcontractors. The Contractor's overhead and profit are to be proportionately distributed throughout the line items of the Schedule of Values. Upon approval, the Schedule of Values shall be used as a basis for monthly Applications for Payment, unless it is later found to be in error. Approved change order amounts shall be added to or incorporated into the Schedule of Values as mutually agreed by the Contractor and Architect.

**C. APPLICATIONS for PAYMENTS**

(1) Based on the approved Schedule of Values, each DCM Form C-10, Application and Certificate for Payment shall show the Contractor's estimate of the value of Work performed in each line item as of the end of the billing period. The Contractor's cost of materials and equipment not yet incorporated into the Work, but delivered and suitably stored on the site, may be considered in monthly Applications for Payment. One payment application per month may be submitted. Each DCM Form C-10, Application and Certificate for Payment shall match to the penny and be accompanied by an attached DCM Form C-10SOV, Schedule of Values.

(2) The Contractor's estimate of the value of Work performed and stored materials must represent such reasonableness as to warrant certification by the Architect to the Owner in accordance with Article 30. Each monthly Application for Payment shall be supported by such data as will substantiate the Contractor's right to payment, including without limitation copies of requisitions from subcontractors and material suppliers.

(3) If no other date is stated in the Contract Documents or agreed upon by the parties, each Application for Payment shall be submitted to the Architect on or about the first day of each month and payment shall be issued to the Contractor within thirty days after an Application for Payment is Certified pursuant to Article 30 and delivered to the Owner.

(4) Two copies of DCM Form C-10, Application and Certificate for Payment containing original signatures, with each copy of DCM Form C-10 to include all attachments, shall be submitted to DCM for review following the Contractor's, Notary's (for hardcopy submittals), Architect's and Owner's signatures.

**D. MATERIALS STORED OFF SITE**

Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor's cost of materials and equipment to be incorporated into the Work, which are stored off the site, may also be considered in monthly Applications for Payment under the following conditions:

- (1) the contractor has received written approval from the Architect and Owner to store the materials or equipment off site in advance of delivering the materials to the off site location;
- (2) a Certificate of Insurance is furnished to the Architect evidencing that a special insurance policy, or rider to an existing policy, has been obtained by the Contractor providing all-risk property insurance coverage, specifically naming the materials or equipment stored, and naming the Owner as an additionally insured party;
- (3) the Architect is provided with a detailed inventory of the stored materials or equipment and

the materials or equipment are clearly marked in correlation to the inventory to facilitate inspection and verification of the presence of the materials or equipment by the Architect or Owner;

- (4) the materials or equipment are properly and safely stored in a bonded warehouse, or a facility otherwise approved in advance by the Architect and Owner; and
- (5) compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest.

**E. RETAINAGE**

(1) "Retainage" is defined as the money earned and, therefore, belonging to the Contractor (subject to final settlement of the Contract) which has been retained by the Owner conditioned on final completion and acceptance of all Work required by the Contract Documents. Retainage shall not be relied upon by Contractor (or Surety) to cover or off-set unearned monies attributable to uncompleted or uncorrected Work.

(2) In making progress payments the Owner shall retain five percent of the estimated value of Work performed and the value of the materials stored for the Work; but after retainage has been held upon fifty percent of the Contract Sum, no additional retainage will be withheld.

**F. CONTRACTOR'S CERTIFICATION**

(1) Each Application for Payment shall bear the Contractor's notarized certification that, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information, and belief, the Work covered by the Application for Payment has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents, that all amounts have been paid by the Contractor for Work for which previous Certificates for Payments were issued and payments received from the Owner and that the current payment shown in the Application for Payment has not yet been received.

(2) By making this certification the Contractor represents to the Architect and Owner that, upon receipt of previous progress payments from the Owner, the Contractor has promptly paid each Subcontractor, in accordance with the terms of its agreement with the Subcontractor, the amount due the Subcontractor from the amount included in the progress payment on account of the Subcontractor's Work and stored materials. The Architect and Owner may advise Subcontractors and suppliers regarding percentages of completion or amounts requested and/or approved in an Application for Payment on account of the Subcontractor's Work and stored materials.

**G. PAYMENT ESTABLISHES OWNERSHIP**

All material and Work covered by progress payments shall become the sole property of the Owner, but the Contractor shall not be relieved from the sole responsibility for the care and protection of material and Work upon which payments have been made and for the restoration of any damaged material and Work.

**ARTICLE 30**  
**CERTIFICATION and APPROVALS for PAYMENT**

- A. The Architect's review, approval, and certification of Applications for Payment shall be based on



the Architect's general knowledge of the Work obtained through site visits and the information provided by the Contractor with the Application. The Architect shall not be required to perform exhaustive examinations, evaluations, or estimates of the cost of completed or uncompleted Work or stored materials to verify the accuracy of amounts requested by the Contractor, but the Architect shall have the authority to adjust the Contractor's estimate when, in the Architect's reasonable opinion, such estimates are overstated or understated.

- B.** Within seven days after receiving the Contractor's monthly Application for Payment, or such other time as may be stated in the Contract Documents, the Architect will take one of the following actions:
- (1)** The Architect will approve and certify the Application as submitted and forward it to the Owner as a Certification for Payment for approval by the Owner (and other approving authorities, if any) and payment.
  - (2)** If the Architect takes exception to any amounts claimed by the Contractor and the Contractor and Architect cannot agree on revised amounts, the Architect will promptly issue a Certificate for Payment for the amount for which the Architect is able to certify to the Owner, transmitting a copy of same to the Contractor.
  - (3)** To the extent the Architect determines may be necessary to protect the Owner from loss on account of any of the causes stated in Article 31, the Architect may subtract from the Contractor's estimates and will issue a Certificate for Payment to the Owner, with a copy to the Contractor, for such amount as the Architect determines is properly due and notify the Contractor and Owner in writing of the Architect's reasons for withholding payment in whole or in part.
- C.** Neither the Architect's issuance of a Certificate for Payment nor the Owner's resulting progress payment shall be a representation to the Contractor that the Work in progress or completed at that time is accepted or deemed to be in conformance with the Contract Documents.
- D.** The Architect shall not be required to determine that the Contractor has promptly or fully paid Subcontractors and suppliers or how or for what purpose the Contractor has used monies paid under the Construction Contract. However, the Architect may, upon request and if practical, inform any Subcontractor or supplier of the amount, or percentage of completion, approved or paid to the Contractor on account of the materials supplied or the Work performed by the Subcontractor.

### **ARTICLE 31** **PAYMENTS WITHHELD**

- A.** The Architect may nullify or revise a previously issued Certificate for Payment prior to Owner's payment thereunder to the extent as may be necessary in the Architect's opinion to protect the Owner from loss on account of any of the following causes not discovered or fully accounted for at the time of the certification or approval of the Application for Payment:
- (1)** Defective Work;
  - (2)** filed, or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of, claims arising out of the Contract by other parties against the Contractor;
  - (3)** the Contractor's failure to pay for labor, materials or equipment or to pay Subcontractors;
  - (4)** reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract

Sum;

- (5) damage suffered by the Owner or another contractor caused by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable;
  - (6) reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance is insufficient to cover applicable liquidated damages; or
  - (7) the Contractor's persistent failure to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B.** If the Owner deems it necessary to withhold payment pursuant to preceding Paragraph A, the Owner will notify the Contractor and Architect in writing of the amount to be withheld and the reason for same.
- C.** The Architect shall not be required to withhold payment for completed or partially completed Work for which compliance with the Contract Documents remains to be determined by Specified Inspections or Final Inspections to be performed in their proper sequence. However, if Work for which payment has been approved, certified, or made under an Application for Payment is subsequently determined to be Defective Work, the Architect shall determine an appropriate amount that will protect the Owner's interest against the Defective Work.
- (1) If payment has not been made against the Application for Payment first including the Defective Work, the Architect will notify the Owner and Contractor of the amount to be withheld from the payment until the Defective Work is brought into compliance with the Contract Documents.
  - (2) If payment has been made against the Application for Payment first including the Defective Work, the Architect will withhold the appropriate amount from the next Application for Payment submitted after the determination of noncompliance, such amount to then be withheld until the Defective Work is brought into compliance with the Contract Documents.
- D.** The amount withheld will be paid with the next Application for Payment certified and approved after the condition for which the Owner has withheld payment is removed or otherwise resolved to the Owner's satisfaction.
- E.** The Owner shall have the right to withhold from payments due the Contractor under this Contract an amount equal to any amount which the Contractor owes the Owner under another contract.

## **ARTICLE 32**

### **SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

- A.** Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work or designated portion of the Work is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use without disruption or interference by the Contractor in completing or correcting any remaining unfinished Work ("punch list" items). Substantial Completion of the Work, or a designated portion of the Work, is not achieved until so agreed in a Certificate of Substantial Completion signed by the Contractor, Architect, Owner, and Technical Staff of the Alabama Division of Construction Management.
- B.** The Contractor shall notify the Architect in writing when it considers the Work, or a portion of the Work which the Owner has agreed to accept separately, to be substantially complete and ready for a

Final Inspection pursuant to Article 16. In this notification the Contractor shall identify any items remaining to be completed or corrected for Final Acceptance prior to final payment.

- C. Substantial Completion is achieved and a Final Inspection is appropriate only when a minimal number of punch list items exists and only a short period of time will be required to correct or complete them. Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice for a Final Inspection, the Architect will advise the Contractor in writing of any conditions of the Work which the Architect or Owner is aware do not constitute Substantial Completion, otherwise, a Final Inspection will proceed within a reasonable time after the Contractor's notice is given. However, the Architect will not be required to prepare lengthy listings of punch list items; therefore, if the Final Inspection discloses that Substantial Completion has not been achieved, the Architect may discontinue or suspend the inspection until the Contractor does achieve Substantial Completion.

**D. CERTIFICATE of SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

(1) When the Work or a designated portion of the Work is substantially complete, the Architect will prepare and sign a Certificate of Substantial Completion to be signed in order by the Contractor, Owner, and Alabama Division of Construction Management.

(2) When signed by all parties, the Certificate of Substantial Completion shall establish the Date of Substantial Completion which is the date upon which:

- (a) the Work, or designated portion of the Work, is accepted by the Architect, Owner, and Alabama Division of Construction Management as being ready for occupancy,
- (b) the Contractor's one-year and special warranties for the Work covered by the Certificate commence, unless stated otherwise in the Certificate (the one-year warranty for punch list items completed or corrected after the period allowed in the Certificate shall commence on the date of their Final Acceptance), and
- (c) Owner becomes responsible for building security, maintenance, utility services, and insurance, unless stated otherwise in the Certificate.

(3) The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall set the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the "punch list" accompanying the Certificate. The completion of punch list items shall be a condition precedent to Final Payment.

(4) If the Work or designated portion covered by a Certificate of Substantial Completion includes roofing work, the General Contractor's (5-year) Roofing Guarantee, DCM Form C-9, must be executed by the Contractor and attached to the Certificate of Substantial Completion. If the Contract Documents specify any other roofing warranties to be provided by the roofing manufacturer, Subcontractor, or Contractor, they must also be attached to the Certificate of Substantial Completion. The Alabama Division of Construction Management will not sign the Certificate of Substantial Completion in the absence of the roofing guarantees.

- E. The Date of Substantial Completion of the Work, as set in the Certificate of Substantial Completion of the Work or of the last completed portion of the Work, establishes the extent to which the Contractor is liable for Liquidated Damages, if any; however, should the Contractor fail to complete all punch list items within thirty days, or such other time as may be stated in the respective Certificate of Substantial Completion, the Contractor shall bear any expenses, including additional Architectural services and expenses, incurred by the Owner as a result of such failure to complete punch list items in a timely manner.

**ARTICLE 33**  
**OCCUPANCY or USE PRIOR to COMPLETION**

**A. UPON SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

Prior to completion of the entire Work, the Owner may occupy or begin utilizing any designated portion of the Work on the agreed Date of Substantial Completion of that portion of the Work.

**B. BEFORE SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

(1) The Owner shall not occupy or utilize any portion of the Work before Substantial Completion of that portion has been achieved.

(2) The Owner may deliver furniture and equipment and store, or install it in place ready for occupancy and use, in any designated portion of the Work before it is substantially completed under the following conditions:

(a) The Owner's storage or installation of furniture and equipment will not unreasonably disrupt or interfere with the Contractor's completion of the designated portion of the Work.

(b) The Contractor consents to the Owner's planned action (such consent shall not be unreasonably withheld).

(c) The Owner shall be responsible for insurance coverage of the Owner's furniture and equipment, and the Contractor's liability shall not be increased.

(d) The Contractor, Architect, and Owner will jointly inspect and record the condition of the Work in the area before the Owner delivers and stores or installs furniture and equipment; the Owner will equitably compensate the Contractor for making any repairs to the Work that may subsequently be required due to the Owner's delivery and storage or installation of furniture and equipment.

(e) The Owner's delivery and storage or installation of furniture and equipment shall not be deemed an acceptance of any Work not completed in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**ARTICLE 34**  
**FINAL PAYMENT**

**A. PREREQUISITES to FINAL PAYMENT**

The following conditions are prerequisites to Final Payment becoming due the Contractor:

(1) Full execution of a Certificate of Substantial Completion for the Work, or each designated portion of the Work.

(2) Final Acceptance of the Work.

(3) The Contractor's completion, to the satisfaction of the Architect and Owner, of all documentary requirements of the Contract Documents; such as delivery of "as-built" documents, operating and maintenance manuals, warranties, etc.

(4) Delivery to the Owner of a final Application for Payment, prepared by the Contractor and approved and certified by the Architect. Architect prepares DCM Form B-13: Final Payment Checklist and forwards it to the Owner along with the final Application for Payment.

(5) Completion of an Advertisement for Completion pursuant to Paragraph C below.

- (6) Delivery by the Contractor to the Owner through the Architect of DCM Form C-18: Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims, and a Release of Claims, if any, and such other documents as may be required by Owner, satisfactory in form to the Owner pursuant to Paragraph D below.
- (7) Consent of Surety to Final Payment, if any, to Contractor. This Consent of Surety is required for projects which have Payment and Performance Bonds.
- (8) Delivery by the Contractor to the Architect and Owner of other documents, if any, required by the Contract Documents as prerequisites to Final Payment.
- (9) See Manual of Procedures Chapter 7, Section L.7 concerning reconciliation of contract time, if any.

**B. FINAL ACCEPTANCE of the WORK**

"Final Acceptance of the Work" shall be achieved when all "punch list" items recorded with the Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion are accounted for by either: (1) their completion or correction by the Contractor and acceptance by the Architect, Owner, and DCM Project Inspector, or (2) their resolution under Article 18, Deductions for Uncorrected Work.

**C. ADVERTISEMENT for COMPLETION**

(1) **If the Contract Sum is less than \$100,000:** Advertisement for Completion shall not apply to contractors performing contracts of less than \$100,000.00 in amount. §39-1-1(g)

(2) **If the Contract Sum is \$100,000 or more:** The Contractor, immediately after being notified by the Architect that all other requirements of the Contract have been completed, shall give public notice of completion of the Contract by having an Advertisement for Completion, similar to the sample contained in the Project Manual, published for a period of three weeks. **The contractor can publish a notice in one or more of the following ways:**

- (a) In a newspaper of general circulation in the county or counties in which the work, or some portion thereof, has been done.
- (b) On a website that is maintained by a newspaper of general circulation in the county or counties in which the work, or some portion thereof, has been done.
- (c) On a website utilized by the awarding authority for publishing notices.
- (d) If no newspaper is published in the county in which the work was done, and if the awarding authority does not utilize a website for the purpose of publishing notices, the notice may be given by posting at the courthouse for 30 days, and proof of the posting of the notice shall be given by the awarding authority and the contractor.

Proof of publication of the notice shall be made by the contractor to the authority by whom the contract was made by affidavit of the publisher or website owner and a printed copy of the notice published. A final settlement shall not be made upon the contract until the expiration of 30 days after the completion of the notice.

**D. RELEASE of CLAIMS**

The Release of Claims and other documents referenced in Paragraph A(6) above are as follows:

(1) A release executed by Contractor of all claims and claims of lien against the Owner arising under and by virtue of the Contract, other than such claims of the Contractor, if any, as may have

been previously made in writing and as may be specifically excepted by the Contractor from the operation of the release in stated amounts to be set forth therein.

(2) An affidavit under oath, if required, stating that so far as the Contractor has knowledge or information, there are no claims or claims of lien which have been or will be filed by any Subcontractor, Supplier or other party for labor or material for which a claim or claim of lien could be filed.

(3) A release, if required, of all claims and claims of lien made by any Subcontractor, Supplier or other party against the Owner or unpaid Contract funds held by the Owner arising under or related to the Work on the Project; provided, however, that if any Subcontractor, Supplier or others refuse to furnish a release of such claims or claims of lien, the Contractor may furnish a bond executed by Contractor and its Surety to the Owner to provide an unconditional obligation to defend, indemnify and hold harmless the Owner against any loss, cost or expense, including attorney's fees, arising out of or as a result of such claims, or claims of lien, in which event Owner may make Final Payment notwithstanding such claims or claims of lien. If Contractor and Surety fail to fulfill their obligations to Owner under the bond, the Owner shall be entitled to recover damages as a result of such failure, including all costs and reasonable attorney's fees incurred to recover such damages.

**E. EFFECT of FINAL PAYMENT**

(1) The making of Final Payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the Owner except those arising from:

- (a) liens, claims, security interests or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;
- (b) failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents;
- (c) terms of warranties or indemnities required by the Contract Documents, or
- (d) latent defects.

(2) Acceptance of Final Payment by the Contractor shall constitute a waiver of claims by Contractor except those previously made in writing, identified by Contractor as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment, and specifically excepted from the release provided for in Paragraph D(1), above.

**ARTICLE 35**  
**CONTRACTOR'S WARRANTY**

**A. GENERAL WARRANTY**

The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Architect that all materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new, except such materials as may be expressly provided or allowed in the Contract Documents to be otherwise, and that none of the Work will be Defective Work as defined in Article 1.

**B. ONE-YEAR WARRANTY**

(1) If, within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or each designated portion of the Work (or otherwise as agreed upon in a mutually-executed Certificate of Substantial Completion), any of the Work is found to be Defective Work, the Contractor shall promptly upon receipt of written notice from the Owner or Architect, and without expense to either, replace or correct the Defective Work to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, and repair

all damage to the site, the building and its contents which is the result of Defective Work or its replacement or correction.

(2) The one-year warranty for punch list items shall begin on the Date of Substantial Completion if they are completed or corrected within the time period allowed in the Certificate of Substantial Completion in which they are recorded. The one-year warranty for punch list items that are not completed or corrected within the time period allowed in the Certificate of Substantial Completion, and other Work performed after Substantial Completion, shall begin on the date of Final Acceptance of the Work. The Contractor's correction of Work pursuant to this warranty does not extend the period of the warranty. The Contractor's one-year warranty does not apply to defects or damages due to improper or insufficient maintenance, improper operation, or wear and tear during normal usage.

(3) Upon recognizing a condition of Defective Work, the Owner shall promptly notify the Contractor of the condition. If the condition is causing damage to the building, its contents, equipment, or site, the Owner shall take reasonable actions to mitigate the damage or its continuation, if practical. If the Contractor fails to proceed promptly to comply with the terms of the warranty, or to provide the Owner with satisfactory written verification that positive action is in process, the Owner may have the Defective Work replaced or corrected and the Contractor and the Contractor's Surety shall be liable for all expense incurred.

(4) **Year-end Inspection(s):** An inspection of the Work, or each separately completed portion thereof, is required near the end of the Contractor's one-year warranty period(s). The inspection must be scheduled with the Owner, Architect and DCM Inspector. The subsequent delivery of the Architect's report of a Year-end Inspection will serve as confirmation that the Contractor was notified of Defective Work found within the warranty period.

(5) The Contractor's warranty of one year is in addition to, and not a limitation of, any other remedy stated herein or available to the Owner under applicable law.

### **C. GENERAL CONTRACTOR'S ROOFING GUARANTEE**

(1) In addition to any other roof related warranties or guarantees that may be specified in the Contract Documents, the roof and associated work shall be guaranteed by the General Contractor against leaks and defects of materials and workmanship for a period of five (5) years, starting on the Date of Substantial Completion of the Project as stated in the Certificate of Substantial Completion. This guarantee for punch list items shall begin on the Date of Substantial Completion if they are completed or corrected within the time period allowed in the Certificate of Substantial Completion in which they are recorded. The guarantee for punch list items that are not completed or corrected within the time period allowed in the Certificate of Substantial Completion shall begin on the date of Final Acceptance of the Work.

(2) The "General Contractor's Roofing Guarantee" (DCM Form C-9), included in the Project Manual, shall be executed in triplicate, signed by the appropriate party and submitted to the Architect for submission with the Certificate of Substantial Completion to the Owner and the Division of Construction Management.

(3) This guarantee does not include costs which might be incurred by the General Contractor in making visits to the site requested by the Owner regarding roof problems that are due to lack of proper maintenance (keeping roof drains and/or gutters clear of debris that cause a stoppage of drainage which results in water ponding, overflowing of flashing, etc.), or damages caused by vandalism or misuse of roof areas. Should the contractor be required to return to the job to correct

problems of this nature that are determined not to be related to faulty workmanship and materials in the installation of the roof, payment for actions taken by the Contractor in response to such request will be the responsibility of the Owner. A detailed written report shall be made by the General Contractor on each of these 'Service Calls' with copies to the Architect, Owner and Division of Construction Management.

**D. SPECIAL WARRANTIES**

(1) The Contractor shall deliver to the Owner through the Architect all special or extended warranties required by the Contract Documents from the Contractor, Subcontractors, and suppliers.

(2) The Contractor and the Contractor's Surety shall be liable to the Owner for such special warranties during the Contractor's one-year warranty; thereafter, the Contractor's obligations relative to such special warranties shall be to provide reasonable assistance to the Owner in their enforcement.

**E. ASSUMPTION of GUARANTEES of OTHERS**

If the Contractor disturbs, alters, or damages any work guaranteed under a separate contract, thereby voiding the guarantee of that work, the Contractor shall restore the work to a condition satisfactory to the Owner and shall also guarantee it to the same extent that it was guaranteed under the separate contract.

**ARTICLE 36  
INDEMNIFICATION AGREEMENT**

To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall defend, indemnify, and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Architect's consultants, Alabama Division of Construction Management, State Department of Education (if applicable), and their agents, employees, and consultants (hereinafter collectively referred to as the "Indemnitees") from and against all claims, damages, losses and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of, related to, or resulting from performance of the Work, provided that such claim, damage, loss or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property, including loss of use resulting therefrom, and is caused in whole or in part by negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of whether such claim, damage, loss or expense is caused in part, or is alleged but not legally established to have been caused in whole or in part by the negligence or other fault of a party indemnified hereunder.

- A. This indemnification shall extend to all claims, damages, losses and expenses for injury or damage to adjacent or neighboring property, or persons injured thereon, that arise out of, relate to, or result from performance of the Work.
- B. This indemnification does not extend to the liability of the Architect, or the Architect's Consultants, agents, or employees, arising out of (1) the preparation or approval of maps, shop drawings, opinions, reports, surveys, field orders, Change Orders, drawings or specifications, or (2) the giving of or the failure to give directions or instructions, provided such giving or failure to give instructions is the primary cause of the injury or damage.
- C. This indemnification does not apply to the extent of the sole negligence of the Indemnitees.



**ARTICLE 37**  
**CONTRACTOR'S and SUBCONTRACTORS' INSURANCE**

*(Provide entire Article 37 to Contractor's insurance representative.)*

**A. GENERAL**

**(1) RESPONSIBILITY.** The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner from the time of the signing of the Construction Contract or from the beginning of the first work, whichever shall be earlier, for all injury or damage of any kind resulting from any negligent act or omission or breach, failure or other default regarding the work by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of who may be the owner of the property.

**(2) INSURANCE PROVIDERS.** Each of the insurance coverages required below shall be issued by an insurer licensed by the Insurance Commissioner to transact the business of insurance in the State of Alabama for the applicable line of insurance, and such insurer (or, for qualified self-insureds or group self-insureds, a specific excess insurer providing statutory limits) must have a Best Policyholders Rating of "A-" or better and a financial size rating of Class V or larger.

**(3) NOTIFICATION ENDORSEMENT.** Each policy shall be endorsed to provide that the insurance company agrees that the policy shall not be canceled, changed, allowed to lapse or allowed to expire for any reason until thirty days after the Owner has received written notice by certified mail as evidenced by return receipt or until such time as other insurance coverage providing protection equal to protection called for in the Contract Documents shall have been received, accepted and acknowledged by the Owner. Such notice shall be valid only as to the Project as shall have been designated by Project Name and Number in said notice.

**(4) INSURANCE CERTIFICATES.** The Contractor shall procure the insurance coverages identified below, or as otherwise required in the Contract Documents, at the Contractor's own expense, and to evidence that such insurance coverages are in effect, the Contractor shall furnish the Owner an insurance certificate(s) acceptable to the Owner and listing the Owner as the certificate holder. The insurance certificate(s) must be delivered to the Owner with the Construction Contract and Bonds for final approval and execution of the Construction Contract. The insurance certificate must provide the following:

- (a) Name and address of authorized agent of the insurance company
- (b) Name and address of insured
- (c) Name of insurance company or companies
- (d) Description of policies
- (e) Policy Number(s)
- (f) Policy Period(s)
- (g) Limits of liability
- (h) Name and address of Owner as certificate holder
- (i) Project Name and Number, if any
- (j) Signature of authorized agent of the insurance company
- (k) Telephone number of authorized agent of the insurance company
- (l) Mandatory thirty day notice of cancellation / non-renewal / change

**(5) MAXIMUM DEDUCTIBLE.** Self-insured retention, except for qualified self-insurers or group self-insurers, in any policy shall not exceed \$25,000.00.

**B. INSURANCE COVERAGES**

Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall purchase the types of insurance coverages with liability limits not less than as follows:

**(1) WORKERS' COMPENSATION and EMPLOYER'S LIABILITY INSURANCE**

**(a)** Workers' Compensation coverage shall be provided in accordance with the statutory coverage required in Alabama. A group insurer must submit a certificate of authority from the Alabama Department of Industrial Relations approving the group insurance plan. A self-insurer must submit a certificate from the Alabama Department of Industrial Relations stating the Contractor qualifies to pay its own workers' compensation claims.

**(b)** Employer's Liability Insurance limits shall be at least:

- .1 Bodily Injury by Accident - \$1,000,000 each accident
- .2 Bodily Injury by Disease - \$1,000,000 each employee

**(2) COMMERCIAL GENERAL LIABILITY INSURANCE**

**(a)** Commercial General Liability Insurance, written on an ISO Occurrence Form (current edition as of the date of Advertisement for Bids) or equivalent, shall include, but need not be limited to, coverage for bodily injury and property damage arising from premises and operations liability, products and completed operations liability, blasting and explosion, collapse of structures, underground damage, personal injury liability and contractual liability. The Commercial General Liability Insurance shall provide at minimum the following limits:

<u>Coverage</u>	<u>Limit</u>
.1 General Aggregate	\$ 2,000,000.00 per Project
.2 Products, Completed Operations Aggregate	\$ 2,000,000.00 per Project
.3 Personal and Advertising Injury	\$ 1,000,000.00 per Occurrence
.4 Each Occurrence	\$ 1,000,000.00

**(b)** Additional Requirements for Commercial General Liability Insurance:

- .1 The policy shall name the Owner, Architect, Alabama Division of Construction Management, State Department of Education (if applicable), and their agents, consultants and employees as additional insureds, state that this coverage shall be primary insurance for the additional insureds; and contain no exclusions of the additional insureds relative to job accidents.
- .2 The policy must include separate per project aggregate limits.

**(3) COMMERCIAL BUSINESS AUTOMOBILE LIABILITY INSURANCE**

**(a)** Commercial Business Automobile Liability Insurance which shall include coverage for bodily injury and property damage arising from the operation of any owned, non-owned or hired automobile. The Commercial Business Automobile Liability Insurance Policy shall provide not less than \$1,000,000 Combined Single Limits for each occurrence.

**(b)** The policy shall name the Owner, Architect, Alabama Division of Construction Management, State Department of Education (if applicable), and their agents, consultants, and employees as additional insureds.

- (4) **COMMERCIAL UMBRELLA OR COMMERCIAL EXCESS LIABILITY INSURANCE**
- (a) Commercial Umbrella or Commercial Excess Liability Insurance to provide excess coverage above the Commercial General Liability, Commercial Business Automobile Liability and the Workers' Compensation and Employer's Liability to satisfy the minimum limits set forth herein.
- (b) Minimum Combined Primary Commercial General Liability and Commercial Umbrella or Commercial Excess Limits of:
- .1 \$ 5,000,000 per Occurrence
  - .2 \$ 5,000,000 Aggregate
- (c) Additional Requirements for Commercial Umbrella or Commercial Excess Liability Insurance:
- .1 The policy shall name the Owner, Architect, Alabama Division of Construction Management, State Department of Education (if applicable), and their agents, consultants, and employees as additional insureds.
  - .2 The policy must be on an "occurrence" basis.

(5) **BUILDER'S RISK INSURANCE**

- (a) The Builder's Risk Policy shall be made payable to the Owner and Contractor, as their interests may appear. The policy amount shall be equal to 100% of the Contract Sum, written on a Causes of Loss - Special Form (current edition as of the date of Advertisement for Bids), or its equivalent. All deductibles shall be the sole responsibility of the Contractor.
- (b) The policy shall be endorsed as follows:

"The following may occur without diminishing, changing, altering or otherwise affecting the coverage and protection afforded the insured under this policy:

- (i) Furniture and equipment may be delivered to the insured premises and installed in place ready for use; or
- (ii) Partial or complete occupancy by Owner; or
- (iii) Performance of work in connection with construction operations insured by the Owner, by agents or lessees or other contractors of the Owner, or by contractors of the lessee of the Owner."

Exception: projects containing only abatement and/or only demolition do not require Builder's Risk insurance, unless required by the Owner. Note: projects containing any scope of work besides abatement and/or demolition require Builder's Risk insurance.

C. **SUBCONTRACTORS' INSURANCE**

(1) **WORKERS' COMPENSATION and EMPLOYER'S LIABILITY INSURANCE.** The Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to obtain and maintain Workers' Compensation and Employer's Liability Insurance coverages as described in preceding Paragraph B, or to be covered by the Contractor's Workers' Compensation and Employer's Liability Insurance while performing Work under the Contract.

(2) **LIABILITY INSURANCE.** The Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to obtain and maintain adequate General Liability, Automobile Liability, and Umbrella or Excess Liability Insurance coverages similar to those described in preceding Paragraph B. Such coverage shall be in effect at all times that a Subcontractor is performing Work under the Contract.

(3) **ENFORCEMENT RESPONSIBILITY.** The Contractor shall have responsibility to enforce its Subcontractors' compliance with these or similar insurance requirements; however, the Contractor shall, upon request, provide the Architect or Owner acceptable evidence of insurance for any Subcontractor.

**D. TERMINATION of OBLIGATION to INSURE**

Unless otherwise expressly provided in the Contract Documents, the obligation to insure as provided herein shall continue as follows:

**(1) BUILDER'S RISK INSURANCE.** The obligation to insure under Subparagraph B(5) shall remain in effect until the Date of Substantial Completion as shall be established in the Certificate of Substantial Completion. In the event that multiple Certificates of Substantial Completion covering designated portions of the Work are issued, Builder's Risk coverage shall remain in effect until the Date of Substantial Completion as shall be established in the last issued Certificate of Substantial Completion. However, in the case that the Work involves separate buildings, Builder's Risk coverage of each separate building may terminate on the Date of Substantial Completion as established in the Certificate of Substantial Completion issued for each building.

**(2) PRODUCTS and COMPLETED OPERATIONS.** The obligation to carry Products and Completed Operations coverage specified under Subparagraph B(2) shall remain in effect for two years after the Date(s) of Substantial Completion.

**(3) ALL OTHER INSURANCE.** The obligation to carry other insurance coverages specified under Subparagraphs B(1) through B(4) and Paragraph C shall remain in effect after the Date(s) of Substantial Completion until such time as all Work required by the Contract Documents is completed. Equal or similar insurance coverages shall remain in effect if, after completion of the Work, the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, returns to the Project to perform warranty or maintenance work pursuant to the terms of the Contract Documents.

**E. WAIVERS of SUBROGATION**

The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees, each of the other, and (2) the Architect, Architect's consultants, separate contractors performing construction or operations related to the Project, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees, for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss. But said waiver shall apply only to the extent the loss or damage is covered by builder's risk insurance applicable to the Work or to other property located within or adjacent to the Project, except such rights as they may have to proceeds of such insurance held by the Owner or Contractor as fiduciary. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require of the Architect, Architect's consultants, separate contractors, if any, and the subcontractor, sub-subcontractors, suppliers, agents and employees of any of them, by appropriate agreements, written where legally required for validity, similar waivers each in favor of other parties enumerated herein. The Policies shall provide such waivers of subrogation by endorsement or otherwise. A waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to the person or entity even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, and whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the property damaged. The waivers provided for in this paragraph shall not be applicable to loss or damage that occurs after final acceptance of the Work.

**ARTICLE 38**  
**PERFORMANCE and PAYMENT BONDS**

**A. GENERAL**

Upon signing and returning the Construction Contract to the Owner for final approval and execution, the Contractor shall, at the Contractor's expense, furnish to the Owner a Performance Bond and a Payment Bond (P&P Bonds), DCM Forms C-6 and C-7 as contained in the Project Manual, each in a penal sum equal to 100% of the Contract Sum. Each bond shall be on the form contained in the Project Manual, shall be executed by a surety company (Surety) acceptable to the Owner and duly authorized and qualified to make such bonds in the State of Alabama in the required amount. There shall be three original P&P Bonds submitted with original signatures for each of the three contracts required. The P&P bonds must be signed either on the same day or after the construction contract date. Each P&P Bond shall have attached thereto an original power of attorney (POA) of the signing official. The POA signature date must be the same day as the P&P Bond's signature date. All signatures must be present.

The provisions of this Article are not applicable to this Contract if the Contract Sum is less than \$100,000, unless bonds are required for this Contract in the Supplemental General Conditions.

**B. PERFORMANCE BOND**

Through the Performance Bond, the Surety's obligation to the Owner shall be to assure the prompt and faithful performance of the Contract and Contract Change Orders. The Penal Sum shall remain equal to the Contract Sum as the Contract Sum is adjusted by Contract Change Orders. In case of default on the part of the Contractor, the Surety shall take charge of and complete the Work in accordance with the terms of the Performance Bond. Any reasonable expenses incurred by the Owner as a result of default on the part of the Contractor, including architectural, engineering, administrative, and legal services, shall be recoverable under the Performance Bond.

**C. PAYMENT BOND**

Through the Payment Bond the Surety's obligation to the Owner shall be to guarantee that the Contractor and its Subcontractors shall promptly make payment to all persons supplying labor, materials, or supplies for, or in, the prosecution of the Work, including the payment of reasonable attorneys fees incurred by successful claimants or plaintiffs in civil actions on the Bond. Any person or entity indicating that they have a claim of nonpayment under the Bond shall, upon written request, be promptly furnished a certified copy of the Bond and Construction Contract by the Contractor, Architect, Owner, or Alabama Division of Construction Management, whomever is recipient of the request.

**D. CHANGE ORDERS**

The Penal Sum shall remain equal to the Contract Sum as the Contract Sum is adjusted by Contract Change Orders. All Contract Change Orders involving an increase in the Contract Sum will require consent of Surety by endorsement of the Contract Change Order form. The Surety waives notification of any Contract Change Orders involving only extension of the Contract Time.

**E. EXPIRATION**

The obligations of the Contractor's performance bond surety shall be coextensive with the

contractor's performance obligations under the Contract Documents; provided, however, that the surety's obligation shall expire at the end of the one-year warranty period(s) of Article 35.

### **ARTICLE 39** **ASSIGNMENT**

The Contractor shall not assign the Contract or sublet it as a whole nor assign any moneys due or to become due to the Contractor thereunder without the previous written consent of the Owner (and of the Surety, in the case of a bonded Construction Contract). As prescribed by the Public Works Law, the Contract shall in no event be assigned to an unsuccessful bidder for the Contract whose bid was rejected because the bidder was not a responsible or responsive bidder.

### **ARTICLE 40** **CONSTRUCTION by OWNER or SEPARATE CONTRACTORS**

#### **A. OWNER'S RESERVATION of RIGHT**

(1) The Owner reserves the right to self-perform, or to award separate contracts for, other portions of the Project and other Project related construction and operations on the site. The contractual conditions of such separate contracts shall be substantially similar to those of this Contract, including insurance requirements and the provisions of this Article. If the Contractor considers such actions to involve delay or additional cost under this Contract, notifications and assertion of claims shall be as provided in Article 20 and Article 23.

(2) When separate contracts are awarded, the term "Contractor" in the separate Contract Documents shall mean the Contractor who executes the respective Construction Contract.

#### **B. COORDINATION**

Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall be responsible for coordinating the activities of the Owner's forces and separate contractors with the Work of the Contractor. The Contractor shall cooperate with the Owner and separate contractors, shall participate in reviewing and comparing their construction schedules relative to that of the Contractor when directed to do so, and shall make and adhere to any revisions to the construction schedule resulting from a joint review and mutual agreement.

#### **C. CONDITIONS APPLICABLE to WORK PERFORMED by OWNER**

Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when the Owner self-performs construction or operations related to the Project, the Owner shall be subject to the same obligations to Contractor as Contractor would have to a separate contractor under the provision of this Article 40.

#### **D. MUTUAL RESPONSIBILITY**

(1) The Contractor shall reasonably accommodate the required introduction and storage of materials and equipment and performance of activities by the Owner and separate contractors and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's Work with theirs as required by the Contract Documents.

(2) By proceeding with an element or portion of the Work that is applied to or performed on construction by the Owner or a separate contractor, or which relies upon their operations, the Contractor accepts the condition of such construction or operations as being suitable for the Contractor's Work, except for conditions that are not reasonably discoverable by the Contractor. If the Contractor discovers any condition in such construction or operations that is not suitable for the proper performance of the Work, the Contractor shall not proceed, but shall instead promptly notify the Architect in writing of the condition discovered.

(3) The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for any costs incurred by a separate contractor and payable by the Owner because of acts or omissions of the Contractor. Likewise, the Owner shall be responsible to the Contractor for any costs incurred by the Contractor because of the acts or omissions of a separate contractor.

(4) The Contractor shall not cut or otherwise alter construction by the Owner or a separate contractor without the written consent of the Owner and separate contractor; such consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. Likewise, the Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold its consent allowing the Owner or a separate contractor to cut or otherwise alter the Work.

(5) The Contractor shall promptly remedy any damage caused by the Contractor to the construction or property of the Owner or separate contractors.

#### **ARTICLE 41** **SUBCONTRACTS**

##### **A. AWARD of SUBCONTRACTS and OTHER CONTRACTS for PORTIONS of the WORK**

(1) Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when delivering the executed Construction Contract, bonds, and evidence of insurance to the Architect, the Contractor shall also submit a listing of Subcontractors proposed for each principal portion of the Work and fabricators or suppliers proposed for furnishing materials or equipment fabricated to the design of the Contract Documents. This listing shall be in addition to any naming of Subcontractors, fabricators, or suppliers that may have been required in the bid process. The Architect will promptly reply to the Contractor in writing stating whether or not the Owner, after due investigation, has reasonable objection to any Subcontractor, fabricator, or supplier proposed by the Contractor. The issuance of the Notice to Proceed in the absence of such objection by the Owner shall constitute notice that no reasonable objection to them is made.

(2) The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed Subcontractor, fabricator, or supplier to whom the Owner has made reasonable and timely objection. Except in accordance with prequalification procedures as may be contained in the Contract Documents, through specified qualifications, or on the grounds of reasonable objection, the Owner may not restrict the Contractor's selection of Subcontractors, fabricators, or suppliers.

(3) Upon the Owner's reasonable objection to a proposed Subcontractor, fabricator, or supplier, the Contractor shall promptly propose another to whom the Owner has no reasonable objection. If the proposed Subcontractor, fabricator, or supplier to whom the Owner made reasonable objection was reasonably capable of performing the Work, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be equitably adjusted by Contract Change Order for any resulting difference if the Contractor has acted promptly and responsively in this procedure.

(4) The Contractor shall not change previously selected Subcontractors, fabricators, or suppliers without notifying the Architect and Owner in writing of proposed substitute Subcontractors, fabricators, or suppliers. If the Owner does not make a reasonable objection to a proposed substitute within three working days, the substitute shall be deemed approved.

**B. SUBCONTRACTUAL RELATIONS**

(1) The Contractor agrees to bind every Subcontractor and material supplier (and require every Subcontractor to so bind its subcontractors and material suppliers) to all the provisions of the Contract Documents as they apply to the Subcontractor's and material supplier's portion of the Work.

(2) Nothing contained in the Contract Documents shall be construed as creating any contractual relationship between any Subcontractor and the Owner, nor to create a duty of the Architect, Owner, or Director to resolve disputes between or among the Contractor or its Subcontractors and suppliers or any other duty to such Subcontractors or suppliers.

**ARTICLE 42**  
**ARCHITECT'S STATUS**

A. The Architect is an independent contractor performing, with respect to this Contract, pursuant to an agreement executed between the Owner and the Architect. The Architect has prepared the Drawings and Specifications and assembled the Contract Document and is, therefore, charged with their interpretation and clarification as described in the Contract Documents. As a representative of the Owner, the Architect will endeavor to guard the Owner against variances from the requirements of the Contract Documents by the Contractor. On behalf of the Owner, the Architect will administer the Contract as described in the Contract Documents during construction and the Contractor's one-year warranty.

B. So as to maintain continuity in administration of the Contract and performance of the Work, and to facilitate complete documentation of the project record, all communications between the Contractor and Owner regarding matters of or related to the Contract shall be directed through the Architect, unless direct communication is otherwise required to provide a legal notification. Unless otherwise authorized by the Architect, communications by and with the Architect's consultants shall be through the Architect. Unless otherwise authorized by the Contractor, communications by and with Subcontractors and material suppliers shall be through the Contractor.

**C. ARCHITECT'S AUTHORITY**

Subject to other provisions of the Contract Documents, the following summarizes some of the authority vested in the Architect by the Owner with respect to the Construction Contract and as further described or conditioned in other Articles of these General Conditions of the Contract.

**(1) The Architect is authorized to:**

- (a) approve "minor" deviations as defined in Article 9, Submittals,
- (b) make "minor" changes in the Work as defined in Article 19, Changes in the Work,
- (c) reject or require the correction of Defective Work,
- (d) require the Contractor to stop the performance of Defective Work,



- (e) adjust an Application for Payment by the Contractor pursuant to Article 30, Certification and Approval of payments, and
- (f) issue Notices to Cure pursuant to Article 27.

**(2) The Architect is not authorized to:**

- (a) revoke, alter, relax, or waive any requirements of the Contract Documents (other than “minor” deviations and changes) without concurrence of the Owner,
- (b) finally approve or accept any portion of the Work without concurrence of the Owner,
- (c) issue instructions contrary to the Contract Documents,
- (d) issue Notice of Termination or otherwise terminate the Contract, or
- (e) require the Contractor to stop the Work except only to avoid the performance of Defective Work.

**D. LIMITATIONS of RESPONSIBILITIES**

(1) The Architect shall not be responsible to Contractors or to others for supervising or coordinating the performance of the Work or for the Construction Methods or safety of the Work, unless the Contract Documents give other specific instructions concerning these matters.

(2) The Architect will not be responsible to the Contractor (nor the Owner) for the Contractor’s failure to perform the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents or for acts or omissions of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable. However, the Architect will report to the Owner and Contractor any Defective Work recognized by the Architect.

(3) The Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by Owner and Contractor, and the Architect will not show partiality to either or be liable to either for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

(4) The Contractor’s remedies for additional time or expense arising out of or related to this Contract, or the breach thereof, shall be solely as provided for in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall have no claim or cause of action against the Owner, Architect, or its consultants for any actions or failures to act, whether such claim may be in contract, tort, strict liability, or otherwise, it being the agreement of the parties that the Contractor shall make no claim against the Owner or any agents of the Owner, including the Architect or its consultants, except as may be provided for claims or disputes submitted in accordance with Article 24. The Architect and Architect’s consultants shall be considered third party beneficiaries of this provision of the Contract and entitled to enforce same.

**E. ARCHITECT’S DECISIONS**

Decisions by the Architect shall be in writing. The Architect’s decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect will be final and binding if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents. The Architect’s decisions regarding disputes arising between the Contractor and Owner shall be advisory.

**ARTICLE 43**  
**CASH ALLOWANCES**

A. All allowances stated in the Contract Documents shall be included in the Contract Sum. Items

covered by allowances shall be supplied by the Contractor as directed by the Architect or Owner and the Contractor shall afford the Owner the economy of obtaining competitive pricing from responsible bidders for allowance items unless other purchasing procedures are specified in the Contract Documents.

- B.** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents:
- (1) allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment delivered to the Project site and all applicable taxes, less applicable trade discounts;
  - (2) the Contractor's costs for unloading, storing, protecting, and handling at the site, labor, installation, overhead, profit and other expenses related to materials or equipment covered by an allowance shall be included in the Contract Sum but not in the allowances;
  - (3) if required, the Contract Sum shall be adjusted by Change Order to reflect the actual costs of an allowance.
- C.** Any selections of materials or equipment required of the Architect or Owner under an allowance shall be made in sufficient time to avoid delay of the Work.

## **ARTICLE 44** **PERMITS, LAWS, and REGULATIONS**

### **A. PERMITS, FEES AND NOTICES**

(1) Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit and other permits and governmental fees, licenses, and inspections necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work which are customarily secured after award of the Construction Contract and which are in effect on the date of receipt of bids.

(2) The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by all laws, ordinances, rules, regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to performance of the Work.

### **B. TAXES**

Unless stated otherwise in the Contract Documents, materials incorporated into the Work are exempt from sales and use tax pursuant to Section 40-9-33, Code of Alabama, 1975 as amended. The Owner, Contractor and its subcontractors shall be responsible for complying with rules and regulations of the Sales, Use, & Business Tax Division of the Alabama Department of Revenue regarding certificates and other qualifications necessary to claim such exemption when making qualifying purchases from vendors. The Contractor shall pay all applicable taxes that are not covered by the exemption of Section 40-9-33 and which are imposed as of the date of receipt of bids, including those imposed as of the date of receipt of bids but scheduled to go into effect after that date.

### **C. COMPENSATION for INCREASES**

The Contractor shall be compensated for additional costs incurred because of increases in tax rates imposed after the date of receipt of bids.

**D. ALABAMA IMMIGRATION LAW**

Per ACT 2011-535 as codified in Title 31, Chapter 13 of the Code of Alabama, 1975, as amended:

The contracting parties affirm, for the duration of the agreement, that they will not violate federal immigration law or knowingly employ, hire for employment, or continue to employ an unauthorized alien within the State of Alabama. Furthermore, a contracting party found to be in violation of this provision shall be deemed in breach of the agreement and shall be responsible for all damages resulting therefrom.

**E. ALABAMA TRADE BOYCOTT LAW**

Per Act 2016-312as codified in Title 41, Chapter 16, Article 1, of the Code of Alabama, 1975, as amended:

The contracting parties affirm, for the duration of the agreement, that they are not currently engaged in, and will not engage in, the boycott of a person or an entity based in or doing business with a jurisdiction with which this state can enjoy open trade.

**EE. ALABAMA ECONOMIC BOYCOTT LAW**

In compliance with Ala. Act No. 2023-409, by signing this contract, the contracting parties provide written verification that they, without violating controlling law or regulation, do not and will not, during the term of the contract engage in economic boycotts as the term “economic boycott” is defined in Section 1 of the Act. This requirement applies to contracts entered into on or after October 1, 2023 if a contracting party employs 10 or more employees and the contract could exceed \$15,000 over the term of the contract. Under Section 2 of the Act, the written verification may be waived if the contracting governmental entity determines based on cost and quality factors that such a waiver is clearly in the best interest of the public.

**F. ACCOUNTING OF SALES TAX EXEMPT PROJECTS**

Per Act 2013-205 as codified in Title 40, Chapter 9, Article 1, of the Code of Alabama, 1975, as amended:

In bidding the work on a tax exempt project, the bid form shall provide an accounting for the tax savings.

**ARTICLE 45**  
**ROYALTIES, PATENTS, and COPYRIGHTS**

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. The Contractor shall defend, indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Architect’s consultants, Alabama Division of Construction Management, State Department of Education (if applicable), and their agents, employees, and consultants from and against all claims, damages, losses and expenses, including but not limited to attorney’s fees, arising out of, related to, or resulting from all suits or claims for infringement of any patent rights or copyrights arising out of the inclusion of any patented or copyrighted materials, methods, or systems selected by the Contractor and used during the execution of or incorporated into the Work. This indemnification does

not apply to any suits or claims of infringement of any patent rights or copyrights arising out of any patented or copyrighted materials, methods, or systems specified in the Contract Documents. However, if the Contractor has information that a specified material, method, or system is or may constitute an infringement of a patent or copyright, the Contractor shall be responsible for any resulting loss unless such information is promptly furnished to the Architect.

**ARTICLE 46**  
**USE of the SITE**

- A. The Contractor shall confine its operations at the Project site to areas permitted by the Owner and by law, ordinances, permits and the Contract Documents and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials, equipment, employees' vehicles, or debris. The Contractor's operations at the site shall be restricted to the sole purpose of constructing the Work, use of the site as a staging, assembly, or storage area for other business which the Contractor may undertake shall not be permitted.
- B. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, temporary facilities, such as storage sheds, shops, and offices may be erected on the Project site with the approval of the Architect and Owner. Such temporary buildings and/or utilities shall remain the property of the Contractor, and be removed at the Contractor's expense upon completion of the Work, unless the Owner authorizes their abandonment without removal.

**ARTICLE 47**  
**CUTTING and PATCHING**

- A. The Contractor shall be responsible for all cutting, fitting, or patching that may be required to execute the Work to the results indicated in the Contract Documents or to make its parts fit together properly.
- B. Any cutting, patching, or excavation by the Contractor shall be supervised and performed in a manner that will not endanger persons nor damage or endanger the Work or any fully or partially completed construction of the Owner or separate contractors.

**ARTICLE 48**  
**IN-PROGRESS and FINAL CLEANUP**

**A. IN-PROGRESS CLEAN-UP**

(1) The Contractor shall at all times during the progress of the Work keep the premises and surrounding area free from rubbish, scrap materials and debris resulting from the Work. Trash and combustible materials shall not be allowed to accumulate inside buildings or elsewhere on the premises. At no time shall any rubbish be thrown from window openings. Burning of trash and debris on site is not permitted.

(2) The Contractor shall make provisions to minimize and confine dust and debris resulting from construction activities.

**B. FINAL CLEAN-UP**

(1) Before Substantial Completion or Final Acceptance is achieved, the Contractor shall have removed from the Owner's property all construction equipment, tools, and machinery; temporary structures and/or utilities including the foundations thereof (except such as the Owner permits in writing to remain); rubbish, debris, and waste materials; and all surplus materials, leaving the site clean and true to line and grade, and the Work in a safe and clean condition, ready for use and operation.

(2) In addition to the above, and unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be responsible for the following special cleaning for all trades as the Work is completed:

(a) **Cleaning of all painted, enameled, stained, or baked enamel work:** Removal of all marks, stains, finger prints and splatters from such surfaces.

(b) **Cleaning of all glass:** Cleaning and removing of all stickers, labels, stains, and paint from all glass, and the washing and polishing of same on interior and exterior.

(c) **Cleaning or polishing of all hardware:** Cleaning and polishing of all hardware.

(d) **Cleaning all tile, floor finish of all kinds:** Removal of all splatters, stains, paint, dirt, and dust, the washing and polishing of all floors as recommended by the manufacturer or required by the Architect.

(e) **Cleaning of all manufactured articles, materials, fixtures, appliances, and equipment:** Removal of all stickers, rust stains, labels, and temporary covers, and cleaning and conditioning of all manufactured articles, material, fixtures, appliances, and electrical, heating, and air conditioning equipment as recommended or directed by the manufacturers, unless otherwise required by the Architect; blowing out or flushing out of all foreign matter from all equipment, piping, tanks, pumps, fans, motors, devices, switches, panels, fixtures, boilers, sanitizing potable water systems; and freeing identification plates on all equipment of excess paint and the polishing thereof.

**C. OWNER'S RIGHT to CLEAN-UP**

If the Contractor fails to comply with these clean-up requirements and then fails to comply with a written directive by the Architect to clean-up the premises within a specified time, the Architect or Owner may implement appropriate clean-up measures and the cost thereof shall be deducted from any amounts due or to become due the Contractor.

**ARTICLE 49**  
**LIQUIDATED DAMAGES**

A. Time is the essence of the Contract. Any delay in the completion of the Work required by the Contract Documents may cause inconvenience to the public and loss and damage to the Owner including but not limited to interest and additional administrative, architectural, inspection and supervision charges. By executing the Construction Contract, the Contractor agrees that the Contract Time is sufficient for the achievement of Substantial Completion.

B. The Contract Documents may provide in the Construction Contract or elsewhere for a certain dollar amount for which the Contractor and its Surety (if any) will be liable to the Owner as liquidated

damages for each calendar day after expiration of the Contract Time that the Contractor fails to achieve Substantial Completion of the Work. If such daily liquidated damages are provided for, Owner and Contractor, and its Surety, agree that such amount is reasonable and agree to be bound thereby.

- C. If a daily liquidated damage amount is not otherwise provided for in the Contract Documents, a time charge equal to six percent interest per annum on the total Contract Sum may be made against the Contractor for the entire period after expiration of the Contract Time that the Contractor fails to achieve Substantial Completion of the Work.
- D. The amount of liquidated damages due under either paragraph B or C, above, may be deducted by the Owner from the moneys otherwise due the Contractor in the Final Payment, not as a penalty, but as liquidated damages sustained, or the amount may be recovered from Contractor or its Surety. If part of the Work is substantially completed within the Contract Time and part is not, the stated charge for liquidated damages shall be equitably prorated to that portion of the Work that the Contractor fails to substantially complete within the Contract Time. It is mutually understood and agreed between the parties hereto that such amount is reasonable as liquidated damages.

#### **ARTICLE 50** **USE of FOREIGN MATERIALS**

- A. In the performance of the Work the Contractor agrees to use materials, supplies, and products manufactured, mined, processed or otherwise produced in the United States or its territories, if same are available at reasonable and competitive prices and are not contrary to any sole source specification implemented under the Public Works Law.
- B. In the performance of the Work the Contractor agrees to use **iron or steel, that are made a permanent part of the structure**, produced in the United States if the Contract Documents require the use of **iron or steel** and do not limit its supply to a sole source pursuant to the Public Works Law. If the Owner decides that the procurement of domestic steel products becomes impractical as a result of national emergency, national strike, or other cause, the Owner shall waive this restriction.
- C. If domestic steel or other domestic materials, supplies, and products are not used in accordance with preceding Paragraphs A and B, the Contract Sum shall be reduced by an amount equal to any savings or benefits realized by the Contractor.
- D. This Article applies only to Public Works projects financed entirely by the State of Alabama or any political subdivision of the state.

#### **ARTICLE 51** **PROJECT SIGN**

- A. Fully locally-funded State Agency and Public Higher Education projects: DCM Form C-15: Detail of Project Sign must be included in the project manual regardless of expected bid amount. If the awarded contract sum is \$100,000.00 or more, Contractor shall furnish and erect a project sign. Other conditions besides the contract sum may warrant waiver of this requirement, but only with approval of the Technical Staff.
- B. Fully locally-funded K-12 school projects: Project sign is not required unless requested by Owner; if project sign is requested by Owner, include DCM Form C-15: Detail of Project Sign in the project manual.

- C. Partially or fully PSCA-funded projects: DCM Form C-15: Detail of Project Sign must be included in the project manual. Contractor shall furnish and erect a project sign for all PSCA-funded projects, regardless of the contract sum. "Alabama Public School and College Authority" as well as the local owner entity must be included as awarding authorities on the project sign of all PSCA-funded projects.

When required per the above conditions, the project sign shall be erected in a prominent location selected by the Architect and Owner and shall be maintained in good condition until completion of Work. If the Contract involves Work on multiple sites, only one project sign is required, which shall be erected on one of the sites in a location selected by the Architect and Owner. Slogan: The title of the current PSCA Act should be placed on the project sign of all PSCA-funded projects, otherwise the Awarding Authority/Owner's slogan, if any, should be used. If the Awarding Authority/Owner of a fully locally-funded project does not have a slogan, the project sign does not require a slogan.

END of  
GENERAL CONDITIONS of the CONTRACT

**SUPPLEMENT TO THE GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT**

- 1.1 The following supplements shall modify, delete and/or add to the General Conditions of the Contract. Where any article, paragraph or subparagraph in the General Conditions is supplemented by one of the following paragraphs, the provisions of such article, paragraph, or subparagraph shall remain in effect and the supplemental provisions shall be considered as added thereto. Where any article, paragraph or subparagraph in the General Conditions is amended, voided or superseded by any of the following paragraphs, the provisions of such article, paragraph or subparagraph not so amended, voided or superseded shall remain in effect.
- A. **Refer to Article 2.A; Definition:**
1. **Architect:** Construction documents for this project have been developed by **McKee and Associates, Architects**, 631 South Hull Street, Montgomery, Alabama, 36104, (334) 834-9933 `commissioned by the Owner.
  2. **Owner:** **Franklin County Board of Education**. Unless otherwise stated, all papers required to be delivered to the Owner shall be forwarded through the Architect.
- B. **Refer to Article 3:**
1. Add the following:
    - a. **Contractor's Qualification's:** The Roofing Contract shall possess the following, or stringent, minimum qualifications: the roofing contractor must be a firm of not less than five (5) years of successful experience in installation of roof systems similar to those specified for the project and which is acceptable to or licensed by the manufacturer of the primary roofing materials.
    - b. **Manufacturer's Qualifications:** In specifying acceptable manufacturers or minimum quality qualifications of manufacturers, the following, or more stringent criteria should be used: The manufacturer shall have a minimum of five (5) years of experience in the manufacture of the roofing system and must also be the **original material manufacturer** of the primary roofing material.
- C. **Refer to Article 6;**
1. Add the following to Paragraph B:
    - a. The lowest bidding Contractor shall submit to the Architect within five (5) calendar days after the bid date the name(s) of the Superintendent(s) who will be in charge at the work site, along with the qualifications and experience.
    - b. NOTE: By submission of a Proposal the Bidder agrees that the Owner or Architect may reject a proposed Superintendent with or without a stated reason with no recourse to the Contractor.
- D. **Refer to Article 6;**
1. Add the following to Paragraph C:
    - a. All labor shall be performed in the best and most workmanlike manner by persons skilled in their respective assignments or trades. Workmen whose work is unsatisfactory to the Architect or the Owner, or who are considered unfit or unskilled, or otherwise objectionable, shall be dismissed upon notice from the Architect or Owner.
- E. **Refer to Article 9, Paragraph D;**
1. Add the following:
    - a. All submittals for color selections, to be made by the Architect for the entire project shall be submitted at the same time within 45 days from the "Notice to Proceed". Piece-meal submittals for color selection will not be permitted.



b. Provide as follows unless otherwise specified:

- 1) All submittals shall be sent to the Architect no later than 45 calendar days from "Notice To Proceed" to: [submittals@mckeeassoc.com](mailto:submittals@mckeeassoc.com) or Submittal Exchange if applicable.
- 2) Submittals regarding mechanical, plumbing, electrical and structural items shall be sent directly to the Engineer of record (see cover sheet of the specification for address). A digital copy of the transmittal shall be sent to the Architect at the following email address: [submittals@mckeeassoc.com](mailto:submittals@mckeeassoc.com) or Submittal Exchange if applicable.

F. Refer to Article 13;

1. Add the following:

- a. "If the bidder desires to substitute an "equal", he must secure written approval by the Architect of qualification to bid ten (10) days prior to date.
- b. On all items specified as or equal substitutions must be submitted to the Architect ten (10) days prior to bid opening and Architect will act on substitution five (5) days prior to bids and notify all Contractors.
- c. The request for substitutions are to be filled out completely and must be received prior to bid. Any subcontractor and/or material supplier that was not "approved" and their price is used at bid time will be the Contractors problem to absorb any cost associated with the use of a "non-approved material or equipment. If the "approval" is not listed in the addendum, then the "approval" is not accepted.

G. Refer to Article 15:

1. The General Contractor shall be solely responsible for all requirements under this Article.

H. Refer to Article 16:

2. Add the following: Article 16; General, (5)

- a. **Single-Ply Roofs:** Should design or economic restrictions require the use of a single-ply elastomeric roofing system, ballasted systems of any type should be avoided.
- b. **Interior Gutters:** The use of interior gutters should be avoided at all times.
- c. **Protection During Application:** At no time during construction should the surface of the asphalt or coal tar pitch roofing system to be left unprotected. A glaze coat of asphalt or pitch must be applied to the surface of the membrane if the top pour or cap sheet cannot be applied during the same day.
- d. **Contractor's Qualification's:** The Roofing Contract shall possess the following, or stringent, minimum qualifications: the roofing contractor must be a firm of not less than five (5) years of successful experience in installation of roof systems similar to those specified for the project and which is acceptable to or licensed by the manufacturer of the primary roofing materials.
- e. **Manufacturer's Qualifications:** In specifying acceptable manufacturers or minimum quality qualifications of manufacturers, the following, or more stringent criteria should be used: The manufacturer shall have a minimum of five (5) years of experience in the manufacture of the roofing system and must also be the **original material manufacturer** of the primary roofing material.

I. Refer to Article 29, PROGRESS PAYMENTS, paragraph "B", Schedule of Values:

1. Amend Paragraph as follows:

- a. "Within ten days after receiving the Notice to Proceed the contractor shall submit to the Architect a DCM Form C-10SOV, Schedule of Values, which is a breakdown of the Contract

Sum showing the value **'and category of Work with Subcontractor name(s)'** of the various parts of the Work for billing purposes."

2. Add the following:
  - a. The Contractor shall list the Category of Work with the Subcontractor name(s) attributable to each line item value in the column "B", "Description of Work" line(s) of the DCM Form C-10SOV, Schedule of Values.
3. Add the following:
  - a. Values shall be broken down within principal contracts in amounts not greater than \$30,000, but in no case greater than 5 percent of the Contract Sum.

**J. Refer to Article 32, SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

1. Add the following:
  - a. All manufacturers' warranties shall commence on the date as set forth on the Substantial Completion Form, no exceptions.
  - b. Contractor shall furnish to the Architect a written letter of "notification" that all "Punch List" items have been completed prior to re-inspection.

**K. Refer to Article 35, paragraph "D", Special Warranties:**

1. Change as follows:
  - a. The Contractor shall deliver to the Owner through the Architect all special or extended warranties required by the Contract Documents from the Contractor, Subcontractors, and suppliers.

**L. Refer to Article 37:**

1. The Architect shall not be liable for any damage or injury to property or any person or persons arising from the presence of/or effects of any hazardous materials or hazardous elements in any state of form in connection with the work under this Contract. All such liability shall lie with the Contractor.

**M. Refer to Article 44:**

1. Add the following: All work on this project shall be performed in accordance with the following codes:
  - a. 2010 ADA Standards For Accessible Design
  - b. 2021 International Building Code
  - c. 2021 International Plumbing Code
  - d. 2021 International Mechanical Code
  - e. 2021 International Fuel Gas Code
  - f. 2021 International Fire Code
  - g. 2020 National Electrical Code
  - h. 2019 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code
  - i. ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2013 Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential

**N. Refer to Article 49:**

1. Liquidated damages will be assessed at a rate of 6% per annum.
2. If this contract extends thirty (30) days past Schedule Completion Date, Owner shall deduct from the Contractor's final payment, a sum equal to the additional expense incurred by the Owner for the Architect for contract administration past scheduled completion date.

SUPPLEMENT TO THE GENERAL CONDITIONS OF  
THE CONTRACT  
PAGE-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

November 2023

**END OF SECTION**

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

SUPPLEMENT TO THE GENERAL CONDITIONS OF  
THE CONTRACT  
PAGE-4

November 2023



# State of Alabama Disclosure Statement

Required by Article 3B of Title 41, Code of Alabama 1975

ENTITY COMPLETING FORM

ADDRESS

CITY, STATE, ZIP

TELEPHONE NUMBER

STATE AGENCY/DEPARTMENT THAT WILL RECEIVE GOODS, SERVICES, OR IS RESPONSIBLE FOR GRANT AWARD

ADDRESS

CITY, STATE, ZIP

TELEPHONE NUMBER

This form is provided with:

Contract     Proposal     Request for Proposal     Invitation to Bid     Grant Proposal

Have you or any of your partners, divisions, or any related business units previously performed work or provided goods to any State Agency/Department in the current or last fiscal year?

Yes     No

If yes, identify below the State Agency/Department that received the goods or services, the type(s) of goods or services previously provided, and the amount received for the provision of such goods or services.

STATE AGENCY/DEPARTMENT	TYPE OF GOODS/SERVICES	AMOUNT RECEIVED

Have you or any of your partners, divisions, or any related business units previously applied and received any grants from any State Agency/Department in the current or last fiscal year?

Yes     No

If yes, identify the State Agency/Department that awarded the grant, the date such grant was awarded, and the amount of the grant.

STATE AGENCY/DEPARTMENT	DATE GRANT AWARDED	AMOUNT OF GRANT

1. List below the name(s) and address(es) of all public officials/public employees with whom you, members of your immediate family, or any of your employees have a family relationship and who may directly personally benefit financially from the proposed transaction. Identify the State Department/Agency for which the public officials/public employees work. (Attach additional sheets if necessary.)

NAME OF PUBLIC OFFICIAL/EMPLOYEE	ADDRESS	STATE DEPARTMENT/AGENCY

2. List below the name(s) and address(es) of all family members of public officials/public employees with whom you, members of your immediate family, or any of your employees have a family relationship and who may directly personally benefit financially from the proposed transaction. Identify the public officials/public employees and State Department/Agency for which the public officials/public employees work. (Attach additional sheets if necessary.)

NAME OF FAMILY MEMBER	ADDRESS	NAME OF PUBLIC OFFICIAL/ PUBLIC EMPLOYEE	STATE DEPARTMENT/ AGENCY WHERE EMPLOYED

If you identified individuals in items one and/or two above, describe in detail below the direct financial benefit to be gained by the public officials, public employees, and/or their family members as the result of the contract, proposal, request for proposal, invitation to bid, or grant proposal. (Attach additional sheets if necessary.)

Describe in detail below any indirect financial benefits to be gained by any public official, public employee, and/or family members of the public official or public employee as the result of the contract, proposal, request for proposal, invitation to bid, or grant proposal. (Attach additional sheets if necessary.)

List below the name(s) and address(es) of all paid consultants and/or lobbyists utilized to obtain the contract, proposal, request for proposal, invitation to bid, or grant proposal:

NAME OF PAID CONSULTANT/LOBBYIST	ADDRESS

***By signing below, I certify under oath and penalty of perjury that all statements on or attached to this form are true and correct to the best of my knowledge. I further understand that a civil penalty of ten percent (10%) of the amount of the transaction, not to exceed \$10,000.00, is applied for knowingly providing incorrect or misleading information.***

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary's Signature Date Date Notary Expires

*Article 3B of Title 41, Code of Alabama 1975 requires the disclosure statement to be completed and filed with all proposals, bids, contracts, or grant proposals to the State of Alabama in excess of \$5,000.*



Kay Ivey  
Governor

Bill Poole  
Director of Finance

STATE OF ALABAMA  
DEPARTMENT OF FINANCE  
REAL PROPERTY MANAGEMENT  
Division of Construction Management

P.O. Box 301150, Montgomery, AL 36130-1150  
770 Washington Avenue, Suite 444, Montgomery, AL 36104  
Telephone: (334) 242-4082 Fax: (334) 242-4182



Mickey Allen  
Assistant Finance Director  
Real Property Management

Frank Barnes, Director  
Construction Management

## E-Verify Memorandum of Understanding

Instructions for inclusion in project manuals.

Per DCM's May 29, 2012 bulletin *Guidance on Act 2012-491 Amending the Alabama Immigration Law*: "Contractors (including architects and engineers) will ... be required to enroll in the E-Verify program and to provide documentation of enrollment in the E-Verify program with their contracts or agreements."

Upon completing enrollment in the E-Verify program available at <https://www.e-verify.gov/employers/enrolling-in-e-verify>, an E-Verify Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) is issued to the enrolled business. The same E-Verify MOU can be repeatedly used until any information in the business's E-Verify user profile is updated, at which time E-Verify updates the printable Company Information section of the MOU, while the original signatory information remains the same. Typically, an E-Verify MOU is 13-18 pages long depending on business type and number of employees.

**DCM requires a copy of the entire current E-Verify MOU document including the completed Department of Homeland Security – Verification Division section (with name, signature and date included) to be submitted as an attachment to each Construction Contract original and to each Agreement Between Owner and Architect original.**



November 2023

## **E-Verify Memorandum of Understanding**

Contractors (including architects and engineers) will be required to enroll in the E-Verify program and to provide documentation of enrollment in the E-Verify program with their contracts or agreements per Alabama Immigration Law.

McKee and Associates Architects requires a copy of the entire current E-Verify MOU document including the completed Department of Homeland Security – Verification Division section (with name, signature and date included) to be submitted as an attachment to each Construction Contract original and to each Agreement Between Owner and Architect original.

*Refer to State of Alabama E-Verify Memorandum of Understanding Instructions (Revised August 2021) with ABC Bulletin (May 29, 2012) and Revised Alabama Immigration Law Guidance for School Boards (Revised May 2012).*



ALABAMA DEPARTMENT OF REVENUE  
SALES AND USE TAX DIVISION  
P.O. Box 327710 • Montgomery, AL 36132-7710

ST: EXC-01  
6/21

# Application For Sales and Use Tax Certificate of Exemption

## FOR GOVERNMENT ENTITY PROJECT

This Certificate of Exemption will be limited to purchases which qualify for an exemption of sales and use taxes pursuant to Rule No. 810-6-3-.77

### PROJECT INFORMATION:

PROJECT NAME		PROJECT OWNER'S FEIN (EXEMPT ENTITY)	
STREET ADDRESS OF PROJECT (CITY AND COUNTY INCLUDED)	CITY	ZIP	COUNTY

### APPLICANT'S INFORMATION:

RELATION: (CHOOSE ONE)  
 Government Entity     General Contractor     Subcontractor

APPLICANT'S LEGAL NAME	FEIN			
DBA	CONSUMER'S USE TAX ACCOUNT NUMBER			
MAILING ADDRESS: STREET	CITY	STATE	ZIP	COUNTY
CONTACT PERSON	BUSINESS TELEPHONE NUMBER (    )			
EMAIL ADDRESS				

CONTRACT SIGN DATE (PROVIDED BY GENERAL CONTRACTOR)	CONTRACT COMPLETION DATE (PROVIDED BY GENERAL CONTRACTOR)
ESTIMATED START DATE (FOR APPLICANT)	ESTIMATED COMPLETION DATE (FOR APPLICANT)
WILL THE APPLICANT HAVE ANY SUBCONTRACTORS ON THIS JOB? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No    If yes, please attach list.	NAME OF PARTY TO THE CONTRACT
JOB DESCRIPTION	

WILL ANY POLLUTION CONTROL EXEMPTION BE APPLICABLE? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	ESTIMATED POLLUTION CONTROL COST \$	
TOTAL PROJECT BID AMOUNT (APPLICANT'S PORTION OF PROJECT) \$	LABOR COST (APPLICANT'S PORTION OF PROJECT) \$	MATERIAL COST (APPLICANT'S PORTION OF PROJECT) \$

### REVENUE DEPARTMENT USE ONLY

PENDING DOCUMENTATION / INFORMATION:  
 GCL     SBL     Contract / NTP / LOI     LOS     Contract Dates / Breakdown of Costs

Contact Dates: \_\_\_\_\_ Received Date: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ Forwarded for Denial: \_\_\_\_\_



PROJECT NAME

PROJECT OWNER'S FEIN (EXEMPT ENTITY)

FORM OF OWNERSHIP:

Individual  Partnership  Corporation  Multi member LLC  Single member LLC  Government Entity

If applicant is a corporation, a copy of the certified certificate of incorporation, amended certificate of incorporation, certificate of authority, or articles of incorporation should be attached. If the applicant is a limited liability company or a limited liability partnership, a copy of the certified articles of organization should be attached.

OWNERSHIP INFORMATION:

Corporations – give name, title, home address, and Social Security Number of each officer.

Partnerships – give name, home address, Social Security Number or FEIN of each partner.

Sole Proprietorships – give name, home address, Social Security Number of owner.

LLC – give name, home address, and Social Security Number or FEIN of each member.

LLP – give name, home address, and Social Security Number or FEIN of each partner.

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

NAME (PLEASE PRINT)

SIGNATURE

TITLE

DATE

**REVENUE DEPARTMENT USE ONLY**

PENDING OTHER:

Government Entity  General Contractor  Not on LOS

Contact Dates: \_\_\_\_\_ Received Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Forwarded for Denial: \_\_\_\_\_

Examiner's Remarks \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Examiner \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

# Instructions For Preparation of Form ST: EXC-01

## Sales and Use Tax Certificate of Exemption for Government Entity Project

NOTE: Exemption Certificates will be issued as of the contract sign date or the received date of the application. If, upon receipt of the application, the project has already commenced, the certificate will be issued as of the received date of the application. Any purchases made prior to the issuance of a certificate will not be exempt.

**\*\*\* Please allow 10 to 14 business days for your application to be processed. \*\*\***

In order to expedite the processing of your application, please include the following documentation when submitting your application:

### **Exempt Entity:**

1. Signed Application
2. Copy of Executed/Signed Contract, Letter of Intent, Notice of Award, and/or Notice to Proceed

### **General Contractor:**

1. Signed Application
2. Copy of Executed/Signed Contract, Letter of Intent, Notice of Award, and/or Notice to Proceed
3. List of Subcontractors
4. Alabama Board of General Contractor's License
5. State/County Business License (usually obtained through county probate office)
6. Any other municipal business licenses associated with the project

### **Subcontractor:**

1. Signed Application
2. Alabama Board of General Contractor's License
3. State/County Business License (usually obtained through county probate office)
4. Any other municipal business licenses associated with the project
5. List of Subcontractors (if any)

### **General contractors and subcontractors:**

- Any additions and/or deletions to the list of subcontractors working on a project must be submitted to the Department within 30 days of occurrence.
- If an extension is needed for a project, please contact the Department of Revenue at the address, number, or email listed below. Extension requests should be submitted no more than 30 days after expiration date.
- Subcontractor's Estimated Start Date should be the date they will begin working on the project and ordering materials instead of the General Contractor's Estimated Start Date for the project.

THERE IS A FILING REQUIREMENT IF YOUR APPLICATION IS APPROVED. The return will be filed through the Consumer's Use Tax account. Please see the following page for detailed instructions and general information regarding the reporting requirements.

The application and required documentation may be mailed, faxed, or emailed to the following:

Fax: (334) 353-7867

Email: [STExemptionUnit@revenue.alabama.gov](mailto:STExemptionUnit@revenue.alabama.gov)

Mailing Address: ATTN: Contractor's Exemption  
Alabama Department of Revenue  
Sales & Use Tax Division  
Room 4303  
PO Box 327710  
Montgomery, AL 36132-7710

## *General Information and Instructions Regarding the Reporting Requirements for Contractors Awarded an Exemption Certificate*

A contractor's exemption certificate for a Government Entity project is needed in order to purchase materials tax exempt for the qualified project. Once the exemption certificate has been applied for and awarded, there is a monthly filing requirement to report the purchases that have been made for each exempt project. The Consumer's Use (CNU) tax account is used to report the tax-exempt purchases made with each certificate for each exempt project for each month.

The consumer's use tax return must be filed for each of the months covered by the exemption certificate. (For example, if the certificate's effective date is June 29, 2014 and the expected completion date is October 1, 2014, a consumer's use tax return must be filed for each of the following months: June, July, August, September, and October.) A return MUST be filed each month to report the monthly purchases. Therefore, all active exemption certificates must be included on the monthly report even if the monthly purchases for a specific project was \$0.

If a CNU tax account is not already open under the taxpayer/business name, one will automatically be assigned at the time the exemption certificate is generated. Electronic filing is required through the Department's online filing system, My Alabama Taxes (MAT). A letter containing the online filing information will be mailed to the address on file within a few days after the new CNU tax account has been assigned. This letter will contain all the information needed to create your online filing account in MAT. For questions relating to setting up the account on [www.myalabamataxes.alabama.gov](http://www.myalabamataxes.alabama.gov), please contact Business Registration at 334-242-1584 or the Sales Tax Division at 1-866-576-6531.

Once the MAT account is set up, please log in and file the monthly CNU tax return. There is a table located at the bottom left hand corner labeled "Contractor's Exemption for Government Construction Projects." All three fields in the table are required to be completed: exemption number, project number, and total amount of purchases for that specific project for the month. Additional projects may be added on the additional rows that appear as data is added; the table will allow the addition of more projects.

\*\*\*Please do not use lines 1 through 9 of the return for reporting exempt project information. Leave these lines blank unless taxable purchases were made outside of the state of Alabama that need to be reported and tax remitted. (Lines 1 through 9 do not have anything to do with the exemption reporting requirements).

When the certificate expires (upon the project's completion) and the CNU tax account is no longer needed, please contact the Business Registration Unit at 334-242-1584 and close the CNU tax account. Please be advised that if there are multiple government entity projects open, the consumer's use tax account should remain open until the last project completion date. For example, if Project EXC00ABCD ends in June of 2014 but Project EXC00EFGH ends January of 2015, the CNU tax account must remain open until the end of January 2015. A return for Project EXC00EFGH must be filed all the way through January 2015.

If the applicant already has a CNU tax account and it is currently set up online, please use this account to report exempt project purchases through [www.myalabamataxes.alabama.gov](http://www.myalabamataxes.alabama.gov) using the instructions provided above. The return may then be filed as usual.

\*\*\*All Consumer's Use Tax returns are due on the 20th of the month following the month in which purchases were made (i.e., the return for the month of June is due July 20th, etc. There are 20 days to file the return before it is deemed late.)

\*\*\*Any penalty waiver requests may be directed to the Sales and Use Tax Division at 1-866-576-6531. Only one waiver per 18 month period is allowed.



ALABAMA DEPARTMENT OF FINANCE
REAL PROPERTY MANAGEMENT
Division of Construction Management

www.dcm.alabama.gov, 334-242-4082, inspections@realproperty.alabama.gov

Revised December 2021

Department Use Only
Invoice #
Date Paid
Confirmation #

PERMIT FEE & PERMIT RE-INSPECTION FEE CALCULATON WORKSHEET

DCM (BC) #
Date
Project Name; Owner/Architect/Engineer Project # & Phase/Package #
Owner Entity Name
Architect/Engineer Firm Name
Contractor Company Name
Select only ONE of the following:
Basic Permit Fee. Fee is based on awarded contract sum.
Permit Re-Inspection Flat Fee.
Awarded Contract Sum:
Email address(es) for Payment Receipt:

BASIC PERMIT FEE CALCULATION:

Awarded Contract Sum is less than \$1,000: N/A

Awarded Contract Sum is \$1,001 - \$50,000:

Contract Sum or Shelter Estimate less \$1,000= /1,000 x \$5.00= +\$15.00=

Awarded Contract Sum is \$50,001 - \$100,000:

Contract Sum or Shelter Estimate less \$50,000= /1,000 x \$4.00= +\$260.00=

Awarded Contract Sum is \$100,001 - \$500,000:

Contract Sum or Shelter Estimate less \$100,000= /1,000 x \$3.00= +\$460.00=

Awarded Contract Sum is \$500,001 and up:

Contract Sum or Shelter Estimate less \$500,000= /1,000 x \$2.00= +\$1,660.00=

PERMIT RE-INSPECTION FEE:

Flat fee of \$1,500.00 per occurrence

TOTAL DUE:

Basic Permit Fee: Covers all required pre-construction conferences, construction inspections and certificate of substantial completion issuance by the DCM Inspector. This fee is due when a construction contract or self-performance letter is received by DCM and must be paid before the required Pre-Construction Conference is scheduled with the DCM Inspector.

Permit Re-Inspection Fee: May be charged if (A) the contractor has not completed the work required for the particular inspection as detailed in DCM Form B-8: Pre-Construction Conference Checklist, or (B) the inspection is canceled or rescheduled without the required minimum 48 hours notice to all parties.

Make check payable to: "Finance - Construction Management," include the DCM (BC) Project # on the check and attach the fee worksheet. Mail payment to: Finance - Construction Management, P.O. Box 301150, Montgomery, AL 36130-1150.

State agency inter-fund transfer and payments using Public School and College Authority (PSCA) funds: contact Jennie Jones at 334-242-4808 or jennie.jones@realproperty.alabama.gov.

Fees may be paid online at www.dcm.alabama.gov (in which case a completed fee worksheet is not required).

The Basic Permit Fee is subject to Final Reconciliation of Fees at the end of construction.

# PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE CHECKLIST

The following are recommended topics to be covered during the required Pre-Construction Conference. Contact the DCM Project Inspector at least fourteen (14) days prior to scheduling the conference.

*\*Item shall be discussed while Owner is present.*

	*1. Name and relationship to job of local Owner personnel
	2. Public officials involved
	3. Names of architect/engineer personnel involved
	4. Provide e-mail addresses on Pre-Construction Sign-in sheet
	5. Construction sets of plans available to contractor
	6. Verify alternates accepted, etc.
	7. Approved list of sub-contractors
	8. Approved cost breakdown & Progress Schedule
	9. Method of approving monthly payment requests <b>All State Agency, PSCA-funded University, and PSCA-funded K-12 projects: payment applications must be submitted via DocuSign PowerForm links available from DCM's website.</b> <b>Fully locally-funded University and fully locally-funded K-12 projects: submit payment applications per Owner requirements.</b>
	10. Change Orders - Documentation - no prior work, <b>unless authorized in writing</b> <b>All State Agency, public K-12, and PSCA-funded projects: change orders must be submitted via DocuSign PowerForm links available from DCM's website.</b> <b>Fully locally-funded University projects: submit change orders per Owner requirements.</b>
	11. Shop drawings, time to process
	12. Advance notice for required inspections The contractor will notify the architect by email of the date the project will be ready for an inspection by the Division of Construction Management. Inspections must be requested 14 days in advance. When the DCM Inspector confirms the inspection date and time, the architect will send an email confirming the inspection date and time to all parties as well as a copy to <a href="mailto:inspections@rpm@rpm.alabama.gov">inspections@rpm@rpm.alabama.gov</a> . Cancellations of any scheduled inspection must be received in writing no later than 48 hours prior to the scheduled inspection. If the inspection is canceled, it will be rescheduled subject to the DCM Inspector's availability. Cancellations received less than 48 hours in advance shall incur a \$1,500.00 re-inspection fee. If the contractor is not ready for the scheduled inspection he shall incur a \$1,500.00 re-inspection fee.
	13. Inspection Minimum Requirements The following minimum requirements listed below are provided to aid the contractors and architect in determining if a project is ready for a required inspection. <u>Pre-Construction Conference: Required Attendees: Contractor, Owner, Architect, Major Subs</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fully-executed construction contract and Notice to Proceed</li> <li>• Verification of permit fee payment (Exception: fully locally-funded K-12 &amp; public four-year University capital improvement, HVAC, or roof projects with both an estimated cost of \$750,000.00 or Less, and a contract awarded on or after 10/01/22, are exempt from DCM Fees.)</li> <li>• Owner's statement of responsibility (storm shelter)</li> <li>• Contractor's statement of responsibility and quality assurance plan (storm shelter)</li> <li>• Fire alarm contractor and fire sprinkler contractor certification (from State Fire Marshal)</li> <li>• ADEM permit, if more than one acre of land is disturbed</li> </ul>

	<p>13. <u>Pre-Construction Conference for Storm Shelter</u>: Required Attendees: Contractor, Owner, Architect, Structural Engineer, Major Subs, Special Inspections Representative</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The completed &amp; signed DCM Form B-15: Owner's Statement of Responsibility for Tornado Storm Shelter (Hurricane Shelter Where Applicable) must be submitted to the DCM Inspector at Pre-Construction Conference.</li> <li>• The completed &amp; signed DCM Form C-17: Contractor's Statement of Responsibility for Construction of Tornado Storm Shelter (Hurricane Shelter Where Applicable) along with required Quality Assurance Plan (QAP) must be submitted to DCM Inspector at Pre-Construction Conference.</li> </ul> <p><u>Pre-Roofing Conference</u>: Required Attendees: Contractor, Owner, Architect, Roofing Sub, Roofing Manufacturer's Representative</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Roofing submittals must be approved by the architect prior to pre-roofing conference</li> <li>• Roofing manufacturer must provide documentation that roof design and roofing materials meet code requirements for wind uplift and impact resistance</li> <li>• Copy of sample roof warranty – Note: Standard manufacturer's roofing guarantees which contain language regarding the governing of the guarantee by any state other than the State of Alabama, must be amended to exclude such language, and substituting the requirement that the Laws of the State of Alabama shall govern all such guarantees.</li> </ul> <p><u>Above Ceiling Inspections</u>: Required Attendees: Contractor, Owner, Architect, MEP Engineers, Major Subs</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All work must be completed except for installation of ceiling tiles, and/or hard ceilings</li> <li>• Space must be conditioned</li> <li>• Permanent power must be connected unless otherwise arranged with the DCM Inspector</li> <li>• Grease duct must be inspected and approved by the DCM Inspector prior to fire wrapping and above-ceiling inspection</li> </ul> <p><u>Life Safety Inspections and Final Inspection</u>: Required Attendees: Contractor, Owner, Architect, Engineers, Major Subs, Local Fire Marshal</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fire alarm certification</li> <li>• Kitchen hood fire suppression system certification</li> <li>• General contractor's 5-year roofing guarantee (DCM Form C-9)</li> <li>• Roofing manufacturer's warranty</li> <li>• Above ground and below ground sprinkler certifications</li> <li>• Completed certificate of structural engineer's observations (for storm shelter)</li> <li>• Emergency and exit lighting tests</li> <li>• Fire alarm must be monitored</li> <li>• Elevator inspection completed and certificate of operation provided by the State of Alabama Department of Labor</li> <li>• Boiler/vessels inspection completed and certificate of operation provided by the State of Alabama Department of Labor</li> <li>• Pressure test/Flush test for underground sprinkler lines (witnessed by local fire marshal, fire chief and/or DCM Inspector)</li> <li>• Flush/pressure test for new and/or existing fire hydrants</li> <li>• Must have clear egress/access and emergency (for first responders) access to building</li> <li>• Must have ADA access completed</li> </ul> <p><u>Year-End Inspection</u>: Required Attendees: Contractor, Owner, Architect, Engineers and/or Major Subs may be required</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Owner's list of documented warranty items</li> <li>• Reconciliation of user fees with DCM shall be completed prior to inspection</li> </ul>
	14. Other inspections required before work is covered
	15. Inspection report distribution – weekly per Owner-Architect Agreement
	16. Record Drawings, definition of, procedures, addenda posted, etc.
	*17. Project sign and other job signs
	18. Point of contact for project. Job Superintendent and phone number.
	*19. Overall phasing of job
	20. Contractor's duty to coordinate work of separate contractors

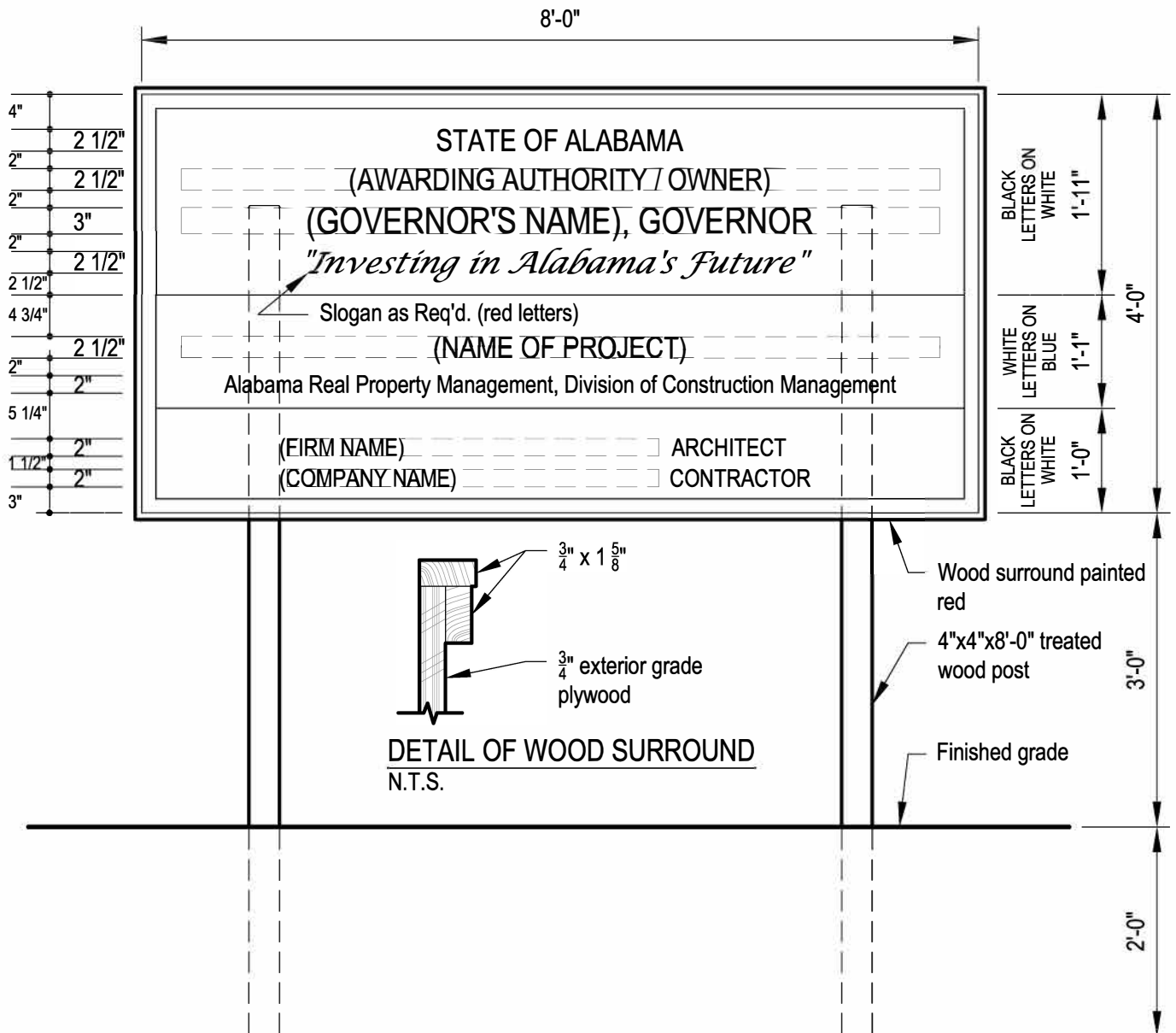
	*21. Use of site and existing building, access drive, signs
	*22. Use of existing toilets
	*23. Coordinate any utilities supplied by Owner
	*24. Coordinate outages and work in existing building with Owner
	25. Keeping existing exit paths open
	26. Routine job cleanup
	27. O.S.H.A. - Report all accidents - safety General Contractor's responsibility
	28. Contractor is reminded of obligation to comply with the Alabama Child Labor Law and E-verify
	29. Project limits
	30. Building location relative to critical property line, easement, setback, etc.
	31. Locating property line, corners, etc.
	32. Verify sanitary outfall before committing floor level
	33. ADEM land disturbance permits shall be required if site is over 1-acre.
	34. Procedure if bad soil or rock is encountered: Geotech and special inspections
	35. Stockpiling topsoil
	36. Protecting trees
	37. Soil compaction, type soil, lab tests, etc.
	38. Soil Treatment, mix on site in presence of Job Superintendent
	39. Surveyor to check foundation wall if location critical
	40. Ready mix plant, file delivery tickets, slump tests, cylinders
	41. Quality of concrete work; concrete testing
	42. Inspections before pouring concrete
	43. What is expected of masonry work, mortar additive
	44. Problems with hollow metal - install proper fire labels
	45. Pre-roofing Conference - no roofing materials installed prior to conference, all roofing submittals and warranties must have been reviewed and approved by the Architect prior to the Pre-roofing Conference. Manufacturer's Representative must be present at Pre-roofing conference. The Roofing Manufacturer must show compliance with the IBC wind and impact-resistance requirements. Contractor shall video existing building interior and exterior prior to roofing operations and provide copy to Owner.
	46. General Contractor's Roofing Guarantee and Manufacturer's Roofing Warrantees must be presented to DCM Inspector at Final Inspection and submitted with Certificate of Substantial Completion <b>for all projects via DocuSign PowerForm links available from DCM's website.</b>
	47. Potential conflict of mechanical and electrical equipment; shop drawings
	48. Return air plenums (no combustibles)
	49. Fire damper installation issues
	50. Certificate of Substantial Completion/Final Inspection <b>All projects: Certificate must be activated via DocuSign PowerForm links after final inspection and receipt of DCM Inspector's report. DocuSign PowerForm links are available from DCM's website.</b>
	51. Conduct of contractor's personnel. No interaction with staff and/or students. No foul language, no smoking or use of tobacco products, no drugs and no firearms on school property.

	52. Elevators/Pressure Vessels must be inspected and approved by the State of AL Dept. of Labor prior to final inspection.
	53. Life safety, fire alarm, sprinkler and kitchen hood fire suppression systems must be complete and certified prior to final Inspection. Also, exit and emergency lighting must be complete.
	54. Comply with ADA requirements: plumbing fixture heights, toilet partition widths, turnaround, signage, parking lot striping, etc.
	55. Coordinate with local fire authority to assure access to the building for firefighting equipment during construction and before final acceptance. Provide fire extinguishers as required.
	56. Light gauge metal roof framing and/or wood truss framing to be inspected by the structural engineer.
	57. Comply with fire hydrant requirement; coordinate with local Fire Authority or State Fire Marshal.
	58. Craft-faced insulation is not to be installed exposed.
	59. Fire alarm contractor and fire sprinkler contractor must be permitted through the State of Alabama Fire Marshal's Office. Provide permits.
	60. All sprinkler system valves must be electrically supervised
	*61. Fire alarm monitoring requirements
	62. Storm Shelter requirements <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility and Quality Assurance Plan – Provide paperwork at Pre-Construction Conference. Must be kept with Owner's storm shelter records.</li> <li>b. Certification of Structural Observations from the Structural Engineer of Record must be attached to the Certificate of Substantial Completion form <b>via DocuSign</b>.</li> <li>c. Owner's Statement of Responsibility for Tornado Storm Shelter (Hurricane Shelter Where Applicable) - Provide paperwork at Pre-Construction Conference. Must be kept with Owner's storm shelter records.</li> </ul>
	63. Third-party inspections/special inspections
	64. Release of retainage – 30 days to complete punch list and closeout
	*65. Sales tax savings (Alabama Department of Revenue)
	66. Project Closeout - precedes Final Payment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Warranties</li> <li>b. Operating and Maintenance Manuals</li> <li>c. As-built Drawings</li> <li>d. Other requirements</li> </ul>
	67. Advertisement of Completion - start ad after substantial completion <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. for projects less than \$100,000.00, <b>Advertisement of Completion is not required.</b></li> <li>b. for projects \$100,000.00 or more, Contractor advertises for 3 weeks. <b>The contractor can publish a notice in one or more of the following ways:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>In a newspaper of general circulation in the county or counties in which the work, or some portion thereof, has been done.</b></li> <li>• <b>On a website that is maintained by a newspaper of general circulation in the county or counties in which the work, or some portion thereof, has been done.</b></li> <li>• <b>On a website utilized by the awarding authority for publishing notices.</b></li> <li>• <b>If no newspaper is published in the county in which the work was done, and if the awarding authority does not utilize a website for the purpose of publishing notices, the notice may be given by posting at the courthouse for 30 days, and proof of the posting of the notice shall be given by the awarding authority and the contractor.</b></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	68. Time Extensions
	69. Final Payment Application checklist



## DETAIL OF PROJECT SIGN

N.T.S.



**Notes:**

1. Fully locally-funded State Agency and Public University projects: DCM Form C-15 must be included in the project manual regardless of expected bid amount. If the awarded contract sum is \$100,000.00 or more, Contractor shall furnish and erect a project sign.  
Fully locally-funded K-12 school projects: Project sign is not required unless requested by Owner, if project sign is requested by Owner, include DCM Form C-15 in the project manual.  
Partially or fully PSCA-funded projects: DCM Form C-15 must be included in the project manual. Contractor shall furnish and erect a project sign for all PSCA-funded projects, regardless of contract sum. "Alabama Public School and College Authority" as well as the local owner entity must be included as awarding authorities on the project sign of all PSCA-funded projects. Exception: Alabama Community College System (ACCS) PSCA-funded projects with Notice-To-Proceeds issued after July 31, 2021 are not submitted to DCM.  
Fully locally-funded ACCS projects with Notice-To-Proceeds issued prior to August 1, 2021: DCM Form C-15 must be included in the project manual regardless of expected bid amount. If the awarded contract sum is \$100,000.00 or more, Contractor shall furnish and erect a project sign.
2. Sign to be constructed of 3/4" exterior grade plywood.
3. Paint with two coats best grade exterior paint before letters are painted. Option: In lieu of painted lettering on plywood, a corrugated plastic sign (displaying the same lettering, layout and colors as above) may be secured directly to the unpainted exterior grade plywood.
4. Sign shall be placed in a prominent location and easily readable from existing street or roadway.
5. Sign shall be maintained in good condition until project completion.
6. Slogan: Act 2020-167's title "Investing In Alabama's Future" should be placed on the project signs of all PSCA-funded projects, otherwise the Awarding Authority/Owner's slogan, if any, should be used. If the Awarding Authority/Owner of a fully locally-funded project does not have a slogan, the project sign does not require a slogan.

DCM (BC) No. \_\_\_\_\_

PSCA Projects: PSCA No. \_\_\_\_\_

Application No. \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

# APPLICATION and CERTIFICATE for PAYMENT

Attach DCM Form C-10SOV: Schedule of Values

TO OWNER: Entity Name: Address:	PROJECT:
FROM CONTRACTOR: Company Name & Address, which must exactly match co. name & payment address spelling as registered in State of AL Accounting & Resource System (STAARS) or AL Buys to avoid rejection: STAARS or AL Buys Vendor #:	ARCHITECT / ENGINEER: Firm Name: Address:

A. Total Original Contract	\$ _____
B. Fully Executed (fully signed) Change Order(s) Numbers ___ through ___	+\$ _____
C. Total Contract To Date	\$ _____
<hr/>	
1. Work Completed to Date per attached Schedule of Values <i>(Form C-10SOV's Column F Total)</i>	\$ _____
2. Materials Presently Stored <i>(When this amount is greater than \$0.00, attach Form C-10SM: Inventory of Stored Materials, or similar list)</i>	+\$ _____
3. Total Work Completed to Date & Materials Presently Stored ( <u>      </u> % of Contract To Date)	\$ _____
4. Less Retainage <i>(If Total Work Completed to Date &amp; Materials Presently Stored (#3) is less than or equal to 50% of Total Contract to Date (C), Retainage = #3 x 0.05. Once #3 exceeds 50% of C and up until project is complete, Retainage = C x 0.025. \$0 is retained on final payment application, see last bullet point below Instructions.)</i>	-\$ _____
5. Total Due	\$ _____
6. Less Total Previous Payments Billed <i>(Must exactly match #5 Total Due from previous payment application. # 6 is \$0.00 if there is no previous payment application)</i>	-\$ _____
7. Balance Due This Estimate	\$ _____

Final pay app?  Yes.

### CONTRACTOR'S CERTIFICATION

The undersigned Contractor certifies that to the best of his knowledge, information, and belief the Work covered by this Application for Payment has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents, that all amounts have been paid by him for Work for which previous Certificates for Payments were issued and payments received from the Owner and that current payment shown herein has not yet been received.

By: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_  
Contractor's Signature

Name & Title \_\_\_\_\_

Sworn and subscribed before me this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_  
Month, Year

Seal:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public's Signature

### ARCHITECT'S / ENGINEER'S CERTIFICATION

In accordance with the Contract Documents, the Architect/ Engineer certifies to the Owner that, to the best of the Architect's/ Engineer's knowledge and belief, the Work has progressed to the point indicated herein, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, and the Contractor is entitled to payment of the amount approved.

By \_\_\_\_\_  
Architect's / Engineer's Signature

Name & Title \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_

### INSTRUCTIONS

- PSCA-funded projects, and State Agency-owned projects: Two copies of pay. app., each with original signatures and all attachments required.
- Date of first payment application cannot precede the Notice to Proceed's Begin Date.
- Pay. app. must exactly match an attached DCM Form C-10SOV: Schedule of Values.
- A change order must be fully executed before inclusion on a payment application.
- Contractor's signature date cannot precede the payment application date.
- Contractor and Notary signee dates must match.
- Progress schedules must be included with non-final payment applications.
- One payment application per month may be submitted.
- On a final payment application, the following is required for release of retainage: all change orders must be fully executed (signed by all parties and approval authorities) and included in B., the Certificate of Substantial Completion for entire work is fully executed, and all other close-out requirements per General Conditions Article 34 are completed.

### APPROVAL

\_\_\_\_\_  
Owner Entity

By \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

Name & Title \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_

# SCHEDULE OF VALUES (SOV)

DCM Form C-10SOV  
Revised October 2021

Project:	DCM (BC) Project Number:
	PSCA Project Number, if any:

Contractor Company:	Application Number:
	Application Date:
	Period From: <span style="float: right;">Period To:</span>

A	B	C	D		E	F	G	H	I	J
Item No.	Description of Work	Scheduled Value (including fully executed [signed by all parties] change order amounts)	Work Completed		Total Work Completed to Date (This application SOV's D + E)	Materials Presently Stored (G total greater than \$0 must match C-10SM's column E total. This SOV's G amounts are not in this SOV's D nor E amounts.)	Total Work Completed to Date & Materials Presently Stored (This SOV's F + G)	Percent of Contract Completed to Date (This SOV's H / C)	Retainage (This column's Total's cell formula calculates the applicable variable rate)	
			Work Previously Completed (Previous pay app SOV's column F. D is \$0 if this SOV is for first pay app.)	Work Completed This Period (Period as noted above)						
1.					\$ -		\$ -		Retainage Variable Rate:  If Total Work Completed to Date & Materials Presently Stored (H) is less than or equal to 50% of Total Scheduled Value (C), Retainage = H x 0.05.  Once H exceeds 50% of C and up until project is complete, Retainage = C x 0.025.  There will be no retainage on final payment application.	
2.					\$ -		\$ -			
3.					\$ -		\$ -			
4.					\$ -		\$ -			
5.					\$ -		\$ -			
6.					\$ -		\$ -			
7.					\$ -		\$ -			
8.					\$ -		\$ -			
9.					\$ -		\$ -			
10.					\$ -		\$ -			
11.					\$ -		\$ -			
12.					\$ -		\$ -			
13.					\$ -		\$ -			
14.					\$ -		\$ -			
15.					\$ -		\$ -			
16.					\$ -		\$ -			
17.					\$ -		\$ -			
18.					\$ -		\$ -			
19.					\$ -		\$ -			
20.					\$ -		\$ -			
21.					\$ -		\$ -			
22.					\$ -		\$ -			
23.					\$ -		\$ -			
24.					\$ -		\$ -			
25.					\$ -		\$ -			
<b>TOTALS:</b>		\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	

This pay app SOV's column totals must match amounts in this pay app Form C-10 per the following indicated Form C-10 line #s:	C.	None	None	1.	2.	3.	3.	4.
--	----	------	------	----	----	----	----	----

Note: If this SOV's column G: Materials Presently Stored includes any amounts other than \$0, then DCM Form C-10SM: Inventory of Stored Materials with back-up receipts must be submitted as part of the payment application documentation.



<b>SAMPLE PROGRESS SCHEDULE &amp; REPORT</b>			CONTRACTOR (Contractor may use own form in lieu of Form C-11):				DATE OF REPORT:			
DCM (BC) No.:							PROCEED DATE:			
PSCA projects: PSCA No.:										
PROJECT:			ARCHITECT/ENGINEER:							

WORK DIVISION	%	AMOUNT													
1. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS															
2. SITEWORK															
3. CONCRETE															
4. MASONRY															
5. METALS															
6. WOOD AND PLASTIC															100%
7. THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION															90%
8. DOORS AND WINDOWS															80%
9. FINISHES															70%
10. SPECIALTIES															60%
11. EQUIPMENT															50%
12. FURNISHINGS															40%
13. SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION															30%
14. CONVEYING SYSTEMS															20%
15. MECHANICAL															10%
16. ELECTRICAL															0%
TOTAL ORIG. CONTRACT	100%														
ANTICIPATED DRAW IN \$1,000															
ACTUAL DRAW IN \$1,000															

**LEGEND:**     ANTICIPATED ACTIVITY   
  ACTUAL ACTIVITY   
  ANTICIPATED CASH FLOW   
  ACTUAL CASH FLOW

USE ADDITIONAL SHEETS IF JOB IS SCHEDULED OVER 12 MONTHS.

DCM Form C-11  
August 2021

**Alabama Department of Finance  
Real Property Management  
Division of Construction Management**

770 Washington Avenue, Suite 444  
Montgomery, Alabama 36104  
(334) 242-4082 (phone)

DCM Form B-12  
Revised July 2022

**CHANGE ORDER  
CHECKLIST**

*For use with DCM Form C-12 and DCM Form 9-J*

**WHICH FORM DO YOU USE?**

Use **DCM Form C-12** for contracts of state agencies and departments and State Department of Education (SDE) projects. Also use for ACCS projects with Notice-to-Proceeds issued prior to August 1, 2021. Use **DCM Form 9-J** for contracts of projects partially or fully Public School and College Authority (PSCA)-funded, except for ACCS projects with Notice-To-Proceeds issued after July 31, 2021. Include a completed **DCM Form B-11: Change Order Justification** with **each copy** of either DCM Forms C-12 or 9-J.

Verify that the following information is inserted in the spaces provided on the CONTRACT CHANGE ORDER form, or attached to the form where attachments are noted to be acceptable or obviously necessary. Do not staple forms; use clips.	
<b>1.</b>	<b>CHANGE ORDER NUMBER:</b> Insert current change order number.
<b>2.</b>	<b>DATE:</b> Insert date.
<b>3.</b>	<b>DCM (BC) PROJECT NUMBER:</b> Insert DCM Project Number in the block provided at top of document.
<b>4.</b>	<b>CONTRACTOR</b> Insert name and address of the Contractor, exactly as they appear on the Construction Contract.
<b>5.</b>	<b>NAME OF PROJECT:</b> Under "Project", insert the complete name of the project as identified in the bid documents. If using DCM Form 9-J, insert the PSCA Project Number in the space provided.
<b>6.</b>	<b>CONTRACTOR'S PROPOSALS:</b> Under "TERMS", identify the change order proposals submitted by the contractor that are being addressed by the Contract Change Order. Identify these proposals by inserting their dates.
<b>7.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION OF THE CHANGE(S) IN WORK:</b> Fully describe the change or changes to the original contract work for which the Construction Contract is being modified. This description should be written so that a reader of the document who is not directly involved in the project can understand what is being changed. If the space provided on the form is inadequate for such a description, use attachments and cite them.
<b>8.</b>	<b>CONTRACT AND CHANGE ORDER AMOUNTS:</b> Insert the applicable dollar amounts to record the original contract sum, change orders, and the currently revised contract sum.
<b>9.</b>	<b>EXTENSION OF TIME:</b> If the Contract Time is being extended by the Contract Change Order, insert appropriate number of <b>calendar days</b> in the space provided. If the Contract Time is not being extended, insert "NONE".
<b>10.</b>	<b>RESPONSIBILITY FOR CHANGE ORDER FUNDING - DCM Form 9-J ONLY:</b> The authority responsible for funding the change order is to be identified in the following sentence in the form,: "The amount of this Change Order will be the responsibility of _____." Insert whichever is appropriate: (1) "PSCA", (2) name of LEA, or (3) "PSCA" and name of LEA.
<b>11.</b>	<b>SIGNATURES:</b> The signature spaces for State Agency, PSCA and fully locally-funded Alabama Community College System projects are different from each other. Download the appropriate document per Owner/project type from <a href="http://www.dcm.alabama.gov/forms.aspx">www.dcm.alabama.gov/forms.aspx</a> . Before submitting a Contract Change Order to DCM, the document must be signed by the contractor, surety (for additive change orders only), design professional and owner (local owner or using agency). Signature by the surety is not necessary on deductive change orders or change orders involving only extensions of time. If the cumulative change order amount exceeds 10% of the original contract amount then the Owner's legal consultant must sign DCM Form B-11: Change Order Justification.
<b>12.</b>	<b>ATTACHMENTS:</b> To each <b>of the three (3) copies (with original signatures)</b> of the Contract Change Order form, attach with clips (do not staple): a. Contractor's change order proposals and/or invoices providing a detailed breakdown of change order costs. General Contractors (GC) must include subcontractors' (sub) quotes as backup. All GC and sub quotes must be broken down by labor (hours and rates), materials including quantities and unit prices (with receipts or quotes attached), equipment whether rented or owned (with receipts or quotes attached), and Overhead & Profit (OH&P). 1. Total OH&P can be a maximum of 25% divided between GC and subs; GC can have a maximum of 15% OH&P (in which case a sub could have up to 10% OH&P). See General Conditions- Article #19. 2. Sales tax cannot be included in change orders. 3. Deductive change orders also require backup including breakdown of labor and material, and must also deduct OH&P if included in original bid. Include specification section regarding allowances. b. <b>POWER OF ATTORNEY</b> for the individual signing the Contract Change Order for the surety. c. <b>DCM Form B-11, CHANGE ORDER JUSTIFICATION:</b> completed and signed by the design professional and owner.

*This form is provided solely for the purpose of inclusion in the project manual. A Construction Contract for fully locally-funded K-12 projects must be initiated via the appropriate DocuSign link from DCM's webpage [https://dcm.alabama.gov/forms\\_publicK12.aspx](https://dcm.alabama.gov/forms_publicK12.aspx) by the Lead Design Professional Firm.*

DCM Form C-12 (fully locally-funded K-12 school project)  
June 2023

*A Change Order is not valid without an accompanying completed Change Order Justification (DCM Form B-11).*

## CONTRACT CHANGE ORDER

Change Order No. \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_ DCM (BC) No. \_\_\_\_\_

<b>TO: (Contractor)</b> Co. Name: Address:	<b>PROJECT:</b>
--	-----------------

TERMS: You are hereby authorized, subject to the provisions of your Contract for this project, to make the following changes thereto in accordance with your proposal(s) dated \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_.

FURNISH the necessary labor, materials, and equipment to (*Description of work to be done or changes to be made. If the description is continued in an attachment, identify the attachment below; only use an attachment if fields below become full.*):

Description continued from Page 1:

<b>ORIGINAL CONTRACT SUM</b>		\$ _____
<b>NET TOTAL OF PREVIOUS CHANGE ORDERS</b>		\$ _____
<b>PREVIOUS REVISED CONTRACT SUM</b>		\$ _____
<b>THIS CHANGE ORDER WILL</b>	<b>INCREASE</b>	<b>DECREASE</b>
	<b>THE CONTRACT SUM BY</b>	
		\$ _____
<b>REVISED CONTRACT SUM, INCLUDING THIS CHANGE ORDER</b>		\$ _____

**EXTENSION OF TIME** resulting from this Change Order    None    or    \_\_\_\_\_ Calendar days.

The Owner does hereby certify that this Change Order was executed in accordance with the provisions of Title 39, Code of Alabama, 1975, as amended.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Architectural/Engineering Firm

Recommended By \_\_\_\_\_  
Name & Title \_\_\_\_\_

**APPROVAL**

**ALABAMA STATE DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION  
(SDE)**  
*(Required for locally-funded, SDE projects.)*

By \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_  
State Superintendent of Education

**CONTRACTING PARTIES**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Contractor Company

By \_\_\_\_\_  
Name & Title \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Awarding Authority/Owner Entity

By \_\_\_\_\_  
Name & Title \_\_\_\_\_

**CONSENT OF SURETY** (for additive \$ change orders only)

\_\_\_\_\_  
Surety Company

By \_\_\_\_\_  
(Attach current Power of Attorney)  
Name & Title \_\_\_\_\_

*Routing of the Construction Contract to reviewers and e-signers is automated through DocuSign. DocuSign links for fully locally-funded contract documents are available from DCM's webpage [https://dcm.alabama.gov/forms\\_publicK12.aspx](https://dcm.alabama.gov/forms_publicK12.aspx).*



TO: **Alabama Department of Finance**  
**Real Property Management**  
**Division of Construction Management**  
 770 Washington Avenue, Suite 444  
 Montgomery, Alabama 36104  
 (334) 242-4082 FAX (334) 242-4182

# CHANGE ORDER JUSTIFICATION

Change Order No. \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

DCM (BC) No. \_\_\_\_\_

*Purpose and instructions on next page.  
Do not staple this form and/or attachments; use clips.*

<b>(A)</b>	PROJECT NAME & LOCATION:	OWNER ENTITY NAME & ADDRESS:
	CONTRACTOR COMPANY NAME & ADDRESS:	ARCHITECTURAL / ENGINEERING FIRM NAME & ADDRESS:
<b>(B)</b>	DESCRIPTION OF PROPOSED CHANGE(S): <b>ATTACH CONTRACTOR'S DETAILED COST PROPOSAL(s)</b>	
	AMOUNT: <input type="checkbox"/> ADD <input type="checkbox"/> DEDUCT \$ _____ TIME EXTENSION: _____ CALENDAR DAYS	
<b>(C)</b>	ORIGINAL CONTRACT AMOUNT \$ _____ + \$ _____ = \$ _____	PREVIOUS C.O.'s _____ THRU _____ CONTRACT AMOUNT PRIOR TO PROPOSED CHANGE ORDER
<b>(D)</b>	JUSTIFICATION FOR NEED OF CHANGE(S):	
<b>(E)</b>	JUSTIFICATION OF CHANGE ORDER vs. COMPETITIVE BID:	
<b>(F)</b>	ARCHITECT / ENGINEER'S EVALUATION OF PROPOSED COST:	
<b>(G)</b>	<b>CHANGE ORDER RECOMMENDED</b>  _____ ARCHITECTURAL / ENGINEERING FIRM NAME  By: _____ ARCHITECT / ENGINEER'S SIGNATURE  By: _____ OWNER'S PROJECT REPRESENTATIVE'S SIGNATURE	<b>CHANGE ORDER JUSTIFIED AND APPROVED</b>  _____ LOCAL OWNER ENTITY NAME  By: _____ OWNER'S SIGNATURE  By: _____ OWNER'S LEGAL COUNSEL'S SIGNATURE

## CHANGE ORDER JUSTIFICATION: PURPOSE and INSTRUCTIONS

### PURPOSE

The awarding of work through an existing contract may potentially conflict with, or violate, the "Competitive Bid Laws" of the State of Alabama. **The determination of legality of Change Orders rests with the Awarding Authority and its legal advisor.** In a June 15, 1979, Opinion, the Office of the Attorney General offered guidelines for making such determinations in conjunction with considering the facts and merits of each situation. The purpose of the CHANGE ORDER JUSTIFICATION is to provide a means through which the Awarding Authority considers these guidelines and the intent of the "Competitive Bid Laws" when authorizing Change Orders. Pursuant to these guidelines, the following types of changes meet the criteria for awarding work through Change Orders in lieu of through the Competitive Bid process:

- I. Minor Changes for a monetary value less than required for competitive bidding.
- II. Changes for matters relatively minor and incidental to the original contract necessitated by unforeseeable circumstances arising during the course of the work.
- III. Emergencies arising during the course of the work of the contract.
- IV. Bid alternates provided for in the original bidding where there is no difference in price of the change order from the original best bid on the alternate.
- V. Changes of relatively minor items not contemplated when the plans and specifications were prepared and the project was bid which are in the public interest and which do not exceed 10% of the contract price.

Under these guidelines the cumulative total of Change Orders, including any negotiations to bring the original contract price within the funds available, would become questionable if the total of such changes and negotiations exceed 10% of the original contract price. These guidelines are not intended to interfere with the Awarding Authority's good faith discretion to respond to specific situations in the public's best interest. If the cumulative change order amount exceeds 10% of the original contract amount then the Owner's legal consultant must sign the Change Order Justification prior to submission to the Division of Construction Management (DCM).

### INSTRUCTIONS

The CHANGE ORDER JUSTIFICATION is to be prepared by the design professional, who has evaluated the fairness and reasonableness of the proposed cost of the change(s) and recommends that the proposed Change Order be executed. The fully executed Form B-11: CHANGE ORDER JUSTIFICATION must accompany the proposed DCM Form C-12: Change Order. Instructions for completing the B-11 form are:

1. Insert the proposed Change Order Number, date of the Justification, and DCM (BC) Project Number in the spaces provided in the upper right-hand corner.
2. **Section (A):** Insert the complete name and address of the PROJECT, OWNER, CONTRACTOR, AND ARCHITECT/ENGINEER.
3. **Section (B):** Provide a complete description of the proposed changes in work, referring to and attaching revised specifications and/or drawings as appropriate. An attachment may be used if additional space is needed, but insert the proposed amount and time extension of the change(s) in the spaces provided. **Attached a copy of the contractor's detailed cost proposal.**
4. **Section (C):** Insert the Original Contract amount, the net increase or decrease of previous Change Orders, and the Current Contract amount (preceding the currently proposed Change Order).
5. **Section (D):** Explain why it is necessary, or in the public's interest, to make the proposed change(s) to the Work.
6. **Section (E):** Explain why award of the changed work to the existing contractor instead of awarding the work under the competitive bid process is justified.
7. **Section (F):** The design professional must state his evaluation of the reasonableness and fairness of the proposed costs based upon his review of the contractor's proposal.
8. **Section (G):** The design professional must recommend the Change Order to the Owner by signing the document; the Owner may require such recommendation from other individuals. The Owner must sign the document indicating that they believe change order action in lieu of the competitive bid process is justified for the proposed change(s). **Review of the matter and signing of the document by the Owner's legal counsel is highly recommended. If the cumulative change order amount exceeds 10% of the original contract amount then the Owner's legal consultant must sign the Change Order Justification prior to submission to DCM.**

# GENERAL CONTRACTOR'S ROOFING GUARANTEE

DCM Project No. \_\_\_\_\_

Project Name & Address	Project Owner Entity(ies) Name(s) & Address(es)
------------------------	---

General Contractor's Company Name, Address, & Telephone Number	<b>EFFECTIVE DATES OF GUARANTEE</b>
	Date of Acceptance:
	Date of Expiration:

1. The General Contractor does hereby certify that the roofing work included in this contract was installed in strict accordance with all requirements of the plans and specifications and in accordance with approved roofing manufacturers recommendations.
2. The General Contractor does hereby guarantee the roofing and associated work including but not limited to all flashing and counter flashing both composition and metal, roof decking and/or sheathing; all materials used as a roof substrate or insulation over which roof is applied; promenade decks or any other work on the surface of the roof; metal work; gravel stops and roof expansion joints to be absolutely watertight and free from all leaks, due to faulty or defective materials and workmanship for a period of five (5) years, starting on the date of substantial completion of the project. This guarantee does not include liability for damage to interior contents of building due to roof leaks, nor does it extend to any deficiency which was caused by the failure of work which the general contractor did not damage or did not accomplish or was not charged to accomplish.
3. Subject to the terms and conditions listed below, the General Contractor also guarantees that during the Guarantee Period he will, at his own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to, or replacements of said work, in accordance with the roofing manufacturers standards as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and/or materials which may develop in the work including, but not limited to: blisters, delamination, exposed felts, ridges, wrinkles, splits, warped insulation and/or loose flashings, etc. in a manner pursuant to the total anticipated life of the roofing system and the best standards applicable to the particular roof type in value and in accordance with construction documents as are necessary to maintain said work in satisfactory condition, and further, to respond on or within three (3) calendar days upon proper notification or leaks or defects by the Owner or Architect.

- A. Specifically excluded from this Guarantee are damages to the work, other parts of the building and building contents caused by: (1) lightning, windstorm, hailstorm and other unusual phenomena of the elements; and (2) fire. When the work has been damaged by any of the foregoing causes, the Guarantee shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by the General Contractor, and until the cost and expense thereof has been paid by the Owner or by the responsible party so designated.
- B. During the Guarantee Period, if the Owner allows alteration of the work by anyone other than the General Contractor, including cutting, patching and maintenance in connection with penetrations, and positioning of anything on the roof, this Guarantee shall become null and void upon the date of said alterations. If the owner engages the General Contractor to perform said alterations, the Guarantee shall not become null and void, unless the General Contractor, prior to proceeding with the said work, shall have notified the Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate the work, thereby reasonably justifying a termination of this Guarantee.
- C. Future building additions will not void this guarantee, except for that portion of the future addition that might affect the work under this contract at the point of connection of the roof areas, and any damage caused by such addition. If this contract is for roofing of an addition to an existing building, then this guarantee covers the work involved at the point of connection with the existing roof.
- D. During the Guarantee period, if the original use of the roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use of service more severe than originally specified, this Guarantee shall become null and void upon the date of said change.
- E. The Owner shall promptly notify the General Contractor of observed, known or suspected leaks, defects or deterioration, and shall afford reasonable opportunity for the General Contractor to inspect the work, and to examine the evidence of such leaks, defects or deterioration.

IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this \_\_\_\_\_ day  
of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

---

General Contractor's Authorized Signature

---

Typed Name and Title

TO: **Alabama Department of Finance**  
**Real Property Management**  
**Division of Construction Management**  
 770 Washington Avenue, Suite 444  
 Montgomery, AL 36130-1150  
 (334) 242-4082

DCM Form C-13  
 Revised November 2022;  
 (Note: Use DCM Form C-13A for fully locally-funded K-12 & Public 4-  
 Year University Capital Improvement, HVAC, & Roof Projects with both a  
 total cost of \$750,000 or Less and a contract awarded on or after 10/01/22)

# CERTIFICATE OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

*Do not staple this form and/or attachments; use clips.  
 Print single-sided; do not submit double-side printed documents.*

**ROUTING PROCEDURES ON NEXT PAGE**

**DCM (BC) No.** \_\_\_\_\_

<b>OWNER ENTITY NAME AND ADDRESS:</b>  Email to receive executed copy: _____	<b>ARCHITECTURAL / ENGINEERING FIRM NAME AND ADDRESS:</b>  Email to receive executed copy: _____
<b>CONTRACTOR COMPANY NAME AND ADDRESS:</b>  Email to receive executed copy: _____	<b>BONDING COMPANY NAME AND ADDRESS:</b>  Email to receive executed copy: _____
<b>PROJECT:</b>  _____ _____	

**Substantial Completion** has been achieved for  the entire Work  the following portion of the Work:

\_\_\_\_\_.

The **Date of Substantial Completion** of the Work covered by this certificate is established to be \_\_\_\_\_.

"Substantial Completion" means the designated Work is sufficiently complete, in accordance with the Contract Documents, such that the Owner may occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use without disruption or interference by the Contractor in completing or correcting any remaining unfinished Work. The Date of Substantial Completion is the date upon which all warranties for the designated Work commence, unless otherwise agreed and recorded herein.

**Punch List:** A \_\_\_\_\_ page list of items to be completed or corrected prior to the Owner's approval of Final Payment is attached hereto, but does not alter the Contractor's responsibility to complete or correct all Work in full compliance with the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall complete or correct all items on the attached list, ready for re-inspection for Final Acceptance, within 30 days after the above Date of Substantial Completion, unless another date is stated here: \_\_\_\_\_.

If completed or corrected within this period, warranties of these items commence on the Date of Substantial Completion, otherwise such warranties commence on the date of Final Acceptance of each item.

**Only one (1) originally executed substantial completion form shall be routed for signature. DCM office will mail the fully-executed original to the Owner and email copies to all parties.**

<b>RECOMMENDED BY</b> <i>(signature and email address required):</i>	
ARCHITECT/ENGINEER: _____	DATE: _____
<b>CONTRACTING PARTIES:</b>	
CONTRACTOR: _____	DATE: _____
OWNER: _____	DATE: _____
_____	DATE: _____
<b>APPROVALS:</b>	
DCM INSPECTOR: _____	DATE: _____
DCM CHIEF INSPECTOR: _____	DATE: _____
DCM DIRECTOR: _____	DATE: _____

# CERTIFICATE OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION ROUTING PROCEDURE

**Only one (1) originally executed substantial completion form shall be routed for signature. DCM office will mail the fully-executed original to the owner and email copies to all parties.**

**ARCHITECT/ENGINEER:** Sign and date document, then mail it to Contractor. Provide Owner with DCM Inspector's name & field office address; territories and addresses are available at [www.dcm.alabama.gov/staff.aspx](http://www.dcm.alabama.gov/staff.aspx).

**CONTRACTOR:** Sign and date document, then mail it to Owner.

**OWNER:** Sign and date document, then mail it to DCM Inspector's field office address; DCM Inspector territories and addresses are available at [www.dcm.alabama.gov/staff.aspx](http://www.dcm.alabama.gov/staff.aspx).

**DCM INSPECTOR:** Sign and date document, then mail it to DCM Montgomery office.

**DCM OFFICE:** After review and signature/date by DCM Chief Inspector and DCM Director, DCM office will mail the fully-executed original document to Owner and will email copies to all parties.

## NOTICE

**THE EXECUTED "GENERAL CONTRACTOR'S ROOFING GUARANTEE" (DCM Form C-9) AND ANY OTHER ROOFING WARRANTY REQUIRED BY THE CONTRACT MUST ACCOMPANY THIS CERTIFICATE TO OBTAIN DCM APPROVAL.**

Also, any standard manufacturer's roofing guarantees which contain language regarding the governing of the guarantee by any state other than the State of Alabama, must be amended to exclude such language, and substituting the requirement that the Laws of the State of Alabama shall govern all such guarantees.

DCM (BC) No. \_\_\_\_\_

# CERTIFICATION OF STRUCTURAL OBSERVATIONS

for

Project Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Owner Entity: \_\_\_\_\_

Contractor Company: \_\_\_\_\_

I \_\_\_\_\_, do hereby verify that I have personally conducted the visual  
\_\_\_\_\_ Design Professional  
observations of the construction of the structural system for conformance to the approved construction documents for the referenced project. The visual observations of the structural systems were personally conducted by me at all significant construction stages and at the completion of the construction of the structural system. To the best of my knowledge, all structural deficiencies have been resolved except as noted below:

Signed and sealed on this date, \_\_\_\_\_, 20 \_\_\_\_.

Design Professional's Seal:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Architectural / Engineering Firm

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Architect or Structural Engineer of Record

\_\_\_\_\_  
Printed Name

**Specifications:** This form must be included in the project manual submitted to DCM for Final Plan Review for:

- All new public K-12 schools, awarded after July 1, 2010, with tornado storm shelters as required by Act 2010-746.
- All public K-12 additions and renovations which are required to contain tornado storm shelters by the International Building Code, Section 423.
- All private K-12 new schools, additions and renovations as required by the International Building Code, Section 423.
- All new buildings containing classrooms or dorm rooms on the grounds of all public 2-year or 4-year institutions of higher education, statewide, awarded on or after August 1, 2012, as required by Act 2012-554. Exception: Alabama Community College System (ACCS) projects with Notice-To-Proceeds issued after July 31, 2021 are not submitted to DCM.

**Submittal of Form:** Provide a copy of the completed form to the DCM Inspector at Final Inspection. The original completed form, signed and sealed by the architect or structural engineer of record, must be included as an attachment to the Certificate of Substantial Completion submitted to DCM for:

- All new buildings constructed on the grounds of new public K-12 schools awarded after July 1, 2010.
- All new buildings containing classrooms or dorm rooms constructed on the grounds of public 2-year or 4-year institutions of higher education awarded on or after August 1, 2012. Exception: Alabama Community College System (ACCS) projects with Notice-To-Proceeds issued after July 31, 2021 are not submitted to DCM.

# FINAL PAYMENT CHECKLIST (FPC)

To be completed by the Architect/Engineer and submitted to DCM for review; applicable only to state agencies, partially or fully PSCA-funded and other bond-funded projects (exception: Alabama Community College System (ACCS) PSCA-funded projects with Notice-To-Proceeds issued after July 31, 2021). Two copies of the FPC are required. Each copy of the FPC shall include all attachments including the Contractor's Application for Final Payment. If all PSCA funds are expended prior to Final Payment, it is not a requirement to submit the Application & Certificate for Final Payment along with the supporting documentation to DCM.

(For further guidance refer to Article 34/Final Payment of DCM Form C-8: General Conditions of the Contract.)

<b>PROJECT:</b>	DCM (BC) No. _____
	PSCA No. _____ <small>(If applicable)</small>

YES	N/A	Select "YES" or "N/A" as applicable.
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Application and Certificate for Final Payment, DCM Form C-10: Attach one copy to FPC. The application must include original signatures of all parties and include all application attachments.
<input type="checkbox"/>		Certificate of Substantial Completion, DCM Form C-13: Attach one fully-executed copy to FPC.
<input type="checkbox"/>		Advertisement for Completion, DCM Form C-14: Attach one copy of the affidavit of publication (including the advertisement) to the FPC.
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts & Claims, DCM Form C-18: Attach one copy to FPC.
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens, if required by Owner, DCM Form C-19: Attach one copy to the FPC.
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Consent of Surety to Final Payment, if any, To Contractor, DCM Form C-20: Consent is required for projects with P&P Bonds. Original has been delivered to Owner. Attach one copy to FPC.
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	General Contractor's Roofing Guarantee, DCM Form C-9, and Other Specified Roofing Guarantees, if any: Attached to Certificate of Substantial Completion.
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Contractor's One-Year Warranty: Original has been delivered to the Owner. Attach one copy to the FPC.
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Other Warranties: All other specified original warranties has been delivered to the Owner. Attach one copy to the FPC.
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Record Documents: Specified "As-built" plans and specifications have been delivered to the Owner.
<input type="checkbox"/>		O & M Manuals: Specified instructions and O&M Manuals have been delivered to the Owner.
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Time Extension: Over-run of Contract Time has been reconciled by: <input type="checkbox"/> Change Order <input type="checkbox"/> Liquidated Damages <input type="checkbox"/> Attached explanation
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Additional Documents or Explanations which are attached:

<b>Submitted By:</b>		
	Architectural / Engineering Firm	
Signature	Printed Name and Title	Date

**Final Reconciliation of Fees:** Between the final change order execution and the year-end inspection, report the final project cost to <https://appengine.egov.com/apps/al/dcm-fees> (back-up is not needed unless requested by DCM). DCM will then email a Final Reconciliation of Fees Statement to the Owner. If the Final Statement shows a net payment is owed to DCM, that amount must be paid prior to scheduling the year-end inspection. If the Final Statement shows a net refund is owed then a check will be mailed to the Owner.



DCM (BC) Number: \_\_\_\_\_

PSCA Projects: PSCA Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of the Construction Contract: \_\_\_\_\_

## Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims

<b>To Owner</b> ( <i>Entity name and address</i> ):	<b>Project</b> ( <i>Same as appears in the Construction Contract</i> ):
---	---

STATE OF:

COUNTY OF:

The undersigned hereby certifies that, except as listed below, payment has been made in full and all obligations have otherwise been satisfied for all materials and equipment furnished, for all work, labor and services performed, and for all known indebtedness and claims against the Contractor for damages arising in any manner in connection with the performance of the Construction Contract referenced above for which the Owner or Owner's property might in any way be held responsible or encumbered.

EXCEPTIONS:

Supporting Documents Attached Hereto:

1. Consent of Surety to Final Payment. Whenever Surety is involved, Consent of Surety is required. DCM Form C-20, Consent of Surety to Final Payment, may be used for this purpose.

Indicate attachment:     Yes     No

The following supporting document should be attached hereto if required by the Owner:

1. Contractor's Release of Waiver of Liens.
2. Separate Releases or Waivers of Liens from Subcontractors and material and equipment supplies, to the extent required by the Owner, accompanied by the list thereof.
3. Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens, DCM Form C-19.

**Contractor** (*Insert company name and address*):

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of authorized representative

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name and Title

Sworn to and subscribed before me this \_\_\_\_\_ day  
of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public's Signature

My commission expires: \_\_\_\_\_

Seal:

DCM (BC) Number: \_\_\_\_\_

PSCA Projects: PSCA Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of the Construction Contract: \_\_\_\_\_

## Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens

<b>To Owner</b> ( <i>Entity name and address</i> ):	<b>Project</b> ( <i>Same as appears in the Construction Contract</i> ):

STATE OF:

COUNTY OF:

The undersigned hereby certifies that, except as listed below, the Releases or Waivers of Lien attached hereto include the Contractor, all Subcontractors, all suppliers of materials and equipment, and all performers of Work, labor or services who have or may have liens or encumbrances or the right to assert liens or encumbrances against any property of the Owner arising in any manner out of the performance of the Construction Contract referenced above.

EXCEPTIONS:

Supporting Documents Attached Hereto:

1. Contractor's Release of Waiver of Liens.
2. Separate Releases or Waivers of Liens from Subcontractors and material and equipment supplies, to the extent required by the Owner, accompanied by the list thereof.

**Contractor** (*Insert company name and address*):

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of authorized representative

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name and Title

Sworn to and subscribed before me this \_\_\_\_\_ day  
of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public's Signature

My commission expires: \_\_\_\_\_

Seal:

DCM (BC) Number: \_\_\_\_\_

PSCA Projects: PSCA Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of the Construction Contract: \_\_\_\_\_

Surety's Bond Number: \_\_\_\_\_

## CONSENT OF SURETY TO FINAL PAYMENT

<b>To Owner</b> ( <i>Entity name and address</i> ):  	<b>Project</b> ( <i>Same as appears in the Construction Contract</i> ):  
---	---

In accordance with the provisions of the Contract between the Owner and the Contractor as indicated above, the

**Surety** (*Insert name and address of Surety*)

on bond of

**Contractor** (*Insert name and address of Contractor*)

hereby approves of the final payment to the Contractor, and agrees that final payment to the Contractor shall not relieve the Surety of any of its obligations to

**Owner** (*Insert name and address of Entity*):

as set forth in said Surety's bond.

**SIGNED AND SEALED** this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

**SURETY:**

Seal:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Company Name

By \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Authorized Representative

\_\_\_\_\_  
Printed Name and Title

Note: Original Power of Attorney for the Surety's signatory shall be furnished with each of the original forms to be attached to each of the four (4) final payment forms.

## SAMPLE FORM OF ADVERTISEMENT FOR COMPLETION

### LEGAL NOTICE

In accordance with Chapter 1, Title 39, Code of Alabama, 1975, as amended, notice is hereby given

that \_\_\_\_\_,  
(Contractor Company Name)

Contractor, has completed the Contract for  (Construction)  (Renovation)  (Alteration)  
 (Equipment)  (Improvement) of \_\_\_\_\_  
(Name of Project):

at \_\_\_\_\_,  
(Insert location data in County or City)

for the State of Alabama and the (County) (City) of \_\_\_\_\_,  
Owner(s), and have made request for final settlement of said Contract. All persons having  
any claim for labor, materials, or otherwise in connection with this project should immediately  
notify

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
(Architect / Engineer)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Contractor)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Business Address)

**NOTE:** This notice must be run for a minimum of three weeks for projects of \$100,000.00 or more. For acceptable methods of advertisement, see General Conditions of the Contract, Article 34. Proof of publication of the notice shall be made by the contractor to the authority by whom the contract was made by affidavit of the publisher or website owner and a printed copy of the notice published. A final settlement shall not be made upon the contract until the expiration of 30 days after the completion of the notice.



**STATE OF ALABAMA  
DEPARTMENT OF FINANCE  
REAL PROPERTY MANAGEMENT  
Division of Construction Management**



Kay Ivey  
Governor  
  
Kelly Butler  
Director of Finance

P.O. Box 301150, Montgomery, AL 36130-1150  
770 Washington Avenue, Suite 444, Montgomery, AL 36104  
Telephone: (334) 242-4082 Fax: (334) 242-4182

Mickey Allen  
Assistant Finance Director  
Real Property Management  
  
Frank Barnes, Director  
Construction Management

January 19, 2021

**TO: ARCHITECTS, ENGINEERS, AND CONTRACTORS**

**FROM: MICKEY ALLEN, ASSISTANT FINANCE DIRECTOR** *m Allen*  
**ALABAMA REAL PROPERTY MANAGEMENT (RPM)**

**FRANK BARNES, DIRECTOR**  
**ALABAMA DIVISION OF CONSTRUCTION MANAGEMENT (DCM)** *Frank Barnes*

**SUBJECT: UPDATED GUIDANCE ON FIRE ALARM CONTRACTOR PERMITS**

DCM's July 17, 2012 *Memorandum On Act 2009-657 Requiring Certification Of Fire Alarm Contractors* is superseded by this January 19, 2021 bulletin which includes updated references, terms, and details for projects under DCM's jurisdiction.

Act 2009-657, effective August 1, 2012, requires fire alarm contractors to be permitted through the State of Alabama Fire Marshal's Office. In accordance with §34-33A-9, if a fire alarm contractor is going to do work in Alabama, the contractor must deliver to the local building official a copy of their State Fire Marshal's Fire Alarm Permit. DCM requires the following:

**Plan Review**

For work involving fire alarm systems in Optional 65% Intermediate Plan Review submittals and in Final Plan Review submittals, the requirement for a fire alarm contractor to be permitted through the State of Alabama Fire Marshal's Office shall be included on plan notes and/or in the project manual.

**Bidding**

Pursuant to §34-33A-11(b), for work involving fire alarm systems, General Contractors must submit a copy of the fire alarm contractor's State Fire Marshal's Fire Alarm Permit at the same time as submission of the subcontractor and supplier list to the lead design professional, which is required within 24 hours after receipt of bids. The architect or engineer shall reject fire alarm contractors who cannot provide a copy of the required permit.

**Pre-Construction Conference**

For work involving fire alarm systems, General Contractors must provide a copy of the fire alarm contractor's State Fire Marshal's Fire Alarm Permit to the DCM Inspector at the pre-construction conference.

If you have any questions, please contact DCM's Plan Review Division at 334-242-4082 or [planreview@realproperty.alabama.gov](mailto:planreview@realproperty.alabama.gov).

cc: Scott Pilgreen, Alabama State Fire Marshal, State of Alabama Fire Marshal's Office.



STATE OF ALABAMA
DEPARTMENT OF INSURANCE

State Fire Marshal's Office

201 Monroe Street, Suite 1790

Post Office Box 303352

Montgomery, Alabama 36130-3352

Telephone: (334) 241-4166

Facsimile: (334) 241-4158

Internet: www.firemarshal.alabama.gov

JIM L. RIDLING
COMMISSIONER

EDWARD S. PAULK
STATE FIRE MARSHAL

ROBERT BENTLEY
GOVERNOR

MAILING ADDRESS:

P.O. BOX 303352

MONTGOMERY, AL 36130-3352

OVERNIGHT ADDRESS:

201 MONROE STREET, SUITE 1790

MONTGOMERY, AL 36104

PLEASE USE FEDEX, UPS OR DHL

APPLICATION FOR STATE FIRE MARSHAL'S CERTIFIED FIRE ALARM CONTRACTOR PERMIT

PLEASE PRINT OR TYPE

In compliance with Sections 34-33A-1 to 34-33A-13, Code of Alabama, 1975, I hereby apply for a State Fire Marshal's Permit to engage in the installation, repair, alteration, maintenance, or inspection of fire alarm systems in Alabama.

CERTIFICATE HOLDER'S NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

CERTIFICATE HOLDERS SSN: \_\_\_\_\_ DOB: \_\_\_\_\_

NAME OF BUSINESS: \_\_\_\_\_

BUSINESS OWNER NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

BUSINESS OWNER SSN: \_\_\_\_\_ DOB: \_\_\_\_\_ ARE YOU A U.S. CITIZEN? \_\_\_YES \_\_\_NO

BUSINESS ADDRESS: \_\_\_\_\_

MAILING ADDRESS: \_\_\_\_\_

BUSINESS TELEPHONE: \_\_\_\_\_ PERMIT TYPE: INITIAL [ ] RENEWAL [ ]
Current Permit # \_\_\_\_\_

This is to certify that \_\_\_\_\_ (certificate holder) is presently employed by \_\_\_\_\_ (business) in the capacity of \_\_\_\_\_ (title) and is authorized to act for the business in all matters pertaining to the installation, repair, alteration, addition, maintenance, or inspection of fire alarm systems in the state of Alabama.

If for any reason the certificate holder terminates employment with the above business, we the undersigned, do understand that the State Fire Marshal's Office is to be notified within thirty (30) days, and that the business will have nine (9) months or until expiration of the current permit, whichever comes first, to submit an application on a new certificate holder and be issued a new permit.

I the undersigned do certify that the information provided above is true and correct. I the undersigned do understand that submission of false information is grounds for license revocation and may subject me to criminal penalties.

Owner/President Signature Date Certificate Holder Signature Date

INITIAL/RENEWAL FEE \$100.00

INCLUDE FEE WHEN SUBMITTING APPLICATION. (CHECK OR MONEY ORDER MADE PAYABLE TO THE STATE FIRE MARSHAL'S FUND.)

INCLUDE COPY OF NICET CERTIFICATION CARD (CURRENT) FOR FIRE ALARM SYSTEM TECHNICIAN - LEVEL III.

**CERTIFIED FIRE ALARM CONTRACTOR ATTACHMENT**

1. Home address of the NICET Certificate holder:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Street Address

\_\_\_\_\_  
City State Zip Code

\_\_\_\_\_  
Phone Number (this is the number you can be reached at)

2. Are you a United States Citizen?  YES  NO
3. I understand as the NICET Certificate holder for this company that I am licensed only by this company and no other company within the Fire Alarm Industry.
4. I understand as the NICET Certificate holder for this company that I am responsible for the layout, installation, maintenance, repair or alterations performed by this company.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of NICET Certificate holder

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

# CERTIFICATE OF ASBESTOS FREE BUILDING MATERIALS

---

The undersigned hereby states that all building materials incorporated, installed, and used during the construction process for the below listed project by the Contractor or its Subcontractors of any tier are 100% asbestos free. **Asbestos Free means containing 0% asbestos in any form.** Refer to Section 01600, Product Requirements.

McKee Project Name: \_\_\_\_\_

McKee Project Number: \_\_\_\_\_

**CERTIFICATION:** The undersigned certifies that he or she is authorized to execute contracts and legal documents on behalf of the General Contractor as legally named, that this certification is submitted in good faith without fraud or collusion with any other person, that the information indicated in this document is true and complete, and that the document is made in full legal agreement.

**To:** \_\_\_\_\_  
(Owner / Awarding Authority of Construction Contract)

**Date** \_\_\_\_\_

**Legal Name of General Contractor** \_\_\_\_\_

**General Contractor State License No.** \_\_\_\_\_  
(Exactly as appears on license including designation letters)

**General Contractor Mailing Address** \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**By (Legal Signature)** \_\_\_\_\_

Name & Title (print) \_\_\_\_\_

Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

E-Mail Address \_\_\_\_\_



## SECTION 01010 - SCOPE OF THE WORK

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS AND GENERAL INFORMATION

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 specification sections apply to the work of this section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Type of the Contract.
  - 2. Work Under This Contract.
  - 3. **Completion Times.**
  - 4. Division of Construction Management User Fees.
  - 5. Project Work Identification.
  - 6. Owner-furnished products.
  - 7. Supervision.
  - 8. Contractor Use of premises.
  - 9. Definitions.
  - 10. Work Under Other Contracts.
  - 11. Building and Site Construction.
  - 12. General Issues.
  - 13. Temporary Electrical Power and Jobsite Utilities.
  - 14. Site Security and Insurance Requirements.
  - 15. Protection of Work in Place.
  - 16. Work restrictions.
  - 17. Owner's occupancy requirements.
  - 18. Specification formats and conventions.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 1 Section 01500 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.

#### 1.3 TYPE OF CONTRACT

- A. Construction Contract (DCM Form C-5, April 2020).

#### 1.4 WORK UNDER THIS CONTRACT

- A. Sealed Proposal shall be received as follows:
  - 1. One (1) Sealed Envelope MUST include the following:
    - a. General Contractor's Name and State General Contractor's License number MUST be legible on the front of the envelope.
    - b. One (1) Bid Proposal for all work as indicated on drawings and specifications.
    - c. Unit Price Attachment Sheet MUST be included if document is included in the project manual.

SCOPE OF THE WORK  
01010-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- d. One (1) Contractor Completion Time Form for all work as indicated on drawings and specifications if document is included in the project manual.
- e. One (1) Bid Bond or certified check.
- f. One (1) Sales Tax Form.

### **1.5 COMPLETION TIMES**

- A. The Contractor MUST state his/her completion time on their Bid Proposal Form. The Contractor's Completion Time will be taken into consideration for award of the construction contract.

### **1.6 DIVISION OF CONSTRUCTION MANAGEMENT USER FEES**

- A. Refer to the Alabama Department of Finance, Construction Management Division Administrative Code, Chapter 355-16-1, "Collection Of User Fees" dated March 31, 2020.
  - 1. The Contractor shall include in his Base Bid Proposal all "Basic Permit Fee".
  - 2. **Do not** include the "Plan Review Fee" or the "Contract Administration Fee" in your Proposal.
  - 3. The Contractor shall be responsible for all "Re-Inspection Fees" per 355-16-1-.03 "Fees Required", (5) "Additional Fees", (b).

### **1.7 PROJECT / WORK IDENTIFICATION**

- A. General: Project name is as indicated in the Advertisement For Bids and as shown on the Contract Documents prepared by McKee & Associates, 631 S. Hull Street Montgomery, Alabama 36104.
- B. Contract Documents: Indicate the work of the Contract and related requirements and conditions that have an impact on the project. Related requirements and conditions that are indicated on the Contract Documents include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Existing site conditions and restrictions on use of the site including ingress and egress to the site.
  - 2. Grading operations at the site.
  - 3. The Contractor shall be responsible to secure the site during the execution of the work and provide proof of insurance including but not limited to General Liability, W/C, Auto, Equipment, etc.
- C. Summary by References: Work of the Contract can be summarized by references to the Contract, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, the Project Manual, Technical Specification Sections, Drawings, Addenda and modifications to the Contract Documents issued subsequent to the initial printing of this Project Manual and the Drawings, and including but not necessarily limited to, printed material referenced by any of the above. It is recognized that the Work of the Contract is also unavoidably affected or influenced by governing regulations, natural phenomenon including weather conditions, and other forces outside the contract documents.

### **1.8 OWNER FURNISHED PRODUCTS**

- A. None

### **1.9 SUPERVISION**

- A. Supervision: The Contractor shall provide adequate supervision of the project to ensure proper supervision for all work.

### **1.10 CONTRACTOR USE OF PREMISES**

- A. General: During the entire cleanup period the Contractor shall have the exclusive use of the premises for cleanup operations, including full use of the site as shown on the Drawings.
- B. Limitations of exclusive use of the site:
  - 1. Confine operations at the site to the areas permitted under the Contract. Portions of the site beyond areas on which work is indicated are not to be disturbed. Conform to applicable rules and regulations affecting the work while engaged in project performance. See site plan for

SCOPE OF THE WORK  
01010-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

ingress and egress to the site, or if not indicated, same shall be as designated by the Architect.

2. Keep existing public roads, driveways and entrances serving the premises clear and available at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or storage of materials. Remove dirt, mud, debris, etc., from site, sidewalks, streets, and public right-of-way as it occurs.
3. Do not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment. Confine stockpiling of materials and location of storage sheds and or designated storage areas as indicated.
4. Lock automotive type vehicles, such as passenger cars and trucks and other mechanized or motorized construction equipment, when parked and unattended, so as to prevent unauthorized use. Do not leave such vehicles or equipment unattended with the motor running or the ignition key in place.
5. The Owner, and their representatives, the Architect and their Consultants, as well as authorities having jurisdiction will require site accessibility for inspections, observations, and perhaps other purposes, related to the planned new construction. All Contractors shall assist in such accessibility, to at least the point of providing and maintaining accessible dry paths to work in progress.
6. Furnish and install by contractor temporary barricades, fencing, etc., as indicated or otherwise required, to restrict pedestrian and vehicular traffic from construction operations, including in part, Owner's staff, the public, students, children, and residents of the adjacent residential neighborhoods.
7. Construction operations shall not affect in any manner, the on-going operations of the Owner, immediately adjacent facilities, adjacent property owners or businesses, or others. Refer to Division 1 Section "Special Conditions" for additional information and requirements regarding coordination with Owner's activities, etc.
8. Construction equipment shall not come in contact with or swing over existing facilities to remain, public areas, occupied buildings, right-of-ways, etc., which are to remain.
9. All contractors and their employees shall limit any discussion of the Work of this project to the Owner's representatives named in the front of this Project Manual, Consultants employed, inspecting authorities with jurisdiction, and the Architect. In no instance shall this project be discussed with others, except as may otherwise be indicated herein.
10. Parking on-site, if any, shall be limited to the "staging areas" indicated on the Drawings, or if not indicated, as mutually agreed between the Architect and Contractor at the Pre-Construction Conference.
11. Smoking or other use of tobacco products shall not be permitted within the structure of the Building, Owner's facilities or on roofs.
12. The use or presence of alcohol and/or other debilitating substances shall not be permitted in the construction of the building and or on the project site.
13. Firearms and/or other weapons shall not be permitted on the project site.
14. The Contractor shall furnish necessary temporary toilets for all work forces on the job site.

## **PART 2 - SCOPE OF THE WORK**

### **2.1 DEFINITIONS**

- A. The Scope of the Work of the Contract is meant to be viewed as a successor to the General Special Conditions of the Contract. Should any discrepancy or ambiguity be noted, the Scope of the Work of the Contract shall apply and the General Special Conditions of the Contract shall defer to Scope of the Work of the Contract Documents. The scope of the work shall be taken in its entirety by all contractors. In signing the contract all contractors have read and understand that the Scope of the Work and the General Special Conditions are taken in their entirety.

SCOPE OF THE WORK  
01010-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

1. The term "Design Consultant" shall be construed to mean "Architect".
2. The terms "Owner" shall mean " Franklin County Board of Education ".

## **2.2 WORK UNDER OTHER CONTRACTS**

- A. General: Cooperate fully with separate contractors so work on those contracts may be carried out smoothly, without interfering with or delaying work under this Contract. Coordinate the Work of this Contract with work performed under separate contracts.
- B. Concurrent Work: Owner will award separate contract(s) for the following construction operations at the Project site. Those operations will be conducted simultaneously with work under this Contract.
  1. Work done by others or by Owner.
    - a. Any items noted N.I.C.
    - b. Construction Testing as defined in applicable sections of the project manual.

## **2.3 BUILDING AND SITE CONSTRUCTION**

- A. The Contractor shall maintain the entire site, provide dust control and keep the streets clean at all times and or as directed by the Architect. The Contractor shall call for and be responsible for the locating of all utilities prior to start of work. Use extreme care when working in close proximity to the existing water lines to prevent movement and damage to the water lines.
- B. The Contractor shall install and or replace all fencing including furnish and install all temporary fencing as required for all work including safety barriers, signs, traffic directional signals, temporary stripping, flagman, temporary road plates and any temporary roads around any obstruction and or work being constructed. The Contractor shall make all provisions to keep the public and or temporary access roads open during the duration of the work.
- C. The Contractor shall maintain & level, all temporary roads and temporary lay down and storage areas using same stone base material. Roads must have no potholes, dips, or rises and provide access to and from the site and other locations on site. The Contractor shall maintain the temporary roads used to move material on the site. Temporary roads are existing and the Contractor shall maintain these temporary roads throughout the duration of construction activity while Contractor is onsite.

## **2.4 GENERAL ISSUES**

- A. The Contractor shall be responsible for their own on-site safety requirements within the site per OSHA regulations.
- B. Only an approved company owned and insured vehicle shall be allowed on to the construction site. Vehicles shall be clearly marked and identified with the company logo and or name.

## **2.5 TEMPORARY ELECTRICAL POWER AND JOBSITE UTILITIES**

- A. The Contractor is responsible for the all costs associated with temporary electrical requirements for performance of the work. The Contractor shall be responsible for the all costs associated with temporary water required for the performance of the work. The Contractor is responsible for all other utility costs as required for the performance of the work.

## **2.6 SITE SECURITY / INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. The Contractor shall have care custody and control of the site. Contractor shall be responsible for the replacement of their material, equipment and any loss of such. Contractor shall be responsible for securing all material and equipment. If there is a loss and or damage of material and equipment, that loss shall go against the Contractor's insurance coverage.

## **2.7 PROTECTION OF WORK IN PLACE**

- A. The Contractor shall protect all completed work and any rework shall be the responsibility of the contractor **at** no additional cost to the owner.

SCOPE OF THE WORK  
01010-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

## **2.8 WORK RESTRICTIONS**

- A. Existing Utility Interruptions: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Architect and Owner not less than two days in advance of the proposed utility interruptions.
  - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's and Owner's written permission.
- B. Nonsmoking Building: Smoking and smokeless tobacco will not be permitted within the new construction after floor slabs are poured.

## **2.9 OWNER'S OCCUPANCY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy adjacent parking lots during entire construction period. Cooperate with Owner during construction operations adjacent to or near the existing building and parking to minimize conflicts and facilitate Owner usage. Perform the Work so as not to interfere with Owner's day-to-day operations. Maintain existing exits, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Maintain access to existing walkways and other adjacent occupied or used facilities. Do not close or obstruct walkways or other occupied or used facilities without written permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide not less than 72 hours' notice to Owner of activities that will affect Owner's operations.
- C. Owner Occupancy of Completed Areas of Construction: Owner reserves the right to place and install equipment in completed areas of building, before Substantial Completion, provided such does not interfere with completion of the Work. Such placement of equipment shall not constitute acceptance of the total Work.

## **2.10 SPECIFICATION FORMATS AND CONVENTIONS**

- A. Specification Format: The Specifications are organized into Divisions and Sections using the 16-division format numbering system.
  - 1. Section Identification: The Specifications use Section numbers and titles to help cross-referencing in the Contract Documents. Sections in the Project Manual are in numeric sequence; however, the sequence is incomplete because all available Section numbers are not used. Consult the table of contents at the beginning of the Project Manual to determine numbers and names of Sections in the Contract Documents.
- B. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
  - 1. Abbreviated Language: Language used in the Specifications another Contract Documents is abbreviated. Words and meanings shall be interpreted as appropriate. Words implied, but not stated, shall be inferred as the sense requires. Singular words shall be interpreted as plural, and plural words shall be interpreted as singular where applicable as the context of the Contract Documents indicates.
  - 2. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. Requirements expressed in the imperative mood are to be performed by Contractor. Occasionally, the indicative or subjunctive mood may be used in the Section Text for clarity to describe responsibilities that must be fulfilled indirectly by Contractor or by others when so noted.
    - a. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.

## **PART 3 - NOT APPLICABLE**

### **END OF SECTION**

SCOPE OF THE WORK  
01010-5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

SCOPE OF THE WORK  
01010-6

## SECTION 01011 - CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS AND GENERAL INFORMATION

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 specification sections apply to the work of this section.

### PART 2 - CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCES

#### 2.1 BASE BID PROPOSAL

- A. The General Contractor shall include the following sums:
  - 1. **Thousand Dollars (\$0,000.00)** as a contingency to cover unforeseen conditions or minor changes that are necessary to correct or supplement the work as detailed in the Contract Documents.
- 2.2 The Contractor shall include in his bid proposal(s) all costs of office, job supervision, overhead, profit, and bond on these Contingency Allowances, because no such costs will be paid to Contractor for work performed under these Contingency Allowances. Only the direct costs of performing work under this provision shall be paid under and charged against the Contingency Allowance; such cost includes costs of materials and delivery, installation labor, payroll taxes and insurance, equipment expense, and the cost of subcontracted work (subcontractor's cost may include a maximum of 15% mark-up for overhead and profit).

### PART 3 – AUTHORIZATION OF CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCES

- 3.1 After unknown conditions are identified and examined and the scope of work and method of repair determined, or request for a proposal to cover additional work has been issued by the Owner, the Contractor shall submit a proposal for such work to the Architect for the Owner's approval. If the Owner approves of such proposal, he will issue written authorization to the Contractor to perform the work and charge the related costs to the Contingency Allowance. At the Owner's option, work performed under this provision may be ordered done on a time and material basis, in which case; the Contractor shall keep accurate records of all time and materials used and submit such records to the Architect for his approval at the end of each day's work.
- 3.2 An accounting of the costs charged against this Contingency Allowance shall be mutually maintained by the Contractor, Architect, and Owner throughout the course of the project. Any of this Contingency Allowance not spent shall be credited to the Owner by Change Order at close out of the project. Refer to Contingency Allowance Form attached to this Section.
- 3.3 Provide for payment.
  - A. The Contractor shall include a line item in the *Schedule of Values* entitled "Contingency Allowance". The estimated value of work completed pursuant to fully executed Contingency Allowance Authorizations may be included in the Contractor's monthly Applications for Payment. Payments under this Contingency Allowance shall not exceed the net, total of fully executed Contingency Allowance Authorizations.

CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCE  
01011-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

**3.4 CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCE AUTHORIZATION FORM**

---

**Form to be filled in its entirety.**

To: McKee & Associates, Architects From: \_\_\_\_\_  
Project: \_\_\_\_\_ Company \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ Address \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ Contact and Email \_\_\_\_\_  
Project Number \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_  
Building Commission Number: \_\_\_\_\_ Authorization Number: \_\_\_\_\_

---

In accordance with Specification Section 01011 – CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCE, the Contractor [ \_\_\_\_\_ ] is hereby authorized to proceed with the changes in Work as are described below and is to be paid for the performance of these changes as provided in Specification Section 01011. This Authorization shall become effective when it is signed by the Contractor and the Owner's representative and it is understood and agreed that the amount(s) stipulated below constitute full compensation for these changes in Work.

---

TOTAL AMOUNT OF THIS AUTHORIZATION \$

---

ORIGINAL AMOUNT OF THE CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCE	\$
NET TOTAL OF PREVIOUS AUTHORIZATIONS	\$
PREVIOUS REMAINING CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCE	\$
TOTAL AMOUNT OF THIS AUTHORIZATION	\$
CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCE REMAINING AFTER THIS CONTINGENCY	\$

Recommended By: \_\_\_\_\_ Authorized By: \_\_\_\_\_ Accepted By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Architect \_\_\_\_\_ Owner \_\_\_\_\_ Contractor \_\_\_\_\_

---

**END OF SECTION**

CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCE  
01011-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



## SECTION 01250 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Section 01600 "Product Requirements" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after Contract award.

#### 1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing Minor Changes in the Work, that may or may not involve an adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, as an Architect's Supplemental Instructions, "ASI".

#### 1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time in the form of an ASI. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 1. ASIs issued by Architect, if adjustments to contract sum or contract time are involved, are for information only. Do not consider them instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  - 2. Within time specified in ASI after receipt of ASI, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
    - b. Indicate applicable delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
    - d. Include an updated Contractor's Construction Schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
    - e. Include data as needed to validate material costs
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or unforeseen conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may propose changes by submitting a request for a change to Architect.
  - 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
  - 2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
  - 3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.

CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES  
01250-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
5. Include an updated Contractor's Construction Schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
6. Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Product Requirements" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.

**1.5 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES**

- A. On Owner's approval of a Change Order, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures as required.

**1.6 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE**

- A. Construction Change Directive, "CCD": Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work.

**PART 2 – NOT APPLICABLE**

**PART 3 – NOT APPLICABLE**

**END OF SECTION**

CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES  
01250-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 01290 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

#### 1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. **At the discretion of the Architect, the contractor shall provide separate Schedule of Values for work on projects involving multiple locations, campuses, sites, buildings etc. and/or multiple scopes of work. Additional line items may be required within each separate Schedule of Values (i.e. separate line items for multiple buildings located on same site).**
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the Schedule of Values with preparation of Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 1. Correlate line items in the Schedule of Values with other required administrative forms and schedules, including the following:
    - a. Application for Payment forms with Continuation Sheets.
    - b. Submittals Schedule.
    - c. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 2. Submit the Schedule of Values to Architect at earliest possible date but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
- C. Format and Content: Use the Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the Schedule of Values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
  - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the Schedule of Values:
    - a. Project name and location.
    - b. Name of Architect.
    - c. Architect's project number.
    - d. Contractor's name and address.
    - e. Date of submittal.
  - 2. Submit draft of DCM Form C-11.
  - 3. Arrange the Schedule of Values in tabular form with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
    - a. Related Specification Section or Division.
    - b. Description of the Work.
    - c. Name of subcontractor.
    - d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.

PAYMENT PROCEDURES  
01290-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- e. Name of supplier.
- f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
- g. Dollar value.
  - 1) Percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent.
- 4. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with the Project Manual table of contents. Provide several line items for principal subcontract amounts, where appropriate.
- 5. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.
- 6. Provide a separate listing on Application and Certificate for Payment (Standard ABC Form C-10) for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
  - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site. Include evidence of insurance or evidence of bonded warehousing.
- 7. Provide separate line items in the Schedule of Values for initial cost of materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.
- 8. Unit Costs: Provide a separate line item in the Schedule of Values for each unit cost. Line-item to show value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
- 9. Each item in the Schedule of Values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each item.
  - a. Temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place may be shown either as separate line items in the Schedule of Values or distributed as general overhead expense, at Contractor's option.
- 10. Schedule Updating: Update and resubmit the Schedule of Values before the next Applications for Payment when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum.

## **1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT**

- A. Each Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
  - 1. Initial Application for Payment, Application for Payment at time of Substantial Completion, and final Application for Payment involve additional requirements.
- B. Payment Application Times: Progress payments shall be submitted to Architect by the 25th of the month. The period covered by each Application for Payment is one month, ending on the 23rd of the month.
- C. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
  - 1. Entries shall match data on the Schedule of Values and Contractor's Construction Schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
  - 2. Include amounts of Change Orders issued before last day of construction period covered by application only after all agency approvals.
- D. Transmittal: Submit 6 signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.

PAYMENT PROCEDURES  
01290-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- E. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
1. List of subcontractors.
  2. Schedule of Values.
  3. Contractor's Construction Schedule (preliminary if not final).
  4. Products list.
  5. Schedule of unit prices.
  6. Submittals Schedule (preliminary if not final).
  7. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
  8. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
  9. Copies of building permits.
  10. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
  11. Initial progress report.
  12. Report of preconstruction conference.
- F. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After issuing the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
  2. This application shall reflect Certificates of Partial Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- G. Final Payment Application: Submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
  2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
  3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
  4. Certificate of Substantial Completion (DCM Form C-13)
  5. Form of Advertisement for Completion (DCM Form C-14)
  6. Evidence that claims have been settled.
  7. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
  8. Final, liquidated damages settlement statement.

**PART 2 – NOT APPLICABLE**

**PART 3 – NOT APPLICABLE**

**END OF SECTION**

PAYMENT PROCEDURES  
01290-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 01320 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
  - 1. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 2. Submittals Schedule.
  - 3. Daily construction reports.
  - 4. Material location reports.
  - 5. Field condition reports.
  - 6. Special reports.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 1 Section 01290 "Payment Procedures" for submitting the Schedule of Values.
  - 2. Division 1 Section 01310 "Project Management and Coordination" for submitting and distributing meeting and conference minutes.
  - 3. Division 1 Section 01330 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting schedules and reports.
  - 4. Division 1 Section 01322 "Photographic Documentation" for submitting construction photographs.
  - 5. Division 1 Section 01400 "Quality Requirements" for submitting a schedule of tests and inspections.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals Schedule: Submit three copies of schedule. Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
  - 1. Scheduled date for first submittal.
  - 2. Specification Section number and title.
  - 3. Submittal category (action or informational).
  - 4. Name of subcontractor.
  - 5. Description of the Work covered.
  - 6. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
- B. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Submit two opaque copies of initial schedule, large enough to show entire schedule for entire construction period.
- C. Daily Construction Reports: Submit two copies at weekly intervals.
- D. Material Location Reports: Submit two copies at monthly intervals.
- E. Field Condition Reports: Submit two copies at time of discovery of differing conditions.
- F. Special Reports: Submit two copies at time of unusual event.
- G. Pre-scheduling Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures

CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION  
01320-1

related to the Preliminary Construction Schedule and Contractor's Construction Schedule, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Verify availability of qualified personnel needed to develop and update schedule.
2. Discuss any constraints.
3. Review time required for review of submittals and re-submittals.
4. Review requirements for tests and inspections by independent testing and inspecting agencies.
5. Review time required for completion and startup procedures.
6. Review and finalize list of construction activities to be included in schedule.
7. Review submittal requirements and procedures.
8. Review procedures for updating schedule.

#### **1.4 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate preparation and processing of schedules and reports with performance of construction activities and with scheduling and reporting of separate contractors.
- B. Coordinate Contractor's Construction Schedule with the Schedule of Values, list of subcontracts, Submittals Schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
  1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from parties involved.
  2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 SUBMITTALS SCHEDULE**

- A. Preparation: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, re-submittal, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates.
  1. Coordinate Submittals Schedule with list of subcontracts, the Schedule of Values, and Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  2. Initial Submittal: Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
  3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction Schedule.

#### **2.2 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL**

- A. Procedures: Comply with procedures contained in AGC's "Construction Planning & Scheduling."
- B. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice to Proceed to date of Substantial Completion.
  1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- C. Activities: Treat each story or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each principal element of the Work. Comply with the following:
  1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 30 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.

CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION  
01320-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

2. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following long lead items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
  3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and re-submittal times indicated in Division 1 Section 01330 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's Construction Schedule with Submittals Schedule.
  4. Startup and Testing Time: Include not less than 14 days for startup and testing.
  5. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
- D. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions, if any, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
- E. Cost Correlation: At the head of schedule, provide a cost correlation line, indicating planned and actual costs. On the line, show dollar volume of the Work performed as of dates used for preparation of payment requests.
1. Refer to Division 1 Section 01290 "Payment Procedures" for cost reporting and payment procedures.
  2. Contractor shall assign cost to construction activities on the CPM schedule. Costs shall not be assigned to submittal activities unless specified otherwise but may, with Architect's approval, be assigned to fabrication and delivery activities. Costs shall be broken down within principal contracts in amounts typically not greater than \$30,000, but in no case greater than 5 percent of the Contract Sum.
  3. Each activity cost shall reflect an accurate value subject to approval by Architect.
  4. Total cost assigned to activities shall equal the total Contract Sum.
- F. Contract Modifications: For each proposed contract modification and concurrent with its submission, prepare a time-impact analysis to demonstrate the time effect, if any, of the proposed change on the overall project schedule.

### **2.3 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (CPM SCHEDULE)**

- A. General: Prepare network diagrams using AON (activity-on-node) format.
- B. Preliminary Network Diagram: Submit diagram within 14 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed. Outline significant construction activities for the first 60 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.
- C. CPM Schedule: Prepare Contractor's Construction Schedule using a computerized, cost-and resource-loaded, time-scaled CPM network analysis diagram for the Work.
1. Develop network diagram in sufficient time to submit CPM schedule so it can be accepted for use no later than 30 days after date established for the Notice to Proceed.
    - a. Failure to include any work item required for performance of this Contract shall not excuse Contractor from completing all work within applicable completion dates, regardless of Architect's approval of the schedule.
  2. Conduct educational workshops to train and inform key Project personnel, including subcontractors' personnel, in proper methods of providing data and using CPM schedule information.
  3. Establish procedures for monitoring and updating CPM schedule and for reporting progress. Coordinate procedures with progress meeting and payment request dates.

CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION  
01320-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



4. Use "one workday" as the unit of time. Include list of nonworking days and holidays incorporated into the schedule.
- D. CPM Schedule Preparation: Prepare a list of all activities required to complete the Work. Using the preliminary network diagram, prepare a skeleton network to identify probable critical paths.
1. Activities: Indicate the estimated time duration, sequence requirements, and relationship of each activity in relation to other activities. Include estimated time frames for the following activities:
    - a. Preparation and processing of submittals.
    - b. Mobilization and demobilization.
    - c. Purchase of materials.
    - d. Delivery.
    - e. Fabrication.
    - f. Utility interruptions.
    - g. Installation.
    - h. Work by Owner that may affect or be affected by Contractor's activities.
    - i. Testing and commissioning.
  2. Critical Path Activities: Identify critical path activities, including those for interim completion dates. Scheduled start and completion dates shall be consistent with Contract milestone dates.
  3. Processing: Process data to produce output data on a computer-drawn, timescaled network. Revise data, reorganize activity sequences, and reproduce as often as necessary to produce the CPM schedule within the limitations of the Contract Time.
  4. Format: Mark the critical path. Locate the critical path near center of network; locate paths with most float near the edges.
    - a. Sub-networks on separate sheets are permissible for activities clearly off the critical path.
- E. Initial Issue of Schedule: Prepare initial network diagram from a list of straight "early start-total float" sort. Identify critical activities. Prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
1. Contractor or subcontractor and the Work or activity.
  2. Description of activity.
  3. Principal events of activity.
  4. Immediate preceding and succeeding activities.
  5. Early and late start dates.
  6. Early and late finish dates.
  7. Activity duration in workdays.
  8. Total float or slack time.
  9. Average size of workforce.
  10. Dollar value of activity (coordinated with the Schedule of Values).
- F. Schedule Updating: Concurrent with making revisions to schedule, prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
1. Identification of activities that have changed.
  2. Changes in early and late start dates.

3. Changes in early and late finish dates.
  4. Changes in activity durations in workdays.
  5. Changes in the critical path.
  6. Changes in total float or slack time.
  7. Changes in the Contract Time.
- G. Value Summaries: Prepare two cumulative value lists, sorted by finish dates.
1. In first list, tabulate activity number, early finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
  2. In second list, tabulate activity number, late finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
  3. In subsequent issues of both lists, substitute actual finish dates for activities completed as of list date.
  4. Prepare list for ease of comparison with payment requests; coordinate timing with progress meetings.
    - a. In both value summary lists, tabulate "actual percent complete" and "cumulative value completed" with total at bottom.
    - b. Submit value summary printouts one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.

## 2.4 REPORTS

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
  2. Approximate count of personnel at Project site by trade.
  3. Equipment at Project site.
  4. Material deliveries.
  5. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions.
  6. Accidents.
  7. Meetings and significant decisions.
  8. Unusual events (refer to special reports).
  9. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
  10. Meter readings and similar recordings.
  11. Emergency procedures.
  12. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
  13. Change Orders received and implemented.
  14. Construction Change Directives and Architect Supplemental Interpretations (Instructions) received and implemented.
  15. Services connected and disconnected.
  16. Equipment or system tests and startups.
- B. Material Location Reports: At monthly intervals, prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials

CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION  
01320-5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site.

- C. Field Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between field conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request For Interpretation (RFI). Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

## **2.5 SPECIAL REPORTS**

- A. General: Submit special reports directly to Owner within one day of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.
- B. Reporting Unusual Events: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, response by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE**

- A. Contractor must employ skilled personnel with experience in scheduling and reporting techniques or must employ a scheduling consultant. Submit qualifications and examples of previous scheduling for evaluation (and approval) by the Architect.
- B. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule three (3) work days before each regularly scheduled progress meeting or Contractor may update schedule at the monthly progress meeting.
  - 1. The revised schedule should be updated immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting, no later than three days after the progress meeting.
  - 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
  - 3. As the Work progresses, indicate Actual Completion percentage for each activity.
- C. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect, Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
  - 1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
  - 2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

### **END OF SECTION**

CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION  
01320-6

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 01322 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
  - 1. Preconstruction digital video.
  - 2. Periodic construction photographs.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Key Plan: Submit key plan of Project site and building with notation of vantage points marked for location and direction of each digital photograph. Indicate elevation or story of construction. Include same label information as corresponding set of photographs.
- B. Digital Construction Photographs: Submit one print of each digital photographic view within seven days of taking photographs.
  - 1. Format: Digital.
  - 2. Identification: The following information is required on each CD submitted:
    - a. Name of Project.
    - b. Name of Architect.
    - c. Name of Contractor.
    - d. Date photograph was taken if not date stamped by camera.
    - e. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
    - f. Unique sequential identifier.
  - 3. Digital Images: Submit a complete set of digital image electronic files as a Project Record document on USB Drives. Identify electronic media with date photographs were taken. Submit images that have same aspect ratio as the sensor, uncropped.
- C. Digital Video: Submit one copy of each digital video with protective sleeve or case within seven days of recording.
  - 1. Identification: On each copy, provide an applied label with the following information:
    - a. Name of Project
    - b. Name of Architect.
    - c. Name of Contractor.
    - d. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
    - e. Date digital video was recorded.
    - f. Weather conditions at time of recording.
  - 2. Transcript: To include an audio narrative with the following information as a minimum.
    - a. Name of Project.
    - b. Date digital video was recorded.

PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION  
01322-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- c. Weather conditions at time of recording.
- d. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.

## **PART 2 - EXECUTION**

### **2.1 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS**

- A. Film Images:
  1. Date Stamp: Unless otherwise indicated, date and time stamp each photograph as it is being taken so stamp is integral to photograph.
  2. Field Office Prints: Retain one set of prints of progress photographs in the field office at Project site, available at all times for reference. Identify photographs same as for those submitted to Architect.
- B. Digital Images: Submit digital images exactly as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.
  1. Date and Time: Include date and time in filename for each image.
  2. Field Office Images: Maintain one set of images on USB Drives in the field office at Project site, available at all times for reference. Identify images same as for those submitted to Architect.
- C. Preconstruction Photographs: Before starting construction, take color, digital photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points, as directed by Architect.
  1. Flag construction limits before taking construction photographs.
  2. Take eight photographs to show existing conditions adjacent to property before starting the Work.
  3. Take eight photographs of existing buildings either on or adjoining property in order to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.
  4. Take additional photographs as required to record settlement or cracking of adjacent structures, pavements, and improvements.
- D. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take 12 color, digital photographs monthly, coinciding with the cutoff date associated with each Application for Payment. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.

### **2.2 CONSTRUCTION DIGITAL VIDEO**

- A. Narration: Describe scenes on digital video by audio narration by microphone while video is recorded. Include description of items being viewed, recent events, and planned activities. At each change in location, describe vantage point, location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
  1. Confirm date and time at beginning and end of recording.
  2. Begin each digital video with name of Project, Contractor's name, and Project location.
- B. Preconstruction Digital Video: Before starting construction, provide digital video of the Project site and surrounding properties from different vantage points, as needed to properly record all preexisting site conditions and adjacent conditions of all roadways, drives, structures that will incur construction traffic.
  1. Flag construction limits before recording construction video.
  2. Show existing conditions adjacent to Project site before starting the Work.

PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION  
01322-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

3. Show existing buildings either on or adjoining Project site to accurately record physical conditions at the start of construction.
4. Show protection efforts by Contractor.

**PART 3 – NOT APPLICABLE**

**END OF SECTION**

PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION  
01322-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 01330 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. The General Contractor shall use website software “**Submittal Exchange**” to conduct all submittal reviews in electronic format. **Paper format submittals will NOT be accepted.** All recordkeeping, date stamping, access controls, shall be **paid for by the Contractor** with access given to the entire Project Team. The software shall be capable of the following:
- B. Costs:
1. The General Contractor shall include the full cost of Submittal Exchange project subscription in their proposal. **The Contractor shall cover the full cost of Submittal Exchange project subscription for the project. The Contractor contractually, shall be fully responsible for all costs required to maintain full functionality through the acceptance of ALL project closeout requirements and documents. NO OTHER SOFTWARE WILL BE CONSIDERED.**
  2. **Contact Submittal Exchange at [subex-sales\\_ww@oracle.com](mailto:subex-sales_ww@oracle.com) or call 1-800-633-0738 to verify costs prior to bid.**
  3. At the Contractor’s option, training is available from **Submittal Exchange** regarding use of website and PDF submittals. Contact Submittal Exchange at 1-800-714-0024 ext. 2
  4. Internet Service and Equipment Requirements:
    - a. Email address and Internet access at the Contractor’s main office.
    - b. Adobe Acrobat ([www.adobe.com](http://www.adobe.com)), Bluebeam PDF Revu ([www.bluebeam.com](http://www.bluebeam.com)), or other similar PDF review software for applying electronic stamps and comments.
  5. The General Contractor is responsible for maintaining and keeping Submittal Exchange active throughout the entire project, including closeout documents.
- C. Procedures:
1. Shop drawing and product data submittals shall be transmitted to Architect in electronic (PDF) format using **Submittal Exchange**, a website service designed specifically for transmitting submittals between construction team members.
  2. The intent of electronic submittals is to expedite the construction process by reducing paperwork, improving information flow, and decreasing turnaround time.
  3. The electronic submittal process is not intended for color samples, color charts, or physical material samples.
  4. Submittal Preparation – the Contractor may use any or all of the following options:
    - a. Subcontractors and Suppliers provide electronic (PDF) submittals to the Contractor via the **Submittal Exchange** website.
    - b. Subcontractors and Suppliers provide paper submittals to the General Contractor who electronically scans and converts to PDF format.
    - c. Subcontractors and Suppliers provide paper submittals to Scanning Service which electronically scans and converts to PDF format.
  5. The Contractor shall review and apply electronic stamp certifying that the submittal complies with the requirements of the Contract Documents including verification of manufacturer / product, dimensions and coordination of information with other parts of the work.

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES  
01330-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

6. The Contractor shall transmit each submittal to Architect using the Submittal Exchange website, [www.submittalexchange.com](http://www.submittalexchange.com).
7. The Architect / Engineer review comments will be made available on the Submittal Exchange website for downloading. Contractor will receive email notice of completed review.
8. Distribution of reviewed submittals to subcontractors and suppliers is the responsibility of the Contractor.
9. Submit paper copies of reviewed submittals at project closeout for record purposes in accordance with Section 01770 – Closeout Procedures.

D. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 1 Section 01290 "Payment Procedures" for submitting Applications for Payment and the Schedule of Values.
2. Division 1 Section 01320 "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's Construction Schedule and the Submittals Schedule.
3. Division 1 Section 01322 "Photographic Documentation" for submitting construction photographs and construction videotapes.
4. Division 1 Section 01770 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties.
5. Division 1 Section 01781 "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.
6. Division 1 Section 01782 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
7. Division 1 Section 01820 "Demonstration and Training" for submitting videotapes of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.
8. Divisions 2 through 16 Sections for specific requirements for submittals in those Sections.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information that requires Architect's responsive action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Written information that does not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements.

### 1.4 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. General: Electronic copies of CAD Drawings of the Contract Drawings will, under certain circumstances described hereinafter, be provided by Architect for Contractor's use in preparing submittals.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
  1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
  2. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
    - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Submittals Schedule: Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section 01320 "Construction Progress Documentation" for list of submittals and time requirements for scheduled performance of related construction activities.
- D. Processing Time: Allow enough time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES  
01330-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama



Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including re-submittals.

1. Initial Review: Allow **14** business days for initial review of each digital submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
  2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
  3. Re-submittal Review: Allow **10** business days for review of each re-submittal.
  4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow **10** business days for initial review of each submittal.
    - a. Structural, mechanical, plumbing, electrical, civil, audio/visual, sound system, and kitchen equipment components are examples of the Work that require sequential review. Architect will advise if there are others.
- E. Identification: Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal for identification.
1. Indicate name of firm or entity that prepared each submittal on label or title block.
  2. Provide a space approximately 6 by 8 inches on label or beside title block to record Contractor's review and approval markings. Provide another area of this same size for the Architect to affix his stamp. Stamp includes the following four categories: Reviewed, Furnish as Noted, Rejected, Revise and Resubmit; the Architect will mark one or more of these categories and return submittal to Contractor.
  3. Include the following information on label for processing and recording action taken:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name and address of Architect.
    - d. Name and address of Contractor.
    - e. Name and address of subcontractor.
    - f. Name and address of supplier.
    - g. Name of manufacturer.
    - h. Submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
      - i. Submittal number shall use Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number (e.g., 06100.D.2.01). Re-submittals shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point (e.g., 06100.D.2.R1 (R2, R3 etc. if necessary).
      - i. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
      - j. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
      - k. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
      - l. Other necessary identification.
- F. Deviations: Encircle or otherwise specifically identify deviations and list the deviations from the Contract Documents on submittals and list the deviations on the transmittal form accompanying submittal.
- G. Transmittal: Package each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using a transmittal form. Architect will return submittals, without review, received from sources other than Contractor.

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES  
01330-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

1. Transmittal Form: Use AIA Document G810 or equivalent with at least the following information.
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Destination (To:).
    - d. Source (From:).
    - e. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
    - f. Category and type of submittal.
    - g. Submittal purpose and description.
    - h. Specification Section number and title.
    - i. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
    - j. Transmittal number, numbered consecutively.
    - k. Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
    - l. Remarks.
    - m. Signature of transmitter.
  2. On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same label information as related submittal.
- H. Re-submittals: Make re-submittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
  2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
  3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked "Reviewed" or "Furnished as Noted".
- I. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- J. Use for Construction: Use only final submittals with mark indicating "Reviewed" or "Furnished as Noted".

## **1.5 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF ARCHITECT'S CAD FILES**

- A. General: McKee & Associates CAD Files shall not be released.
1. Should the Contractor require CAD Files they are encouraged to seek PDF to CAD Conversion vendors and/or software.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 DIGITAL ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. General: Prepare and submit Digital Action Submittals required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. All submittals shall be sent to the Architect no later than 45 calendar days from "Notice To Proceed".
1. Submittals shall be sent to Greg Anderson at the following email address:  
[submittals@mckeeassoc.com](mailto:submittals@mckeeassoc.com).

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES  
01330-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- C. Submittals regarding mechanical, plumbing, electrical and structural items shall be sent directly to the Engineer of record.
1. A digital copy of the transmittal shall be sent to the Architect at the following email address: [submittals@mckeeassoc.com](mailto:submittals@mckeeassoc.com).
- D. Product Data: Collect information into a single digital submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard printed data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  2. Mark each copy of each the digital submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's written recommendations.
    - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
    - d. Standard color charts.
    - e. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - f. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
    - g. Printed performance curves.
    - h. Operational range diagrams.
    - i. Mill reports.
    - j. Standard product operation and maintenance manuals.
    - k. Compliance with specified referenced standards.
    - l. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    - m. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    - n. Notation of coordination requirements.
  4. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
  5. Number of Copies: Submit digital copy of the Product Data, unless otherwise indicated. Mark up and retain returned digital copy as a Project Record Document.
- E. Digital Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Dimensions.
    - b. Identification of products.
    - c. Fabrication and installation drawings.
    - d. Roughing-in and setting diagrams.
    - e. Wiring diagrams showing field-installed wiring, including power, signal, and control wiring.
    - f. Shopwork manufacturing instructions.
    - g. Templates and patterns.
    - h. Schedules.

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES  
01330-5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- i. Design calculations.
  - j. Compliance with specified standards.
  - k. Notation of coordination requirements.
  - l. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
  - m. Relationship to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
  - n. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
  - o. Wiring Diagrams: Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field installed wiring.
2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Digital Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches but no larger than 30 by 42 inches.
  3. Number of Copies:
    - a. Submit each original digital drawing submittal (specifically prepared for the project). Do not include MSDS documentation in any submittal. Architect will retain marked-up copy for his records and will return 1 (one) digital marked-up copy to the Contractor.
    - b. Submit digital copy (bound in sets) of hardware submittals, fixture schedules, manufacturers' data and all other submittals that have been prepared in an 11 inch by 17 inch or smaller format. The Architect will return 1 (one) digital copy set to the Contractor.
      - i. Upon receipt of his digital marked up shop drawings/submittals, the Contractor shall make as many copies for distribution as he deems necessary, however he shall retain one copy to mark-up further to show any and all construction changes that modify the submittal in any form. This document(s) shall be turned over to the Owner at the end of the Project along with the Record Documents.
- F. Color code: On all digital shop drawings submittals, schedules, etc., the Contractor's marks shall be in red, the Architect's in green and the Engineer's (if any involved) in blue. All comments shall be initialed by a responsible party within each organization.
- G. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Generic description of Sample.
    - b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
    - c. Sample source.
    - d. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
  3. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
    - a. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
  4. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available. **Colors will not be approved until all color submittals are received by the architect.**
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit two full sets of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return one submittal with options selected.

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES  
01330-6

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- b. All color submittals are due within 45 days of the Notice to Proceed.
  - c. The architect will be allowed 15 days from the date of the receipt of the last color submittal to approve colors.
5. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
- a. Number of Samples: Submit two sets of Samples. Architect will retain one Sample set and one will be returned. Mark up returned Sample set as a Project Record Sample.
    - i. Construct a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
    - ii. If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- H. Interior Color Selections: Any submittals that are associated with the aesthetics of the interior design shall not be approved until all submittals associated with the interior design are in the Architect's possession.
- I. Submittals Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section 01320 "Construction Progress Documentation."
- J. Application for Payment: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section 01290 "Payment Procedures."
- K. Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section 01290 "Payment Procedures."

## **2.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. General: Prepare and submit Informational Submittals required by other Specification Sections.
  - 1. Number of Copies: Submit digital copy of each submittal, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Certificates and Certifications: Provide a notarized statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
  - 3. Test and Inspection Reports: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section 01400 "Quality Requirements."
- B. Coordination Drawings: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section, 01310 "Project Management and Coordination."
- C. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- D. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification (WPS) and Procedure Qualification Record (PQR) on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.
- E. Installer Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES  
01330-7

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- F. **Manufacturer Certificates:** Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
- G. **Product Certificates:** Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- H. **Material Certificates:** Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- I. **Material Test Reports:** Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- J. **Product Test Reports:** Prepare written reports indicating current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- K. **Research/Evaluation Reports:** Prepare written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
  - 1. Name of evaluation organization.
  - 2. Date of evaluation.
  - 3. Time period when report is in effect.
  - 4. Product and manufacturers' names.
  - 5. Description of product.
  - 6. Test procedures and results.
  - 7. Limitations of use.
- L. **Preconstruction Test Reports:** Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
- M. **Compatibility Test Reports:** Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- N. **Field Test Reports:** Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- O. **Maintenance Data:** Prepare written and graphic instructions and procedures for operation and normal maintenance of products and equipment. Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section 01782 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- P. **Design Data:** Prepare written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.
- Q. **Manufacturer's Instructions:** Prepare written or published information that documents manufacturer's recommendations, guidelines, and procedures for installing or operating a product or equipment. Include name of product and name, address, and telephone number of manufacturer. Include the following, as applicable:

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES  
01330-8

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

1. Preparation of substrates.
  2. Required substrate tolerances.
  3. Sequence of installation or erection.
  4. Required installation tolerances.
  5. Required adjustments.
  6. Recommendations for cleaning and protection.
- R. Manufacturer's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting factory authorized service representative's tests and inspections. Include the following, as applicable:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of factory-authorized service representative making report.
  2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
  3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
  4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
  5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- S. Insurance Certificates and Bonds: Prepare written information indicating current status of insurance or bonding coverage. Include name of entity covered by insurance or bond, limits of coverage, amounts of deductibles, if any, and term of the coverage.
- T. Construction Photographs and Videotapes: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section 01322 " Photographic Documentation."
- U. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDSs): Submit information directly to Owner; do not submit to Architect.
1. Architect will not review submittals that include MSDSs and will return the entire submittal for re-submittal.

### **2.3 DELEGATED DESIGN**

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit one copy of a statement, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW**

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES  
01330-9

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- A. Review each digital submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Approval Stamp: Stamp each digital submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

### **3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION**

- A. General: Architect will not review digital submittals that do not bear Contractor's approval stamp and will return them without action.
- B. Action Submittals: Architect will review each digital submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or modifications required, and return it. Architect will stamp each digital submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action taken, as follows:
  - 1. REVIEWED—Indicates that reviewed submittal is satisfactory.
  - 2. REJECTED—Indicates submittal is not satisfactory and another properly prepared submittal of same or another product must be prepared and resubmitted.
  - 3. FURNISH AS NOTED—Indicates submittal is satisfactory if the changes, modifications, notes, etc. marked by the Architect are made a part of the submittal.
  - 4. REVISE AND RESUBMIT—Indicates although parts of the submittal are satisfactory, there are enough significant modifications that must be made to require the Contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and/or manufacturer to provide additional essential information to his submittal and then resubmit it to the Architect.
- C. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- D. Partial submittals are not acceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned without review.
- E. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may not be reviewed and may be discarded.

### **END OF SECTION**

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES  
01330-10

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



**SECTION 01410 – SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS**

<b>SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS</b>				
<b>Item</b>	<b>Inspection / Test / Certification</b>	<b>C or P</b>	<b>Extent / Comments</b>	<b>Agent</b>
<b>1.00</b>	<b>Fabricators</b>			
1.01	Review the quality control procedures of the following fabricators for completeness and adequacy relative to the fabricator's scope of work: steel fabricator, lightgage truss fabricator, wood truss fabricator.	Periodic	AISC Certified Fabricators are exempt from the Fabricator's Quality Control Procedural Evaluation by the Special Inspector.	
<b>2.00</b>	<b>Soils and Footings</b>			
2.01	Verify bearing capacities of soils beneath footings.	Periodic	As recommended in approved soils report and specified in earthwork specifications.	
2.03	Verify site preparation prior to beginning fill placement. Verify fill material type, placement method, lift thickness, and compaction of fill material. Verify in-place density of compacted fill.	Periodic	As recommended in approved soils report and specified in earthwork specifications.	
<b>3.00</b>	<b>Concrete Construction</b>			
3.01	Spread footings are excepted from the inspections listed below.			
3.02	Continuous footings are excepted from the inspections listed below.			
3.03	Slabs on grade are excepted from the inspections listed below.			
3.04	Concrete foundation walls are excepted from the inspections listed below.			
3.05	Concrete cast on non-composite form deck is excepted from the inspections listed below.			
3.06	Inspect concrete formwork except as noted above for proper dimensions. Verify that construction joints are properly keyed. Verify that slab recesses, if any, have been installed.	Periodic	Prior to each pour.	

SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS  
01410-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

3.07	Inspect reinforcing steel except as noted above for installation including size, spacing and bar clearances. Verify that lap splices and embedment lengths are per the construction documents. Verify that dowels for work above are properly aligned and spaced to match other work.	Periodic	Prior to each pour. Verify that dowels are properly aligned and spaced to match wall reinforcement. Verify that dowel projection is adequate for proper lap splice.	
3.09	Inspect weldability of reinforcing steel other than ASTM A706.	Periodic	Prior to fabrication.	
3.12	Inspect welded reinforcement.	Periodic	Prior to pour.	
3.13	Inspect column anchor bolts	Periodic	Prior to each pour, inspect column anchor bolts to verify proper embedment, spacing, and type of anchor.	
3.14	Inspect bolts and/or headed studs to be installed in concrete prior to and during placement of concrete.	Continuous	During placement and concreting operations.	
3.15	Verify each proposed concrete mix for the project.	Periodic	For each proposed mix.	
3.16	Sample all concrete for strength tests and test concrete for slump, air content, temperature, and other tests.	Continuous	During placement operations. Reference concrete specifications for specific tests and frequencies.	
3.17	Inspect concrete placement except as noted above.	Continuous		
3.18	Inspect all concrete curing operations as noted in the extents column.	Periodic	Monitor during hot, cold and windy conditions. Reference concrete specifications.	
3.21	Erection of precast concrete members.	Periodic	Inspect all connections.	
3.23	Verification of in-situ concrete strength prior to removal of forms and shores supporting weight of concrete.	Periodic	Prior to form or shoring removal.	
3.24	Verification of in-situ concrete strength prior to backfilling walls.	Periodic	Prior to backfilling operations.	
<b>4.00</b>	<b>Masonry Construction</b>			
4.02	Verification of fm' (specified compressive strength of masonry).	Periodic	Prior to construction. Additional verification for every 5,000 square feet during construction of Tornado Shelter.	

SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS  
01410-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

4.03	Inspect proportions of site prepared mortar and grout. Inspect placement of masonry units and construction of mortar joints. Inspect reinforcement for correct size and spacing. Inspect work for correct location and type of embeds and anchor bolts. Inspect work for size and location of structural elements.	Periodic	At beginning of masonry construction, prior to each new grout pour, and every 250 square feet of masonry thereafter.	
4.04	Inspect masonry cells and cleanouts prior to placement of grout. Inspect grout proportions. Inspect placement of reinforcement.	Periodic (U.N.O.)	Prior to grouting of masonry (and continuous inspection of grout space at Tornado Shelter)	
4.05	Inspect grouting operations to ensure compliance with code and construction documents. Inspect placement of all grout.	Continuous	During grouting.	
4.08	Inspect type size and location of anchors, including details of anchorage of masonry to structural members, frames or other construction.	Continuous	During installation of anchors at Tornado Shelter.	
4.10	Inspect welding of reinforcing bars.	Continuous	During installation and welding of all reinforcing.	
4.11	Inspect protection of masonry during cold weather and hot weather.	Periodic	During periods with temperatures below 40 degrees or above 90 degrees.	
4.12	Inspect preparation of grout specimens, mortar specimens and / or prisms.	Continuous	During preparation of all specimens.	
4.13	Verify compliance with all required inspection provisions of the construction documents and approved submittals.	Periodic	As required for duration of project.	
<b>5.00</b>	<b>Steel Construction</b>			
	Inspection of the steel pieces			
	Inspection of frame			
5.01	Inspect high-strength bolts, nuts and washers: a. Identify markings to conform to ASTM standards specified in the construction documents. b. Inspect manufacturer's certificate of compliance.	Periodic	Reference project specifications and ASTM material specifications; AISC 335, (Sect A3.4); AISC LRFD (Sect A3.3).	
5.02	Inspect high-strength bolting: Snug-tight Bearing-type connections (non-pretensioned)	Periodic		
5.03	Inspect high-strength bolting: Pretensioned connections (along with applicable pre-installation calibration procedures).	Periodic or Continuous	Continuous monitoring required for pretensioning using calibrated wrench method or turn-of-nut method without matchmarking.	

SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS  
01410-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

5.04	Inspect and verify structural steel material: a. Identification markings to conform to ASTM standards specified in the approved construction documents. b. Manufacturers' certified mill test reports.	Periodic	Confirm that materials meet applicable ASTM specifications noted in construction documents.	
5.05	Inspect and verify weld filler materials: a. Identification markings to conform to AWS specification in the approved construction documents. b. Manufacturer's certificate of compliance required.	Periodic	Confirm that materials meet applicable ASTM specifications noted in construction documents.	
5.06	Inspect welding: Structural Steel: 1) Complete and partial penetration groove 2) Multipass fillet welds. 3) Single-pass fillet welds > 5/16"	Continuous	Per specifications and AWS D1.1	
5.07	Inspect welding: Structural Steel: 1) Single-pass fillet welds ≤ 5/16" 2) Floor and deck welds. 3) Welded studs used for diaphragm. 4) Sheet steel for cold-formed framing. 5) Stairs and railings.	Periodic	Per specifications and AWS D1.1	
5.08	Roof and Floor deck: Inspect attachment of deck to supporting members.	Periodic	Prior to concrete or roofing being installed.	
5.09	Inspect steel frame joint details for compliance with approved construction documents (including addenda): a. Details such as bracing and stiffening. b. Member locations. c. Application of joint details at each connection.	Periodic	Inspect complete frame.	
<b>6.00</b>	<b>Wood</b>			
6.01	Inspect fabricated wood trusses and shop built components.	Periodic	Inspect truss production in shop unless fabricator is approved by building official and submits certification of compliance at end of scope of work.	
6.02	Inspect site-built assemblies. Inspect erected trusses including bridging and attachments.	Periodic	Inspect erected trusses and installation of bridging.	
6.03	Inspect plywood roof diaphragms.	Periodic	Inspect all diaphragms after rough carpentry is complete, including required nail attachment.	
6.04	Inspect installation and anchorage of wood trusses.	Periodic	Verify all bracing required by truss manufacturer as well as permanent 'X'-bracing as shown on contract drawings. Verify anchorage per contract drawings and manufacturer's recommendations.	

SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS  
01410-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

<b>7.00</b>	<b>Architectural / MEP Components</b>			
7.04	Verify application of sprayed fire-resistant materials.			
7.08	Inspect EIFS applications.			
7.10	Test smoke control systems.			
<b>9.00</b>	<b>Special Inspections for Seismic Resistance</b> Seismic Force-Resisting System(s) and/or Designated Seismic Systems:		See General Notes on Sheet S0.1 of structural drawings.	
9.02	Inspect nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of components within the seismic-force-resisting system including drag-struts, braces and hold-downs.	Periodic		
9.06	Inspect anchorage of access floors and storage racks 8 feet or greater in height.	Periodic		
9.07	Inspect erection and fastening of exterior cladding and interior and exterior veneer.	Periodic		
9.08	Inspect erection and fastening of all non-load bearing walls.	Periodic		
9.09	Inspect mechanical and electrical components per 1707.7 as determined by MEP designer(s).	Periodic		
9.18	Review certified mill test reports of all concrete reinforcing.			

<b>INSPECTION AGENTS</b>	
#	Firm, Address, Telephone

SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS  
01410-5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

*Note: The inspection and testing agent(s) shall be engaged by the Owner or the Owner's Agent, and not by the Contractor or Subcontractor whose work is to be inspected or tested. Any conflict of interest must be disclosed to the Building Official prior to commencing work. The qualifications of the Inspection Agent(s) may be subject to the approval of the Building Official.*

**END OF SECTION**

SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS  
01410-6

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 01500 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 1 Section 01100 "Summary" for limitations on utility interruptions and other work restrictions.
  - 2. Division 1 Section 01330 "Submittal Procedures" for procedures for submitting copies of implementation and termination schedule and utility reports.
  - 3. Division 1 Section 01700 "Execution Requirements" for progress cleaning requirements.
  - 4. Divisions 2 through 16 Sections for temporary heat, ventilation, and humidity requirements for products in those Sections.
  - 5. Division 2 Section 02282 "Termite Control" for pest control.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Permanent Enclosure: As determined by Architect, permanent or temporary roofing is complete, insulated, and weathertight; exterior walls are insulated and weathertight; and all openings are closed with permanent construction or substantial temporary closures.

#### 1.4 USE CHARGES

- A. General: Cost or use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sewer Service: Sewer connections will not be in place for most if not all of the duration of the project. When and if the off-site sewer is installed by others and sewer piping under this contract is installed, should the contractor decide to connect to the sewer he must pay all sewer use charges until the project is turned over to the Owner.
- C. Water Service: Pay water service use charges for water used by all entities for construction operations.
- D. Electric Power Service: Pay electric power service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Plan: Show temporary facilities, utility hookups, staging areas, and parking areas for construction personnel.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS  
01500-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Installer of each permanent service shall assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 TEMPORARY FACILITIES**

- A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
  - 1. **Minimum Requirement: One (1) 10 foot wide x 44 foot long unit required.**
- B. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of construction personnel. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
  - 1. Furniture required for Project-site documents including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
  - 2. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 10 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with not less than 1 receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and 4-foot-square tack board.
  - 3. Drinking water and private toilet.
  - 4. Coffee machine and supplies.
  - 5. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F.
  - 6. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc at desk height.
- C. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
  - 1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

### **2.2 EQUIPMENT**

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- B. HVAC Equipment: Provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
  - 1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
  - 2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended use.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

### **3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.

TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS  
01500-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services. Sanitary Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
  2. Connect temporary sanitary sewer from construction office to a submerged temporary holding tank, as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Provide erosion control structures to drain storm water from site.
- B. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction from existing water lines in the street. Contractor shall pay for any metering costs and associated fees required by the City Water Department.
- C. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
1. Toilets: Use of Owner's existing toilet facilities will not be permitted.
- D. Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
- E. Ventilation and Humidity Control: Provide temporary ventilation required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce ambient condition required and minimize energy consumption.
- F. Electric Power Service: Provide temporary electric meter power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations. Contractor shall be responsible for any charges associated with said service.
1. Install electric power service overhead, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
- H. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel. Install one telephone line for each field office.
1. Provide additional telephone lines for the following:
    - a. Provide a dedicated telephone line for each facsimile machine and computer in each field office.
  2. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers.
    - a. Police and fire departments.
    - b. Ambulance service.
    - c. Contractor's home office.
    - d. Architect's office.
    - e. Engineers' offices.
    - f. Owner's office.
    - g. Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.
  3. Provide superintendent with cellular telephone or portable two-way radio for use when away from field office.

TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS  
01500-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- I. Electronic Communication Service: Provide temporary electronic communication service, including electronic mail, in common-use facilities, or other suitable high speed internet connection.
  - 1. Provide DSL in primary field office.

### **3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Provide incombustible construction for offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area with good visibility of construction. Comply with NFPA 241.
  - 2. Maintain support facilities until near Substantial Completion. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
  - 2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- C. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
  - 1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties nor endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
- D. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Erect Project identification, General Contractor's sign, Architect's sign and other signs as approved. Install signs where directed to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project. Subcontractor signs are not permitted.
- E. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with Division 1 Section "Execution Requirements" for progress cleaning requirements.
- F. Temporary Stairs: Until permanent stairs are available, provide one temporary stair between floors, located near the center of the building.
- G. Temporary Use of Permanent Stairs: Cover finished, permanent stairs with protective covering of plywood or similar material so finishes will be undamaged at time of acceptance.

### **3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION**

- A. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction in ways and by methods that comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
  - 1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Division 1 Section "Summary."
- B. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Comply with requirements specified in Division 2 02100 Section "Site Preparation."
- C. Stormwater Control: Comply with authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- D. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- E. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.

TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS  
01500-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is not complete, insulate temporary enclosures.
- F. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241.
  1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas.
  2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.

### **3.5 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL**

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
  1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
  1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Carefully remove and turn over Architect's sign to the Architect.
  2. Where area is intended for landscape development, in an area that has been used as a compacted temporary road bed, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for landscaping fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. At Substantial Completion, clean and renovate permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Division 1 Section 01770 "Closeout Procedures."

### **END OF SECTION**

TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS  
01500-5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 01600 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; product substitutions; and equal products.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Divisions 2 through 16 Sections for specific requirements for warranties on products and installations specified to be warranted.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items purchased for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
  - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature, that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
  - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
  - 3. Equal Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved through submittal process, or where indicated as a product substitution, to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
- C. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: Where a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis of design," including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating equal products of other named manufacturers.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product List: Submit a list, in tabular form, showing specified products. Include generic names of products required. Include manufacturer's name and proprietary product names for each product.
  - 1. Coordinate product list with Contractor's Construction Schedule and the Submittals Schedule.
  - 2. Form: Tabulate information for each product under the following column headings:
    - a. Specification Section number and title.
    - b. Generic name used in the Contract Documents.
    - c. Proprietary name, model number, and similar designations.
    - d. Manufacturer's name and address.
    - e. Supplier's name and address.
    - f. Installer's name and address.

PRODUCTS REQUIREMENTS  
01600-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- g. Projected delivery date or time span of delivery period.
  - h. Identification of items that require early submittal approval for scheduled delivery date.
3. Completed List: Within 60 days after date of commencement of the Work, submit 3 copies of completed product list. Include a written explanation for omissions of data and for variations from Contract requirements.
  4. Architect's Action: Architect will respond in writing to Contractor within 15 days of receipt of completed product list. Architect's response will include a list of unacceptable product selections and a brief explanation of reasons for this action. Architect's response, or lack of response, does not constitute a waiver of requirement to comply with the Contract Documents.
- B. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
1. Substitution Request Form: Use CSI Form 13.1A.
  2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
    - a. Statement indicating why specified materials or products cannot be provided.
    - b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or modifications needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
    - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and requirements indicated.
    - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
    - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
    - f. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.
    - g. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
    - h. Research/evaluation reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - i. Detailed comparison of Contractor's Construction Schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating lack of availability or delays in delivery.
    - j. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
    - k. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and is appropriate for applications indicated.
    - l. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
  3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within 7 days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or 7 days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
    - a. Form of Acceptance: Change Order.

PRODUCTS REQUIREMENTS  
01600-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- b. Use product specified if Architect cannot make a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.
  - c. If Contractor's Substitution Requests are repeatedly (i.e. 3 times) submitted incomplete, i.e., no definitive response to items "a" through "l", the Architect will not consider any further Substitution Requests.
- C. Equal Product Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
- 1. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within one week of receipt of an equal product request. Architect will notify Contractor of approval or rejection of proposed equal product request within 15 days of receipt of request, or 7 days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
    - a. Use product specified if Architect cannot make a decision on use of an equal product request within time allocated.
- D. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section 01330 "Submittal Procedures." Show compliance with requirements.

## **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, product selected shall be compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
- B. The Contractor MUST provide the Owner with a Certificate of Asbestos Free Building Materials at the end of the project certifying that all building materials incorporated, installed, and used during the construction process of the project by the Contractor or its Subcontractors of any tier are 100% asbestos free. Asbestos Free means containing 0% asbestos in any form. The Certificate of Asbestos Free Building Materials form is included in the project manual.

## **1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:
  - 1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
  - 2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
  - 3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
  - 4. Inspect products on delivery to ensure compliance with the Contract Documents and to ensure that products are undamaged and properly protected.
- C. Storage:
  - 1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
  - 2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
  - 3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
  - 4. Store cementitious products and materials on elevated platforms.

PRODUCTS REQUIREMENTS  
01600-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

5. Store foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
6. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
7. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
8. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.
9. Materials Stored Off Site: Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor's cost of materials and equipment to be incorporated into the Work, which are stored off the site, may also be considered in monthly Applications for Payment under the following conditions:
  - a. The contractor has received written approval from the Architect and Owner to store the materials or equipment off site in advance of delivering the materials to the off site location.
  - b. A Certificate of Insurance is furnished to the Architect evidencing that a special insurance policy, or rider to an existing policy, has been obtained by the Contractor providing all-risk property insurance coverage, specifically naming the materials or equipment stored, and naming the Owner as an additionally insured party.
  - c. The Architect is provided with a detailed inventory of the stored materials or equipment and the materials or equipment are clearly marked in correlation to the inventory to facilitate inspection and verification of the presence of the materials or equipment by the Architect or Owner.
  - d. The materials or equipment are properly and safely stored in a bonded warehouse, or a facility otherwise approved in advance by the Architect and Owner.
  - e. Compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest.

## **1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES**

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
  1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Preprinted written warranty published by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
  2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by or incorporated into the Contract Documents, either to extend time limit provided by manufacturer's warranty or to provide more rights for Owner.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution. Submit a draft for approval before final execution.
  1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
  2. Refer to Divisions 2 through 16 Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Warranty start for mechanical and electrical equipment being date of substantial completion.
- D. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, that are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, that are new at time of installation.

PRODUCTS REQUIREMENTS  
01600-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
5. Where products are accompanied by the term "match sample," sample to be matched is Architect's.
6. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish "salient characteristics" of products.
7. Or Equal: Where products are specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal" or "or approved equal" or "or approved," comply with provisions in Part 2 "Equal Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.

E. Product Selection Procedures:

1. Products and Manufacturers: In particular instances there may only be a single product or manufacturer appropriate for use on the project, in which case where Specifications name a single product and manufacturer and say "no equal", provide the named product.
2. Products and Manufacturers: When one or two products or manufacturers are specified and have the words "or approved equal", the Contractor may propose to provide alternatives in the form of a Substitution Request which once reviewed by the Architect will be either accepted or rejected. If Substitution Request is submitted for approval 7 days prior to the receipt of bids and approved by the Architect, said approvals will be included in Addenda. Only those Substitution Requests listed as approved in Addenda may bid the project.
3. Products and Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of three (3) or more names of both products and manufacturers, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. No substitutions will be accepted.
4. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified product or an equal product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named.
5. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require matching an established Sample, product must comply with all requirements and must match Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
  - a. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with provisions in Part 2 "Product Substitutions" Article for proposal of product
6. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected from manufacturer's colors, patterns, textures" or a similar phrase, select a product that complies with other specified requirements.
  - a. Standard Range: Where Specifications include the phrase "standard range of colors, patterns, textures" or similar phrase, Architect will select color, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that does not include premium items.
  - b. Full Range: Where Specifications include the phrase "full range of colors, patterns, textures" or similar phrase, Architect will select color, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

PRODUCTS REQUIREMENTS  
01600-5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama



## **1.8 PRODUCT SUBSTITUTIONS**

- A. Timing: Architect will consider requests for substitution under the conditions set forth in this section under Product Selection Procedures, if received within 60 days after the Notice to Proceed. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect.
- B. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution under the conditions set forth in this section under Product Selection Procedures and when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied,
- C. Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
  - 1. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
  - 2. Requested substitution requires no or only very minor revisions (as determined by the Architect), to the Contract Documents.
  - 3. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
  - 4. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
  - 5. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 6. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 7. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  - 8. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
  - 9. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
  - 10. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

**PART 2 - NOT APPLICABLE**

**PART 3 - NOT APPLICABLE**

**END OF SECTION**

PRODUCTS REQUIREMENTS  
01600-6

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 01700 - EXECUTION REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes general procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Construction layout.
  - 2. Field engineering and surveying.
  - 3. General installation of products.
  - 4. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
  - 5. Progress cleaning.
  - 6. Starting and adjusting.
  - 7. Protection of installed construction.
  - 8. Correction of the Work.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 1 Section 01310 "Project Management and Coordination" for procedures for coordinating field engineering with other construction activities.
  - 2. Division 1 Section 01330 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
  - 3. Division 1 Section 01770 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, and final cleaning.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- B. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by professional engineer certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.
- C. Landfill Receipts: Submit copy of receipts issued by a landfill facility, licensed to accept hazardous materials, for hazardous waste disposal.
- D. Certified Surveys: Submit two copies signed by professional engineer.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.

### PART 2 - EXECUTION

#### 2.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of site improvements, utilities, and other construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning work, investigate and verify the existence and location of mechanical and electrical systems and other construction affecting the Work.
  - 1. Before construction, verify the location and points of connection of utility services.

EXECUTION REQUIREMENTS  
01700-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- B. Existing Utilities: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities and other construction affecting the Work.
  - 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; and underground electrical services.
  - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- C. Acceptance of Conditions: Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
  - 1. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
    - a. Description of the Work.
    - b. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
    - c. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
    - d. Recommended corrections.
  - 2. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
  - 3. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
  - 4. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
  - 5. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

## **2.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility and Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents, submit a request for information to Architect. Include a detailed description of problem encountered, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents. Submit requests on RFI, "Request for Interpretation."

## **2.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT**

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. General: Engage a professional engineer to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.

EXECUTION REQUIREMENTS  
01700-2

1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
  2. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
  3. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
  4. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
  5. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
  6. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.

## **2.4 FIELD ENGINEERING**

- A. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
  2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- B. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data on Project Record Documents.
  2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
  3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.
- C. Certified Survey: On completion of foundation walls, major site improvements, and other work requiring field-engineering services, prepare a certified survey showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations of construction and sitework.
- D. Final Property Survey: Submit a final property survey certifying exact locations of site improvements including building(s), parking lots, roadways and utilities including structure elevations, top and invert, distances from property lines, and with any variation from the original civil staking and layout and utility drawings identified.

## **2.5 INSTALLATION**

EXECUTION REQUIREMENTS  
01700-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
  - 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
  - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
  - 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 8 feet in spaces without a suspended ceiling unless shown otherwise on drawings.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results.
- D. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- E. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Anchors and Fasteners: Provide anchors and fasteners as required to anchor each component securely in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work.
  - 1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
  - 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
  - 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- J. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.

## **2.6 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS**

- A. Site Access: Provide access to Project site for Owner's construction forces.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction forces.
  - 1. Construction Schedule: Inform Owner of Contractor's preferred construction schedule for Owner's portion of the Work. Adjust construction schedule based on a mutually agreeable timetable. Notify Owner if changes to schedule are required due to differences in actual construction progress.
  - 2. Pre-installation Conferences: Include Owner's construction forces at pre-installation conferences covering portions of the Work that are to receive Owner's work. Attend pre-installation conferences conducted by Owner's construction forces if portions of the Work depend on Owner's construction.

## **2.7 PROGRESS CLEANING**

EXECUTION REQUIREMENTS  
01700-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where more than one installer has worked. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
  - 2. Do not hold materials more than 7 days during normal weather or 3 days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
  - 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
  - 1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
  - 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Burying or burning waste materials on-site will not be permitted. Washing waste materials down sewers or into waterways will not be permitted.
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

## **2.8 STARTING AND ADJUSTING**

- A. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- B. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding. Adjust equipment for proper operation.
- C. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Manufacturer's Field Service: If a factory-authorized service representative is required to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, comply with qualification requirements in Division 1 Section 01400 "Quality Requirements."

## **2.9 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

EXECUTION REQUIREMENTS  
01700-5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

**2.10 CORRECTION OF THE WORK**

- A. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Restore damaged substrates and finishes.
  - 1. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment.
- B. Restore permanent facilities used during construction to their specified condition.
- C. Remove and replace damaged surfaces that are exposed to view if surfaces cannot be repaired without visible evidence of repair.
- D. Repair components that do not operate properly. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired.
- E. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass or reflective surfaces.

**PART 3 – NOT APPLICABLE**

**END OF SECTION**

EXECUTION REQUIREMENTS  
01700-6

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 01770 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- B. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Inspection procedures.
  - 2. Warranties.
  - 3. Final cleaning.

#### 1.3 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

- A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion, complete the following. List items below that are incomplete in request.
  - 1. Prepare a list of items to be completed and corrected (punch list), the value of items on the list, and reasons why the Work is not complete.
  - 2. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
  - 3. Submit specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
  - 4. Obtain and submit releases permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
  - 5. Prepare and submit Project Record Documents, operation and maintenance manuals, Final Completion construction photographs, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
  - 6. Deliver spare parts, extra materials, and similar items to location designated by Owner. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
  - 7. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
  - 8. Complete startup testing of systems.
  - 9. Submit test/adjust/balance records.
  - 10. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
  - 11. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
  - 12. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
  - 13. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
  - 14. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection for Substantial Completion. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES  
01770-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



1. Re-inspection: Request re-inspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for Final Completion.

#### **1.4 FINAL COMPLETION**

- A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting final inspection for determining date of Final Completion, complete the following:
  1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Division 1 Section 01290 "Payment Procedures."
  2. Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. The certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
  3. Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
  4. Submit pest-control final inspection report and warranty.
  5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training videotapes.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection for acceptance. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
  1. Re-inspection: Request re-inspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

#### **1.5 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)**

- A. Preparation: Submit three copies of list. Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
  1. Mark the Architect's punch-list so-as-to identify those items that are still outstanding and uncorrected at the time of submission.

#### **1.6 WARRANTIES**

- A. Submittal Time: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated.
- B. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of the Project Manual.
  1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, 3-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
  2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
  3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
- C. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES  
01770-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 FINAL CLEANING**

- A. General: Provide final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for Project.
    - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
    - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
    - c. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
    - d. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
    - e. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
    - f. Remove labels that are not permanent.
    - g. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred, exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that cannot be satisfactorily repaired or restored or that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
      - i. Do not paint over "UL" and similar labels, including mechanical and electrical nameplates.
    - h. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
    - i. Replace parts subject to unusual operating conditions.
    - j. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
    - k. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction.
    - l. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.

#### **END OF SECTION**

CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES  
01770-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 01781 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- B. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Project Record Documents, including the following:
  1. Digital Record Drawings.
  2. Digital Record Specifications.
  3. Digital Record Product Data.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
  1. Number of Copies: Submit one set of digitally scanned marked-up Record Prints.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit one copy of digitally scanned Project Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit one digitally scanned copy of each Product Data submittal.
- D. Where Record Product Data is required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit marked-up Product Data as an insert in manual instead of submittal as Record Product Data.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one clean set of blue- or black-line white prints of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings and one copy of the project manual (specification) at the job site for the sole purpose of recording changes to the drawings and specifications.
- B. Preparation: Mark Record Prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to prepare the marked-up Record Prints.
  1. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
  2. Accurately record information in an understandable drawing technique.
  3. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
- C. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
  2. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
  3. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
  4. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
  5. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
  6. Actual equipment locations.
  7. Duct size and routing.

PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS  
01781-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

8. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
  9. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive. (Posted on Documents.)
  10. Changes made following Architect's written orders, i.e. ASIs. (Posted on Documents.)
  11. Details not on the original Contract Drawings. (Posted on Documents.)
  12. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
  13. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
  14. Changes made in response to Contractor's questions, i.e. RFIs. (Posted on Documents.)
- D. Mark the Contract Drawings or Shop Drawings, whichever is most capable of showing actual physical conditions, completely and accurately. If Shop Drawings are marked, show cross-reference on the Contract Drawings.
  - E. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
  - F. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
  - G. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable. Where posting is required, post on Drawing Set and in Specifications on sheets or pages adjacent to or on top of where modification applies.
  - H. Attachment method shall be taped at top only, so as to access original underneath.
  - I. Digitally scan all documents and provide on CD Rom to Architect.

## **2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS**

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications. Maintain one clean copy of the project manual (specification) at the job site for the sole purpose of recording changes to the drawings and specifications.
  1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
  3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
  4. For each principal product, indicate whether Record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as Record Product Data.
  5. Note related Change Orders, Record Product Data, and Record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Digitally scan all documents and provide on CD Rom to Architect.

## **2.3 RECORD PRODUCT DATA**

- A. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
- B. Maintain one clean set at the job site for the sole purpose of recording changes to the drawings and specifications.
  1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.

PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS  
01781-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

3. Note related Change Orders, Record Specifications and Record Drawings where applicable.
- C. Digitally scan all documents and provide on CD Rom to Architect.

## **2.4 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS**

- A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.

### **PART 3 - RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE**

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for Project Record Document purposes. Post changes and modifications to Project Record Documents as they occur; do not wait until the end of Project.
- B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store Record Documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use Project Record Documents for construction purposes. Maintain Record Documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to Project Record Documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours. Architect's representative will review Record Documents with the project superintendent each month to determine to his satisfaction whether or not Record Documents are being kept up to date. Failure to do so will result in the delay of processing pay request until Record Documents are brought up to date.

### **END OF SECTION**

PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS  
01781-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 01782 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
  - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
  - 2. Emergency manuals.
  - 3. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 4. Maintenance manuals for the care and maintenance of products, materials, finishes, systems and equipment.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal: Submit one copy of each manual in final form at least 15 days before final inspection. Architect will return copy with comments within 15 days after final inspection.
  - 1. Correct or modify each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit three copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's comments.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Where operation and maintenance documentation includes information on installations by more than one factory-authorized service representative, assemble and coordinate information furnished by representatives and prepare manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY

- A. Organization: Include a section in the directory for each of the following:
  - 1. List of documents.
  - 2. List of systems.
  - 3. List of equipment.
  - 4. Table of contents.
- B. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
- C. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
- D. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.

OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA  
01782-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

## 2.2 MANUALS, GENERAL

- A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
1. Title page.
  2. Table of contents.
  3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Enclose title page in transparent plastic sleeve. Include the following information:
1. Subject matter included in manual.
  2. Name and address of Project.
  3. Name and address of Owner.
  4. Date of submittal.
  5. Name, address, and telephone number of Contractor.
  6. Name and address of Architect.
  7. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
1. Binders: Heavy-duty, 3-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
    - a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.
    - b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
  2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
  3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software diskettes for computerized electronic equipment.
  4. Supplementary Text: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch white bond paper.

OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA  
01782-2

5. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
  - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
  - b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

## **2.3 EMERGENCY MANUALS**

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
  1. Type of emergency.
  2. Emergency instructions.
  3. Emergency procedures.
- B. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
  1. Fire.
  2. Flood.
  3. Gas leak.
  4. Water leak.
  5. Power failure.
  6. Water outage.
  7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  8. Chemical release or spill.
- C. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- D. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
  1. Instructions on stopping.
  2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
  3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
  4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

## **2.4 OPERATION MANUALS**

- A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
  1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
  2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
  3. Operating standards.
  4. Operating procedures.
  5. Operating logs.
  6. Wiring diagrams.

OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA  
01782-3



7. Control diagrams.
  8. Piped system diagrams.
  9. Precautions against improper use.
  10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.
- B. Descriptions: Include the following:
1. Product name and model number.
  2. Manufacturer's name.
  3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
  4. Equipment function.
  5. Operating characteristics.
  6. Limiting conditions.
  7. Performance curves.
  8. Engineering data and tests.
  9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.
- C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Startup procedures.
  2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
  3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
  4. Regulation and control procedures.
  5. Instructions on stopping.
  6. Normal shutdown instructions.
  7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
  8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  9. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.
- E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed and identify color-coding where required for identification.

## **2.5 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual.
- C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Product name and model number.
  2. Manufacturer's name.
  3. Color, pattern, and texture.

OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA  
01782-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

4. Material and chemical composition.
  5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
1. Inspection procedures.
  2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
  5. Repair instructions.
- E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

## **2.6 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

- A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual.
- C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
1. Standard printed maintenance instructions and bulletins.
  2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
  3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
  4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
1. Test and inspection instructions.
  2. Troubleshooting guide.
  3. Precautions against improper maintenance
  4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
  6. Demonstration and training videotape, if available.
- E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.

OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA  
01782-5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- G. Maintenance Service: Some equipment and products require maintenance by the manufacturer, supplier or subcontractor, i.e., an authorized service representative, as part of the warranty. The General Contractor shall ensure that said maintenance work is done and provide copies of service reports to the Owner.
- H. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
  1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- C. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- E. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
  1. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
- F. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in Record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
  1. Do not use original Project Record Documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
  2. Comply with requirements of Record Drawings in Division 1 Section 01781 "Project Record Documents."
- G. Comply with Division 1 Section 01770 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

### **END OF SECTION**

OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA  
01782-6

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

## SECTION 01820 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
  - 1. Demonstration of operation of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 2. Training in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 3. Demonstration and training digital media.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Instruction Program: Submit two copies of outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
  - 1. At completion of training, submit one complete training manual for Owner's use.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Division 1 Section 01400 "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.
- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data has been reviewed and approved by Architect.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a combined training manual.
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

#### 3.2 INSTRUCTION

DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING  
01820-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- A. Instructor: Engage a qualified instructor to prepare instruction program and training modules, and to coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of participants, instruction times, and location.
- B. Instructor shall demonstrate to Owner's personnel how to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
- C. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
  - 1. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days' advance notice.

**END OF SECTION**

DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING  
01820-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 02070 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Extent of demolition work is shown on drawings, as well as all items necessary to complete new work indicated on plans.
- B. Schedule of Demolition Work: Demolition includes but is not limited to the following:
  - 1. Any damage to existing facilities at the site after the Contractor takes possession shall be repaired by this Contractor at his expense.
  - 2. Contractor shall replace grass/sod damaged during the construction. Fill in ruts caused by equipment with topsoil and grass over to match existing conditions.
  - 3. As indicated on the Drawings.
  - 4. All other items indicated required to be demolished to complete new work.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule: Submit proposed methods and operations of demolition work to Architect for review prior to start of work. Include in schedule coordination for shut-off, capping and continuation of utility services as required.
  - 1. Provide a detailed sequence of demolition and removal work to ensure uninterrupted progress of Owner's on-site operations.

#### 1.4 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Condition of Structures: Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purposes will be maintained by Owner in so far as practicable.
- B. Explosives: Use of explosives will not be permitted.
- C. Traffic: Conduct demolition operations and removal of debris to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities.
- D. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks or other occupied or used facilities without permission from authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by governing regulations.
- E. Protections: Ensure safe passage of persons (night or day) around area of demolition. Conduct operations to prevent injury to adjacent buildings, structures, other facilities and persons.
  - 1. Erect temporary covered passageways as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide temporary fencing as necessary to secure the limits of construction. Fencing shall be substantial to deter passage, fencing material shall be at Contractors discretion.
- F. Damages: Promptly repair damages caused to adjacent facilities by demolition operations at no cost to Owner.
- G. Utility Services: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain, keep in service, and protect against damage during demolition operations.
  - 1. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving occupied or used facilities, except when authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction. Provide temporary services during interruptions to existing utilities, as acceptable to governing authorities.

SELECTIVE DEMOLITION  
02070-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

2. All electrical work to be removed, relocated or reconnected shall be performed by a licensed Electrical Contractor in accordance with the NEC and any applicable local codes and ordinances.

## **PART 2 – PRODUCTS [NOT APPLICABLE]**

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 DEMOLITION - DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS**

- A. General: Remove from site debris, rubbish and other materials resulting from demolition operations.
- B. Burning of removed materials from demolished structures will not be permitted on site.
- C. Removal: Transport materials removed from demolished structures and legally dispose of off-site, in area approved by all local authorities and ADEM.

#### **END OF SECTION**

SELECTIVE DEMOLITION  
02070-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 02100 - SITE PREPARATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- B. Perform site preparation work as shown and specified. Site preparation includes, but is not limited to the following:
  1. Protection of existing trees to remain
  2. Removal of trees and other vegetation.
  3. Stripping and stockpiling of topsoil.
  4. Clearing and grubbing.
  5. Removing above grade improvements.
  6. Removing below grade improvements.
  7. Installation of erosion control devices.

#### 1.3 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Existing Trees and Vegetation: Protect existing trees and other vegetation indicated to remain in place, against unnecessary cutting, breaking or skinning of roots, skinning and bruising of bark, smothering of trees by stockpiling construction materials or excavated materials within drip line, excess foot or vehicular traffic, or parking of vehicles within drip line. Provide temporary guards to protect trees and vegetation to be left standing. Leave all protection in place and maintain until construction work has been completed and all danger of damage has passed. Protection shall be removed only after approval is given by Architect.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **The General Contractor shall obtain (*In accordance with ADEM Admin. Code Chapter 335-6-12*) an ADEM storm water permit from the State of Alabama. An NPDES construction site also includes construction sites, irrespective of size, whose stormwater discharges have a reasonable potential to be a significant contributor of pollutants to a water of the State, or whose stormwater discharges have a reasonable potential to cause or contribute to a violation of an applicable Alabama water quality standard as determined by the Department. The General Contractor shall include in Base Bid all permit fees associated to obtain this permit. The Contractor shall submit a Notice of Registration, the fee and develop a Construction Best Management Practices Plan (CBMPP) prior to construction and shall maintain all erosion control measures until the permit is relinquished.**
- A. The Contractor shall use care when working near existing and future installed Best Management Practice (BMP) structures to prevent damage to the structures resulting in erosion and storm water runoff containing silt and soil from the site. The Contractor shall walk the site and verify the condition of the BMP structures during the execution of the work. Any repair work that is deemed necessary as a result of damage caused by the Contractor shall be the responsibility of the Contractor and shall be performed prior to payment of the next scheduled payment application.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Temporary Soil Erosion and Sediment Control Items: Items including silt fence, wattles, inlet protection, sand bags and other erosion control items are to meet the requirements of Section

SITE PREPARATION  
02100-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EROSION CONTROL**

- A. Prior to the starting of any work, install erosion control measures as required in the Erosion Control or Best Management Practice Plan. Maintain all erosion control measures in place during full construction period and until such time as the site is substantially vegetated. Install erosion control measures in accordance with Section 665 of the Alabama Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Highway Construction (ALDOTSSHC), latest edition, and the manufacturer's recommendations. Inspection of the silt fence shall be daily, and repair or replacement must be made promptly as required. Any sediment collected by the erosion control measures must be removed when it reaches 6" in height. Erosion control measures shall be removed only after approval is given by the Architect. Removal of erosion control measures is to be carried out by the Contractor who installed the measures.

#### **3.2 SITE CLEARING**

- A. General: Remove vegetation, improvements or obstructions interfering with installation of new construction and within limits indicated on the Drawings. Remove all demolished items from the site. Removal includes digging out stumps and roots. Carefully and cleanly cut roots and branches of trees indicated to be left standing where such roots and branches obstruct new construction.
- B. Clearing and Grubbing: Clear site of trees, shrubs and other vegetation, except for those indicated to be left standing. Completely remove stumps, roots and other debris protruding through ground surface. Do not grub inside the drip line of trees to remain. On site burning is not permitted.
- C. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material, unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding 8" loose depth and thoroughly compact to a density equal to adjacent original ground.
- D. Positive drainage must be maintained or installed by the Contractor to insure that storm water runoff flows to the proper drainage structure or swale.
- E. Restore all areas disturbed by construction activities and which are outside the limits of clearing as indicated on the drawing to their original condition. The expense for this work will be borne by the contractor. The work must be in accordance with the directions of the Architect.

#### **3.3 STRIPPING TOPSOIL**

- A. Topsoil is defined as friable clay loam surface soil found in a depth of not less than 4". Satisfactory topsoil is reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, stones and other objects over 2" in diameter, and without weeds, roots and other objectionable material. Strip topsoil to its full depth at all areas to be regraded, resurfaced or paved in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other objectionable material. Remove heavy growths of grass from areas before stripping. Where trees are indicated to be left standing, stop topsoil stripping at drip line, unless directed otherwise, to prevent damage to main root system. Stockpile topsoil in storage piles in a location acceptable to the Architect. Construct storage piles to freely drain surface water. Cover storage piles if required to prevent wind-blown dust. Maintain topsoil storage piles separate from other stockpiled soil materials.

#### **3.4 SITE IMPROVEMENTS**

- A. Remove above grade and below grade improvements necessary to permit construction, and other work as indicated. Abandonment or removal of certain underground pipe or conduits are shown on the civil drawings and is included under work of those sections. Removal of abandoned underground piping or conduit interfering with construction is included under this section.

#### **3.5 DISPOSAL OF WASTE MATERIAL**

SITE PREPARATION  
02100-2

- A. Removal from Owner's Property: Remove waste materials, including unacceptable excavated materials, trash and debris, and legally dispose of it off Owner's property site, in area approved by all local authorities and ADEM.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 02200 – EARTHWORK

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to work of this section.
- B. Geotechnical Report is included at the end of this section and is an integral part of this specification.**

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Extent of earthwork is indicated on drawings.
  - 1. Rough grading
  - 2. Preparation of subgrade for building slabs and walks is included as part of this work.
  - 3. Drainage fill course for support of building slabs is included as part of this work.
- B. Excavation for Mechanical/Electrical Work: Refer to Division 15 and 16 sections for excavation and backfill required in conjunction with underground mechanical and electrical utilities and buried mechanical and electrical appurtenances; not work of this section.
- C. Codes and Standards: Perform excavation work in compliance with applicable requirements of governing authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Testing and Inspection Service:
- E. The **Owner** will select a firm for soil testing and inspection service for quality control testing during earthwork, and Owner to pay costs.
- F. Retesting of rejected materials and installed work shall be done at the Contractor's expense.
- G. Referenced Standards: Where the term "Referenced Standard" is used in these Project Specifications, it shall be interpreted as **referring to the current edition of "Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, 2018 or latest edition" of Alabama Department of Transportation "**. Referenced Divisions of the "Standard" are hereby made a part of this Project Specification insofar as they may be termed applicable. In no case will requirements for "Method of Measurement" and "Basis of Payment" be considered as applicable to this Project Specification.

#### 1.3 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Existing Utilities: Locate existing underground utilities in areas of work. If utilities are to remain in place, provide adequate means of support and protection during earthwork operations.
- B. Should uncharted or incorrectly charted, piping or other utilities be encountered during excavation, consult utility Owner immediately for directions. Cooperate with Owner and utility companies in keeping respective services and facilities in operation. Repair damaged utilities to satisfaction of utility owner.
- C. Use of Explosives: The use of explosives is not permitted.
- D. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout and other hazards created by earthwork operations.
  - 1. Perform excavation within drip-line of large trees to remain by hand and protect the root system from damage or dryout to the greatest extent possible. Maintain moist condition for root system and cover exposed roots with burlap. Paint root cuts of 1" diameter and larger with emulsified asphalt tree paint.

EARTHWORK  
02200-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS [NOT APPLICABLE]

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 GENERAL

- A. Prior to the start of excavation and fill placement, the site should be cleared of existing improvements. Additionally, remnant elements associated with previously demolished structures, should be removed. Demolition should include removal of pavements, slabs, and all below grade structures including basement slabs, foundations, and walls. Utility lines will require routing or removal, as appropriate.
- B. Any existing fill materials that are encountered in the planned building area should be completely removed, plus 10 feet beyond.
- C. Areas that are at final grade, or that will require new fill placement, should be evaluated through proofrolling, prior to new fill placement or construction.
- D. Vegetation, topsoil, rootmat, and all organic materials should be completely removed from the site. Excavations resulting from demolition and vegetation removal should be backfilled in a controlled manner with engineered fill.

#### 3.2 FILL PLACEMENT

- A. All material used as structural fill should be relatively free of organics and other deleterious materials. Soil fill should exhibit a Liquid Limit less than 50, a Plasticity Index less than 30, and a maximum dry density of at least 100 pcf. Soil fill should contain no more than 30% rock, and individual rock fragments in the fill should be less than 4 inches in largest dimension.
- B. Soil fill must be placed in an environment free of excess water. Therefore, free-draining granular material (such as ALDOT # 57 crushed aggregate) should be used as the initial lift(s) of fill in areas containing water seepage.
- C. Soil fill should be placed in lifts not exceeding eight inches in loose measure. Individual lifts of fill should be moisture conditioned to within  $\pm 2\%$  of the optimum moisture content and compacted to a minimum of 98% of the Standard Proctor (ASTM D -698) maximum dry density.
- D. Soil may require wetting or drying to achieve proper compaction. Thinner lifts and manually operated equipment will be required to achieve proper compaction in limited access areas such as utility trenches and around manholes and inlets.
- E. Soil compaction testing should be performed during fill placement. Testing will give an indication of the contractor's performance with regard to soil density and moisture content requirements established in the project specifications. Compaction testing should be performed at random locations on each lift of fill placed to provide statistically relevant testing data. The frequency of density testing should be at least one test per lift for every 2,500 square feet of fill placed in building areas and 10,000 square feet in pavement and sidewalk areas (minimum of 3 tests per lift). Each lift of fill placed in utility trenches should be tested on 50-foot centers. A minimum of 3 tests should be performed on all fill lifts.
- F. Following construction, the foundations and underlying soils should be isolated from sources of excess water. Grades adjacent to the structure should be adjusted so that surface water flows away from the foundations. In no case should water be allowed to pond over newly-constructed footings. Roof drains and downspouts from the new buildings should be directed away from the foundations. Additionally, soils adjacent to foundations should consist of properly compacted, engineered fill to minimize water infiltration. The on-site soils contained fine-grained particles and will be adversely affected by excess water.
- G. To reduce the potential for water migration through the floor slab, ground-supported slabs should be underlain by a capillary break consisting of a minimum of 4 inches of compacted, free-draining, coarse, granular material (such as ALDOT #57 crushed stone). Depending on the type

EARTHWORK  
02200-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

of floor coverings to be used, the owner may also elect install a vapor barrier typically consisting of 10 mil polyethylene sheeting. The sheeting will reduce the infiltration of water vapor through the slab and the potential for damage to floor coverings. Note, that the use of a vapor barrier will increase the potential for plastic shrinkage cracking during curing of the concrete slab.

### 3.3 EXCAVATION

- A. Excavation is Unclassified, and includes excavation to subgrade elevations indicated, regardless of character of materials and obstructions encountered.
- B. Earth Excavation includes excavation of pavements and other obstructions visible on ground surface; underground structures, utilities and other items indicated to be demolished and removed; together with earth and other materials encountered that are not classified as rock or unauthorized excavation.
- C. Unauthorized excavation consists of removal of materials beyond indicated subgrade elevations or dimensions without specific direction of Architect/Engineer. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Architect/Engineer, shall be at Contractor's expense.
- D. Under footings, foundation bases, or retaining walls, fill unauthorized excavation by extending indicated bottom elevation of footing or base to excavation bottom, without altering required top elevation. Lean concrete fill may be used to bring elevations to proper position, when acceptable to Architect/Engineer.
- E. Elsewhere, backfill and compact unauthorized excavations as specified for authorized excavations of same classification, unless otherwise directed by Architect/Engineer.
- F. Additional Excavation: When excavation has reached required sub-grade elevations, notify Architect/Engineer who will make an inspection of conditions.
- G. If unsuitable bearing materials are encountered at required subgrade elevations, carry excavations deeper and replace excavated material as directed by Architect/Engineer.
- H. Removal of unsuitable material and its replacement as directed will be paid on basis of contract conditions relative to changes in work.
- I. Stability of Excavations: Slope sides of excavations to comply with local codes and ordinances having jurisdiction. Shore and brace where sloping is not possible because of space restrictions or stability of material excavated.
- J. Maintain sides and slopes of excavations in safe condition until completion of backfilling.
- K. Dewatering: See civil drawings for drainage plan recommendation for controlling ground water during initial construction phase. Prevent surface water from flowing into excavations and from flooding project site and surrounding area.
- L. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Remove water to prevent softening of foundation bottoms, undercutting footings, and soil changes detrimental to stability of subgrades and foundations. Provide and maintain pumps, well points, sumps, suction and discharge lines, and other dewatering system components necessary to convey water away from excavations.
- M. Establish and maintain temporary drainage ditches and other diversions outside excavation limits to convey rainwater and water removed from excavations to collecting or run-off areas. Do not use trench excavations as temporary drainage ditches.
- N. Material Storage: Stockpile satisfactory excavated materials where directed, until required for backfill or fill. Place, grade and shape stockpiles for proper drainage.
- O. Locate and retain soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of trees indicated to remain.
- P. Dispose of excess soil material and waste materials as herein specified.
- Q. Excavation for Structures: Conform to elevations and dimensions shown within a tolerance of plus or minus 0.10', and extending a sufficient distance from footings and foundations to permit

EARTHWORK  
02200-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

placing and removal of concrete formwork, installation of services, other construction, and for inspection.

- R. In excavating for footings and foundations, take care not to disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before concrete reinforcement is placed. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.
- S. Excavation for Pavements: Cut surface under pavements to comply with cross-sections, elevations and grades as shown.
- T. Excavation for Trenches: Dig trenches to the uniform width required for particular item to be installed, sufficiently wide to provide ample working room. Provide 6" to 9" clearance on both sides of pipe or conduit. Excavate trenches to depth indicated or required. Carry depth of trenches for piping to establish indicated flow lines and invert elevations.
- U. Where rock is encountered, carry excavation 6" below required elevation and backfill with a 6" layer of crushed stone or gravel prior to installation of pipe.
- V. Except as otherwise indicated, excavate for exterior waterbearing piping (water, steam, condensate, drainage) so top of piping is not less than 2'-6" below finished grade.
- W. Grade bottoms of trenches as indicated, notching under pipe bells to provide solid bearing for entire body of pipe.
- X. Backfill trenches with concrete where trench excavations pass within 18" of column or wall footings and which are carried below bottom of such footings, or which pass under wall footings. Place concrete to level of bottom of adjacent footing.
  - 1. Concrete is specified in Division 3.
- Y. Do not backfill trenches until tests and inspections have been made and backfilling authorized by Architect/Engineer. Use care in backfilling to avoid damage or displacement of pipe systems.
- Z. Excavation for utilities shall conform to manufacturer's recommendations for the type material used.
- AA. Cold Weather Protection: Protect excavation bottoms against freezing when atmospheric temperature is less than 35 degrees F.

### **3.4 COMPACTION**

- A. General: Control soil compaction during construction providing minimum percentage of density specified for each area classification indicated below.
- B. Percentage of Maximum Density Requirements: Compact soil to not less than the following percentages of maximum density for soils which exhibit a well-defined moisture density relationship (cohesive soils) determined in accordance with ASTM D 698; and not less than the following percentages of relative density determined in accordance with ASTM D 2049, for soils which will not exhibit a well-defined moisture-density relationship (cohesionless soils).
  - 1. Structures, Building Slabs and Steps and Pavements: Compact top 6" of subgrade and each layer of backfill (not exceeding 8" maximum) or fill material to not less than 98% of maximum density.
  - 2. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Compact top 6" of subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill material to not less than 90% of maximum density for cohesive soils and 90% of relative density for cohesionless soils.
  - 3. Walkways: Compact top 6" of subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill material to not less than 95% of maximum density.
- C. Moisture Control: Where subgrade or layer of soil material must be moisture conditioned before compaction, uniformly apply water to surface of subgrade, or layer of soil material, to prevent free water appearing on surface during or subsequent to compaction operations.

EARTHWORK  
02200-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- D. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, soil material that is too wet to permit compaction to specified density.
  - 1. Soil material that has been removed because it is too wet to permit compaction may be stockpiled or spread and allowed to dry. Assist drying by discing, harrowing or pulverizing until moisture content is reduced to a satisfactory value.

### **3.5 BACKFILL AND FILL**

- A. General: Place acceptable soil material in layers to required subgrade elevations, for each area classification listed below.
  - 1. Utility Trenches backfill according to manufacturer's recommendation for the type material used.
  - 2. In excavations, use satisfactory excavated or borrow material.
  - 3. Under grassed areas, use satisfactory excavated or borrow material.
  - 4. Under structures, building slabs, steps and pavements and after grading operations, thoroughly mix top 6" of subgrade and compact to a density not less than 98% of maximum density.
  - 5. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory excavated or borrow material, or combination of both.
  - 6. Under building slabs, use drainage fill material.
- B. Backfill excavations as promptly as work permits, but not until completion of the following:
  - 1. Acceptance of construction below finish grade including, where applicable, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
  - 2. Inspection, testing, approval, and recording locations of underground utilities.
  - 3. Removal of concrete formwork.
  - 4. Removal of trash and debris.
- C. Ground Surface Preparation: Remove vegetation, debris, unsatisfactory soil materials, obstructions, and deleterious materials from ground surface prior to placement of fills. Plow, strip, or break-up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so that fill material will bond with existing surface.
- D. When existing ground surface has a density less than that specified under "Compaction" for particular area classification, break up ground surface, pulverize, moisture-condition to optimum moisture content, and compact to required depth and percentage of maximum density.
- E. Placement and Compaction: Place backfill and fill materials in layers not more than 8" in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4" in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
- F. Before compaction, moisten or aerate each layer as necessary to provide optimum moisture content. Compact each layer to required percentage of maximum dry density or relative dry density for each area classification. Do not place backfill or fill material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
- G. Place backfill and fill materials evenly adjacent to structures, piping or conduit to required elevations. Take care to prevent wedging action of backfill against structures or displacement of piping or conduit by carrying material uniformly around structure, piping or conduit to approximately same elevation in each lift.

### **3.6 GRADING**

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas within limits of grading under this section, including adjacent transition areas. Smooth finished surface within specified tolerances, compact with uniform levels

EARTHWORK  
02200-5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

or slopes between points where elevations are indicated, or between such points and existing grades.

- B. Grading Outside Building Lines: Grade areas adjacent to building lines to drain away from structures and to prevent ponding.
- C. Finish surfaces free from irregular surface changes, and as follows:
  - 1. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Finish areas to receive topsoil to within not more than 0.2' above or below required subgrade elevations.
  - 2. Walks: Shape surface of areas under walks to line, grade and cross-section, with finish surface not more than 0.10' above or below required subgrade elevation.
  - 3. Pavements: Shape surface of areas under pavement to line, grade and cross-section, with finish surface not more than 0.10' above or below required subgrade elevation.
- D. Grading Surface or Fill under Building Slabs: Grade smooth and even, free of voids, compacted as specified, and to required elevation. Provide final grades within a tolerance of 1/2" when tested with a 10' straightedge.
- E. Compaction: After grading, compact subgrade surfaces to the depth and indicated percentage of maximum or relative density for each area classification.

### **3.7 BUILDING SLAB DRAINAGE COURSE**

- A. General: Drainage course consists of placement of drainage fill material, in layers of indicated thickness, over subgrade surface to support concrete building slabs.
- B. Placing: Place drainage fill material on prepared subgrade in layers of uniform thickness, conforming to indicated cross-section and thickness. Maintain optimum moisture content for compacting material during placement operations.
- C. When a compacted drainage course is shown to be 6" thick or less, place material in a single layer. When shown to be more than 6" thick, place material in equal layers, except no single layer more than 6" or less than 3" in thickness when compacted.

### **3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Quality Control Testing During Construction: Allow approved testing laboratory to inspect and approve subgrades and fill layers before further construction work is performed.
  - 1. Perform field density tests in accordance with ASTM D 1556 (sand cone method) or ASTM D 2167 (rubber balloon method), or ASTM D 2922 (nuclear method) as applicable.
  - 2. Footing Subgrade: For each strata of soil on which footings will be placed, conduct at least one test to verify required design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of each footing subgrade may be based on a visual comparison of each subgrade with related tested strata, when acceptable to Architect/Engineer.
  - 3. Paved Areas Subgrade: Make at least one field density test of subgrade for every 10,000 sq. ft. of paved area, but in no case less than 2 tests. In each compacted fill layer, make one field density test for every 10,000 sq. ft. of overlaying paved area, but in no case less than 2 tests
  - 4. Building Slab Subgrade: Make at least one field density test of subgrade for every 2500 sq. ft. of paved area or building slab, but in no case less than 2 tests. In each compacted fill layer, make one field density test for every 2500 sq. ft. of overlaying building slab or paved area, but in no case less than 2 tests.
  - 5. Foundation Wall Backfill: Take at least 2 field density tests, at locations and elevations as directed.
- B. If in opinion of Architect/Engineer, based on testing service reports and inspection, subgrade or fills which have been placed are below specified density, provide additional compaction and testing at no additional expense.

EARTHWORK  
02200-6

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama



### **3.9 MAINTENANCE**

- A. Protection of Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and re-establish grades in settled, eroded, and rutted areas to specified tolerances.
- C. Reconditioning Compacted Areas: Where completed compacted areas are disturbed by subsequent construction operations or adverse weather, scarify surface, re-shape, and compact to required density prior to further construction.
- D. Settling: Where settling is measurable or observable at excavated areas during general project warranty period, remove surface (pavement, lawn or other finish), add backfill material, compact, and replace surface treatment. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of surface or finish to match adjacent work and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

### **3.10 DISPOSAL OF EXCESS AND WASTE MATERIALS**

- A. Removal from Owner's Property: Remove waste materials, including unacceptable excavated materials, trash and debris, and legally dispose of it off Owner's property site, in area approved by all local authorities and ADEM.

**END OF SECTION**

EARTHWORK  
02200-7

# Report of Geotechnical Exploration

## **Red Bay High School Additions**

800 8<sup>th</sup> Street East

Red Bay, Alabama 35582

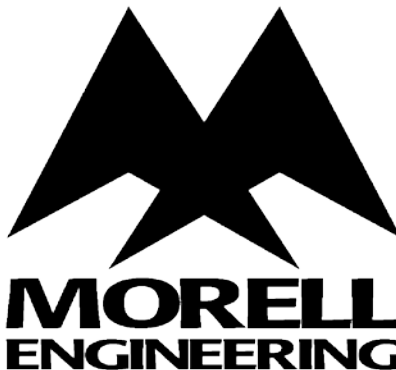
Morell Engineering Project Number: 24-0010

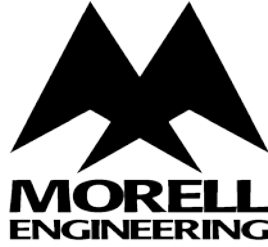
Prepared for:



**Franklin County Schools**  
Preparing our Students for the Future

Franklin County Schools  
500 Coffee Avenue NE  
Russellville, Alabama 35653





May 28, 2024

Mr. Greg Hamilton, Superintendent  
Franklin County Schools  
500 Coffee Avenue NE  
Russellville, Alabama 35653

Subject: Report of Geotechnical Exploration  
Red Bay High School Additions  
800 8<sup>th</sup> Street East  
Red Bay, Alabama 35582  
Morell Engineering Project Number: 24-0010

Dear Mr. Hamilton:

Morell Engineering is pleased to submit this Report of Geotechnical Exploration for the planned additions at Red Bay High School, located at 800 8<sup>th</sup> Street East in Red Bay, Alabama. The purpose of our work was to evaluate general subsurface conditions at soil bore test locations in order to gather data on which to base recommendations regarding site preparation and grading, foundation design, and pavement design for the planned additions.

We appreciate this opportunity to be of service to you. If you have any questions concerning this report, please call us.

Respectfully submitted,

Laura R. Vukosavljevic, P.E.  
Geotechnical Engineer  
Morell Engineering, Inc.



## Table of Contents

1	EXECUTIVE SUMMARY .....	1
2	INTRODUCTION.....	2
3	SCOPE OF SERVICES .....	4
4	PUBLISHED SITE INFORMATION.....	4
4.1	Geological Survey Information .....	4
4.2	Sinkhole Potential .....	4
5	FIELD EXPLORATION AND LABORATORY ANALYSIS .....	5
5.1	Field Exploration .....	5
5.2	Laboratory Analysis.....	6
6	SITE CONDITIONS .....	6
6.1	Surface Materials .....	6
6.2	Existing Fill.....	7
6.3	Residuum .....	7
6.4	Soft to Marginally Firm Soils .....	7
6.5	Refusal/Boring Termination.....	8
6.6	Groundwater in the Boreholes .....	8
7	EARTHWORK RECOMMENDATIONS .....	8
7.1	Geotechnical Discussion .....	8
7.1.1	Soft to Marginally Firm Soils .....	8
7.1.2	Previous Site Construction .....	9
7.2	Site Preparation .....	10
7.3	Proofrolling .....	10
7.4	Structural Fill .....	10
7.5	Utility Trench Backfill .....	11
7.6	Drainage Considerations.....	11
7.7	Seasonal Earthwork Considerations .....	11
7.8	Subgrade Rehabilitation.....	12
7.9	Groundwater Control.....	12
8	FOUNDATION DESIGN RECOMMENDATIONS.....	12
8.1	Shallow Foundations.....	12
8.2	Floor Slab .....	13
8.3	Seismic Site Classification .....	13
8.4	Lateral Earth Pressures .....	14
9	PAVEMENT RECOMMENDATIONS .....	14
9.1	Flexible (Asphalt) Pavements.....	14
9.2	Pavement Considerations.....	14
10	CONSTRUCTION MONITORING .....	15
11	REPORT LIMITATIONS .....	15
12	APPENDIX 1 – AREA MAPS.....	17
13	APPENDIX 2 – BORING INFORMATION .....	20
14	APPENDIX 3 – LABORATORY TEST RESULTS.....	34
15	APPENDIX 4 – ASFE UNDERSTANDING YOUR GEOTECH REPORT .....	37

# 1 EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Additions are planned at Red Bay High School, located at 800 8<sup>th</sup> Street East in Red Bay, Alabama. These additions include construction of a new approximately 3,000 square-foot administration building, as well as new parking and drive areas. A new retaining wall that is up to 3 feet in height will also be constructed along a portion of a planned pavement area.

Our field exploration consisted of performing eleven (11) Standard Penetration Test (SPT) borings within the planned project area. Borings B-4, B-5, and B-6 each initially encountered a layer of topsoil that was approximately 3 inches thick. Borings B-1, B-2, B-3, B-7, B-8, B-10, and B-11 each initially encountered approximately 2 to 4 inches of asphalt, underlain by approximately 2 to 3 inches of aggregate base. From the ground surface in Boring B-9, previously placed fill material was encountered to a depth of about 3 feet. This existing fill material consisted of firm lean clays. Residuum was encountered beneath the existing fill material in Boring B-9, and beneath the surface materials in the remaining borings. The residuum generally consisted of very soft to very stiff lean clays, silts, and fat clays. However, loose to medium dense clayey sands were also encountered in Borings B-1, B-2, and B-3. Each boring was terminated at a depth of 25 feet, 10 feet, or 5 feet, without encountering refusal. Groundwater was not encountered in any of the borings during drilling.

Please note the following items that are included in the Geotechnical Discussion (Section 7.1) portion of this report:

- Several of the borings encountered some soft to marginally firm soils during drilling. Soft or unsuitable soils may also be present in other project areas remote from our borings. Additionally, it is important to note that the strength characteristics of clays and silts can be highly dependent on the moisture conditions and time of year during construction. **Please note that the construction schedule and/or budget can be greatly affected by the time of year that construction takes place due to the presence of clays and silts throughout the site.** During the drier, warmer months of the year (typically May to October), instability within these type materials will generally be shallower than during the wetter, colder months of the year (typically November to April). It would be advantageous to include a contingency unit price item in project bids to undercut and replace unsuitable soils during construction, if needed.
- Based on the soil boring data, we expect that the following undercutting and replacement may be required during site construction.
  - Planned Building Area
    - The upper 3 feet of existing subgrade soils within the planned building area, plus 10 feet beyond, will likely require undercutting and replacement due to the presence of unsuitable soils.

- Planned Pavement Areas
  - The upper 3 feet of existing subgrade soils within the planned pavement area located south of the new building will likely require undercutting and replacement due to the presence of unsuitable soils. Remediation operations should be performed 5 feet beyond the planned pavement areas, where possible.
- A building that was recently demolished was present in the southwest planned parking lot area. Any remnants of old site construction, including foundations and utilities, should be completely removed from the construction area during site grading activities. A unit price contingency should be included in the project construction bid for removal of remnants of old site construction.

Following the recommendations presented in Section 7 of this report, foundations should bear directly on stiff or better residual soils, lean concrete, or newly placed and compacted structural soil fill. Foundations bearing within these materials may be designed for a maximum allowable bearing capacity of 2,000 pounds per square-foot (psf).

The seismic site classification for this project was determined using Paragraph 20.4.2 and Table 20.3-1 of ASCE 7-10 Chapter 20. This site classification is determined based on the average Standard Penetration Resistance (N-value) method. Based on this information, it is recommended that a Seismic Site Class D be used for this project.

***This summary is only intended to represent a brief summary of our findings, and is not a detailed account of all the information compiled in preparation of this report. For more detailed design recommendations and specific site conditions, we recommend reviewing this report in its entirety.***

## 2 INTRODUCTION

Additions are planned at Red Bay High School, located at 800 8<sup>th</sup> Street East in Red Bay, Alabama. As seen in Figure 1 on the next page of this report, these additions include construction of a new approximately 3,000 square-foot administration building, as well as new parking and drive areas. A new retaining wall that is up to 3 feet in height will also be constructed along a portion of a planned pavement area, as indicated in Figure 1.

Structural loading information provided for this project indicates that the planned building will have maximum individual column and continuous footing loads of about 32 kilo-pounds (kips) and 2.65 kips per linear-foot, respectively.

The planned finished floor elevation for the new building is 682, and existing elevations in this area range from 677 to 680. Therefore, up to about 3 feet of fill will be required during grading for the new building. Within the planned pavement areas, grading will generally be minimal.



### 3 SCOPE OF SERVICES

The scope of services included a geotechnical site reconnaissance and a subsurface exploration consisting of eleven (11) soil test borings, visual classification, laboratory testing, and geotechnical evaluation appropriate to address the geotechnical aspects of the construction.

The results of our work presented within this report address the following:

- Site geology and potential impact on the site development.
- Summary of existing surface conditions.
- A description of the subsurface conditions encountered at the soil test boring locations including a description of the groundwater conditions. Long-term groundwater monitoring was not included in the scope of services.
- Presentation of laboratory test results.
- Site preparation considerations including material types to be expected at the site and treatment of unsuitable soils, if encountered.
- Compaction requirements and recommended criteria to establish suitable material for structural backfill.
- Recommendations to be used for foundation design, including appropriate foundation types, bearing pressures, and depths.
- Seismic site classification.
- Pavement design recommendations.

### 4 PUBLISHED SITE INFORMATION

Appendix 1 contains the published *7.5 Minute Series Topographic Map of the Red Bay Quadrangle* (U.S. Department of Interior, Geological Survey, 1981) with the project site location indicated.

#### 4.1 GEOLOGICAL SURVEY INFORMATION

---

The *Geological Map of Alabama* (Geological Survey of Alabama, 2006 digital edition), was reviewed for geological information pertaining to the project site. Based on our review of this map, the project site is underlain by the Cretaceous-aged Eutaw formation.

In western Alabama, the Eutaw formation consists of light-gray glauconitic fossiliferous sand which has thin beds of sandstone and large accruals of fossil oyster shells. This formation also contains beds of greenish-gray micaceous silty clay and medium-dark-gray carbonaceous clay.

A map depicting the local geologic formation is included in Appendix 1.

#### 4.2 SINKHOLE POTENTIAL

---

The rock formation that underlies the site can be carbonate and susceptible to dissolution as groundwater moves through cracks and fissures in the rock formation. As dissolution



progresses, cavities can begin to form within the rock mass. Sinkholes are formed as overburdened soils erode into the solution cavities.

The *Sinkhole Map of Alabama* (Geological Survey of Alabama, 2011 digital version) was reviewed for previously documented sinkhole activity in the vicinity of the project site. As seen in the geological map in Appendix 1, sinkhole activity has not been mapped in close proximity to the project site.

During our site assessment, we looked for visual signs of surface subsidence or subsurface disturbance indicative of karst activity. This site assessment and our review of the boring information did not reveal the apparent presence of any karst activity. Therefore, it is our opinion that the site will have no greater risk of subsidence than the nearby developments overlying similar geologic conditions.

***It should be noted; however, that this study does not preclude the possibility of future sinkhole occurrence within the area. Even an extensive drilling exploration program could not rule out the possibility of future sinkhole formation at the site. In the event a sinkhole is encountered during construction, Morell Engineering should be notified so that remedial action can be taken.***

## 5 FIELD EXPLORATION AND LABORATORY ANALYSIS

### 5.1 FIELD EXPLORATION

---

The subsurface exploration consisted of eleven (11) soil test borings drilled at the site on April 25, 2024. Prior to drilling activities, the borings were located by a member of our engineering staff using a hand-held GPS device. The approximate boring locations are indicated on the Boring Location Plan in Appendix 2.

South Bros. Drilling, Inc. performed the drilling using a Diedrich D-50 drill rig, fitted with an automatic hammer. At each boring location, soil samples were retrieved at standard sampling intervals by driving a split-tube sampler. The borehole was first advanced to the sample depth by augering, and the sampling tools were placed in the open hole. The sampler was then driven into the ground 18 inches by blows from a 140-pound hammer falling 30 inches. The number of blows required to drive the sampler each 6-inch increment was recorded. The initial increment is considered the “seating” blows, where the sampler penetrates any loose or disturbed soil in the bottom of the borehole. The blows required to penetrate the final two increments are added together, and referred to as the Standard Penetration Test (SPT) N-Value. The N-Value, when properly evaluated, gives an indication of the soil’s strength and ability to support structural loads. Many factors can affect the SPT N-Value, so this result should not be used exclusively to evaluate soil conditions.

After the borings were drilled, the soil samples were transported to our laboratory and visually examined by a member of our engineering staff in order to provide soil descriptions and classifications in general accordance with ASTM D2488, *Standard Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)*.

Pocket penetrometer tests were also performed on the cohesive soil samples, where possible. The pocket penetrometer provides an estimate of the soil's unconfined compressive strength ( $Q_u$ ). The pocket penetrometer data are presented as  $Q_u$  in units of tons per square-foot (tsf) on the soil boring logs in Appendix 2.

## **5.2 LABORATORY ANALYSIS**

---

Natural moisture content tests were performed in general accordance with ASTM D2216, *Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil and Rock by Mass*, to estimate the existing moisture content of select soil samples.

Atterberg Limits tests were performed in general accordance with ASTM D4318, *Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils*, to evaluate the plasticity characteristics of select soil samples. The Plasticity Index (PI) is representative of this characteristic and is bracketed by the Liquid Limit (LL) and the Plastic Limit (PL). The LL is the moisture content at which the soil will flow as a heavy viscous fluid. The PL is the moisture content at which the soil is between "plastic" and the semi-solid stage. The Plasticity Index ( $PI = LL - PL$ ) is a frequently used indicator for a soil's potential for volume change. Typically, a soil's potential for volume change increases with higher plasticity indices.

Appendix 3 contains the laboratory test results.

## **6 SITE CONDITIONS**

The conditions between the boreholes are assumed to be similar to the conditions encountered at the boring locations. The following conditions and subsequent recommendations are based on the presumption that no significant changes in subsurface conditions occur between boreholes. However, anomalous conditions can occur due to the geologic conditions at the site, and it will be necessary to verify the assumed conditions during site grading and foundation installation.

### **6.1 SURFACE MATERIALS**

---

Borings B-4, B-5, and B-6 each initially encountered a layer of topsoil that was approximately 3 inches thick. Borings B-1, B-2, B-3, B-7, B-8, B-10, and B-11 each initially encountered approximately 2 to 4 inches of asphalt, underlain by approximately 2 to 3 inches of aggregate base.

## 6.2 EXISTING FILL

---

From the ground surface in Boring B-9, previously placed fill material was encountered to a depth of about 3 feet. This existing fill material consisted of firm low plasticity “lean” clays which contained sand and silt.

## 6.3 RESIDUUM

---

Residual soil is formed by the in-place weathering of the parent rock formation. Residuum was encountered beneath the existing fill material in Boring B-9, and beneath the surface materials in the remaining borings. The residuum encountered in the borings generally consisted of very soft to very stiff low plasticity “lean” clays, silts, and high plasticity “fat” clays which contained varying amounts of chert and sand. However, loose to medium dense clayey sands were also encountered beneath the residual clays in Borings B-1, B-2, and B-3.

Table 1 provides the results of moisture content tests and Atterberg limits tests performed on several residual soil samples. All test results are included in Appendix 3 of this report.

Table 1: Residual Soil Laboratory Test Results					
ID	Depth (feet)	Moisture Content (%)	Liquid Limit	Plastic Limit	Plasticity Index
B-2	1-2.5	21			
	3.5-5	19	43	16	27
	6-7.5	20			
	8.5-10	16			
B-4	1-2.5	20	45	15	30
	3.5-5	18			
	6-7.5	20			
	8.5-10	18			
B-6	1-2.5	19	41	17	24
	3.5-5	18			
	6-7.5	19			
	8.5-10	14			
B-8	1-2.5	21	40	19	21
	3.5-5	21			

## 6.4 SOFT TO MARGINALLY FIRM SOILS

---

Soft to marginally firm soils are usually identified as soils with low blow counts (N-values  $\leq 6$ ) and low bearing capacity. The locations and sample depths of soft to marginally firm soils observed during the subsurface exploration are presented in Table 2, on the next page of this report. Treatment of soft to marginally firm soils is discussed later in this report.

Table 2: Soft to Marginally Firm Soils		
ID	Depth (feet)	N-Value
B-1	1-2.5	4
B-2	1-2.5	5
B-3	1-2.5	4
B-7	1-2.5	3
	3.5-5	6
B-9	3.5-5	2
	6-7.5	3
B-11	1-2.5	3

## 6.5 REFUSAL/BORING TERMINATION

---

Refusal is the depth at which the borehole can no longer be advanced using standard soil drilling procedures. Refusal may indicate boulders, cemented soil, chert lenses, or bedrock.

Borings B-1, B-2, and B-3 were each terminated at a depth of 25 feet, without encountering refusal. Borings B-4, B-5, B-6, and B-9 were each terminated at a depth of 10 feet, without encountering refusal. Borings B-7, B-8, B-10, and B-11 were each terminated at a depth of 5 feet, without encountering refusal.

## 6.6 GROUNDWATER IN THE BOREHOLES

---

During the week preceding soil boring drilling, no rainfall was received in the general site area, and groundwater was not encountered in any of the borings during drilling.

Fluctuations in the water level can occur due to seasonal rainfall and may vary based on the time of year. Water levels as observed during drilling are accurate for only the time and date that the boring was drilled. Short term groundwater level readings may not accurately reflect the actual groundwater levels at the borings.

# 7 EARTHWORK RECOMMENDATIONS

## 7.1 GEOTECHNICAL DISCUSSION

---

### 7.1.1 SOFT TO MARGINALLY FIRM SOILS

As previously listed in Table 2, several of the borings encountered some soft to marginally firm soils during drilling. Soft or unsuitable soils may also be present in other project areas remote from our borings. Additionally, it is important to note that the strength characteristics of clays and silts can be highly dependent on the moisture conditions and time of year during construction. **Please note that the construction schedule and/or budget can be greatly**

**affected by the time of year that construction takes place due to the presence of clays and silts throughout the site.** During the drier, warmer months of the year (typically May to October), instability within these type materials will generally be shallower than during the wetter, colder months of the year (typically November to April). It would be advantageous to include a contingency unit price item in project bids to undercut and replace unsuitable soils during construction, if needed.

After the site has been cleared and stripped, grubbed, and cut to planned subgrade, proofrolling in accordance with Section 7.3 of this report should be performed to determine the presence of soft or unsuitable soils. Any soft or unsuitable soils identified during the proofrolling process should be undercut, and the undercut materials should be replaced with structural soil fill that meets the requirements in Section 7.4 of this report. In the planned building area, soft or unsuitable soils should generally be undercut to stiff soils. Soft or unsuitable soils in planned pavement areas should be undercut to a maximum depth of about 3 feet below planned finished subgrade. If soft soils are still present at this 3-foot depth, alternate methods of stabilizing the planned pavement areas should be considered, such as placing a bridge layer of soil or rock fill.

Any soft soils that are present at foundation bearing elevations should be undercut and replaced with lean concrete. Undercutting in foundation excavations should generally extend to stiff soils.

Based on the soil boring data, we expect that the following undercutting and replacement may be required during site construction.

- Planned Building Area
  - The upper 3 feet of existing subgrade soils within the planned building area, plus 10 feet beyond, will likely require undercutting and replacement due to the presence of unsuitable soils.
- Planned Pavement Areas
  - The upper 3 feet of existing subgrade soils within the planned pavement area located south of the new building will likely require undercutting and replacement due to the presence of unsuitable soils. Remediation operations should be performed 5 feet beyond the planned pavement area, where possible.

### **7.1.2 PREVIOUS SITE CONSTRUCTION**

As previously mentioned, a building that was recently demolished was present in the southwest planned parking lot area. Any remnants of old site construction, including foundations and utilities, should be completely removed from the project area during site grading activities. A unit price contingency should be included in the project construction bid for removal of remnants of old site construction.

## **7.2 SITE PREPARATION**

---

It is recommended that all surface vegetation, topsoil, and existing pavement materials initially be removed to prepare the site for construction. Any remnants of old site construction should also be removed, including removal of any existing foundations and utilities. The area of removal should extend 10 feet beyond the planned building area, and 5 feet beyond planned pavement areas, where possible. Removal of existing trees should include removal of the entire root mass.

Areas that are at final grade, or that will require new fill placement, should next be evaluated through proofrolling, as detailed in Section 7.3 of this report. Any soft, loose, or unsuitable soils identified during the proofrolling process should be undercut and replaced with compacted structural fill meeting the recommendations in Section 7.4 of this report.

## **7.3 PROOFROLLING**

---

Following initial site preparation, areas that are at final subgrade elevation or that are to receive new structural fill should be evaluated through proofrolling. Proofrolling should also take place throughout the planned pavement areas prior to placement of crushed aggregate base, and on the finished crushed aggregate base prior to paving.

Proofrolls should be performed with a heavy, rubber-tired vehicle prior to structural fill placement or construction of the foundations or pavements. Commonly, a tri-axle dump truck loaded with at least 20 tons is used for proofrolling. The proofroll will help identify any unstable subgrade areas. Proofrolling activities should be observed and documented by the geotechnical engineer, or his/her qualified representative. The geotechnical engineer can then determine the amount of undercutting or stabilization, if any, necessary to prepare a suitable subgrade.

## **7.4 STRUCTURAL FILL**

---

We recommend that soils placed as structural fill be composed of material with a maximum dry density of 95 pounds per cubic-foot (pcf) or greater, as determined by Standard Proctor testing. The structural fill soils should have a maximum plasticity index (PI) of 30. The structural fill should contain less than 3 percent of organics and other deleterious materials.

The structural fill material should be spread in horizontal lifts starting at the lowest elevation to receive fill. The lifts should not exceed 8 to 10 inches thick (loose lift thickness), depending on the compaction equipment used. Density and moisture tests should be performed on each soil fill lift, prior to placement of subsequent lifts. A commonly used testing criterion is one (1) density/moisture test per 2,500 square feet per lift in building areas and one (1) test per 5,000 square feet per lift in paved areas, with a minimum of three (3) tests performed per lift. A minimum compaction of 98 percent of the Standard Proctor ASTM D 698 maximum dry density,

with a moisture content of  $\pm 2$  percent of optimum, should be achieved prior to placement of subsequent soil fill material lifts.

## **7.5 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL**

---

All utility trenches must be backfilled and compacted in the manner specified for structural fill in the previous section of this report. However, lift thickness may have to be reduced to 4 to 6 inches to achieve the recommended compaction when using hand-operated equipment. Density tests should be performed at least every 200 linear-feet along the trenches.

Trenches beneath the building slab, including trenches that extend from inside to outside the building footprint, should be backfilled with a nonporous material such as lean concrete or compacted crushed aggregate base in order to minimize the potential of water infiltrating into the building pad subgrade and possibly weakening the soils if they became saturated.

## **7.6 DRAINAGE CONSIDERATIONS**

---

The potential for fluctuations in the moisture content of the soils in the building pad and pavement areas should be minimized to lessen the potential of subgrade movement. Site grading plans should incorporate positive drainage away from the building area. Ponding of water within or adjacent to these areas could result in increases of the soil moisture content and subsequent heave or weakening of the soils.

## **7.7 SEASONAL EARTHWORK CONSIDERATIONS**

---

As previously discussed, it would be advantageous to perform subgrade preparation and foundation installation activities during the drier periods of the year, and when it is more likely that soil drying by mechanical means can be accomplished.

While earthwork can be performed during wetter periods of the year, substantial additional effort on the contractor's part will likely be required for subgrade preparation, and the depth and lateral extent of remedial work in low areas and drainage swales will be increased. Weather conditions prior to and during grading operations are expected to have a significant impact on construction. The difficulty will increase in areas where clay or silty soils are exposed at the subgrade elevation. Grading contractors typically postpone grading operations during wet weather to wait for conditions that are favorable. Contractors can typically disk or aerate the upper soils to promote drying during intermittent periods of favorable weather. When deadlines restrict postponement of grading operations, additional measures such as undercutting and replacing saturated soils or cement stabilization can be utilized to facilitate placement of additional fill material.

Because the on-site soils contain clay and silt, they will become disturbed when subjected to heavy construction equipment traffic. Additional effort on the contractor's part will be required in order to maintain an acceptable subgrade.

## **7.8 SUBGRADE REHABILITATION**

---

Floor slabs are not always constructed immediately after grading is complete. The subgrade soils often become disturbed during the period of mass grading and construction. The amount and depth of disturbance will vary with soil type, weather conditions, construction traffic, and drainage.

The subgrade soils should be evaluated by the geotechnical engineer, or his/her qualified representative, during final grading and prior to stone placement. The purpose of the recommended evaluation is to verify that the subgrade is suitable to receive floor slabs. The final evaluation may include proofrolling or density tests.

***Subgrade rehabilitation may become a point of controversy when different contractors are responsible for mass and final grading. To alleviate potential problems of this type, the construction documents should specifically state who will be responsible for maintaining and rehabilitating the subgrade.***

## **7.9 GROUNDWATER CONTROL**

---

Depending on final site grades and time of year during construction, it is possible that groundwater could be encountered during construction. Groundwater inflow can typically be removed by excavating shallow outlet trenches and/or by pumping from a sump that is located near the point of seepage.

# **8 FOUNDATION DESIGN RECOMMENDATIONS**

As previously stated, structural loading information provided for this project indicates that the planned building will have maximum individual column and continuous footing loads of about 32 kilo-pounds (kips) and 2.65 kips per linear-foot, respectively.

## **8.1 SHALLOW FOUNDATIONS**

---

Following the recommendations presented in Section 7 of this report, foundations should bear directly on stiff or better residual soils, lean concrete, or newly placed and compacted structural soil fill. Foundations bearing within these materials may be designed for a maximum allowable bearing capacity of 2,000 pounds per square-foot (psf).

In order to protect against frost, exterior foundations should be excavated to bear at least 24 inches below planned exterior site grades, and interior foundations should bear a minimum of 12 inches below the planned subgrade elevation.



The following items should be considered during the preparation of construction documents and foundation installation:

- The geotechnical engineer, or his/her qualified representative, should observe the exposed foundation bearing surfaces prior to concrete placement to verify that the conditions anticipated during the subsurface exploration are encountered. Bearing elevations may have to be adjusted based on actual conditions encountered.
- All bearing surfaces must be free of soft or loose soil prior to placing concrete. Concrete should be placed the same day the excavations are completed and bearing materials verified by the geotechnical engineer, or his/her qualified representative. If the excavations are left open for an extended period, or if the bearing surfaces are disturbed after the initial observation, then the bearing surfaces should be re-evaluated prior to concrete placement. Project specifications should clearly state that the contractor is responsible for maintaining the condition of the excavations once they have been inspected by the geotechnical engineer, or his/her qualified representative. If the contractor fails to maintain the condition of the footings and the conditions deteriorate, then the contractor should be responsible for the costs to restore the bearing surface to an acceptable condition.
- Water should not be allowed to pond in foundation excavations prior to concrete placement or against the concrete after the foundation is completed.
- Wherever possible, the foundation concrete should be placed “neat”, using the sides of the excavations as forms. Where this is not possible, the excavations created by forming the foundations must be backfilled with suitable compacted structural fill.
- The building pad and other project site areas should be sloped to drain away from the foundations.

## **8.2 FLOOR SLAB**

---

Based on the recommendations of this report, the floor slab will be supported by newly placed and compacted structural soil fill. A modulus of subgrade reaction of 100 pounds per cubic-inch (pci) may be used for the design of the floor slab. At a minimum, the floor slab should be supported on a 4-inch compacted layer of free-draining, granular material, such as ALDOT No. 57 stone. The purpose of this layer is to help distribute the loads and act as a capillary break for moisture migration through the subgrade.

## **8.3 SEISMIC SITE CLASSIFICATION**

---

The seismic site classification for this project was determined using Paragraph 20.4.2 and Table 20.3-1 of ASCE 7-10 Chapter 20. This site classification is determined based on the average Standard Penetration Resistance (N-value) method. Based on this information, it is recommended that a Seismic Site Class D be used for this project.

## 8.4 LATERAL EARTH PRESSURES

---

Walls which are not restrained at the top that are allowed sufficient movement to mobilize are subject to “active” earth pressures. “Active” earth pressures should be designed using an equivalent fluid density of 35 pounds per cubic foot (pcf) for above the water table.

We have assumed no hydrostatic pressure will occur behind the walls. Below-grade walls should be designed with a minimum 2-foot wide zone behind the wall consisting of ALDOT No. 57 stone to provide drainage. The presence of any groundwater due to surface water intrusion should be handled with the use of this drainage layer behind the walls with a collection pipe discharging accumulated water away from the walls. In addition, weep holes may be beneficial in dissipating hydrostatic pressure.

## 9 PAVEMENT RECOMMENDATIONS

### 9.1 FLEXIBLE (ASPHALT) PAVEMENTS

---

Based on similar projects, we anticipate that the flexible pavement sections listed in the following table can be used for this project.

Table 3: Flexible Pavement Sections		
Material	Heavy Duty Pavements	State Highway Reference
	Section Thickness (inches)	
Asphalt Surface Course	1.5	ALDOT 424-A Superpave Bituminous Concrete Wearing Surface Layer; ½-inch Maximum Aggregate Size Mix
Asphalt Binder Course	2	ALDOT 424-B Superpave Bituminous Concrete Binder Layer; 1-inch Maximum Aggregate Size Mix
Crushed Aggregate Base	6	ALDOT 825-B Crushed Aggregate Base

### 9.2 PAVEMENT CONSIDERATIONS

---

Paving materials and procedures should conform to applicable sections of the Alabama Department of Transportation (ALDOT) *Standard Specifications for Highway Construction*, latest edition.

ALDOT 825-B Crushed Aggregate Base should be placed at a uniform thickness and in a continuous operation. The material should be delivered to the site at or slightly above its optimum moisture content so that it will be within 2 percent of its optimum moisture during compaction. The crushed aggregate base should be compacted to 100 percent of its maximum dry density as determined by Standard Proctor test methods.

Once the crushed aggregate base has been placed, shaped correctly, and compacted, construction traffic should not be allowed to operate on the base in order to prevent contaminating the base with soil. If the contractor allows construction equipment to operate on the crushed aggregate base, any areas contaminated with soil should be clipped and replaced with clean crushed aggregate base.

## **10 CONSTRUCTION MONITORING**

The recommendations presented in this report are based on information obtained from eleven (11) soil test borings performed within the planned project area. Field verification of site conditions is an essential part of the services provided by the geotechnical consultant. In order to confirm our recommendations, it will be necessary to make periodic visits to the site during construction. We will be pleased to prepare a proposal for construction monitoring services based on the construction schedule.

Typical construction monitoring services are listed as follows:

- Periodic observations by a member of our engineering staff during site grading.
- Field density tests, proofrolling, and observations during structural fill placement.
- Observation and verification of bearing surfaces exposed after foundation excavation.
- Masonry observations.
- Molding and compressive strength testing of concrete, grout, and mortar samples.
- Field density tests and proofrolling during crushed aggregate base stone placement.
- Asphalt testing and observations during paving operations.

## **11 REPORT LIMITATIONS**

This report has been prepared for the exclusive use of Franklin County Schools for specific application to the planned additions at Red Bay High School, located at 800 8<sup>th</sup> Street East in Red Bay, Alabama. This report should not be used for a different development on the same property without first being evaluated by the geotechnical engineer of record. The anticipated subsurface conditions should be confirmed during site grading and foundation construction. All recommendations contained in this report have been made in accordance with generally accepted geotechnical engineering practices common to the North Alabama region. No other warranties are implied or expressed. Our firm is not responsible for conclusions, opinions, or recommendations made by others.

The analysis and recommendations in this report were based on the information obtained during the field exploration and laboratory analysis that we performed at the specific locations and dates indicated on the boring logs. The nature and extent of subsurface strata at the site will vary from location to location. If subsurface conditions are encountered other than those described within this report, or if the location or structural characteristics of the proposed development should change, Morell Engineering should be retained to review and revise the enclosed recommendations accordingly.

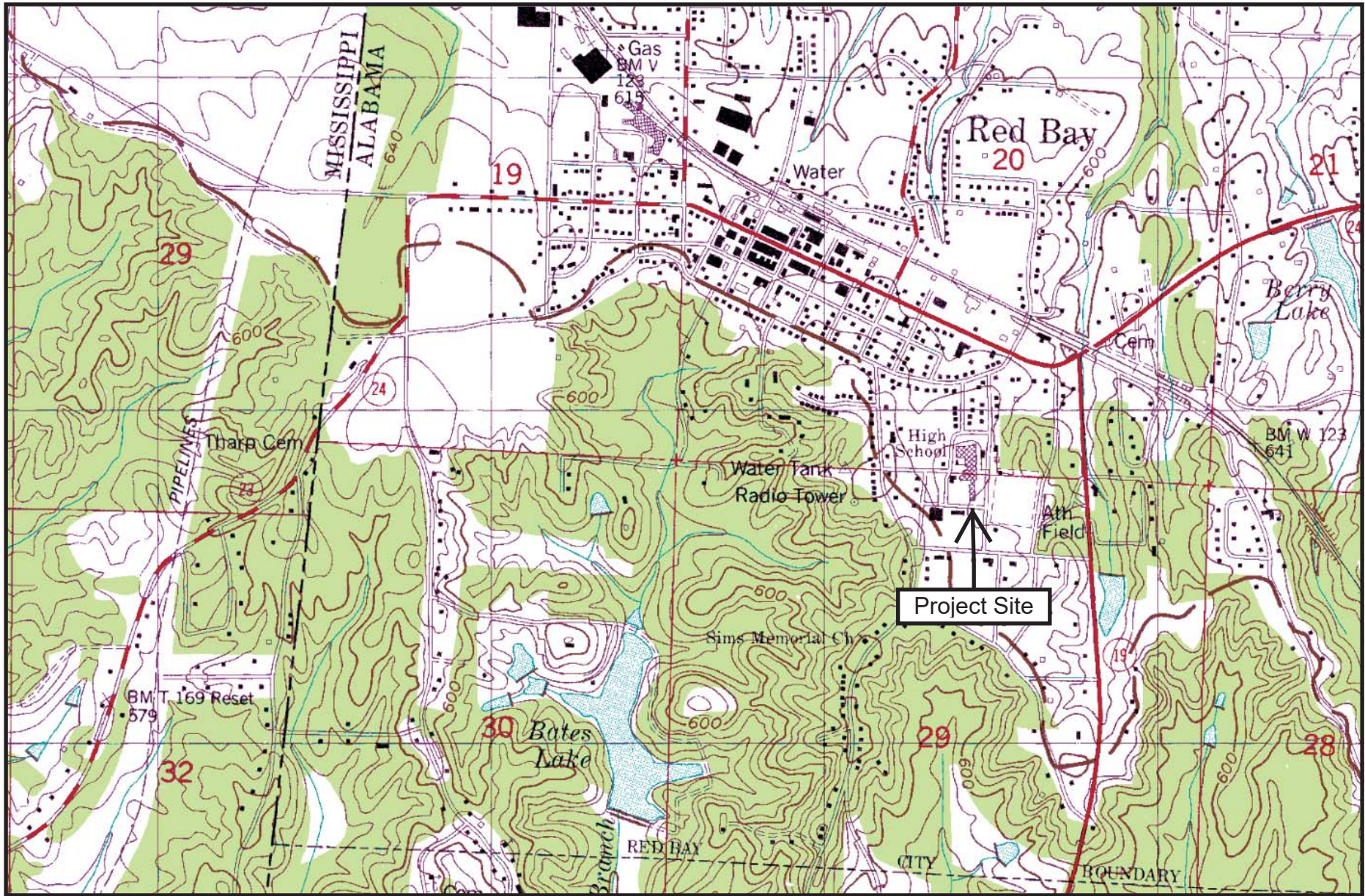
It is also suggested the geotechnical engineer of record be allowed the opportunity to review the geotechnical related plans and specifications to verify that the recommendations in this report are properly interpreted and incorporated in the design. If the geotechnical engineer of record is not allowed the privilege of making this recommended review, we can assume no responsibility for misinterpretation of the recommendations contained in this report.

***This report is intended for use during design and preparation of plans and specifications. It may not address all conditions at the site encountered at the time of construction. Contractors reviewing this information acknowledge that this document is for design information only and should not be used for earthwork estimating purposes.***

## **12 APPENDIX 1 – AREA MAPS**

Topographic Map

Geologic Map with Sinkholes



Data Source:

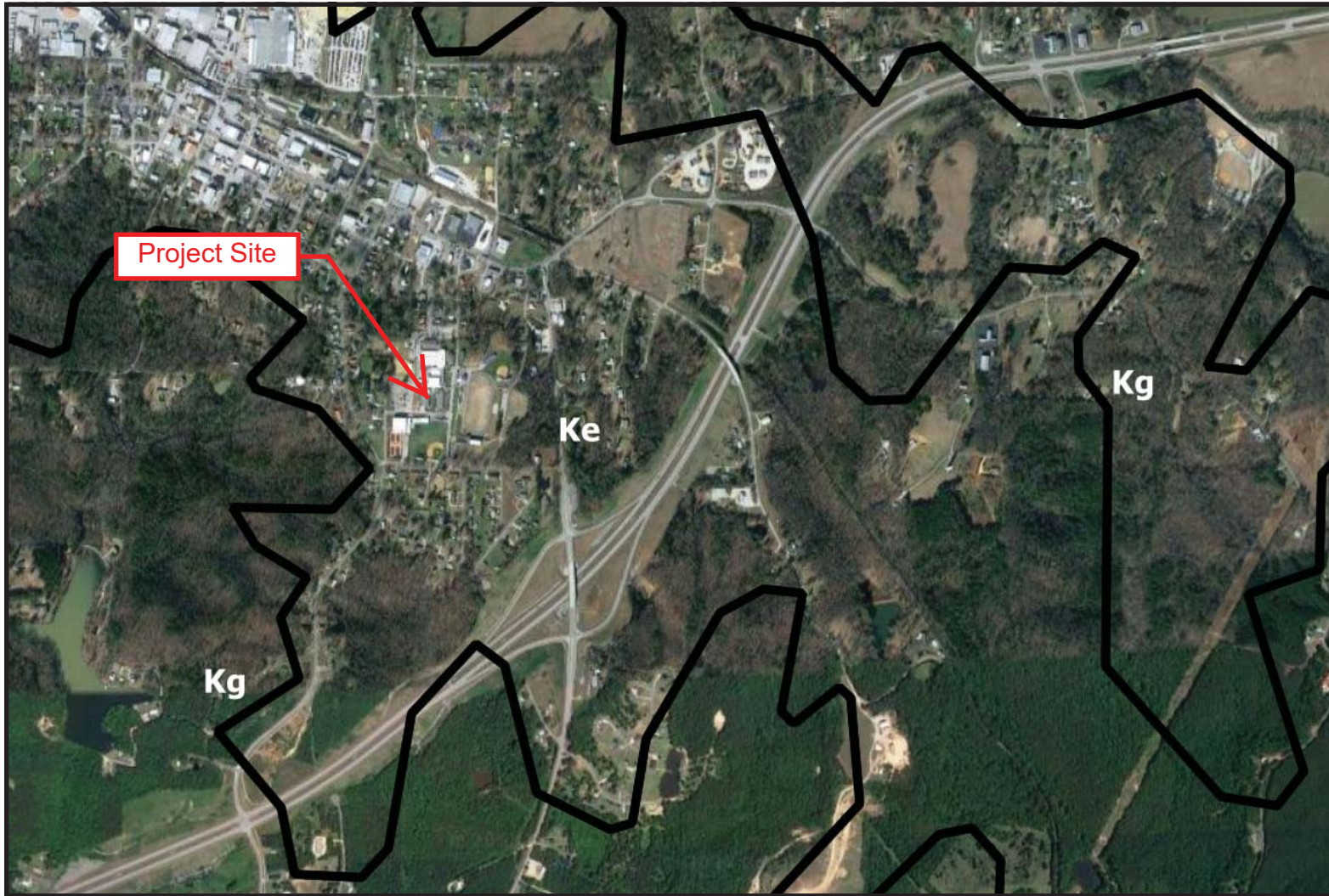
-7.5 Minute Series Topographic Map of the Red Bay Quadrangle, 1981, U.S. Department of the Interior Geological Survey



711 E. HOBBS STREET  
ATHENS, ALABAMA 35611

PHONE (256) 867-4957  
FAX (256) 867-1324

TITLE:	Topographic Map	SHEET #:	1 of 1
PROJECT:	Red Bay High School Additions	SCALE:	NTS
PROJECT NO:	24-0010	DATE:	05/10/2024
DRAWN:	LV	CHECKED:	CH



Data Sources:

- Geological Survey of Alabama, 2006, Geologic Map of Alabama, digital version 1.0: Alabama Geological Survey Special Map 220A
- Geological Survey of Alabama, Nov. 2011, Sinkhole Map of Alabama, digital version 2.0: Alabama Geological Survey Sinkhole Map

Geologic Map Legend

Ke = Eutaw Formation  
 Kg = Gordo Formation  
 — Division of Geologic Formations  
 ● Mapped Sinkholes



711 E. HOBBS STREET  
 ATHENS, ALABAMA 35611  
 PHONE (256) 867-4957  
 FAX (256) 867-1324

TITLE:	Geologic Map with Sinkholes			SHEET #:	1 of 1
PROJECT:	Red Bay High School Additions			SCALE:	NTS
PROJECT NO:	24-0010			DATE:	05/10/2024
DRAWN:	LV	CHECKED:	CH		

## **13 APPENDIX 2 – BORING INFORMATION**

Boring Location Plan

Soil Boring Logs

Boring Log Terminology Legend





711 E. HOBBS STREET  
 ATHENS, ALABAMA 35611  
 PHONE (256) 867-4957  
 FAX (256) 867-1324

TITLE:	Boring Location Plan			SHEET #:	1 of 1
PROJECT:	Red Bay High School Additions			SCALE:	NTS
PROJECT NO:	24-0010			DATE:	05/10/2024
DRAWN:	LV	CHECKED:	CH		

Red Bay High School Additions  
 800 8th St E, Red Bay, AL 35582  
 Project Number: 24-0010

# Soil Boring: B-1



Date Drilled: 04/25/2024  
 Driller: South Bros. Drilling, Inc.  
 Equipment: Diedrich D-50  
 Hammer Type: Auto  
 Drill Method: Auger  
 Logged By: Laura Vukosavljevic

**Groundwater Information**  
 Groundwater not encountered during drilling.

Depth (ft)	Elevation (ft)	Sample Graphic	Sample Number	Blow Counts	● Plastic Limit ● 0 50 100 ● Liquid Limit ● 0 50 100 ▲ Moisture Content ▲ 0 25 50 ■ Uncorrected N-Value ■ 0 25 50	Rig Type	Diedrich D-50	Water Levels	Graphic Log	Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)	Remarks		
						Tooling	2-1/4" Hollow Stem Auger					Surface Elevation	~679'
						Visual Classification							
						ASPHALT	0.2						
						AGGREGATE BASE	0.3			2			
						LEAN CLAY (CL); soft; brown; moist; trace chert; some sand and silt; RESIDUUM	3.0			4			
						LEAN CLAY (CL); stiff; reddish-brown; moist; trace chert; some sand and silt.	5.5			4			
						FAT CLAY (CH); very stiff to stiff; reddish-brown; moist; trace chert; some silt; some to abundant sand.	12.0			3.5			
						CLAYEY SAND (SC); medium dense; reddish-brown; moist; trace chert; some silt.	17.0						
						CLAYEY SAND (SC); medium dense; tan; moist; trace chert; some silt.	25.0						
						Boring terminated at 25.0 feet.							

**Graphics Legend**



Asphalt



CL



CH



SC

Red Bay High School Additions  
 800 8th St E, Red Bay, AL 35582  
 Project Number: 24-0010

# Soil Boring: B-2



Date Drilled: 04/25/2024  
 Driller: South Bros. Drilling, Inc.  
 Equipment: Diedrich D-50  
 Hammer Type: Auto  
 Drill Method: Auger  
 Logged By: Laura Vukosavljevic

**Groundwater Information**  
 Groundwater not encountered during drilling.

Depth (ft)	Elevation (ft)	Sample Graphic	Sample Number	Blow Counts	● Plastic Limit ● 0 50 100 ● Liquid Limit ● 0 50 100 ▲ Moisture Content ▲ 0 25 50 ■ Uncorrected N-Value ■ 0 25 50	Rig Type	Diedrich D-50	Water Levels	Graphic Log	Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)	Remarks
						Tooling	2-1/4" Hollow Stem Auger				
675			S-2	2-2-3		ASPHALT	0.3			2	
			S-2	5-6-7		AGGREGATE BASE	0.4			4	
5			S-3	6-8-8		LEAN CLAY (CL); firm; reddish-brown; moist; trace chert; some sand and silt;	3.0			4	
			S-4	4-6-8		RESIDUUM.	5.5				
670						FAT CLAY (CH); very stiff to stiff; reddish-brown; moist; trace chert; some to abundant sand; some silt.					
10							12.0				
665			S-5	6-7-6		CLAYEY SAND (SC); medium dense; reddish-brown to tan; moist; trace chert; some silt.					
15											
660			S-6	5-6-9							
20											
655			S-7	7-7-11							
25							25.0				
650						Boring terminated at 25.0 feet.					

**Graphics Legend**



Asphalt



CL



CH



SC

Red Bay High School Additions  
 800 8th St E, Red Bay, AL 35582  
 Project Number: 24-0010

# Soil Boring: B-3



Date Drilled: 04/25/2024  
 Driller: South Bros. Drilling, Inc.  
 Equipment: Diedrich D-50  
 Hammer Type: Auto  
 Drill Method: Auger  
 Logged By: Laura Vukosavljevic

**Groundwater Information**  
 Groundwater not encountered during drilling.

Depth (ft)	Elevation (ft)	Sample Graphic	Sample Number	Blow Counts	● Plastic Limit ● 0 50 100 ● Liquid Limit ● 0 50 100 ▲ Moisture Content ▲ 0 25 50 ■ Uncorrected N-Value ■ 0 25 50	Rig Type	Diedrich D-50	Water Levels	Graphic Log	Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)	Remarks
						Tooling	2-1/4" Hollow Stem Auger				
						ASPHALT	0.3				
						AGGREGATE BASE	0.4			2.25	
						LEAN CLAY (CL); soft; brown and reddish-brown; moist; trace chert; some sand and silt; RESIDUUM.	3.0				
5	675		S-2	3-2-2		FAT CLAY (CH); very stiff to stiff; reddish-brown; moist; trace chert; some to abundant sand; some silt.				3	
			S-3	6-8-10							
			S-4	7-9-9							
	670		S-4	4-6-7							
10							12.0				
			S-5	6-6-7		CLAYEY SAND (SC); medium dense; reddish-brown; moist; trace chert; some silt.					
15	665										
			S-6	4-4-5		CLAYEY SAND (SC); loose to medium dense; tan; moist; trace chert; some silt.					
20	660						17.0				
			S-7	5-7-8							
25	655						25.0				
						Boring terminated at 25.0 feet.					

**Graphics Legend**



Asphalt



CL



CH



SC

Red Bay High School Additions  
 800 8th St E, Red Bay, AL 35582  
 Project Number: 24-0010

# Soil Boring: B-4



N: 1613909.0  
 E: 1776187.9

Date Drilled: 04/25/2024  
 Driller: South Bros. Drilling, Inc.  
 Equipment: Diedrich D-50  
 Hammer Type: Auto  
 Drill Method: Auger  
 Logged By: Laura Vukosavljevic

**Groundwater Information**  
 Groundwater not encountered during drilling.

Depth (ft)	Elevation (ft)	Sample Graphic	Sample Number	Blow Counts	● Plastic Limit ● 0 50 100 ● Liquid Limit ● 0 50 100 ▲ Moisture Content ▲ 0 25 50 ■ Uncorrected N-Value ■ 0 25 50	Rig Type	Diedrich D-50 2-1/4" Hollow Stem Auger	Water Levels	Graphic Log	Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)	Remarks
						Tooling					
							677'				
Visual Classification											
	675		S-1	1-2-5		TOPSOIL	0.3			4	
			S-2	4-5-7		LEAN CLAY (CL); firm to stiff; reddish-brown; moist; trace chert; some to abundant sand; some silt; RESIDUUM.				4	
5			S-3	6-8-8		FAT CLAY (CH); very stiff to stiff; reddish-brown; moist; trace chert; some silt; abundant sand.	5.5			3	
	670		S-4	4-5-6						2.5	
10						Boring terminated at 10.0 feet.	10.0				
	665										
15											
	660										
20											
	655										
25											
	650										

**Graphics Legend**



Topsoil



CL



CH



SS - Small Split Spoon

Red Bay High School Additions  
 800 8th St E, Red Bay, AL 35582  
 Project Number: 24-0010

# Soil Boring: B-5



Date Drilled: 04/25/2024  
 Driller: South Bros. Drilling, Inc.  
 Equipment: Diedrich D-50  
 Hammer Type: Auto  
 Drill Method: Auger  
 Logged By: Laura Vukosavljevic

**Groundwater Information**  
 Groundwater not encountered during drilling.

Depth (ft)	Elevation (ft)	Sample Graphic	Sample Number	Blow Counts	● Plastic Limit ● 0 50 100 ● Liquid Limit ● 0 50 100 ▲ Moisture Content ▲ 0 25 50 ■ Uncorrected N-Value ■ 0 25 50	Rig Type	Diedrich D-50	Water Levels	Graphic Log	Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)	Remarks
						Tooling	2-1/4" Hollow Stem Auger				
Visual Classification											
						TOPSOIL	0.3				
	675		S-1	2-5-6			LEAN CLAY (CL); stiff to very stiff; reddish-brown; moist; some silt; abundant sand; RESIDUUM.			3.5	
			S-2	5-6-10						3.5	
5			S-3	7-7-12						4	
	670		S-4	5-8-10						3.5	
10						Boring terminated at 10.0 feet.					
	665						10.0				
15											
	660										
20											
	655										
25											

**Graphics Legend**



Topsoil



CL



SS - Small Split Spoon

-

Red Bay High School Additions  
 800 8th St E, Red Bay, AL 35582  
 Project Number: 24-0010

# Soil Boring: B-6



N: 1614129.7  
 E: 1776207.9

Date Drilled: 04/25/2024  
 Driller: South Bros. Drilling, Inc.  
 Equipment: Diedrich D-50  
 Hammer Type: Auto  
 Drill Method: Auger  
 Logged By: Laura Vukosavljevic

**Groundwater Information**  
 Groundwater not encountered during drilling.

Depth (ft)	Elevation (ft)	Sample Graphic	Sample Number	Blow Counts	● Plastic Limit ● 0 50 100 ● Liquid Limit ● 0 50 100 ▲ Moisture Content ▲ 0 25 50 ■ Uncorrected N-Value ■ 0 25 50	Rig Type	Diedrich D-50	Water Levels	Graphic Log	Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)	Remarks	
						Tooling	2-1/4" Hollow Stem Auger					Surface Elevation
675			S-1	3-5-8		TOPSOIL	0.3			4		
			S-2	5-6-9			LEAN CLAY (CL); stiff to very stiff; reddish-brown; moist; trace chert; some silt; some to abundant sand; RESIDUUM.			3.5		
670			S-3	7-9-10							3.5	
			S-4	6-8-10								
10									10.0			
665						Boring terminated at 10.0 feet.						
660												
655												
650												

**Graphics Legend**



Topsoil



CL



SS - Small Split Spoon

-

Red Bay High School Additions  
 800 8th St E, Red Bay, AL 35582  
 Project Number: 24-0010

# Soil Boring: B-7



Date Drilled: 04/25/2024  
 Driller: South Bros. Drilling, Inc.  
 Equipment: Diedrich D-50  
 Hammer Type: Auto  
 Drill Method: Auger  
 Logged By: Laura Vukosavljevic

**Groundwater Information**  
 Groundwater not encountered during drilling.

Depth (ft)	Elevation (ft)	Sample Graphic	Sample Number	Blow Counts	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>● Plastic Limit ●</td> <td>0</td> <td>50</td> <td>100</td> </tr> <tr> <td>● Liquid Limit ●</td> <td>0</td> <td>50</td> <td>100</td> </tr> <tr> <td>▲ Moisture Content ▲</td> <td>0</td> <td>25</td> <td>50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>■ Uncorrected N-Value ■</td> <td>0</td> <td>25</td> <td>50</td> </tr> </table>	● Plastic Limit ●	0	50	100	● Liquid Limit ●	0	50	100	▲ Moisture Content ▲	0	25	50	■ Uncorrected N-Value ■	0	25	50	Rig Type Tooling Surface Elevation	Diedrich D-50 2-1/4" Hollow Stem Auger 677'	Water Levels	Graphic Log	Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)	Remarks
						● Plastic Limit ●	0	50	100																		
● Liquid Limit ●	0	50	100																								
▲ Moisture Content ▲	0	25	50																								
■ Uncorrected N-Value ■	0	25	50																								
Visual Classification																											
675			S-1	2-2-1		ASPHALT 0.3			2																		
			S-2	2-2-4		AGGREGATE BASE 0.4			2																		
5					LEAN CLAY (CL); soft; brown; moist; some sand and silt; RESIDUUM. 3.0																						
					LEAN CLAY (CL); firm; reddish-brown; moist; trace chert; some silt; abundant sand. 5.0																						
670					Boring terminated at 5.0 feet.																						
665																											
660																											
655																											
650																											

**Graphics Legend**



Asphalt



CL



SS - Small Split Spoon



Red Bay High School Additions  
 800 8th St E, Red Bay, AL 35582  
 Project Number: 24-0010

# Soil Boring: B-8



Date Drilled: 04/25/2024  
 Driller: South Bros. Drilling, Inc.  
 Equipment: Diedrich D-50  
 Hammer Type: Auto  
 Drill Method: Auger  
 Logged By: Laura Vukosavljevic

**Groundwater Information**  
 Groundwater not encountered during drilling.

Depth (ft)	Elevation (ft)	Sample Graphic	Sample Number	Blow Counts	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>● Plastic Limit ●</td> <td>0</td> <td>50</td> <td>100</td> </tr> <tr> <td>● Liquid Limit ●</td> <td>0</td> <td>50</td> <td>100</td> </tr> <tr> <td>▲ Moisture Content ▲</td> <td>0</td> <td>25</td> <td>50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>■ Uncorrected N-Value ■</td> <td>0</td> <td>25</td> <td>50</td> </tr> </table>	● Plastic Limit ●	0	50	100	● Liquid Limit ●	0	50	100	▲ Moisture Content ▲	0	25	50	■ Uncorrected N-Value ■	0	25	50	Rig Type	Diedrich D-50	Water Levels	Graphic Log	Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)	Remarks
						● Plastic Limit ●	0	50	100																		
● Liquid Limit ●	0	50	100																								
▲ Moisture Content ▲	0	25	50																								
■ Uncorrected N-Value ■	0	25	50																								
Tooling	2-1/4" Hollow Stem Auger <th>Surface Elevation</th> <td>681'</td>	Surface Elevation	681'																								
Visual Classification																											
	680		S-1	2-4-5		ASPHALT	0.3																				
						AGGREGATE BASE	0.4			4																	
			S-2	4-6-8		LEAN CLAY (CL); stiff; brown; moist; some sand and silt; RESIDUUM.	3.0			4																	
	675					LEAN CLAY (CL); stiff; reddish-brown; moist; trace chert; some silt; abundant sand.	5.0																				
						Boring terminated at 5.0 feet.																					
	670																										
	665																										
	660																										
	655																										

**Graphics Legend**



Asphalt



CL



SS - Small Split Spoon

Red Bay High School Additions  
 800 8th St E, Red Bay, AL 35582  
 Project Number: 24-0010

# Soil Boring: B-9



Date Drilled: 04/25/2024  
 Driller: South Bros. Drilling, Inc.  
 Equipment: Diedrich D-50  
 Hammer Type: Auto  
 Drill Method: Auger  
 Logged By: Laura Vukosavljevic

**Groundwater Information**  
 Groundwater not encountered during drilling.

Depth (ft)	Elevation (ft)	Sample Graphic	Sample Number	Blow Counts	● Plastic Limit ● 0 50 100 ● Liquid Limit ● 0 50 100 ▲ Moisture Content ▲ 0 25 50 ■ Uncorrected N-Value ■ 0 25 50	Rig Type	Diedrich D-50	Water Levels	Graphic Log	Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)	Remarks
						Tooling	2-1/4" Hollow Stem Auger				
680		X	S-1	2-3-4		LEAN CLAY (CL); firm; brown; moist; some sand and silt; FILL.				2	
		X	S-2	2-1-1						1	
675		X	S-3	1-2-1		SILT (ML); very soft to soft; grayish-brown; moist; trace chert; abundant sand and clay; RESIDUUM.				1.5	
		X	S-4	7-7-9						3.5	
670						LEAN CLAY (CL); very stiff; reddish-brown; moist; trace chert; some silt; abundant sand.				10.0	
Boring terminated at 10.0 feet.											
665											
660											
655											

**Graphics Legend**



CL



ML



CL



SS - Small Split Spoon

Red Bay High School Additions  
 800 8th St E, Red Bay, AL 35582  
 Project Number: 24-0010

# Soil Boring: B-10



Date Drilled: 04/25/2024  
 Driller: South Bros. Drilling, Inc.  
 Equipment: Diedrich D-50  
 Hammer Type: Auto  
 Drill Method: Auger  
 Logged By: Laura Vukosavljevic

**Groundwater Information**  
 Groundwater not encountered during drilling.

Depth (ft)	Elevation (ft)	Sample Graphic	Sample Number	Blow Counts	● Plastic Limit ● 0 50 100 ● Liquid Limit ● 0 50 100 ▲ Moisture Content ▲ 0 25 50 ■ Uncorrected N-Value ■ 0 25 50	Rig Type	Diedrich D-50	Water Levels	Graphic Log	Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)	Remarks
						Tooling	2-1/4" Hollow Stem Auger				
Visual Classification											
	680		S-1	4-4-3		ASPHALT	0.3			2.5	
						AGGREGATE BASE	0.6			1.75	
			S-2	1-3-4		SILT (ML); firm; grayish-brown; moist; trace chert; some sand; abundant clay.					
5	675					Boring terminated at 5.0 feet.					
10	670										
15	665										
20	660										
25	655										

**Graphics Legend**



Asphalt



ML



SS - Small Split Spoon

-

Red Bay High School Additions  
 800 8th St E, Red Bay, AL 35582  
 Project Number: 24-0010

# Soil Boring: B-11



Date Drilled: 04/25/2024  
 Driller: South Bros. Drilling, Inc.  
 Equipment: Diedrich D-50  
 Hammer Type: Auto  
 Drill Method: Auger  
 Logged By: Laura Vukosavljevic

**Groundwater Information**  
 Groundwater not encountered during drilling.

Depth (ft)	Elevation (ft)	Sample Graphic	Sample Number	Blow Counts	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>● Plastic Limit ●</td> <td>0</td> <td>50</td> <td>100</td> </tr> <tr> <td>● Liquid Limit ●</td> <td>0</td> <td>50</td> <td>100</td> </tr> <tr> <td>▲ Moisture Content ▲</td> <td>0</td> <td>25</td> <td>50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>■ Uncorrected N-Value ■</td> <td>0</td> <td>25</td> <td>50</td> </tr> </table>	● Plastic Limit ●	0	50	100	● Liquid Limit ●	0	50	100	▲ Moisture Content ▲	0	25	50	■ Uncorrected N-Value ■	0	25	50	Rig Type Tooling Surface Elevation	Diedrich D-50 2-1/4" Hollow Stem Auger 681'	Water Levels	Graphic Log	Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)	Remarks
						● Plastic Limit ●	0	50	100																		
● Liquid Limit ●	0	50	100																								
▲ Moisture Content ▲	0	25	50																								
■ Uncorrected N-Value ■	0	25	50																								
Visual Classification																											
680			S-1	2-2-1		ASPHALT 0.2 AGGREGATE BASE 0.4 SILT (ML); soft; brown and grayish-brown; moist; some sand; abundant clay; RESIDUUM. 3.0 SILT (ML); stiff; brown and grayish-brown; moist; trace chert; abundant sand and clay. 5.0 Boring terminated at 5.0 feet.			0.75  2.5																		
675			S-2	3-3-5																							
670																											
665																											
660																											
655																											

**Graphics Legend**



Asphalt



ML



SS - Small Split Spoon

-

## BORING LOG TERMINOLOGY LEGEND

CONSISTENCY OF COHESIVE SOILS					
Description	SPT N <sub>60</sub> (blows per 12 inches)	Shear Strength (tsf)	Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)	Torvane Measurement (tsf)	Vane Shear Measurement (tsf)
Very Soft	0 – 2	< 0.12	< 0.25	< 0.12	< 0.12
Soft	3 – 4	0.12 – 0.25	0.25 – 0.5	0.12 – 0.25	0.12 – 0.25
Firm	5 – 7	0.25 – 0.5	0.5 – 1.0	0.25 – 0.5	0.25 – 0.5
Stiff	8 – 14	0.5 – 1	1 – 2	0.5 – 1	0.5 – 1
Very Stiff	15 – 30	1 – 2	2 – 4	1 – 2	1 – 2
Hard	31 – 50	>2	>4	>2	>2

APPARENT DENSITY OF COHESIONLESS SOILS	
Description	SPT N <sub>60</sub> (blows per 12 inches)
Very Loose	0 – 4
Loose	5 – 10
Medium Dense	11 – 30
Dense	31 – 50
Very Dense	> 50

PERCENT OR PROPORTION OF SOILS	
Description	Criteria
Trace	Particles are present but estimated < 5%
Few	5 – 10%
Little	15 – 25%
Some	30 – 45%
Mostly	50 – 100%

CEMENTATION	
Description	Criteria
Weak	Crumbles or breaks with handling or little finger pressure.
Moderate	Crumbles or breaks with considerable finger pressure
Strong	Will not crumble or break with finger pressure

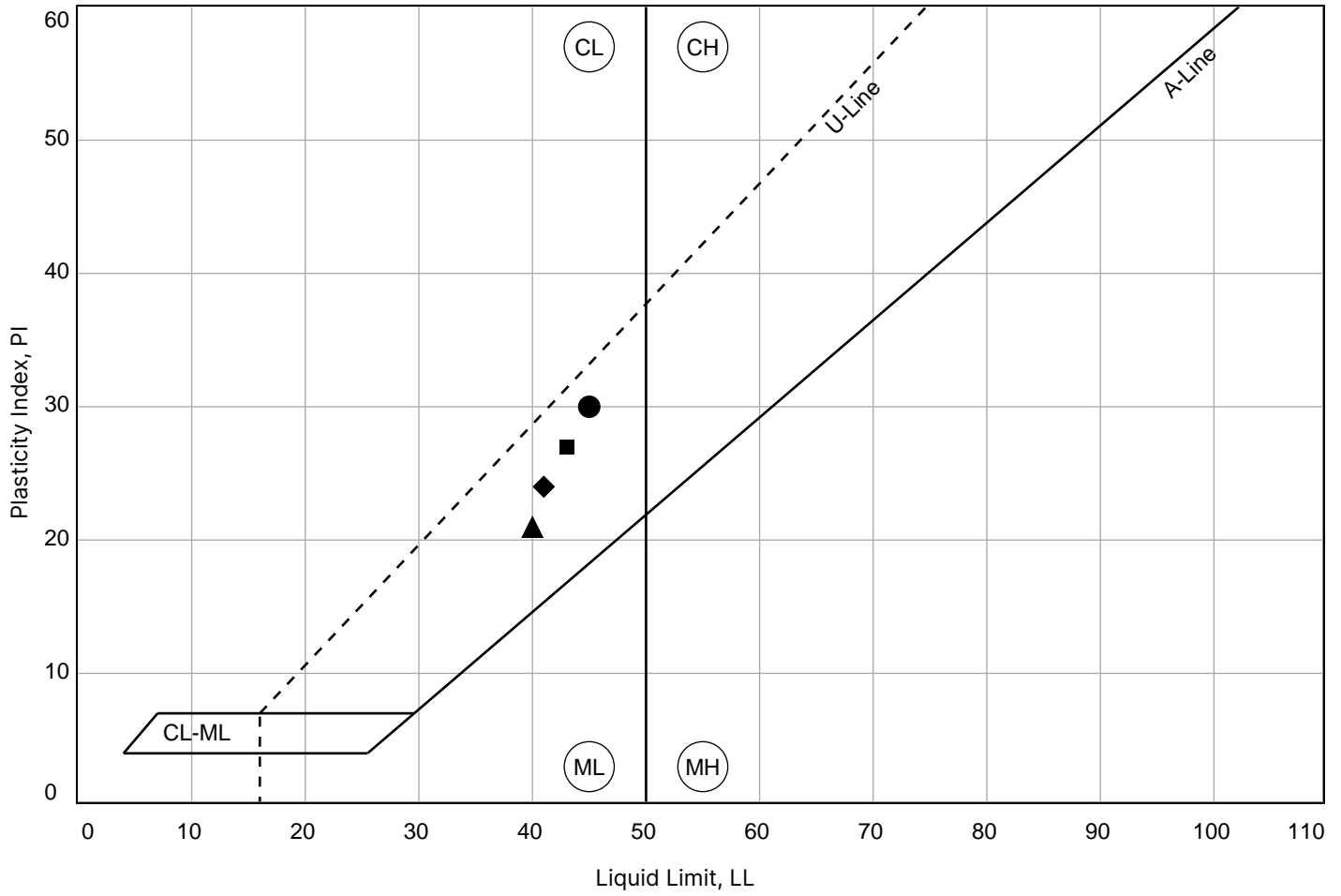
PARTICLE SIZE		
Description		U.S. Sieve Size
Boulder		> 12"
Cobble		3" – 12"
Gravel	Coarse	¾" – 3"
	Fine	#4 – ¾"
Sand	Coarse	#10 - #4
	Medium	#40 - #10
	Fine	#200 - #40
Silt & Clay		< #200

SOIL MOISTURE CONDITIONS		
Description	Cohesive Soil	Cohesionless Soil
Dry	No noticeable moisture.	No noticeable moisture.
Moist	Moisture content below the plastic limit.	Contains a noticeable amount of moisture, but no appreciable free water
Very Moist	Moisture content above the plastic limit, but below the liquid limit.	
Wet	Moisture content approaches the liquid limit.	Contains free water, but voids are not water-filled.
Saturated	Moisture content is at or above the liquid limit.	Soil voids are water-filled or nearly filled.

## **14 APPENDIX 3 – LABORATORY TEST RESULTS**

**Red Bay High School Additions**

Boring ID	Sample ID	Depth	Moisture Content	LL	PL	PI
B-2	S-1	1	21.25			
B-2	S-2	3.5	18.93	43	16	27
B-2	S-3	6	20.24			
B-2	S-4	8.5	16.12			
B-4	S-1	1	20.01	45	15	30
B-4	S-2	3.5	18.45			
B-4	S-3	6	19.64			
B-4	S-4	8.5	17.91			
B-6	S-1	1	19.09	41	17	24
B-6	S-2	3.5	18.43			
B-6	S-3	6	18.61			
B-6	S-4	8.5	14.33			
B-8	S-1	1	20.83	40	19	21
B-8	S-2	3.5	20.95			

**Red Bay High School Additions**


	EXPLORATION AND	DEPTH	UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION	USCS	LL	PL	PI	FINES	NAT	TEST	TEST STD	TEST NOTE
■	B-2, S-2	3.5			43	16	27				D4318	
●	B-4, S-1	1			45	15	30				D4318	
◆	B-6, S-1	1			41	17	24				D4318	
▲	B-8, S-1	1			40	19	21				D4318	



## **15 APPENDIX 4 – ASFE UNDERSTANDING YOUR GEOTECH REPORT**

# Important Information about Your Geotechnical Engineering Report

*Subsurface problems are a principal cause of construction delays, cost overruns, claims, and disputes.*

*While you cannot eliminate all such risks, you can manage them. The following information is provided to help.*

## **Geotechnical Services Are Performed for Specific Purposes, Persons, and Projects**

Geotechnical engineers structure their services to meet the specific needs of their clients. A geotechnical engineering study conducted for a civil engineer may not fulfill the needs of a construction contractor or even another civil engineer. Because each geotechnical engineering study is unique, each geotechnical engineering report is unique, prepared *solely* for the client. No one except you should rely on your geotechnical engineering report without first conferring with the geotechnical engineer who prepared it. *And no one — not even you — should apply the report for any purpose or project except the one originally contemplated.*

## **Read the Full Report**

Serious problems have occurred because those relying on a geotechnical engineering report did not read it all. Do not rely on an executive summary. Do not read selected elements only.

## **A Geotechnical Engineering Report Is Based on A Unique Set of Project-Specific Factors**

Geotechnical engineers consider a number of unique, project-specific factors when establishing the scope of a study. Typical factors include: the client's goals, objectives, and risk management preferences; the general nature of the structure involved, its size, and configuration; the location of the structure on the site; and other planned or existing site improvements, such as access roads, parking lots, and underground utilities. Unless the geotechnical engineer who conducted the study specifically indicates otherwise, do not rely on a geotechnical engineering report that was:

- not prepared for you,
- not prepared for your project,
- not prepared for the specific site explored, or
- completed before important project changes were made.

Typical changes that can erode the reliability of an existing geotechnical engineering report include those that affect:

- the function of the proposed structure, as when it's changed from a parking garage to an office building, or from a light industrial plant to a refrigerated warehouse,

- elevation, configuration, location, orientation, or weight of the proposed structure,
- composition of the design team, or
- project ownership.

As a general rule, *always* inform your geotechnical engineer of project changes—even minor ones—and request an assessment of their impact. *Geotechnical engineers cannot accept responsibility or liability for problems that occur because their reports do not consider developments of which they were not informed.*

## **Subsurface Conditions Can Change**

A geotechnical engineering report is based on conditions that existed at the time the study was performed. *Do not rely on a geotechnical engineering report* whose adequacy may have been affected by: the passage of time; by man-made events, such as construction on or adjacent to the site; or by natural events, such as floods, earthquakes, or groundwater fluctuations. *Always* contact the geotechnical engineer before applying the report to determine if it is still reliable. A minor amount of additional testing or analysis could prevent major problems.

## **Most Geotechnical Findings Are Professional Opinions**

Site exploration identifies subsurface conditions only at those points where subsurface tests are conducted or samples are taken. Geotechnical engineers review field and laboratory data and then apply their professional judgment to render an opinion about subsurface conditions throughout the site. Actual subsurface conditions may differ—sometimes significantly—from those indicated in your report. Retaining the geotechnical engineer who developed your report to provide construction observation is the most effective method of managing the risks associated with unanticipated conditions.

## **A Report's Recommendations Are *Not* Final**

Do not overrely on the construction recommendations included in your report. *Those recommendations are not final*, because geotechnical engineers develop them principally from judgment and opinion. Geotechnical engineers can finalize their recommendations only by observing actual

subsurface conditions revealed during construction. *The geotechnical engineer who developed your report cannot assume responsibility or liability for the report's recommendations if that engineer does not perform construction observation.*

### **A Geotechnical Engineering Report Is Subject to Misinterpretation**

Other design team members' misinterpretation of geotechnical engineering reports has resulted in costly problems. Lower that risk by having your geotechnical engineer confer with appropriate members of the design team after submitting the report. Also retain your geotechnical engineer to review pertinent elements of the design team's plans and specifications. Contractors can also misinterpret a geotechnical engineering report. Reduce that risk by having your geotechnical engineer participate in prebid and preconstruction conferences, and by providing construction observation.

### **Do Not Redraw the Engineer's Logs**

Geotechnical engineers prepare final boring and testing logs based upon their interpretation of field logs and laboratory data. To prevent errors or omissions, the logs included in a geotechnical engineering report should *never* be redrawn for inclusion in architectural or other design drawings. Only photographic or electronic reproduction is acceptable, *but recognize that separating logs from the report can elevate risk.*

### **Give Contractors a Complete Report and Guidance**

Some owners and design professionals mistakenly believe they can make contractors liable for unanticipated subsurface conditions by limiting what they provide for bid preparation. To help prevent costly problems, give contractors the complete geotechnical engineering report, *but* preface it with a clearly written letter of transmittal. In that letter, advise contractors that the report was not prepared for purposes of bid development and that the report's accuracy is limited; encourage them to confer with the geotechnical engineer who prepared the report (a modest fee may be required) and/or to conduct additional study to obtain the specific types of information they need or prefer. A prebid conference can also be valuable. *Be sure contractors have sufficient time* to perform additional study. Only then might you be in a position to give contractors the best information available to you, while requiring them to at least share some of the financial responsibilities stemming from unanticipated conditions.

### **Read Responsibility Provisions Closely**

Some clients, design professionals, and contractors do not recognize that geotechnical engineering is far less exact than other engineering disciplines. This lack of understanding has created unrealistic expectations that

have led to disappointments, claims, and disputes. To help reduce the risk of such outcomes, geotechnical engineers commonly include a variety of explanatory provisions in their reports. Sometimes labeled "limitations" many of these provisions indicate where geotechnical engineers' responsibilities begin and end, to help others recognize their own responsibilities and risks. *Read these provisions closely.* Ask questions. Your geotechnical engineer should respond fully and frankly.

### **Geoenvironmental Concerns Are Not Covered**

The equipment, techniques, and personnel used to perform a *geoenvironmental* study differ significantly from those used to perform a *geotechnical* study. For that reason, a geotechnical engineering report does not usually relate any geoenvironmental findings, conclusions, or recommendations; e.g., about the likelihood of encountering underground storage tanks or regulated contaminants. *Unanticipated environmental problems have led to numerous project failures.* If you have not yet obtained your own geoenvironmental information, ask your geotechnical consultant for risk management guidance. *Do not rely on an environmental report prepared for someone else.*

### **Obtain Professional Assistance To Deal with Mold**

Diverse strategies can be applied during building design, construction, operation, and maintenance to prevent significant amounts of mold from growing on indoor surfaces. To be effective, all such strategies should be devised for the *express purpose* of mold prevention, integrated into a comprehensive plan, and executed with diligent oversight by a professional mold prevention consultant. Because just a small amount of water or moisture can lead to the development of severe mold infestations, a number of mold prevention strategies focus on keeping building surfaces dry. While groundwater, water infiltration, and similar issues may have been addressed as part of the geotechnical engineering study whose findings are conveyed in this report, the geotechnical engineer in charge of this project is not a mold prevention consultant; ***none of the services performed in connection with the geotechnical engineer's study were designed or conducted for the purpose of mold prevention. Proper implementation of the recommendations conveyed in this report will not of itself be sufficient to prevent mold from growing in or on the structure involved.***

### **Rely on Your ASFE-Member Geotechnical Engineer for Additional Assistance**

Membership in ASFE/THE BEST PEOPLE ON EARTH exposes geotechnical engineers to a wide array of risk management techniques that can be of genuine benefit for everyone involved with a construction project. Confer with your ASFE-member geotechnical engineer for more information.



8811 Colesville Road/Suite G106, Silver Spring, MD 20910  
Telephone: 301/565-2733 Facsimile: 301/589-2017  
e-mail: [info@asfe.org](mailto:info@asfe.org) [www.asfe.org](http://www.asfe.org)

*Copyright 2004 by ASFE, Inc. Duplication, reproduction, or copying of this document, in whole or in part, by any means whatsoever, is strictly prohibited, except with ASFE's specific written permission. Excerpting, quoting, or otherwise extracting wording from this document is permitted only with the express written permission of ASFE, and only for purposes of scholarly research or book review. Only members of ASFE may use this document as a complement to or as an element of a geotechnical engineering report. Any other firm, individual, or other entity that so uses this document without being an ASFE member could be committing negligent or intentional (fraudulent) misrepresentation.*

## SECTION 02282 - TERMITE CONTROL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Provide soil treatment for termite control, as herein specified.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data and application instructions.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. In addition to requirements of these specifications, comply with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for work, including preparation of substrate and application.
- B. Engage a professional pest control operator, licensed in accordance with regulations of governing authorities for application of soil treatment solution.
- C. Use only termiticides which bear a Federal registration number of the US Environmental Protection Agency.

#### 1.5 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Restrictions: Do not apply soil treatment solution until excavating, filling and grading operations are completed, except as otherwise required in construction operations.
- B. To insure penetration, do not apply soil treatment to frozen or excessively wet soils or during inclement weather. Comply with handling and application instructions of the soil toxicant manufacturer.

#### 1.6 SPECIFIC PRODUCT WARRANTY

- A. Furnish written warranty certifying that applied soil termiticide treatment will prevent infestation of subterranean termites and that if subterranean termite activity is discovered during warranty period. Contractor will re-treat soil and repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation.
  - 1. Provide warranty for a period of 5 years from date of treatment, signed by Applicator and Contractor. This includes all costs associated with re-inspections per the manufacturer's requirements, re-treatment, repair and replace damage caused by termite infestation.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SOIL TREATMENT SOLUTION

- A. Use an emulsible concentrate termiticide for dilution with water, specially formulated to prevent infestation by termites. Fuel oil will not be permitted as a diluent. Provide a solution consisting of one of the following chemical elements and concentrations:
  - 1. Water based emulsion, uniform composition, synthetic dye to permit visual identification of treated soil, of a generic chemical type in compliance with state and federal law and regulations.
- B. Solutions as recommended by Applicator and approved for intended application by jurisdictional authorities. Use only soil treatment solutions which are not injurious to planting or persons.

### PART 3 – EXECUTION

#### 3.1 APPLICATION

TERMITE CONTROL  
02282-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- A. Surface Preparation: Remove foreign matter which could decrease effectiveness of treatment on areas to be treated. Loosen, rake and level soil to be treated, except previously compacted areas under slabs and foundations. Toxicants may be applied before placement of compacted fill under slabs, if recommended by toxicant manufacturer.
- B. Application Rates: Water to be added to solution at job site in the presence of field Superintendent. Apply soil treatment solution at a rate as recommended by the manufacture at the following locations:
- C. Under slab-on-grade structures, treat soil before concrete slabs are placed, including entire inside perimeter inside of foundation walls, along both sides of interior partition walls, around plumbing pipes and electric conduit penetrating slab and around interior column footers.
- D. Apply chemical solution to soil in critical areas under slab, including entire inside perimeter inside of foundation walls, along both sides of interior partition walls, around plumbing pipes and electric conduit penetrating slab and around interior column footers.
  - 1. Apply chemical solution as an overall treatment under slab and attached slab areas where fill is soil or unwashed gravel. Apply chemical solution to areas where fill is washed gravel or other coarse absorbent material.
- E. Under crawl-space and basement structures, treat soil along exterior and interior walls of foundations with shallow footings as specified above for exterior of slab-on-grade structures.
- F. Treat soil under or around crawl-space structures as follows:
  - 1. Apply chemical solution along inside of foundation walls, along both sides of interior partitions, and around piers and plumbing. Do not apply an overall treatment in crawl spaces.
  - 2. Apply chemical solution for each foot of depth from grade to footing, along outside of foundation walls, including part beneath entrance platform porches, etc.
  - 3. Apply chemical solution along the side and outside of foundation walls of porches.
  - 4. Apply as an overall treatment, only where attached concrete platform and porches are on fill or ground.
- G. At hollow masonry foundations or grade beams, treat voids.
- H. At expansion joints, control joints, and areas where slabs will be penetrated, apply chemical solution.
- I. Post signs in areas of application to warn workers that soil termiticide treatment has been applied. Remove signs when areas are covered by other construction.
- J. Reapply soil treatment solution to areas disturbed by subsequent excavation, landscape grading, or other construction activities following application.

**END OF SECTION**

TERMITE CONTROL  
02282-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 02513 - ASPHALTIC CONCRETE PAVING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Extent of asphaltic concrete paving work is shown on drawings.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Referenced Standards: Where the term "Referenced Standard" is used in these Project Specifications, it shall be interpreted as **referring to the current edition of "Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, 2018" or latest edition for Alabama Department of Transportation "**. Referenced Divisions of the "Standard" are hereby made a part of this Project Specification insofar as they may be termed applicable. In no case will requirements for "Method of Measurement" and "Basis of Payment" be considered as applicable to this Project Specification.

#### 1.4 TESTING AND INSPECTION

- A. Testing and Inspection Service: The **Owner** will select a firm to provide testing and inspection service, to include testing soil materials proposed for use in work and provide field facilities for quality control testing during paving operations and shall pay cost for testing. Spot checking of the depths of the compacted base prior to paving shall be done to verify that materials meet the minimum required thickness. Temperature and thickness of paving will be periodically monitored during the paving operation.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: Provide copies of materials certificates signed by material producer and Contractor, certifying that each material item complies with, or exceeds, specified requirements.

#### 1.6 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Apply prime and tack coats when ambient temperature is above 50 degrees Fahrenheit and when temperature has not been below 35 degrees Fahrenheit for 12 hours immediately prior to application. Do not apply when base is wet or contains an excess of moisture.
- B. Construct asphalt concrete surface course when atmospheric temperature is above 40 degrees Fahrenheit and when base is dry. Base course may be placed when air temperature is above 30 degrees Fahrenheit and rising.
- C. Grade Control: Establish and maintain required lines and elevations.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS: See Civil Drawings and Geotechnical Report for paving sections.

- A. Herbicide Treatment: Commercial chemical for weed control, registered by Environmental Protection Agency. Provide granular, liquid, or wettable powder form.
- B. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products of one of the following:
  1. Allied Chemical Corporation
  2. Achem Products, Inc.
  3. Ciba-Geigy Corporation
  4. Dow Chemical U.S.A.

ASPHALTIC CONCRETE PAVING  
02513-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

5. E.I. DuPont De Nemours and Company, Inc.
6. FMC Corporation
7. Thompson-Hayward Chemical Company
8. U. S. Borax and Chemical Company

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 SURFACE PREPARATION**

- A. General: The top six inches of finish subgrade soil beneath pavement and base, shall be mixed, moisture adjusted and remolded in accordance with Section 230, Modified Roadbed, of the before mentioned referenced standard.
- B. Proof roll prepared subgrade surface to check for unstable areas and areas requiring additional compaction.
- C. Notify Architect of unsatisfactory conditions. Do not begin paving work until deficient subgrade areas have been corrected and are ready to receive paving.
- D. Herbicide Treatment: Apply chemical weed control agent in strict compliance with manufacturer's recommended dosages and application instructions. Apply to compacted, dry sub grade.
  1. Allow to dry until at proper condition to receive paving.

#### **3.2 PLACING MIX**

- A. General: Place asphalt concrete mixture on prepared surface, spread and strike-off. Spread mixture at minimum temperature of 225 degrees Fahrenheit. Place inaccessible and small areas by hand. Place each course to required grade, cross-section and compact thickness.
- B. Paver Placing: Place in strips not less than 10' wide, unless otherwise acceptable to Architect. After first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips.
- C. Joints: Make joints between old and new pavements, or between successive days' work, to ensure continuous bond between adjoining work. Construct joints to have same texture, density and smoothness as other sections of asphalt concrete course. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat.

#### **3.3 ROLLING**

- A. General: Begin rolling when mixture will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.
- B. Compact mixture with hot hand tampers or vibrating plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.
- C. Breakdown Rolling: Accomplish breakdown or initial rolling immediately following rolling of joints and outside edge. Check surface after breakdown rolling, and repair displaced areas by loosening and filling, if required, with hot material.
- D. Second Rolling: Follow breakdown rolling as soon as possible warm enough for removal of roller marks. Continue rolling until roller marks are eliminated and course has attained maximum density.
- E. Patching: Remove and replace paving areas mixed with foreign materials and defective areas. Cut-out such areas and fill with fresh, hot asphalt concrete. Compact by rolling to maximum surface density and smoothness.
- F. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.
- G. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

ASPHALTIC CONCRETE PAVING  
02513-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

### **3.4 TRAFFIC AND LANE MARKINGS**

- A. Cleaning: Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- B. Lane / Parking Marking Paint: Paint Stripes shall be equal to KRYLON INDUSTRIAL LINE-UP PAINT SB Pavement Striping Paint for Parking Lots - Solvent-Based Pavement Striping alkyd paint or equal. Color: White at typical spaces, Blue at handicapped spaces and symbol.
- C. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce uniform straight edges. Apply in 2 coats at manufacturer's recommended rates.

### **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. General: Test in-place asphalt concrete courses for compliance with requirements for thickness and surface smoothness. Repair or remove and replace unacceptable paving as directed by Architect.
- B. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness will not be acceptable if exceeding 1/4" from required thickness.
- C. Surface Smoothness: Test finished surface of each asphalt concrete course for smoothness, using 10' straight-edge applied parallel with, and at right angles to centerline of paved area. Surfaces will not be acceptable if exceeding the following tolerances for smoothness.
  - 1. Base Course Surface: 1/4".
  - 2. Wearing Course Surface: 3/16"
- D. Check surface areas at intervals as directed by Architect.

### **3.6 TESTING**

- 1. To be performed by independent lab paid by Owner, approved by Architect.
- 2. Before delivery Bituminous Binder and Wearing Course Materials shall be tested by Lab at Suppliers production plant.
- 3. Testing shall verify that all samples meet ALDOT specifications.
- 4. Test reports sent to Architect, Owner, Contractor.

**END OF SECTION**

ASPHALTIC CONCRETE PAVING  
02513-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



## SECTION 02514 - PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE PAVING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Extent of Portland cement concrete paving work is indicated on drawings.
- B. Paving work includes, but is not limited to the following:
  - 1. Transformer Pad
- C. Prepared subgrade is specified in Specification Section 02200, Earthwork.
- D. Concrete and related materials are specified in Division 3 Specifications.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Referenced Standards: Where the term "Referenced Standard" is used in these Project Specifications, it shall be interpreted as **referring to the current edition of "Standard Specifications for Highway Construction" 2018 or latest edition of Alabama Department of Transportation**. Referenced Divisions of the "Standard" are hereby made a part of this Project Specification insofar as they may be termed applicable. In no case will requirements for "Method of Measurement" and "Basis of Payment" be considered as applicable to this Project Specification.
- B. Testing and Inspection:
  - 1. Testing and Inspection Services: The **Owner** will engage and pay for testing and inspection services, to include testing soil materials proposed for use during paving operations.
  - 2. Field tests will be performed in conjunction with a proof rolling inspection of the prepared subgrade to verify that existing subgrade conditions are similar to those assumed in the design and therefore adequate for support of the pavement system.
- C. Do not change source or brands of material during the course of the work.

#### 1.4 INSPECTION AND APPROVAL OF WORK

- A. Before commencement of work, Contractor shall coordinate with the Architect to arrange for inspection and approval of initial installation of slabs-on-grade. The approved initial installations shall serve as the standard to which all subsequent work shall adhere.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE

- A. Transformer Pad: 4" thick concrete slab installed over compacted bed. Edges neatly tooled. Verify exact elevation, size and location with Electrical Contractor and Architect.

#### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Concrete shall be plant or transit mixed having a minimum of 28 day strength of 4000 psi (550 psi flexural strength), maximum 4" slump. Proportioning and control of the mix shall be as required under the concrete section of these specifications.
- B. Steel reinforcement if required shall be 6 x 6 #10/10 W.W.M. unless noted otherwise.
- C. Expansion joint material shall be premoulded treated fibre 1/2" thick.

PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE PAVING  
02514-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## **PART 3 – EXECUTION**

### **3.1 CONCRETE FORMWORK**

- A. Execute construction of concrete formwork in accordance with the "Referenced Standard".

### **3.2 CLEANING UP**

- A. Remove all surplus materials, rubble, cartons and other debris resultant from work of this Section and haul off site. Repair damage resulting from paving operations. Leave entire work in broom-clean condition.

**END OF SECTION**

PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE PAVING  
02514-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 02660 - WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. The work includes construction of the water distribution system including fire lines as shown on the Drawings.
- B. Testing and disinfection of the installed system shall be incidental to the work.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Requirements of Regulatory Agencies: Comply with applicable codes, ordinances, rules, regulations, and laws of local, municipal, state or federal authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Meet all requirements of the Local Water Authority and be subject to review by System inspectors.

#### 1.4 SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Coordinate water distribution system with pavement construction.
- B. Install water mains when grade is within 6 in. of final grade.
- C. Coordinate the Work with the Local Water Authority and pay all tap fees assessed (to include valves, backflow preventers, vaults, etc.) for portions of the Work completed by the Utility Provider.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Water Main Piping:
  - 1. Water Service Piping: Ductile iron pipe or PVC pipe.
  - 2. Ductile Iron Pipe:
    - a. Manufactured in accordance with AWWA C-151, latest revision, Class 50, min.
    - b. Standard cement-lined and seal-coated with an approved bituminous seal coat in accordance with AWWA C-104, latest revision.
    - c. Approved push-on, conforming to AWWA C-111, latest revision.
- B. PVC Pipe:
  - 1. Constructed to meet the requirements of U. S. Department of Commerce Product Standard PS 22-70, and bear the National Sanitation Foundation Testing Laboratories, Inc., seal for potable water.
  - 2. For PVC piping less than 4" - Schedule 40, PVC, minimum; 150 psi minimum working pressure
  - 3. 4" or greater shall be C900 PVC piping.
- C. Fire Line:
  - 1. Fire line shall be C900 PVC piping. Encasement shall be used under drive areas.
  - 2. Connection to Main: Each hydrant shall be connected to the main pipe with a 6-inch ductile iron branch. Each hydrant shall be controlled by an independent 6-inch gate valve.

WATER  
02660-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

D. Fire Hydrants:

1. All hydrants shall be Mueller Company, M & H, or an approved equal. Fire hydrants shall be equipped with traffic break away feature. Hydrants shall be painted in accordance with the requirements of AWWA C502.

E. Water Main Fittings:

1. Ductile iron fittings shall be provided in locations as shown on the plans or in locations deemed necessary by the Engineer. Ductile iron fittings 12" and smaller shall be rated for 350 psi working pressure. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with AWWA C153 and provided with mechanical joints. All fittings shall be provided with a thin cement lining in accordance with AWWA C104.
2. PVC Fittings: Fittings For PVC Water Mains Smaller Than 6 In. In. Dia.: As recommended by the manufacturer of the pipe furnished, suitable for use under the conditions specified for the pipe, with ring-tite or fluid-tite bells or spigots at all ends for jointing.

F. Valves and Boxes:

1. Cast Iron Valve Boxes shall be provided for all valves installed vertically and shall consist of a base covering the operating nut and head of the valve, a vertical shaft of at least 5 1/4" in diameter and a top section extending to a point even with the finish ground surface, provided with a cast iron cover marked "WATER." The valve box shall be placed concentrically over the operating nut. Precast concrete collars shall be provided around each valve box.
2. Valves 2" and Larger: Cast iron gate valves, AWWA type, the standard product of a recognized valve manufacturer such as Mueller, Iowa or M & H, constructed with an interchangeable parts system, with parts readily available, to meet the following requirements:
  - a. Iron body, bronze-mounted.
  - b. Double disc, parallel seat "O" ring seal.
  - c. 150 psi, min., working pressure.
  - d. Counterclockwise (left) opening.
  - e. 2 in. operating nut.
  - f. Non-rising stem.
  - g. Joints to be as required for pipe to be connected to.
3. Valves 2" and Smaller: Brass or bronze gate valves, conforming to Federal Specification WW-V-76.
4. Underground Valves: Two-piece, screw type, adjustable to suit the depth of bury and type of valve, with a min. shaft dia. of 5-1/4 in.
5. All mechanical joint valves and fittings shall be restrained by MEGALUG series 1100 restraint devices.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Line and Grade: Lay and maintain to the required lines and grades; with fittings, valves and hydrants at the required locations; and with joints centered and spigots plumb; and with all valve and hydrant stems plumb.
- B. Encasement: Piping under paved drive shall be encased with welded steel pipe casing.
- C. Laying Pipe:

WATER  
02660-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

1. General: Before lowering pipe into trenches, grade the bottom of the ditch so that when pipe is in the ditch it will have a bearing for its entire length. Examine the pipe for defects and clean the inside. After placing pipe in ditch, wipe the bell, gasket, and spigot free from all dirt, sand and foreign material. Apply a film of lubricant to the gasket and spigot. Enter the plain end into the socket after which force the pipe into the socket until it makes contact with the bottom of the socket.
  2. A minimum of five (5) feet horizontal separation shall be used when installing water main or piping within areas of sanitary sewer lines. When the proposed water main or piping is required to cross sewer mains, the contractor shall encase the water main carrier pipe with a continuous pipe (sleeve or casing) of sufficient length, located such that a minimum five (5) foot horizontal separation exists between each end of the casing pipe and the sewer main. Where possible, water main shall be a minimum of 18 inches above the top elevation of the sewer main.
  3. No. 12 THW copper locator wire shall be placed in the trench, 12 inches above the water mains and all service piping.
  4. Trench Water: At times when pipe laying is not in progress, close the open ends of pipe by approved means, and permit no trench water to enter the pipe.
- D. Cutting Pipe: Cut pipe for inserting valves, fittings or closure pieces in a neat and workmanlike manner without damage to the pipe.
- E. Direction of Laying: Unless otherwise directed, lay pipe with bell ends facing in the direction of laying. For lines on an appreciable slope, face bells upgrade.
- F. Permissible Deflections: Wherever necessary to deflect pipe from a straight line, either in the vertical or horizontal plane, to avoid obstructing, to plumb stems, or where long radius curves are permitted, deflect as recommended by the manufacturer of the pipe.
- G. Unsuitable Conditions: Lay no pipe in water or when the trench conditions or weather is unsuitable for such work.
- H. Provide ground cover of 3 ft. min.
- I. Setting Appurtenances:
1. Valves and Fittings: Set gate valves and pipe fittings to new pipe in the manner previously specified for cleaning, laying and jointing pipe.
  2. Valve Boxes: Firmly support cast iron valve boxes and maintain centered and plumb over the wrench nut of the gate valve, with box cover flush with the surface of the finished pavement or at such other level as may be directed.

### **3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Hydrostatic Tests: Pressure During Test: After the pipe has been laid and partially backfilled as specified, pressure test all newly laid pipe, or any valved section of it, in accordance with Local required procedures.

### **3.3 CLEANING AND DISINFECTION**

- A. Clean out and thoroughly flush the water distribution system piping and leave free from foreign materials of any sort prior to sterilization.
- B. Disinfect in accordance with Local required procedures and AWWA Standard C-651, latest edition.

**END OF SECTION**

WATER  
02660-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 02720 - STORM SEWERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Requirements of Regulatory Agencies: Comply with applicable codes, ordinances, rules, regulations, and laws of local, municipal, state or federal authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. All locations including total jobsite: All storm drainage shall be in accordance with Local Requirements.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit manufacturer's data, test reports, material certifications as required.

#### 1.4 SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Existing Utilities: Protect existing power lines, water mains, gas lines, telephone lines and other utilities. Should any functioning underground utilities be uncovered during the Work, advise for determination as to whether or not they are to be removed. Repair any damage to utility lines and restore service to original condition.
- B. Coordination and Scheduling of Work:
  - 1. Coordinate work with earthwork operations to avoid interference. Protect established construction stakes.
  - 2. Establish and maintain center-lines, grades and elevations.
  - 3. Construction of new sewers and drainage systems shall proceed as early in construction program as possible. Maintain adequate drainage of the project area at all times. Prevent flooding of adjacent roads and private properties.
- C. Temporary Drainage: Wherever possible, construct new sewers and inlets to serve the various drainage areas, and place in service. Where this is not possible, provide temporary drainage facilities as required. These may include temporary connections into completed sewers, or such other means as the circumstances may require.

### PART 2 – PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Storm Drain Pipe Materials:
  - 1. The Contractor shall have the following options for pipe material:
    - a. Class III reinforced concrete, meeting the requirements of ASTM C76 with tongue and groove joints unless indicated otherwise in the drawings.
    - b. Contech A-2000 PVC Pipe.
    - c. ADS N-12 HDPE
  - 2. Use ductile iron where indicated on the drawings.
- B. Factory Fabricated Downspout Boots:
  - 1. Cast Iron Downspout Boots: contoured interior flow design with no boxed corners, weld seams or choke points; include integral lug slots and stainless steel fasteners.

STORM SEWERS  
2720-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- a. Downspoutboots.com, a division of J. R. Hoe & Sons; 101 Ironwood Rd., Middlesboro, KY 40965: [www.downspoutboots.com](http://www.downspoutboots.com).
  - b. Neenah Enterprises, Inc.; 2121 Brooks Avenue, Neenah, WI 54956; Ph. 920.725.7000; [www.groupnei.com](http://www.groupnei.com).
  - c. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.
- 2. Configuration: Offset/O-Series; Angular/A-Series or Ninety/N-Series as required. Inside top bell shall be sized as required to connect to specified metal downspouts. Length shall be sized as required to connect to drain line run to storm sewer as indicated on the drawings.
  - 3. Material: Cast iron; ASTM A48/A48.
  - 4. Finish: Manufacturer's standard powder coat finish.
  - 5. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
  - 6. Accessories:
    - a. Manufacturer's standard stainless steel fasteners for mounting onto building wall
    - b. Flexible rubber adapter for connection to drainage pipe
- C. Appurtenance Material:
- 1. Brick:
    - a. Clay or Shale Brick: Comply with ASTM C 32 for Sewer Brick and Manhole Brick, grade as selected.
    - b. Concrete Masonry Units: Comply with ASTM C 139.
  - 2. Mortar: Comply with ASTM C 270, Type M, for pipe joints and man- hole and inlet brickwork.
  - 3. Concrete:
    - a. Concrete for use in precast concrete catch basins, curb inlets, drop inlets and manholes shall be 3000 psi at age 28 days.
  - 4. Reinforcement: Comply with ASTM A 615.
  - 5. Castings: Comply with ASTM A 48, grey cast-iron.
  - 6. Riprap: Riprap shall be Class I conforming to Section 814 of the State of Alabama Highway Department Standard Specifications.

## **PART 3 – EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Storm Drainage System: Construct drainage structures and appurtenances in accordance with applicable standard drawings and construction details shown on the Drawings.
- B. Lay all pipe in an open trench of dimensions as given below:
  - 1. Lengths of storm drain pipe shown on the Drawings are approximate distances center-to-center of structures. Install pipe based on actual field measurements.
- C. Excavation:

STORM SEWERS  
2720-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

1. Excavation is open cut. The top portion of trenches may be excavated as required by the Contractor to any width which will not cause damage to adjacent structures. The lower portion of the trench, to a height of 1 ft. above the top of the pipe shall not exceed 18 in. greater than the pipe dia.
2. All excavation shall be prosecuted in accordance with requirements of OSHA "Safety and Health Regulations for Construction".
3. When sheeting or shoring is used, widths may be increased by the thickness of the timbers. All protective measures required are the responsibility of the Contractor and shall be provided at the Contractor's expense.
4. Carefully shape the bottom of trenches to conform to and support the lower 1/4 of the periphery of the pipe barrel. At the Contractor's option, trenches may be excavated slightly over depth, and then the pipe bed may be constructed of approved granular material, thoroughly tamped and carefully shaped to conform to and support the lower 1/4 of the periphery of the pipe barrel. Where rock is encountered, remove to a depth of 6 in. below the pipe and replace with an approved granular material.
5. Where suitable material, such as muck, is encountered at or below invert elevation during excavation, remove and replace with suitable material, or stabilize by the addition of a granular material.

D. Pipe Laying:

1. Proceed upgrade where practicable. Lay pipe shall true to grade and line with a straight and uniform invert. Do not lay pipe in a wet or muddy trench. Dewater trenches as required with firm, smooth and properly shaped bed as specified.
2. Lay corrugated metal pipe so that if invert paving has been damaged, repair with an asphaltic compound to the satisfaction of the Engineer.
3. Joints for reinforced concrete pipe shall be with sand-cement grout.

E. Backfilling:

1. Backfill with selected material, free from rock larger than 2 in. in size, or debris.
2. Carefully place backfill and tamp around and over the pipe to avoid displacement of the pipe or damage to the joints.
3. Place all backfill in 6 in. lifts and compact as required in EARTHWORK Section. Compaction methods shall be at the Contractor's option as long as the desired results are obtained; otherwise, the Architect may order changes in methods or equipment.

F. Appurtenances and Drainage Structures:

1. Furnish and install drainage structures as shown in detail on the Drawings. Install shaped inverts.
2. Fill all mortar joints full. Tool all joints.
3. Cut and grind all pipe, where cut at face of structure wall, smooth with the face of the wall. Pack full all joints around pipe and structure wall at the face of the wall with mortar.
4. Clean bottom of drainage structures of all debris, and wipe walls clean of mortar as work progresses.
5. Construct catch basin tops true to line and grade, and slope continuous with gutter.
6. Install cast iron steps in all structures over 4 ft. deep, installed 15 in. o.c. in a vertical direction. Cast iron steps and manhole rings and covers shall meet ASTM A 48.
7. Construct junction boxes with bottom as shown in details for drop inlets, catch basins or other structures. Construct tops to accommodate a standard manhole ring, and adjust over to grade.

STORM SEWERS  
2720-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



8. Where indicated in the Storm Structure Schedule, drainage basins by Contech or Nyloplast may be used.

### **3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. At completion, remove all excess materials, debris, etc. resultant from operations of this Section of Work.
- B. Leave drainage systems clean and free from mud or debris of any kind. When looked through, each line between structures shall show a full circle of light; otherwise the Contractor shall be required to remove and replace the defective portion of the work, at the Contractor's expense.

**END OF SECTION**

STORM SEWERS  
2720-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 02730 - SANITARY SEWERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Requirements of Regulatory Agencies: Comply with applicable codes, ordinances, rules, regulations and laws of local, municipal, state or federal authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sanitary sewer construction is subject to review and acceptance by the Local Sewer Department and shall meet their requirements.

#### 1.3 SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Coordinate sanitary sewer construction with grading operations to avoid deep trench conditions insofar as possible.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Pipe: Type as shown Drawings.
  - 1. PVC Pipe:
    - a. Gravity Pipe – Plastic pipe for gravity sewers, stacks and laterals, and fittings shall be unplasticized polyvinyl chloride (PVC), meeting or exceeding ASTM Specification D3034, latest edition, Classification SDR 35.
    - b. Force Main Pipe – PVC pipe for force mains shall conform to the requirements of ASTM D2241 for pressure pipe or AWWA C900. Pipe shall be Class 150 with a Standard Dimension Ratio of 18 or heavier.
    - c. All sanitary sewer PVC pipe shall be either green or brown in color.
  - B. Appurtenances:
    - 1. Manholes: Precast concrete units conforming to ASTM 478.
    - 2. Castings: Grey cast iron conforming to ASTM A 48.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Trenching and Excavation:
  - 1. Excavate in open trench to the width, depth and in the direction necessary for the proper construction of the pipe sewer according to the Drawing.
  - 2. Shape the bottom of the trench so as to conform as nearly as possible to the outside of the pipe, particular care being taken to recess the bottom of the trench in such a manner as to relieve the bell of the pipe of all load.
  - 3. Build pipe sewers in a trench, the width of which at the top of the pipe shall not exceed the external dia. of the bell of the pipe, plus 12 in. each side, unless otherwise directed by the Engineer, but in no case less than 24 in. in width.
  - 4. All excavation shall be performed in accordance with requirements of OSHA "Safety and Health Regulations for Construction".

SANITARY SEWERS  
02730-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

B. Backfilling:

1. The sanitary sewer pipe shall be bedded in a crushed stone bench bottom installed to a minimum depth below the pipe of six (6) inches. After the pipe is installed, the trench shall be backfilled with crushed stone to a depth of one-half the pipe diameter for depths of cut of 12 feet or less. For depths of cut greater than 12 feet the pipe shall be backfilled with crushed stone to a height of 6" above the top of the pipe.
2. No. 12 THW copper locator wire shall be placed in the trench, 12 inches above the sewer mains and all sewer service piping.
3. Backfill all trenches and excavation immediately after the pipes are laid therein unless other protection for the pipe line is directed. The backfilling material shall be selected and deposited with special reference to the future safety of the pipes. Solidly tamp clean earth, sand or rock dust about the pipe up to the level of 6 in. above the top of the pipe, and carefully deposit in uniform layers, each layer solidly tamped or rammed with proper tools so as not to disturb or injure the pipe line. Mechanical means may be permitted for backfilling, provided the equipment meets the approval of the Architect. Faithfully ram or tamp the remainder of the backfilling of the trenches in layers of not more than 6 in. in depth with either approved mechanical or hand tamps. Compaction shall conform to the requirements of the EARTHWORK Section.
4. All backfilling material shall be free from rock, trash and debris.

C. Laying Pipe

1. Lay pipe with joints close and even, butting all around, special care being taken that there is no sagging at the hub, and that a true surface is given to the invert throughout the entire length of the sewer.
2. Water in Trenches: Do not use sewers for draining water from ditch. Provide and operate pumps, if necessary, to remove water from trench while pipe is being laid and joints made.

D. Jointing Pipe:

1. In jointing gasket pipe, clean both the bell and the spigot before the gasket is applied. Use the proper size gasket for each size of pipe, and lubricate only with a lubricant recommended by the manufacturer of the pipe. Insert the spigot end in the bell the proper distance, and take care to see that the pipe remains in this position.
2. Clean all joint material that may be left on the inside, and leave the pipe clean and smooth throughout. At every third pipe, fill around immediately after being properly placed and jointed to prevent the moving of joints.
3. Free the interior of the pipe of all dirt and superfluous material of every description, as the work proceeds.

E. Manholes:

1. Manholes shall be precast concrete conforming to ASTM 478. Shape inverts and build of concrete.

**3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing: Perform Required Test as required by Local Authority.

**3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Clean and clear sanitary sewers of materials of all kind.

**END OF SECTION**

SANITARY SEWERS  
02730-2

## SECTION 02810 - SODDING AND TOPSOIL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to work of this section.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Sod:
  - 1. Provide strongly rooted **419 Bermuda Sod**
  - 2. Sod shall be not less than 2 years old and free of weeds and undesirable native grasses.
  - 3. Only provide sod capable of growth and development when planted (viable, not dormant).
  - 4. Provide machine cut sod of a uniform minimum soil thickness of 5/8 inch, plus thickness of top growth and thatch. Sod pieces to be consistent in size and shape.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sodding shall be restricted to those as instructed or recommended by the local Cooperative Extension Agent except when special instructions to the contrary are issued in writing by the Architect.
  - 1. The Contractor shall furnish, in writing to the Architect, those recommendations of the Extension Agent before proceeding with any operations.
  - 2. Grassing also shall comply with State of Alabama Highway Department specifications, latest Edition.
  - 3. Contractor shall water and maintain newly grassed areas until acceptable stand of grass is established and approved by the Architect.
- B. Preparation of Subgrade Soil:
  - 1. The subgrade soil in those areas to be sodded whether shown or not shown on the plans shall be loosened to a minimum depth of 3 inches and graded to remove all ridges and depressions so that it will be, after settlement everywhere parallel to and at the proper level to provide finished grades specified.
  - 2. All stones over 1" in dimension, sticks, rubbish and other extraneous matter shall be removed during this operation.
- C. Topsoil:
  - 1. Contractor shall furnish and spread layer of topsoil over all areas.

Topsoil shall be spread in loose layers to provide finished grades specified and shall have an equal depth of not less than 4" over the site after natural settlement and light rolling.
- D. All areas shall be carefully graded and raked to accurate specified grades and uniform slopes following topsoil spreading. The surface, when finished and settled shall conform to required grades and shall be free from hollows and other inequalities, from stones over 1" in diameter, sticks and other debris, and shall be satisfactory to the Architect.
- E. Initial fertilization of sodded area prior to sodding and following preparation, commercial fertilizer 4-10-10 or 4-12-12 shall be applied on all grass areas at the uniform rate of 20 pounds per 1,000 square feet each.

SODDING AND TOPSOIL  
02810-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

### 3.2 SODDING

- A. Prepare all areas to receive sod.
- B. **The Contractor shall fully sod all graded and disturbed areas, including the Contractor's staging area and all areas disturbed by vehicular construction traffic, whether shown on plans or not.**

### 3.3 TOPSOIL

- A. General:
  - 1. Provide topsoil of natural, friable, fertile, fine loamy, soil possessing the characteristics of representative top soils in the vicinity which produces a heavy growth; free from subsoil, weeds, litter, clods, stiff clay, stones, stumps, roots, trash, toxic substances or any other material which may be harmful to plant growth or hinder planting operations.
  - 2. The topsoil shall not be in a muddy or frozen condition. Topsoil shall be that material stripped and stockpiled, or as required to provide 4" of coverage.
  - 3. The topsoil shall have a pH range of 5.9 to 7.0.
  - 4. Limestone or aluminum sulfate (or acceptable substitute) may be used to adjust the pH of the topsoil to an acceptable level.

**END OF SECTION**

SODDING AND TOPSOIL  
02810-2

## SECTION 03310 – CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Extent of concrete work is shown on drawings.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with provisions of following codes, specifications and standards, except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified:
  - 1. ACL 301 "Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings".
  - 2. ACI 318 "Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete"
  - 3. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute, "Manual of Standard Practice".
- B. Concrete Testing Service: The **Owner** will engage and pay a testing laboratory to perform material evaluation tests.
- C. Materials and installed work may require retesting, as directed by Architect, at anytime during progress of work. Provide free access to material stockpiles and facilities. Retesting of rejected materials and installed work, shall be done at Contractor's expense.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit data for proprietary materials and items, including reinforcement and forming accessories, admixtures, patching compounds, joints systems, curing compounds, dry-shake finish materials and others as requested by Architect.
- B. Shop Drawings Reinforcements: Submit shop drawings for fabrication, bending and placement of concrete reinforcement. Comply with ACI 315 "Manual of Standard Practice for Detailing Reinforced Concrete Structures" showing bar schedules, stirrup spacing, diagrams of bent bars, arrangement of concrete reinforcement.
- C. Material Certificates: Provide materials certificates in lieu of materials laboratory test reports when permitted by Architect. Material certificates shall be signed by manufacturer and Contractor, certifying that each material item complies with, or exceeds, specified requirements.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 FORM MATERIALS

- A. Forms for Exposed Finish Concrete: Unless otherwise indicated, construct formwork for exposed concrete surfaces with plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood faced or other acceptable panel-type surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints and to conform to joint system shown on drawings. Provide form material with sufficient thickness to withstand pressure of newly-placed concrete without bow or deflection.
- B. Use plywood complying with U. S. Product Standard PS-1 "B-B (Concrete Form) Plywood", Class I, Exterior Grade or better, mill-oiled and edge-sealed, with each piece bearing legible inspection trademark.
- C. Forms for Unexposed Finish Concrete: Form concrete surfaces which will be unexposed in finished structure with plywood, lumber, metal, or other acceptable material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two (2) edges and one (1) side for tight fit.

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE  
03310-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- D. Form Coatings: Provide commercial formulation form-coating compounds that will not bond with, stain nor adversely affect concrete surfaces, and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

## **2.2 REINFORCING MATERIALS**

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed, unless otherwise noted.
- B. Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, plain, cold-drawn, steel.
- C. Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 185, welded steel wire fabric.
- D. Supports for Reinforcement: Provide supports for reinforcement including bolsters, chairs, spacers and other devices for spacing, supporting and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire fabric in place. Use wire bar type supports complying with CRSI specifications, unless otherwise acceptable.
  - 1. For slabs-on-grade, use supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.
  - 2. For exposed to view concrete surfaces, where legs of supports are in contact with forms, provide support with legs which are plastic protected (CRSI, Class I) or stainless steel protected (CRSI, Class 3).

## **2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS**

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type 1, unless otherwise acceptable to Architect.
  - 1. Use one brand of cement throughout project, unless otherwise acceptable to Architect.
- B. Normal Weight Aggregate: ASTM C 33, and as herein specified. Provide aggregate from a single source for all concrete.
  - 1. Do not use fine or coarse aggregates containing spalling-causing deleterious substances.
- C. Water: Drinkable.
- D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
  - 1. MANUFACTURERS: The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
    - a. Air-Mix, Evclid Chemical Co.
    - b. Sika-Ai", Sika Corp.
    - c. Darex AEA, W. R. Grace
    - d. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provide such products have been approved, by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.
- E. Water-Reducing, Non-Chloride Accelerator Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type E, and containing not more than 0.1% chloride ions.
  - 1. MANUFACTURERS: The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
    - a. Accelguard 80; Euclid Chemical Company
    - b. Pozzolith High Gally; Master Builders
    - c. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provide such products have been approved, by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.
- F. Water-Reducing, Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D, and contain not more than 0.1% chloride ions.

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE  
03310-2

1. MANUFACTURERS: The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
  - a. Edoco 20006; Edoco Technical Products
  - b. Pozzolith 300-R; Master Builders
  - c. Eucon Retarder 75; Euclid Chemical Company
  - d. Daratard; W. R. Grace
  - e. Plastiment; Sika Chemical Company
  - f. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provide such products have been approved, by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.
- G. Certification: Provide admixture manufacturer's written certification that chloride ion content complies with specified requirements.
- H. Calcium chloride or admixtures containing more than 0.1% chloride ions are not permitted.

## 2.4 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Moisture Barrier: Provide moisture barrier cover over prepared base material where indicated. Use only materials which are resistant to decay when tested in accordance with ASTM E 154, as follows:
  1. Polyethylene sheet not less than 10 mils thick.
- B. Absorptive Cover: Burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz. per sq. yd., complying with AASHTO M 182, Class 2.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: One of the following, complying with ASTM C 171.
  1. Waterproof paper
  2. Polyethylene film.
  3. Polyethylene-coated burlap.
- D. Liquid Membrane Forming Curing Compound: Liquid type membrane forming curing compound complying with ASTM C 309, Type 1-D, Class A unless other type acceptable to Architect. Moisture loss not more than 0.055 gr./sq. cm. when applied at 200 sq. ft./gal. Equal to "Kure-N-Seal" - 30; Sonneborn-Contech
  1. MANUFACTURERS: The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
    - a. Master Builders
    - b. Euclid Chemical Company
    - c. A.C. Horn
    - d. The Burke Company
    - e. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provide such products have been approved, by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.
- E. Bonding Compound: Polyvinyl acetate or acrylic base, re-wettable type.
  1. MANUFACTURERS: The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
    - a. Welcrete; Larsen Products
    - b. EucoWeld; Euclid Chemical Company

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE  
03310-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



- c. Hornweld; A. C. Horn
  - d. Sonocrete; Sonneborn-Contech
  - e. Acrylic Bondcrete; The Burke Company
  - f. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provide such products have been approved, by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.
- F. Epoxy Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two component material suitable for use on dry or damp surfaces. Provide material "Type", "Grade", and "Class" to suit project requirements.
- 1. MANUFACTURERS: The following manufacturers' products have been used establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
    - a. Epoxitite; A. C. Horn
    - b. Sikadur Hi-Mod; Sika Chemical Corporation
    - c. Euco Epoxy 463 or 615; Euclid Chemical Company
    - d. Patch and Bond Epoxy; The Burke Company
    - e. Sure-Poxy; Kaufman Products, Inc.
    - f. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provide such products have been approved, by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.
- G. Subfloor Patching and Leveling: The following manufacturers' products have been used establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
- 1. MANUFACTURERS: The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
    - a. Ardex K-15; Ardex Engineered Cements 400 Ardex Park Drive Aliquippa, PA 15001; (724) 203-5000
    - b. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provide such products have been approved, by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 PROPORTIONING AND DESIGN OF MIXES**

- A. Prepare design mixes for each type and strength of concrete by either laboratory trial batch or field experience methods as specified in ACI 301. If trial batch method used, use an independent testing facility acceptable to Architect for preparing and reporting proposed mix designs. The testing facility shall not be the same as used for field quality control testing unless otherwise acceptable to Architect.
- B. Submit written reports to Architect of each proposed mix for each class of concrete at least 15 days prior to start of work. Do not begin concrete production until mixes have been reviewed by Architect.
- C. Design mixes to provide normal weight concrete as indicated on drawings and schedules.
- D. Adjustment to Concrete Mixes: Mix design adjustments may be requested by Contractor when characteristics of materials, job conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant; at no additional cost to Owner and as accepted by Architect. Laboratory test data for revised mix design and strength results must be submitted to and accepted by Architect before using in work.
- E. Admixtures:
  - 1. Use water-reducing admixture in all concrete for ease of placement and workability.

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE  
03310-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

2. Use non-chloride accelerating admixture in concrete slabs placed at ambient temperatures below 50 degrees F.
  3. Use air-entraining admixture in all concrete, unless otherwise indicated. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having total air content of 6% with a tolerance of plus-or-minus 1-1/2%.
- F. Slump Limits: Proportion and design mixes to result in concrete slump at point of placement as follows:
1. Ramps, slabs and sloping surfaces: 3" to 5".
  2. Reinforced foundation systems: 2" to 5".
  3. Other concrete: 3" to 5".

### **3.2 CONCRETE MIXES**

- A. Ready-Mix Concrete: Comply with requirements of ASTM C 94, and as herein specified.
1. During hot weather, or under conditions contributing to rapid setting of concrete, a shorter mixing time than specified in ASTM C 94 may be required.
  2. When air temperature is between 85 degrees F and 90 degrees, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes, and when air temperature is above 90 degrees F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

### **3.3 FORMS**

- A. Design, erect, support, brace and maintain formwork to support vertical and lateral loads that might be applied until such loads can be supported by concrete structure. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of correct size, shape, alignment, elevation and position.
- B. Design formwork to be readily removable without impact, shock or damage to cast-in-place concrete surfaces and adjacent materials.
- C. Construct forms to sizes, shapes, lines and dimensions shown and to obtain accurate alignment, location, grades, level and plumb work in finished structures. Provide for openings, off-sets, sinkages, keyways, recesses, moldings, rustications, reglets, chamfers, blocking, screeds, bulkheads, anchorages and inserts and other features required in work. Use selected materials to obtain required finishes. Solidly butt joints and provide back-up at joints to prevent leakage of cement paste.
- D. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush plates or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces where slope is too steep to place concrete with bottom forms only. Kerf wood inserts for forming keyways, reglets, recesses and the like, to prevent swelling and for easy removal.
- E. Provide temporary openings where interior area of formwork is inaccessible for cleanout, for inspection before concrete placement, and for placement of concrete. Securely brace temporary openings and set time to forms to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings on forms at inconspicuous locations.
- F. Chamfer exposed corners and edges as indicated, using wood, metal, PVC or rubber chamfer strips fabricated to produce uniform smooth lines and tight edge joints.
- G. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, adjustable-length, removable, or snap-off metal form ties, designed to prevent form deflection, and to prevent spalling concrete surfaces upon removal.
1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide ties so portion remaining within concrete after removal is 1" inside concrete and will not leave holes larger than 1" diameter in concrete surface.
- H. Provisions for Other Trades: Provide openings in concrete formwork to accommodate work of other trades. Determine size and location of openings, recesses and chases from trades providing such items. Accurately place and securely support items built into forms.

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE  
03310-5

- I. **Cleaning and Tightening:** Thoroughly clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt or other debris just before concrete is placed. Retighten forms and bracing after concrete placement is required to eliminate mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.

### **3.4 PLACING REINFORCEMENT**

- A. Comply with Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute's recommended practice for "Placing Reinforcing Bars" for details and methods of reinforcement placement and supports, and as herein specified.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice and other materials which reduce or destroy bond with concrete.
- C. Accurately position, support and secure reinforcement against displacement by formwork, construction or concrete placement operations. Locate and support reinforcing by metal chairs, runners, bolsters, spacers and hangers as required.
- D. Place reinforcement to obtain at least minimum coverages for concrete protection. Arrange, space and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement operations. Set wire ties so ends are directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Install welded wire fabric in as long lengths as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh and lace splices with wire. Offset end laps in adjacent widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.

### **3.5 JOINTS**

- A. **Construction Joints:** Locate and install construction joints as indicated, or if not indicated, locate so as not to impair strength and appearance of the structure, as acceptable to Architect.
  1. Place construction joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints.
- B. **Isolation Joints in Slabs-On-Ground:** Construct isolation joints in slabs-on-ground at points of contact between slabs on ground and vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, and elsewhere as indicated.
  1. Joint filler and sealant materials are specified in Division-7 sections of these specifications.
- C. **Construction Joints in Slabs-On-Ground:** Construct construction joints in slabs-on-ground to form panels of patterns no larger than 600 square feet and as shown and as detailed. An alternative control joint detail may be inserts 1/8" to 1/4" wide x 1/4 of slab depth.
  1. Form contraction joints by inserting premolded plastic, hardboard strip into fresh concrete until top surface of strip is flush with slab surface. Tool slab edges round on each side of insert. After concrete has cured, remove inserts and clean groove of loose debris, fill groove with joint sealant.
  2. Joint sealant material is specified in Division-7 sections of these specifications.

### **3.6 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS**

- A. **General:** Set and build into work anchorage devices and other embedded items required for other work that is attached to, or supported by, cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, diagrams, instructions and directions provided by suppliers of items to be attached thereto.
- B. **Edge Forms and Screed Strips for Slabs:** Set edge forms or bulkheads and intermediate screed strips for slabs to obtain required elevations and contours in finished slab surface.
  1. Provide and secure units sufficiently strong to support types of screed strips by use of strike-off templates or accepted compacting type screeds.

### **3.7 PREPARATION OF FORM SURFACES**

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE  
03310-6

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- A. Clean re-used forms of concrete matrix residue, repair and patch as required to return forms to acceptable surface condition.
- B. Coat contact surfaces of forms with a form-coating compound before reinforcement is placed.
- C. Thin form-coating compounds only with thinning agent of type, and in amount, and under conditions of form-coating compound manufacturer's directions. Do not allow excess form-coating material to accumulate in forms or to come into contact with in-place concrete surfaces against which fresh concrete will be placed. Apply in compliance with manufacturer's instructions.

### **3.8 CONCRETE PLACEMENT**

- A. Replacement Inspection: Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, reinforcing steel, and items to be embedded or cast-in. Notify other crafts to permit installation of their work; cooperate with other trades in setting such work. Moisten wood forms immediately before placing concrete where form coatings are not used.
  - 1. Coordinate the installation of joint materials and moisture barriers with placement of forms and reinforcing steel.
- B. General: Comply with ACI 304 "Recommended Practice for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting and Placing Concrete", and as herein specified.
  - 1. Deposit concrete continuously or in layers of such thickness that no concrete will be placed on concrete which has hardened sufficiently to cause the formation of seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as herein specified. Deposit concrete as nearly as practicable to its final location to avoid segregation.
- C. Placing Concrete in Forms: Deposit concrete in forms in horizontal layers not deeper than 24" and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints. Where placement consists of several layers, place each layer while preceding layer is still plastic to avoid cold joints.
  - 1. Consolidate placed concrete by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand-spading, rodding or tamping. Use equipment and procedures for consolidation of concrete in accordance with ACI recommended practices.
  - 2. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations not farther than visible effectiveness of machine. Place vibrators to rapidly penetrate placed layer at least 6" into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to set. At each insertion limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing segregation of mix.
- D. Placing Concrete Slabs: Deposit and consolidate concrete slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until the placing of a panel or section is completed.
  - 1. Consolidate concrete during placing operations so that concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
  - 2. Bring slab surfaces to correct level with straightedge and strike-off. Use bull floats or darbies to smooth surface, free of humps or hollows. Do not disturb slab surfaces prior to beginning finishing operations.
  - 3. Maintain reinforcing in proper position during concrete placement operations.
- E. Cold Weather Placing: Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength which could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures, in compliance with ACI 306 and as herein specified.
  - 1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 degrees F uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 degrees F. and not more than 80 degrees F at point of placement.

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE  
03310-7

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
3. Do not place concrete when air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 35 °F. Do not use calcium chloride, salt and other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators, unless otherwise accepted in mix designs.

F. Hot Weather Placing:

1. When hot weather conditions exist that would seriously impair quality and strength of concrete, place concrete in compliance with ACE 305 and as herein specified.
2. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature at time of placement below 90 degrees F. Mixing water may be chilled, or chopped ice may be used to control temperature provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Use of liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
3. Cover reinforcing steel with water-soaked burlap if it becomes too hot, so that steel temperature will not exceed the ambient air temperature immediately before embedment in concrete.
4. Fog spray forms, reinforcing steel and subgrade just before concrete is placed.
5. Use water-reducing retarding admixture (Type D) when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placing conditions.

### 3.9 FINISH OF FORMED SURFACES

- A. Rough Form Finish: For formed concrete surfaces not exposed-to-view in the finish work or by other construction, unless otherwise indicated. This is the concrete surface having texture imparted by form facing material used, with tie holes and defective areas repaired and patched and fins and other projections exceeding 1/4" in height rubbed down or chipped off.
- B. Smooth Form Finish: For formed concrete surfaces or that are to be covered with a coating material applied directly to concrete, or a covering material applied directly to concrete such as waterproofing, dampproofing. This is as-cast concrete surface obtained with selected form facing material, arranged orderly and symmetrically with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch defective areas with fins or other projections completely removed and smoothed.
- C. Smooth Rubbed Finish: For formed concrete surfaces exposed to view provide smooth rubbed finish, not later than one day after form removal.
  1. Moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or other abrasive until a uniform color and texture is produced. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
- D. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces occurring adjacent to formed surfaces, strike-off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.10 MONOLITHIC SLAB FINISHES

- A. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, measured within 24 hours according to ASTM E 1155/E 1155M for randomly trafficked floor surfaces:
  1. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 38: and levelness, F(L) 25: with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 19: levelness, F(L) 13: for slabs on grade.
- B. Scratch Finish: Apply scratch finish to monolithic slab surfaces that are to receive concrete floor topping or mortar setting beds for tile, portland cement terrazzo and other bonded applied cementitious finish flooring material, and as otherwise indicated.
- C. Slope surface uniformly to drains where required. After leveling, roughen surfaces before final set, with stiff brushes, brooms or rakes.

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE  
03310-8

- D. Float Finish: Apply float finish to monolithic slab surfaces to receive trowel finish and other finishes as hereinafter specified, and slab surfaces which are to be covered with membrane or elastic waterproofing membrane or elastic roofing, or sand-bend terrazzo, and as otherwise indicated.
  - 1. After screeding consolidating, and leveling concrete slabs, do not work surface until ready for floating. Begin floating when surface water has disappeared or when concrete has stiffened sufficiently to permit operation of power-driven floats, or both. Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand-floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Uniformly slope surfaces to drains. Immediately after leveling, refloat surface to a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
- E. Trowel Finish: Apply trowel finish to monolithic slab surfaces to be exposed-to-view and slab surfaces to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile, paint or other thin film finish coating system.
  - 1. After floating, begin first trowel finish operation using a power-driven trowel. Begin final troweling when surface produces a ringing sound as trowel is moved over surface. Consolidate concrete surface by final hand-troweling operation, free of trowel marks, uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth surface defects which would telegraph through applied floor covering system.
- F. Non-Slip Broom Finish: Apply non-slip broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps and ramps and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 1. Immediately after trowel finishing, slightly roughen concrete surface by brooming with fiber bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

### **3.11 CONCRETE CURING AND PROTECTION**

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
  - 1. Start initial curing as soon as free water has disappeared from concrete surface after placing and finishing. Keep continuously moist for not less than 7 days.
  - 2. Begin final curing procedures immediately following initial curing and before concrete has dried. Continue final curing for at least seven (7) days in accordance with ACI 301 procedures. Avoid rapid drying at end of final curing period.
- B. Curing Methods: Perform curing of concrete by curing and sealing compound, by moist curing, by moisture-retaining cover curing, and by combinations thereof, as herein specified.
  - 1. Provide moisture curing by one of the following methods or by a combination of the following methods:
    - a. Keep concrete surface continuously wet by covering with water.
    - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
    - c. Covering concrete surface with specified absorptive cover, thoroughly saturating cover with water and keeping continuously wet. Place absorptive cover to provide coverage of concrete surfaces and edges, with 4" lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
- C. Provide moisture-cover curing as follows:
  - 1. Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width with sides and ends lapped at least 3" and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
- D. Provide curing and sealing compound to interior slabs with resilient flooring, carpet over cushion, or left exposed; and to exterior slabs, walks, and curbs as follows:

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE  
03310-9

1. Apply specified curing and sealing compound to concrete slabs as soon as final finishing operations are complete (within two hours). Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power-spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's directions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three (3) hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
- E. Do not use membrane curing compounds on surface which are to be covered with coating material applied directly to concrete, liquid floor hardener, waterproofing, damp-proofing, membrane roofing, flooring (such as ceramic or quarry tile, glue-down carpet), painting and other coatings and finish materials, unless otherwise acceptable to Architect.
- F. Curing Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, by moist curing with forms in place for full curing period or until forms are removed. If forms are removed, continue curing by methods specified above, as applicable.
- G. Curing Unformed Surfaces: Cure unformed surfaces, such as slabs, floor topping, and other flat surfaces by application of appropriate curing method.
- H. Final cure concrete surfaces to receive liquid floor hardener or finish flooring by use of moisture-retaining cover, unless otherwise directed.
- I. Sealer and Dust-proofer: Apply a second coat of specified curing and sealing compound only to surfaces given a first coat.

### **3.12 REMOVAL OF FORMS**

- A. Formwork not supporting weight of concrete, such as sides of walls, and similar parts of the work, may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 degrees F for twenty-four (24) hours after placing concrete, provided concrete is sufficiently hard to not be damaged by form removal operations, and provided cutting and protection operations are maintained.
- B. Formwork supporting weight of concrete, may not be removed in less than fourteen (14) days and until concrete has attained design minimum compressive strength of in place concrete by testing field-cured specimens representative of concrete location in members.
- C. Form facing material may be removed four (4) days after placement, only if shores and other vertical supports have been arranged to permit removal of form facing material without loosening or disturbing shores and supports.

### **3.13 RE-USE OF FORMS**

- A. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be re-used in work. Split, frayed, delaminated or otherwise damaged form facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form coating compound as specified for new formwork.
- B. When forms are extended for successive concrete placement, thoroughly clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten forms to close joints. Align and secure joint to avoid offsets. Do not use "patched" forms for exposed concrete surfaces, except as acceptable to Architect.

### **3.14 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS**

- A. Filling-In: Fill-in holes and openings left in concrete structures for passage of work by other trades, unless otherwise shown or directed, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place and cure concrete as herein specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling shown or required to complete work.
- B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections and terminations slightly rounded.
- C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations, as shown on drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment to template at correct elevations, complying with certified diagrams or templates of manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE  
03310-10

- D. Reinforced Masonry: Provide concrete grout for reinforced masonry, masonry lintels and bond beams where indicated on drawings and as scheduled. Maintain accurate location of reinforcing steel during concrete placement.

### 3.15 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Patching Defective Areas: Repair and patch defective areas with cement mortar immediately after removal of forms when acceptable to Architect.
1. Cut out honeycomb, rock pockets, voids over 1/4" in any dimension, and holes left by tie rods and bolts, down to solid concrete but, in no case to a depth of less than 1". Make edges of cuts perpendicular to the concrete surface. Thoroughly clean, dampen with water and brush-coat the area to be patched with specified bonding agent. Place patching mortar after bonding compound has dried.
  2. For exposed to view surfaces, blend white portland cement and standard portland cement so that when dry, patching mortar will match color surrounding. Provide test areas at inconspicuous location to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike-off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
- B. Repair of Formed Surfaces: Remove and replace concrete having defective surfaces if defects cannot be repaired to satisfaction of Architect. Surface defects, as such, include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycomb, rock pockets; fins and other projections on surface; and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning. Flush out form tie holes, fill with dry pack mortar, or precast cement cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
1. Repair concealed formed surfaces, where possible, that contain defects that affect the durability of concrete. If defects cannot be repaired, remove and replace concrete.
- C. Repair of Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as monolithic slabs, for smoothness and verify surface plane to tolerances specified for each surface and finish. Correct low and high areas as herein specified. Test unformed surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope, in addition to smoothness using a template having required slope.
1. Repair finished unformed surfaces that contain defects which affect durability of concrete. Surface defects, as such, include crazing, cracks in excess of 0.01" wide or which penetrate to reinforcement or completely through non-reinforced sections regardless of width, spalling, popouts, honeycomb, rock pockets and other objectionable conditions.
  2. Correct high areas in unformed surfaces by grinding, after concrete has cured at least 14 days.
  3. Correct low areas in unformed surfaces during, or immediately after, completion of surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with fresh concrete. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete. Proprietary patching compounds may be used when acceptable to Architect.
  4. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes not exceeding 1" diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas to sound concrete with clean, square cuts and exposed reinforcing steel with at least 3/4" clearance all around.
  5. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding compound. Mix patching concrete of same materials to provide concrete of same type or class as original concrete. Place, compact and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
  6. Repair isolated random cracks and single holes not over 1" in diameter by dry-pack method. Groove top of cracks and cut-out holes to sound concrete and clean of dust, dirt and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding compound. Mix dry-pack, consisting of one part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 mesh sieve, using only enough water as required for handling and placing. Place dry pack after bonding compound has dried. Compact dry-pack mixture in place and finish to match

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE  
03310-11



adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for not less than seventy-two (72) hours.

7. Perform structural repairs with prior approval of Architect for method and procedure, using specified epoxy adhesive and mortar.
8. Repair methods not specified above may be used, subject to acceptance of Architect.

### **3.16 QUALITY CONTROL TESTING DURING CONSTRUCTION**

- A. The Owner will employ and pay for a testing laboratory to perform tests and to submit test reports. The Contractor shall notify testing agency 24 hours in advance of requirements.
- B. Sampling and testing for quality control during placement of concrete may include the following, as directed by Architect.
- C. The Owner shall maintain equipment on site to cast cylinders, perform slump and air tests, and field cure specimens. Should the project testing agency be absent from the site, the Contractor will be responsible for performing the field tests below.
- D. Sampling Fresh Concrete: ASTM C 172, except as modified for slump to comply with ASTM C 94.
  1. Slump: ASTM C 143; one test at point of discharge for each day's pour of each type of concrete; additional tests when concrete consistency seems to have changed.
  2. Concrete Temperature: Test hourly when air temperature is 40 degrees F. and below, and when 80 degrees F. and above; and each time a set of compression test specimens made.
  3. Compression Test Specimen: ASTM C 31; one set of four (4) standard cylinders for each compressive strength test, unless otherwise directed. Mold and store cylinders for laboratory cured test specimens except when field-cure test specimens are required.
- E. Compressive Strength Tests: ASTM C 39; one set for each day's pour plus additional sets for each 50 cu. yds. over and above the first 25 cu. yds. of each concrete class placed in any one day; one specimen tested at seven (7) days, two specimen tested at twenty-eight (28) days, and one specimen retained in reserve for later testing if required. Minimum compressive strength of concrete shall be 3,000 psi at 28 days unless otherwise indicated.
  1. When frequency of testing will provide less than five (5) strength tests for a given class of concrete, conduct testing from at least five (5) randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five (5) are used.
  2. When total quantity of a given class of concrete is less than 50 cu. yds., strength test may be waived by Architect if, in his judgment, adequate evidence of satisfactory strength is provided.
  3. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85% of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, evaluate current operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing the in-place concrete.
  4. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect and Contractor within twenty-four (24) hours that tests are made. Reports of compressive strength tests shall contain the project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing service, concrete type and class, location of concrete batch in structure, design compressive strength at twenty-eight (28) days, concrete mix proportions and materials; compressive breaking strength and type of break for both 7-day tests and 28-day tests.
- F. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other non- destructive device may be permitted but shall not be used as the sole basis for acceptance or rejection.
- G. Additional Tests: The testing service will make additional tests of in-place concrete when test results indicate specified concrete strengths and other characteristics have not been attained in the structure, as directed by Architect. Testing service may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42, or by other methods as directed.

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE  
03310-12

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

1. Contractor shall pay for such tests conducted, and any other additional testing as may be required, when unacceptable concrete is verified.

**END OF SECTION**

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE  
03310-13

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## **SECTION 039500 - CONCRETE SEALER**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Exposed concrete slabs where concrete sealer is indicated.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: Submit four samples of concrete sealer over concrete, 6 by 6 inches sample.
- C. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that concrete sealer comply with requirements.
- D. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for assemblies.
- F. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.
- G. Maintenance data.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer with minimum five years documented experience.

#### **1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Limitations: Proceed with application only when the following existing substrate conditions permit sealer to be applied according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements:
  - 1. Ambient temperature is above 40 deg F.
  - 2. Concrete surfaces and mortar have cured for more than 28 days.

#### **1.5 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer and Applicator agree to repair or replace materials that fail to maintain water repellency within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 CONCRETE SEALER**

- A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Clear, chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or silicate materials and proprietary components; odorless; colorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces.
  - 1. Products:

039500 - 1

CONCRETE SEALER

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of  
Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- a. Curecrete Distribution Inc.; Ashford Formula.
  - b. Burke by Edoco; Titan Hard.
  - c. ChemMasters; Chemisil Plus.
  - d. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Euco Diamond Hard.
2. Flammability: Self extinguishing.
  3. Finish: Non slip finish. Coefficient of friction: 0.6 wet, 0.8 dry.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean substrate of substances that might interfere with penetration or performance of concrete sealer.
  1. Concrete: Remove oil, curing compounds, laitance, and other substances that could prevent adhesion or penetration of concrete sealer.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 APPLICATION**

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect the substrate before application of concrete sealer and to instruct Applicator on the product and application method to be used.
- B. Concrete Sealer: Prepare, apply, and finish penetrating liquid floor treatment according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Do not apply to concrete that is less than number of days' old recommended by sealer manufacturer in writing.
  2. Apply liquid until surface is saturated, scrubbing into surface until a gel forms; rewet; and repeat brooming or scrubbing. Rinse with water; remove excess material until surface is dry. Apply a second coat in a similar manner if surface is rough or porous.
- C. Apply on horizontal surfaces of indicated interior exposed concrete slabs not receiving other finishes.

### **3.3 CLEANING**

- A. Immediately clean concrete sealer from adjoining surfaces and surfaces soiled or damaged by concrete sealer application as work progresses. Repair damage caused by concrete sealer application. Comply with manufacturer's written cleaning instructions.

## **END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 04200 - UNIT MASONRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Extent of each type of masonry work is indicated on drawings and schedule.
- B. Types of masonry work required include.
  - 1. Concrete unit masonry.
  - 2. Brick masonry.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire Performance Characteristics: Where indicated, provide materials and construction which are identical to those of assemblies whose fire endurance has been determined by testing in compliance with ASTM E 119 by a recognized testing and inspecting organization or by another means, as acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.
- B. Single Source Responsibility for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from one manufacturer for each different product required for each continuous surface or visually related surfaces.
- C. Single Source Responsibility for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from one manufacturer for each cementitious component and from one source and producer for each aggregate.
- D. Samples: Submit the following samples:
  - 1. Unit masonry samples for each type of exposed masonry unit required; include in each set the full range of exposed color and texture to be expected in completed work.
  - 2. Include size variation data verifying that actual range of sizes for brick falls within ASTM C652 dimension tolerances for brick where modular dimensioning is indicated. The grade shall be SW and the type HBS.
- E. Field Constructed Mock-Up Panel: Prepare mock-up panel for the following types of masonry. Purpose of mock-up is further verification of selections made for color and finish under sample submittals and establishing standard of quality for aesthetic effects expected in completed work. Build mock-up panel to comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Locate mock-up panel on site where directed by the Architect.
  - 2. Build mock-up panel of typical exterior masonry wall, approximately 4'-0" long by 4'-0" high, showing all typical components, connections, attachments to building structure and methods of installation.
  - 3. Retain mock-up panel during construction as standard for judging completed masonry work. When directed, demolish mock-up panel and remove from site.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver masonry materials to project in undamaged condition.
- B. Store and handle masonry units to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, corrosion or other causes. Store masonry units off the ground.
- C. Store cementitious materials off the ground, under cover and in dry location.

UNIT MASONRY  
04200-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- D. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained.
- E. Store masonry accessories including metal items to prevent deterioration by corrosion and accumulation of dirt.

## **1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Protection of Work: During erection, cover top of walls with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed structures when work is not in progress.
- B. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides and hold cover securely in place.
- C. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loading for at least 24 hours after building masonry walls or columns.
- D. Staining: Prevent grout or mortar or soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Remove immediately grout or mortar in contact with such masonry.
- E. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and mortar splatter by means of coverings spread on ground and over wall surface.
- F. Protect sills, ledges and projections from droppings of mortar.
- G. Environmental Protection:
  - 1. Maintain air temperature and materials to a minimum of 40 degrees F and a maximum of 90 degrees F prior to and during masonry work
  - 2. Do not lay masonry units which are wet or frozen.
  - 3. Remove masonry damaged by freezing conditions.
- H. For clay masonry units with initial rates of absorption (suction) which require them to be wetted before laying, comply with the following requirements.
  - 1. For units with surface temperatures above 32°F wet with water heated to above 70°F.
  - 2. For units with surface temperatures below 32°F wet with water heated to above 130°F.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS**

- A. General: Comply with referenced standards and other requirements indicated below applicable to each form of concrete masonry unit required.
  - 1. Provide special shapes where required for lintels, corners, jambs, sash, control joints, headers, bonding and other special conditions.
  - 2. Provide bullnose units for outside corners, except where indicated as square-edged.
- B. Concrete Block: Provide units complying with characteristics indicated below for Grade, Type, face size, exposed face and under each form of block included, for weight classification.
  - 1. Grade N
  - 2. Size: Manufacturer's standard units with nominal face dimensions of 16" long x 8" high x thickness indicated.
  - 3. Type I: moisture-controlled units.
  - 4. Exposed Faces: Manufacturer's standard color and texture, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 5. Hollow Loadbearing Block: ASTM C 90 and as follows:
    - a. Weight Classification: Lightweight
  - 6. All CMU sills shall be bullnose concrete block, unless another material is indicated on the drawings. If the sills are indicated to receive another material (ie: Solid Surface fabrication,

UNIT MASONRY  
04200-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

wood, etc.) placed on top of the CMU sill, the CMU sill shall be straight edged concrete block units.

## 2.2 BRICK MADE FROM CLAY OR SHALE

- A. MANUFACTURERS: The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
  - 1. ACME Brick Company, Montgomery, AL
  - 2. Boral Bricks, Phenix City, AL
  - 3. Henry Brick Company, Selma, AL
  - 4. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.
- B. General: Comply with referenced standards and other requirements indicated below applicable to each form of brick required.
- C. Provide special molded shapes where indicated and for application requiring brick of form, size and finish on exposed surfaces which cannot be produced from standard brick sizes by sawing.
- D. For sills, caps and similar applications resulting in exposure of brick surfaces which otherwise would be concealed from view, provide uncured or unfroged units with all exposed surfaces finished.
- E. Facing Brick: Submit samples for approval of equals prior to bids. Eased edge brick shall not be allowed.
- F. BRICK ALLOWANCES
  - 1. *Face Brick* shall have a value of **\$600.00 dollars per thousand** (Allowances shall be for material only, based on actual number of bricks purchased for the project. Installation, profit, overhead, shipping and taxes shall be included in the Contractors Bid Proposal). If Architect chooses brick of lesser value after Bid Process, Contractor shall issue a deductive Change Order for the difference.
  - 2. *Accent Brick* shall have a value of **\$600.00 dollars per thousand** (Allowances shall be for material only, based on actual number of bricks purchased for the project. Installation, profit, overhead, shipping and taxes shall be included in the Contractors Bid Proposal). If Architect chooses brick of lesser value after Bid Process, Contractor shall issue a deductive Change Order for the difference.

## 2.3 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. MANUFACTURERS: The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
  - 1. Atlas
  - 2. Citadel
  - 3. Lone Star
  - 4. Magnolia
  - 5. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.
- B. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91.
  - 1. Type S for CMU walls
  - 2. Type N for Exterior Face and Accent brick – color pigment.
- C. ALLOWANCES:

UNIT MASONRY  
04200-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

1. *Face and Accent Brick* to have a value of **\$26.00 dollars per bag**. (Allowances shall be for material only, based on actual number of bags purchased for the project. Installation, profit, overhead, shipping and taxes shall be included in the Contractors Bid Proposal). If Architect chooses mortar of lesser value after Bid Process, Contractor shall issue a deductive Change Order for the difference.
  2. *Architectural Stone Veneer* to have a value of **\$26.00 dollars per bag**. (Allowances shall be for material only, based on actual number of bags purchased for the project. Installation, profit, overhead, shipping and taxes shall be included in the Contractors Bid Proposal). If Architect chooses mortar of lesser value after Bid Process, Contractor shall issue a deductive Change Order for the difference.
- D. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- E. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144, except for joints less than 1/4" use aggregate graded with 100% passing the No. 16 sieve.
- F. Water: Clean and potable.

## **2.4 JOINT REINFORCEMENT, TIES AND ANCHORING DEVICES**

- A. MANUFACTURERS: The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
1. Dur-O-Wall, Inc.
  2. Heckman Building Products, Inc.
  3. Masonry Reinforcing Corp. of America.
  4. National Wire Products Corp.
  5. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements indicated below for basic materials and with requirements indicated under each form of joint reinforcement, tie and anchor for size and other characteristics.
- C. Use individual galvanized steel metal ties installed in horizontal joints to bond wythes together **only** where wood or metal stud backup occurs. Provide ties as shown, but not less than one metal tie for 4 sq. ft. of wall area spaced not to exceed 24" o.c. horizontally and vertically. Stagger ties in alternate courses. Provide additional ties within 1'-0" of all openings and space not more than 3'-0" apart around perimeter of openings. At intersecting and abutting walls, provide ties at no more than 24" o.c. vertically.
- D. Hot-Dip Galvanized Steel Wire: ASTM A 82 for uncoated wire and with ASTM A 123, Class B-2 (1.5 oz. per sq. ft. of wire surface) for zinc coating applied after prefabrication into units.
- E. Application: Use where indicated.
- F. Joint Reinforcement: Provide truss-type, welded-wire units prefabricated with deformed continuous side rods and plain cross rods into straight lengths of not less than 10', with prefabricated corner and tee units, and complying with requirements indicated below:
1. Width: Fabricate joint reinforcement in units with widths of approximately 2" less than nominal width of walls and partitions as required to provide mortar coverage of not less than 5/8" on joint faces exposed to exterior and 1/2" else- where.

## **2.5 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS**

- A. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing, where flashing is exposed or partly exposed and where indicated, complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and as follows:
1. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections 96 inches long minimum, but not exceeding 12 feet.
  2. Provide splice plates at joints of formed, smooth metal flashing.

UNIT MASONRY  
04200-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



3. Fabricate through-wall metal flashing embedded in masonry from, with ribs at 3-inch intervals along length of flashing to provide an integral mortar bond.
  4. Fabricate through-wall flashing with snaplock receiver on exterior face where indicated to receive counterflashing.
  5. Fabricate through-wall flashing with drip edge where indicated. Fabricate by extending flashing 1/2 inch out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees.
  6. Fabricate through-wall flashing with sealant stop unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate by bending metal back on itself 3/4 inch at exterior face of wall and down into joint 3/8 inch to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.
  7. Fabricate metal drip edges and sealant stops for ribbed metal flashing from plain metal flashing of same metal as ribbed flashing and extending at least 3 inches into wall with hemmed inner edge to receive ribbed flashing and form a hooked seam. Form hem on upper surface of metal so that completed seam will shed water.
  8. Metal Drip Edges: Fabricate from stainless steel. Extend at least 3 inches into wall and 1/2 inch out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees.
  9. Metal Flashing Terminations: Fabricate from stainless steel. Extend at least 3 inches into wall and out to exterior face of wall. At exterior face of wall, bend metal back on itself for 3/4 inch and down into joint 3/8 inch to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.
  10. Metal Expansion-Joint Strips: Fabricate from stainless steel to shapes indicated.
- B. Flexible Flashing: For flashing not exposed to the exterior, use one of the following, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Elastomeric Thermoplastic Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a polyester-reinforced ethylene interpolymer alloy as follows:
    - a. Monolithic Sheet: Elastomeric thermoplastic flashing, 0.040 inch thick.
    - b. Self-Adhesive Sheet: Elastomeric thermoplastic flashing, 0.025 inch thick, with a 0.015-inch thick coating of rubberized-asphalt adhesive.
    - c. Self-Adhesive Sheet with Drip Edge: Elastomeric thermoplastic flashing, 0.025 inch thick, with a 0.015-inch thick coating of rubberized-asphalt adhesive. Where flashing extends to face of masonry, rubberized-asphalt coating is held back approximately 1-1/2 inches from edge.
    - d. Accessories: Provide preformed corners, end dams, other special shapes, and seaming materials produced by flashing manufacturer.
  2. EPDM Flashing: Sheet flashing product made from ethylene-propylene-dieneterpolymer, complying with ASTM D 4637, 0.040 inch thick.
- C. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.
- D. MANUFACTURERS: The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship, and function:
1. Vinyl Sheet Flashing: (Thickness: 20 mils)
    - a. Vi-Seal Plastic Flashing; Afco Products, Inc.
    - b. BFG Vinyl Water Barrier; B.F. Goodrich Co.
    - c. Nuflex; Sandell Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - d. Wascosea"; York Manufacturing, Inc.

UNIT MASONRY  
04200-5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- e. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.

## **2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES**

- A. **See drawings for locations of all required control joints.**
- B. Non-Metallic Expansion Joint Strips: Pre-molded, flexible cellular neoprene rubber filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade RE41E1, capable of compression up to 35%, of width and thickness indicated.
- C. Premolded Control Joint Strips: Material as indicated below designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.
  - 1. Polyvinyl chloride complying with ASTM D 2287, General Purpose Grade, Designation PVC-63506.
- D. Bond Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).
- E. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mortar Net Solutions; Mortar Net with Insect Barrier or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Advanced Building Products Inc.
    - b. Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
    - c. Wire-Bond.
  - 2. Configuration: Provide one of the following:
    - a. Strips, full depth of cavity and 10 inches (250 mm) high, with dovetail-shaped notches 7 inches (175 mm) deep that prevent clogging with mortar droppings.

## **2.7 MASONRY CLEANERS**

- A. Job-Mixed Detergent Solution: Solution of trisodium phosphate (1/2 cup dry measure) and laundry detergent (1/2 cup dry measure) dissolved in one gallon of water.

## **2.8 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES**

- A. General: Do not add admixtures including air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water repellent agents, anti-freeze compounds or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
- B. Mixing: Combine and thoroughly mix cementitious, water and aggregates in a mechanical batch mixer; comply with referenced ASTM standards for mixing time and water content.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, for types of mortar required, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. For Exterior Brick, use Type N mortar, equal to Flamingo, Blue Circle or Lehigh.
  - 2. For Other Masonry Units use Type S mortar without coloring pigment.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Wetting Clay Brick: Wet brick made from clay or shale which have ASTM C 67 initial rates of absorption (suction) of more than 30 grams per 30 sq. in. per minute. Use wetting methods which ensure each clay masonry unit being nearly saturated but surface dry when laid.

UNIT MASONRY  
04200-6

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- B. Do not wet concrete masonry units.
- C. Cleaning Reinforcing: Before placing, remove loose rust, ice and other coatings from reinforcing.
- D. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls, floors and other masonry construction to the full thickness shown. Build single wythe walls (if any) to the actual thickness of the masonry units, using units of nominal thickness indicated.
- E. Build chases and recesses as shown or required for the work of other trades. Provide not less than 8" of masonry between chase or recess and jamb of openings, and between adjacent chases and recesses.
- F. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completion of masonry work. After installation of equipment, complete masonry work to match work immediately adjacent to the opening.
- G. Cut masonry units using motor-driven saws to provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Cut units as required to provide continuous pattern and to fit adjoining work. Use full-size units without cutting where possible.
  - 1. Use wet cutting saws to cut concrete masonry units.

### 3.2 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Layout walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint widths and to accurately locate openings, movement-type joints, returns and offsets. Avoid the use of less-than-half-size units at corners, jambs and wherever possible at other locations.
- B. Coursing and Bonding:
  - 1. **All CMU shall be Running Bond.**
- C. Stopping and Resuming Work: Rack back 1/2-unit length in each course; do not tooth. Clean exposed surfaces of set masonry, wet units lightly (if required) and remove loose masonry units and mortar prior to laying fresh masonry.
- D. Built-in Work: As the work progresses, build-in items specified under this and other sections of these specifications. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
  - 1. Fill space between hollow metal frames and masonry solidly with mortar, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.3 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not slush head joints.
- B. Lay hollow concrete masonry units with full mortar coverage on horizontal and vertical face shells. Bed webs in mortar in starting course on footings and in all courses of piers, columns and pilasters, and where adjacent to cells or cavities to be reinforced or filled with concrete or grout. For starting course on footings where cells are not grouted, spread out full mortar bed including areas under cells.
- C. Maintain joint width shown, except for minor variations required to maintain bond alignment. If not shown, lay walls with 3/8" joints.
- D. Cut joints flush for masonry walls which are to be concealed or to be covered by other materials, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Tool all exposed joints, except where otherwise indicated, slightly concave using a jointer larger than joint thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Remove masonry units disturbed after laying; clean and reset in fresh mortar. Do not pound corners or jambs to shift adjacent stretcher units which have been set in position. If adjustments are required, remove units, clean off mortar and reset in fresh mortar.

### 3.4 STRUCTURAL BONDING OF MULTI-WYTHER MASONRY

UNIT MASONRY  
04200-7

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- A. Use continuous horizontal joint reinforcement installed in horizontal mortar joints for bond tie between wythes. Install at not more than 16" o.c. vertically.
- B. Corners: Provide interlocking masonry unit bond in each course at corners, unless otherwise shown.
  - 1. For horizontally reinforced masonry, provide continuity at corners with prefabricated "L" units, in addition to masonry bonding.
- C. Intersecting and Abutting Walls: Unless vertical expansion or control joints are shown at juncture, provide same type of bonding specified for structural bonding between wythes and space as shown below:
  - 1. At juncture of interior partitions and exterior walls, rake and caulk vertical joint.
  - 2. Provide metal ties as shown below.
  - 3. Provide individual metal ties at not more than 16" o.c. vertically.
  - 4. Provide continuity with horizontal joint reinforcement using prefabricated "T" units.
- D. Intersecting Load-bearing Walls: If carried up separately, block or tooth vertical joint with 8" maximum offsets and provide rigid steel anchors spaced not more than 4'-0" o.c. vertically, or omit blocking and provide rigid steel anchors at not more than 2'-0" o.c. vertically. Form anchors of galvanized steel not less than 1-1/2" x 1/4" x 2'-0" long with ends turned up not less than 2" or with cross-pins. If used with hollow masonry units, embed ends in mortar-filled cores.
- E. Non-bearing Interior Partitions: Build full height of story to underside of roof structure above, unless otherwise shown.

### **3.5 CAVITY WALLS**

- A. Keep cavity clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Strike joints facing cavity flush.
- B. Tie exterior wythe to new back-up with continuous horizontal joint reinforcing, installed in mortar joints at not more than 16" o.c. vertically.
- C. Provide weep holes (Open Head Joints) in exterior wythe of cavity wall located as directed on the drawings, spaced 32" o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

### **3.6 CAVITY WALL INSULATION**

- A. On units of plastic insulation, install small pads of adhesive spaced approximately 1'-0" o.c. both ways on inside face. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other confining obstructions in cavity, with edges butted tightly both ways. Press units firmly against inside wythe of masonry or other construction as shown.
  - 1. Fill all cracks and open gaps in insulation with crack sealer compatible with insulation and masonry.

### **3.7 HORIZONTAL JOINT REINFORCEMENT**

- A. General: Provide continuous horizontal joint reinforcement as indicated. Install longitudinal side rods in mortar for their entire length with a minimum cover of 5/8" on exterior side of walls, 1/2" elsewhere. Lap reinforcing a minimum of 6".
- B. Cut or interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Reinforce walls with continuous horizontal joint reinforcing unless specifically noted to be omitted.
- D. Reinforce masonry openings greater than 1'-0" wide, with horizontal joint reinforcement placed in 2 horizontal joints approximately 8" apart, immediately above the lintel and immediately below the

UNIT MASONRY  
04200-8

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

sill. Extend reinforcement a minimum of 2'-0" beyond jambs of the opening except at control joints.

1. In addition to wall reinforcement, provide additional reinforcement at openings as required to comply with the above.

### **3.8 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS**

- A. General: Provide vertical and horizontal expansion, control and isolation joints in masonry where shown. Build-in related items as the masonry work progresses.

### **3.9 LINTELS**

- A. Install steel lintels where indicated.
- B. Provide masonry lintels where shown and wherever openings of more than 1'-0" for brick size units and 2'-0" for block size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels. Provide formed-in-place masonry lintels. Temporarily support formed-in-place lintels.
- C. Provide minimum bearing of 8" at each jamb, unless otherwise indicated.

### **3.10 FLASHING OF MASONRY WORK**

- A. General: Provide concealed flashing in masonry work at, or above shelf angles, lintels, ledges and other obstructions to the down-ward flow of water in the wall so as to divert such water to the exterior. Prepare masonry surfaces smooth and free from projections which could puncture flashing. Place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Seal penetrations in flashing with mastic before covering with mortar. Extend flashings through exterior face of masonry and turn down to form drip.
- B. Extend flashing the full length of lintels and shelf angles and minimum of 4" into masonry each end. Extend flashing from exterior face of outer wythe of masonry, through the outer wythe, turned up a minimum of 4", and through the inner wythe to within 1/2" of the interior face of the wall in exposed work. Where interior surface of inner wythe is concealed by furring, carry flashing completely through the inner wythe and turn up approximately 2". At heads and sills turn up ends not less than 2" to form a pan.
- C. Interlock end joints of deformed metal flashings by over-lapping deformations not less than 1-1/2" and seal lap with elastic sealant.
- D. Install flashing to comply with manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Provide weep holes (open head joints) in the head joints of the first course of masonry immediately above concealed flashings. Space weep holes 32" o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

### **3.11 REPAIR, POINTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Remove and replace masonry units which are loose, chipped, broken, stained or otherwise damaged, or if units do not match adjoining units as intended. Provide new units to match adjoining units and install in fresh mortar or grout, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge any voids or holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point- up all joints including corners, openings and adjacent work to provide a neat, uniform appearance, prepared for application of sealants.
- C. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean masonry as follows:
  1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and non-metallic scrape hoes or chisels.
  2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave 1/2 panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
  3. Protect adjacent non-masonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent, polyethylene film or waterproof masking tape.

UNIT MASONRY  
04200-9

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

4. Saturate wall surfaces with water prior to application of cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing thoroughly with clean water.
5. Use bucket and brush hand cleaning method described in BIA "Technical Note No. 10 Revised" to clean brick masonry made from clay or shale, except use masonry cleaner indicated below.
  - a. Detergent
6. Clean concrete unit masonry to comply with masonry manufacturer's directions and applicable NCMA "Tek" bulletins.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 05272 – ALUMINUM HANDRAILS AND RAILINGS

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Aluminum handrails and railings.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 5 Section “Pipe, Tube and Malleable Iron Handrails and Railings” For handrails and railings fabricated from steel pipe and tube components.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: In engineering handrails and railings to withstand structural loads indicated, determine allowable design working stresses of materials based on the following:
  - 1. Aluminum: AA 30, “Specification for Aluminum Structures.”
  - 2. Cold-Formed Structural Steel: AISI SG-673, Part I, “Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members.”
  - 3. For fully tempered glass in glass-supported handrails and railings, use a safety factor of 3 applied to the applicable modulus of rupture listed in “Mechanical Properties” in AAMA Aluminum Curtain Wall Series No. 12, “Structural Properties of Glass.”
- B. Structural Performance of Handrails and Railings. Provide handrails and railings capable of withstanding the following structural loads without exceeding allowable design working stress of materials for handrails, railings, anchors, and connections:
  - 1. Top Rail of Guards: Capable of withstanding the following loads applied as indicated:
    - a. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied at any point and in any direction.
    - b. Uniform load of 50 lb. per linear foot applied horizontally and concurrently with uniform load of 50 lb. per linear foot applied vertically downward.
    - c. Concentrated and uniform loads above need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - 2. Handrails Not Servicing As Top Rails: Capable of withstanding the following loads applied as indicated:
    - a. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied at any point and in any direction.
    - b. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ft. applied in any direction.
    - c. Concentrated and uniform loads above need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - 3. Infill area of Guards: Capable of withstanding a horizontal concentrated load of 50 lb. applied to 1 sq. ft. at any point in system, including panels, intermediate rails, balusters, or other elements composing infill area.
    - a. Load above need not be assumed to act concurrently with loads on top rails in determining stress on guard.
- C. Thermal Movements: Provide handrails and railings that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, over stressing of components, failure of connections, and other

ALUMINUM HANDRAILS AND RAILINGS  
05272-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

detrimental effects. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

D. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

A. Product Data: For manufacturers product lines of handrails and railings assembled from standard components.

1. Include Product Data for grout, anchoring cement, and paint products.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation of handrails and railings. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors available for products with factory-applied color finishes.

D. Samples for Initial selection: Short sections of railing or flat sheet metal Samples showing available mechanical finishes.

E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on components indicated below and of same thickness and metal indicated for the Work. If finishes involve normal color and texture variations, include sample sets showing the full range of variations expected.

1. 6-inch-(150-mm-) long sections of each different linear railing member, including handrails, and top rails.

2. Fittings and brackets.

3. Assembled Samples of railings, made from full-size components, including top rail, post, handrail, and infill. Show method of finishing members at intersections. Samples need not be full height.

F. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

G. Product Test Reports: Indicating products comply with requirements, based on comprehensive testing of current products.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing through one source form a single manufacturer.

#### **1.6 STORAGE**

A. Store handrails and railings in a dry, well-ventilated, weather tight place.

#### **1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

A. Field Measurements: Verify handrail and railing dimensions by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the work.

#### **1.8 COORDINATION**

A. Coordinate installation of anchorage for handrails and railings. Furnish Setting Drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to project site in time for installation.

ALUMINUM HANDRAILS AND RAILINGS  
05272-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Aluminum Handrails and Railings:
  - 1. C.R. Laurence Co., Inc. | 2503 E. Vernon Ave., Los Angeles, CA. 90058 | Toll Free: (800) 421-6144; Toll Free Fax: (800) 262-3299; International Phone: (323) 588-1281; International Fax: (323) 584-5289; [www.crlaurence.com](http://www.crlaurence.com) | email:techsales@crlaurence.com
- B. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provided such products have been approved by the architect no later than Ten (10) days prior to bid opening

### 2.2 METALS

- A. General: Provide metal free from pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections where exposed to view on finished units.
- B. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with not less than strength and durability properties of alloy and temper designated below for each aluminum form required.
  - 1. Extruded Bar and Tube: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy 6063-T5/T52.
  - 2. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tube: ASTM B 429, alloy 6063-T6.
  - 3. Drawn Seamless Tube: ASTM B 210 (ASTM B 210M), alloy 6063-T832.
  - 4. Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy 6061-T6.
  - 5. Die and Hand Forgings: ASTM B 247 (ASTM B 247M), alloy 6061-T6.
  - 6. Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, alloy A356-T6.
- C. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide cast brackets with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt.
  - 2. Provide formed or cast brackets with predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage.
  - 3. Provide formed steel brackets with predrilled hole for bolted anchorage and with snap-on cover that matches rail finish and conceals bracket base and bolt head.
  - 4. Provide brackets with interlocking pieces that conceal anchorage. Locate screws on bottom of bracket.

### 2.3 FASTENERS

- A. Fasteners for Anchoring Handrails and Railings to other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring handrails and railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.
- B. Fasteners for Interconnecting Handrail and Railing Components: Use fasteners fabricated from same basic metal as fastened metal, unless otherwise indicated. Do not use metal that are corrosive or incompatible with material joined.
  - 1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless exposed fasteners are unavoidable or are standard fastening method for handrail and railing indicated.
  - 2. Provide Phillips flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners, unless otherwise indicated.

ALUMINUM HANDRAILS AND RAILINGS  
05272-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- C. Cast-in-Place and Post installed Anchors: Anchors of type indicated below, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by qualified independent testing agency.
  - 1. Cast-in-place anchors.
  - 2. Chemical anchors.
  - 3. Expansion anchors.

## **2.4 GROUT AND ANCHORING CEMENT**

- A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Premixed, factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- B. Interior Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound. Use for interior applications only.

## **2.5 FABRICATION**

- A. Assemble handrails and railing in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- B. Form changes in direction of railing members as follows:
  - 1. As detailed.
- C. Mechanical Connections: Fabricate handrails and railings by connecting members with railing manufacturer's standard concealed mechanical fasteners and fittings, unless other wise indicated. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, rigid, hairline joints.
- D. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide manufacturer's standard wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to connect handrail and railing members to other construction.
- E. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices to connect handrails and railing to concrete or masonry. Fabricate anchorage device capable of withstanding loads imposed by handrails and railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
- F. Shear and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs from exposed cut edges.
- G. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap components, as indicated, to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- H. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
- I. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails, unless other wise indicated. Close ends of returns, unless clearance between end of railing and wall is  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6 ram) or less.

## **2.6 FINISHES, GENERAL**

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## **2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES**

ALUMINUM HANDRAILS AND RAILINGS  
05272-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- A. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- B. High Performance Organic Coating Finish: AA-C12C42Rlx (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals, Chemical Finish: acid chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Powder Coating: as specified below). Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Polyester Powder Coating, 3 mil. Average film thickness complying with AAMA 2604-17.
    - i. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect after bid date from manufacturer's full range of choices for color and gloss, including custom colors. Selections might include up to four different selections for color.

## **PART 3 – EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements have been clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
- B. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform Cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing handrails and railings. Set handrails and railing accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels and free from rack.
  - 1. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that have been coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
  - 2. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed ¼ inch in 12 feet (5 mm in 3 m).
- C. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum and copper alloys that will be in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
- D. Adjust handrails and railings before anchoring to ensure alignment at abutting joints. Space posts at interval indicated, but not less than that required by structural loads.
- E. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing handrails and railing and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

### **3.3 RAILINGS CONNECTIONS**

- A. Nonwelded Connections: Use mechanical joints for permanently connecting railing components. Use wood blocks and padding to prevent damage to railing members and fittings.

### **3.4 CLEANING**

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material.

### **3.5 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect finishes of handrails and railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at the time of Substantial Completion.

- B. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in field to shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit, or provide new units.

**END OF SECTION**

ALUMINUM HANDRAILS AND RAILINGS  
05272-6

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 05500 - MISCELLANEOUS STEEL AND METAL FABRICATIONS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Definition: Metal fabrications include items made from iron and steel shapes, plates bars, strips, tubes, pipes and castings which are not a part of structural steel or other metal systems specified elsewhere.
- B. Extent of metal fabrications is indicated on drawings and schedules.
- C. Types of work in this section include metal fabrications for:
  - 1. Rough hardware.
  - 2. Nosing.
  - 3. Loose bearing and leveling plates.
  - 4. Loose steel lintels.
  - 5. Miscellaneous framing and supports.
  - 6. Miscellaneous steel trim.
  - 7. Shelf angles.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's specifications, anchor details and installation instructions for products used in miscellaneous metal fabrications, including paint products and grout.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for fabrication and erection of metal fabrications. Include plans, elevations and details of sections and connections. Show anchorage and accessory items. Provide templates for anchor and bolt installation by others.
  - 1. Where materials or fabrications are indicated to comply with certain requirements for design loadings, include structural computations, material properties and other information needed for structural analysis.
- C. Samples: Submit 2 sets of representative samples of materials and finished products as may be requested by Architect.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. FERROUS METALS
  - 1. Metal Surfaces, General: For fabrication of miscellaneous metal work which will be exposed to view, use only materials which are smooth and free of surface blemishes including pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names and roughness.
  - 2. Steel Structural, Shapes and Bars: ASTM A 36, wide flange, ASTM A572, fy250ks.

MISCELLANEOUS STEEL FABRICATIONS  
05500-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

3. Steel Tubing: Hot-rolled, ASTM A 500. FY=46KSI
4. Structural Steel Sheet: Hot-rolled, ASTM A 570; or cold-rolled ASTM A 611, Class 1; of grade required for design loading.
5. Galvanized Structural Steel Sheet: ASTM A 446, of grade required for design loading. Coating designation as indicated, or if not indicated, G90.
6. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53; Type and grade (if applicable) as selected by fabricator and as required for design loading; black finish unless galvanizing is indicated; standard weight (schedule 40), unless otherwise indicated.
7. Gray Iron Castings: ASTM A 48, Class 30.
8. Malleable Iron Castings: ASTM A 47, grade as selected by fabricator.
9. Brackets, Flanges and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of the same type material and finish as supported rails, unless otherwise indicated.
10. Concrete Inserts: Threaded or wedge type; galvanized ferrous castings, either malleable iron, ASTM A 47, or cast steel, ASTM A 27. Provide bolts, washers and shims as required, hot-dip galvanized, ASTM A 153.
11. Non-Shrink Non-Metallic Grout: Pre-mixed, factory-packaged, non-staining, non-corrosive, non-gaseous grout complying with CE CRD-C621. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications of type specified in this section.

#### B. FASTENERS

1. General: Provide zinc-coated fasteners for exterior use or where built into exterior walls. Select fasteners for the type, grade and class required.
2. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon head type, ASTM A 307, Grade A.
3. Lag Bolts: Square head type, FS FF-B-561.
4. Machine Screws: Cadmium plated steel, FS FF-S-92.
5. Wood Screws: Flat head carbon steel, FS FF-S-111.
6. Plain Washers: Round, carbon steel, FS FF-W-92.
7. Masonry Anchorage Devices: Expansion shields, FS FF-S-325.
8. Toggle Bolts: Tumble-wing type, FS FF-B-588, type, class and style as required.
9. Lock Washers: Helical spring type carbon steel, FS FF-W-84.

#### C. PAINT:

1. Shop Primer for Ferrous Metal: Manufacturer's or Fabricator's standard, fast-curing, lead-free, "universal" primer; selected for good resistance to normal atmospheric corrosion, for compatibility with finish paint systems indicated and for capability to provide a sound foundation for field-applied topcoats despite prolonged exposure; complying with performance requirements of FS TT-P-645.
2. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High zinc dust content paint for regalvanizing welds in galvanized steel, complying with the Military Specifications MIL-P-21035 (Ships) or SSPC-Paint-20.

#### D. CONCRETE FILL:

1. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements of Division-3 section "Concrete Work" for normal weight, ready-mix concrete with minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi, and W/C ratio of 0.58 maximum, unless higher strengths indicated.
2. Non-Slip Aggregate Finish: Factory-graded, packaged material containing fused aluminum oxide grits or crushed emery as abrasive aggregate; rust-proof and non-glazing; unaffected by freezing, moisture or cleaning materials.

MISCELLANEOUS STEEL FABRICATIONS  
05500-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

## 2.2 FABRICATION - GENERAL

- A. Workmanship: Use materials of size and thickness indicated, or if not indicated, as required to produce strength and durability in finished product for use intended. Work to dimensions indicated or accepted on shop drawings, using proven details of fabrication and support. Use type of materials indicated or specified for various components of work.
- B. Form exposed work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces and straight sharp edges. Ease exposed edges to a radius of approximately 1/32" unless otherwise indicated. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- C. Weld corners and seams continuously, complying with AWS recommendations. At exposed connections, grind exposed welds smooth and flush to match and blend with adjoining surfaces.
- D. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners wherever possible. Use exposed fasteners of type indicated or, if not indicated, Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts.
- E. Provide for anchorage of type indicated, coordinated with supporting structure. Fabricate and space anchoring devices to provide adequate support for intended use.
- F. Cut, reinforce, drill and tap miscellaneous metal work as indicated to receive finish hardware and similar items.
- G. Galvanizing: Provide a zinc coating for those items indicated or specified to be galvanized, as follows:
  - 1. ASTM A\_ 153 for galvanizing iron and steel hardware.
  - 2. ASTM A 123 for galvanizing rolled, pressed and forged steel shapes, plates, bars and strip 1/8" thick and heavier.
  - 3. ASTM A\_ 386 for galvanizing assembled steel products.
- H. Fabricate joints which will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water or provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- I. Shop Painting:
  - 1. Apply shop primer to surfaces of metal fabrications except those which are galvanized or as indicated to be embedded in concrete or masonry, unless otherwise indicated, and in compliance with requirements of SSPC-PA1 "Paint Application Specification No. 1" for shop painting.
    - a. Stripe paint all edges, corners, crevices, bolts, welds and sharp edges.
- J. Surface Preparation: Prepare ferrous metal surfaces to comply with minimum requirements indicated below for SSPC surface preparation specifications and environmental exposure conditions of installed metal fabrications:
  - 1. Exteriors (SSPC Zone 1B): SSPC-SP6 "Commercial Blast cleaning".
  - 2. Interior (SSPC Zone 1A): SSPC-SP3 "Power Tool Cleaning".

## 2.3 ROUGH HARDWARE

- A. Furnish bent or otherwise custom fabricated bolts, plates, anchors, hangers, dowels and other miscellaneous steel and iron shapes as required for framing and supporting woodwork, and for anchoring or securing woodwork to concrete or other structures. Straight bolts and other stock rough hardware items are specified in Division-6 sections.
- B. Fabricate items to sizes, shapes and dimensions required. Furnish malleable-iron washers for heads and nuts which bear on wood structural connections; elsewhere, furnish steel washers.

## 2.4 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

MISCELLANEOUS STEEL FABRICATIONS  
05500-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- A. Provide loose structural steel lintels for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions as shown and scheduled. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated. Provide not less than 8" bearing at each side of openings, unless otherwise indicated. All steel lintels shall be hot-dipped galvanized steel.

## **2.5 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Provide miscellaneous steel framing and supports which are not a part of structural steel framework, as required to complete work.
- B. Fabricate miscellaneous units to sizes, shapes and profiles indicated or, if not indicated, of required dimensions to receive adjacent other work to be retained by framing. Except as otherwise indicated, fabricate from structural steel shapes, plates and steel bars of welded construction using mitered joints for field connection. Cut, drill and tap units to receive hardware and similar items.
- C. Equip units with integrally welded anchors for casting into concrete or building into masonry. Furnish inserts if units must be installed after concrete is placed.
  - 1. Except as otherwise indicated, space anchors 24" o.c. and provide minimum anchor units of 1-1/4" x 1/4" x 8" steel straps.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Field Measurements: Take field measurements prior to preparation of shop drawings and fabrication, where possible. Do not delay job progress; allow for trimming and fitting where taking field measurements before fabrication might delay work.
- B. Coordinate and furnish anchorages, setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorages, such as concrete inserts, sleeves, anchor bolts and miscellaneous items having integral anchors, which are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to project site.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION - GENERAL**

- A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing miscellaneous metal fabrications to in-place construction; including, threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through-bolts, lag bolts, wood screws and other connectors as required.
- B. Cutting, Fitting and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling and fitting required for installation of miscellaneous metal fabrications. Set work accurately in location, alignment and elevation, plus, level, true and free of rack, measured from established lines and levels. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items which are to be built into concrete masonry or similar construction.
  - 1. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form tight hairline joints. Weld connections which are not to be left as exposed joints, but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Grind exposed joints smooth and touch-up shop paint coat. Do not weld, cut or abrade the surfaces of exterior units which have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication, and are intended for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS Code for procedures of manual shielded metal-arc welding, appearance and quality of welds made, and methods used in correcting welding work.
- D. Setting Loose Plates: Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of any bond-reducing materials and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of bearing plates.
  - 1. Set loose leveling and bearing plates on wedges, or other adjustable devices. After the bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten the anchor bolts. Do not

MISCELLANEOUS STEEL FABRICATIONS  
05500-4



remove wedges or shims, but if protruding, cut-off flush with the edge of the bearing plate before packing with grout. Use metallic non-shrink grout in concealed locations where not exposed to moisture; use non-metallic non-shrink grout in exposed locations, unless otherwise indicated.

### **3.3 ADJUST AND CLEAN**

- A. Touch-Up Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting.
- B. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- C. For galvanized surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections and abraded areas and apply galvanizing repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

**END OF SECTION**

MISCELLANEOUS STEEL FABRICATIONS  
05500-5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 06100 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to work of this section.
- B. Work Included: All wood, nails, bolts, screws, framing anchors and other rough hardware, and all other items needed for rough and finished carpentry in this work but not specifically described in other sections of these specifications.
- C. Quality Assurance: In addition to complying with all pertinent codes and regulations, all materials of this section shall comply with pertinent provisions of:
  - 1. Southern Pine Southern Pine Inspection Bureau Plywood ‘Softwood Plywood - Construction and Industrial’ (Amended June 1969), Product Standard PD 1-66 of U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of Standards, and A.P.A.
  - 2. Rough Hardware “Specification for the Design, Fabrication and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings of the American Institute of Steel Construction”
  - 3. Building Paper Federal Specification UU-B-790a, dated February 5, 1968
  - 4. Wood Preservative Standard P-5 of the American Wood Preservers Institute
  - 5. Other Similar and pertinent reference standards for the products needed.
- D. Conflicting Requirements: In the event of conflict between pertinent codes and regulations and the requirements of the referenced standards or these specifications, the provisions of the more stringent shall govern.
- E. Qualifications of Workmen: Provide sufficient skilled workmen and supervisors who shall be present at all times during execution of this portion of the work and who shall be thoroughly familiar with the type of construction involved and the materials and techniques specified.
- F. Rejection: In the acceptance or rejection of rough carpentry, no allowance will be made for lack of skill on the part of workmen.

#### 1.2 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Protection: Store all materials in such a manner as to ensure proper ventilation and drainage and to protect against damage and the weather.
  - 1. Use all means necessary to protect lumber materials before, during and after delivery to the job site, and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
  - 2. Deliver the materials to the job site and store all in a safe area, out of the way of traffic, and shored up off the ground surface.
  - 3. Protect all metal products with adequate weather-proof outer wrappings.
  - 4. Use extreme care in the off-loading of lumber to prevent damage, splitting and breaking of materials.
  - 5. Keep all material clearly identified with all grade marks legible; keep all damaged material clearly identified as damaged, and separately stored to prevent its inadvertent use.
  - 6. Do not allow installation of damaged or otherwise non-complying material.
  - 7. Use all means necessary to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
- B. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary to the approval of the Architect and at no additional cost to the Owner.

ROUGH CARPENTRY  
06100-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## PART 2 – MATERIALS

### 2.1 MATERIALS - GENERAL

- A. Grade Stamps:
- B. Framing Lumber: Identify all framing lumber by proper grade stamp.
- C. Plywood: Identify all plywood as to species, grade and glue type by the stamp of the American Plywood Association.
- D. Other: Identify all other materials of this section by the appropriate stamp of the agency listed in the reference standards, or by such other means as are approved in advance by the Architect.
- E. Moisture Content: Moisture content of any material for framing not to exceed 19% for boards 8" in width or less. Boards exceeding 8" in width not to exceed 15% at time of installation. All material used for finish and trim work to be kiln dried material with moisture content not to exceed that allowed by FHA for intended use.

### 2.2 MATERIALS - WOOD

- A. All materials of this Section, unless specifically otherwise approved in advance by the Architect, shall meet or exceed the following:
  - 1. Plates, Grounds or furring
    - a. Pressure treated #2 KD Southern Yellow Pine in contact w/concrete, masonry or plaster
  - 2. Plywood Roof Decking
    - a. 5/8" – 4' x 8' CDX Grade with exterior glue, install with plyclips.  
*or*
    - b. Pressure Treated 5/8" – 4' x 8' CDX Grade with exterior glue, install with plyclips
  - 3. All Framing Members
    - a. Lodge Pole Spruce #2 KD
  - 4. Wood Preservative
    - a. Ammonical copper arsenite or 5% solution of pentachlorophenol

### 2.3 MATERIALS – MISCELLANEOUS

- A. All materials of this Section, unless specifically otherwise approved in advance by the Architect, shall meet or exceed the following:
  - 1. Steel Hardware
    - a. ASTM A-7 or A-36 (Use galvanized at exterior locations)
  - 2. Machine Bolts
    - a. ASTM A-307
  - 3. Lag Bolts
    - a. Federal Specifications FF-B-561
  - 4. Nails
    - a. Common (Except as noted) Federal Specifications FF-N-1-1 (Use galvanized at exterior locations)
  - 5. Flashing

ROUGH CARPENTRY  
06100-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- a. Nervastral Seal Prof HD-20 except where metal is indicated. Nervastral Seal Prof HD shall be installed on all sills and heads ½" inward from outside face of wall and extended 6" on each side of opening brick veneer construction. The sheeting shall not be allowed to hang free prior to completion of brick work but shall be secured to the siding with nails and discs or furring strips.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Stockpiling: Stockpile all materials sufficiently in advance of need to ensure their availability in a timely manner for this work.
- B. Delivery Schedules: Make as many trips to the job site as are necessary to deliver all materials of this section in a timely manner to ensure orderly progress of the total work.
- C. Compliance: Do not permit materials not complying with the provisions of this section of these specifications to be brought onto or to be stored at the job site; immediately remove from the job site all non-complying materials and replace them with materials meeting the requirements of this section.
- D. Inspection: Prior to all work of this section, carefully inspect the installed work of all other trades and verify that all such work is complete to the point where this installation may properly commence.
  1. Verify that rough carpentry may be performed in strict accordance with the original design and all pertinent codes and regulations.
- E. Discrepancies: In the event of discrepancy, immediately notify the Architect. Do not proceed with installation in areas of discrepancy until all such discrepancies have been fully resolved.
- F. Workmanship: All rough carpentry shall produce joints true, tight, and well nailed with all members assembled in accordance with the drawings and with all pertinent codes and regulations.
- G. Selection of Lumber Pieces: Carefully select all members; select individual pieces so that knots and obvious defects will not interfere with placing bolts or proper nailing or making proper connections.
  1. Cut out and discard all defects which render a piece unable to serve its intended functions; lumber may be rejected by the Architect, whether or not it has been installed, for excessive warp, twist, bow, crook, mildew, fungus, or mold, as well as for improper cutting and fitting.
- H. Shimming: Do not shim sills, joists, short studs, trimmers, headers, lintels, or other framing components.
- I. Treated Lumber: Use only treated lumber for all wood blocks and nailing grounds, etc. (other than foundation grade redwood) in, or in contact with, concrete.
- J. Treatment: Treat all wood less than two feet above finished grade by spraying with the preservative specified in this section of these specifications, to a minimum distance of six inches from the ends, or otherwise treat as approved in advance by the Architect. Perform all treatment in strict accordance with published recommendations of the manufacturer of the treatment preservative.
- K. General Framing: In addition to all framing operations normal to the fabrication and erection indicated on the drawings, install all backing required for the work of other trades. Set all horizontal or sloped members with crown up. Do not notch, bore, or cut members for pipes ducts conduits, or other reasons except as shown on the drawings or as specifically approved in advance by the Architect.

ROUGH CARPENTRY  
06100-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- L. Bearing: Make all bearings full unless otherwise indicated on the drawings. Finish all bearing surfaces on which structural members are to rest so as to give sure and even support; where framing members slope, cut or notch the ends as required to give uniform bearing surface.
- M. Blocking: Install all blocking required to support all items of finish and to cut off all concealed draft openings, both vertical and horizontal, between ceiling and floor areas.
  - 1. All other locations where openings could afford passage for rodents or flames.
  - 2. Fire-block in the following specific locations:
    - a. In all stud walls at ceiling and floor levels.
    - b. In all stud walls, including furred spaces, so that the maximum dimension of each concealed space is not more than eight feet.
    - c. All other locations where openings could afford passage for rodents or flames.
- N. Stud Walls and Partitions: Make all studs single length, unspliced, and platform framed.
- O. Corners and intersections: Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, frame all corners and intersections with three or more studs and all required bearing for wall finish.
- P. Alignment: On all framing members to receive a finished wall or ceiling, align the finish subsurface to vary not more than 1/8 inch from the plane of surfaces of adjacent framing and furring members.
- Q. Nailing: Use only common wire nails or spikes except where otherwise specifically noted in the drawings.
  - 1. Provide penetration into the piece receiving the point of not less than 1/2 the length of the nail or spike provided, however, that 16 d nails may be used to connect two pieces of the two inch (nominal) thickness.
  - 2. Do all nailing without splitting wood, preboring as required; replace all split members.
- R. Bolting: Drill holes 1/16 inch larger in diameter than the bolts being used; drill straight and true from one side only. Bolt threads must not bear on wood; use washers under head and nut where both bear on wood; use washers under all nuts.
- S. Screws: For lag screws and wood screws, prebore holes same diameter as root of thread; enlarge holes to shank diameter for length of shank.
  - 1. Screw all lag screws and wood screws. Do NOT Drive screws.
- T. Installation of Building Paper: Install the specified building paper over all exterior framing members where indicated to be installed, lapping all joints to prevent penetration of water into the stud spaces, and securely fastening the paper in place in accordance with the manufacturer's published recommendations.
- U. Cleaning Up: Keep the premises in a neat, safe and orderly condition at all times during execution of this portion of the work, free from accumulation of sawdust, cut-ends, and debris.

**END OF SECTION**

ROUGH CARPENTRY  
06100-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 06192 - METAL PLATE CONNECTED WOOD TRUSSES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Roof Trusses.
  - 2. Truss accessories.
- B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
  - 1. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for rough hardware anchoring trusses to concrete or masonry structures.
  - 2. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for roof and floor sheathing of structural-use panels and dimension lumber for supplementary framing and permanent bracing.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Metal-plate-connected wood trusses include planar structural units consisting of metal-plate-connected members fabricated from dimension lumber and cut and assembled before delivery to Project site.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Engineer, fabricate, and erect metal-plate-connected wood trusses to withstand design loads within limits and under conditions required.
  - 1. Design Loads: As indicated.
  - 2. The truss manufacture shall design the trusses for the sprinkler piping load and to provide adequate support at the connection points.
- B. Engineering Responsibility: Engage a fabricator who uses a qualified professional engineer to prepare calculations, Shop Drawings, and other structural data for metal-plate-connected wood trusses.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
  - 1. Product Data for lumber, metal-plate connectors, metal framing connectors, bolts, and fasteners.
- B. Shop Drawings detailing location, pitch, span, camber, configuration, and spacing for each type of truss required; species, sizes, and stress grades of lumber to be used; splice details; type, size, material, finish, design values, and orientation and location of metal connector plates; and bearing details.
  - 1. To the extent truss design considerations are indicated as fabricator's responsibility, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 2. Include truss Shop Drawings signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- C. Product certificates signed by officer of truss fabricating firm certifying that metal-plate-connected wood trusses supplied for Project comply with specified requirements and Shop Drawings.

METAL PLATE CONNECTED WOOD TRUSSES  
06192-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- D. Qualification data for firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- E. Material test reports from a qualified independent testing agency indicating and interpreting test results relative to compliance of fire-retardant-treated wood products with requirements indicated.
- F. Material certificates for dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the American Lumber Standards Committee (ALSC) Board of Review.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer who has completed wood truss installation similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Fabricator's Qualifications: Engage a firm that complies with the following requirements for quality control and is experienced in fabricating metal-plate-connected wood trusses similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance:
  - 1. Fabricator participates in a recognized quality-assurance program that involves inspection by SPIB; Timber Products Inspection, Inc.; Truss Plate Institute (TPI); or other independent inspecting and testing agency acceptable to Architect and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Comply with applicable requirements and recommendations of the following publications:
  - 1. ANSI/TP1 1, "National Design Standard for Metal-Plate-Connected Wood Truss Construction."
  - 2. TPI HIB "Commentary and Recommendations for Handling Installing & Bracing Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses."
  - 3. TPI DSB "Recommended Design Specification for Temporary Bracing of Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses."
- D. Metal-Plate Connector Manufacturer's Qualifications: A manufacturer that is a member of TPI and that complies with TPI quality-control procedures for manufacture of connector plates published in ANSI/TPI 1.
- E. Single-Source Responsibility for Connector Plates: Provide metal connector plates from one source and by a single manufacturer.
- F. Wood Structural Design Standard: Comply with applicable requirements of AFPA's "National Design Specification for Wood Construction" and its "Supplement."
- G. Single-Source Engineering Responsibility: Provide trusses engineered by metal-plate connector manufacturer to support superimposed dead and live loads indicated, with design approved and certified by a qualified professional engineer.
- H. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally authorized to practice in the jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated that have resulted in installing metal-plate-connected wood trusses similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.
  - 1. **NOTE: At the Completion of Truss Erection, the Contractor shall provide a Truss Inspection of the installed trusses and permanent bracing by an Engineer Registered in the State of Alabama. The Engineer's Report shall certify the trusses are Correctly Installed, using specified wood grade and configured to meet the design of the supplier. His signed Seal shall be affixed to the report and submitted to the Architect and Engineer Of Record.**

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

METAL PLATE CONNECTED WOOD TRUSSES  
06192-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- A. Handle and store trusses with care and comply with manufacturer's written instructions and TPI recommendations to avoid damage and lateral bending.
- B. Inspect trusses showing discoloration, corrosion, or other evidence of deterioration. Discard and replace trusses that are damaged or defective.

## **1.8 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING**

- A. Time delivery and erection of trusses to avoid extended on-site storage and to avoid delaying progress of other trades whose work must follow erection of trusses.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Metal Connector Plates:
    - a. Alpine Engineered Products, Inc.
    - b. Computrus, Inc.
    - c. Mitek Industries, Inc.
    - d. Robbins Manufacturing Company.
    - e. Tee-Lok Corporation.
    - f. Truswal Systems Corporation.
  - 2. Metal Framing Anchors:
    - a. Cleveland Steel Specialty Co.
    - b. Harlen Metal Products, Inc.
    - c. Silver Metal Products, Inc.
    - d. Simpson Strong-Tie Company, Inc.
    - e. Southeastern Metals Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - f. United Steel Products Co.

### **2.2 DIMENSION LUMBER**

- A. Lumber Standards: Comply with DOC PS 20, "American Softwood Lumber Standard," and with applicable grading rules of inspection agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review.
- B. Inspection Agencies: Inspection agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
  - 1. SPIB - Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
- C. Grade Stamps: Provide lumber with each piece factory marked with grade stamp of inspection agency evidencing compliance with grading rule requirements and identifying grading agency, grade, species, moisture content at time of surfacing, and mill.
- D. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, manufactured to actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified, to comply with requirements indicated below:
  - 1. Provide dry lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing.
- E. Grade and Species: Provide visually graded dimension lumber for truss chord and web members, of the following grade and species:
  - 1. Grade for Chord Members: No. 2.

METAL PLATE CONNECTED WOOD TRUSSES  
06192-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



2. Grade for Web Members: No. 2.
3. Species: Southern pine graded per SPIB rules.

### **2.3 METAL CONNECTOR PLATES**

- A. General: Fabricate connector plates from metal complying with requirements indicated below.
- B. Hot-Dip Galvanized Steel Sheet: Structural-quality steel sheet, zinc coated by hot-dip process complying with ASTM A 653, G60 coating designation; Grade 33 and not less than 0.0359 inch thick.
- C. Electrolytic Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 591, structural-(physical) quality steel sheet, zinc coated by electrodeposition; 33,000-psi minimum yield strength, coating class C, and not less than 0.0474 inch thick.

### **2.4 FASTENERS**

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified below for material and manufacture.
  1. Where truss members are exposed to weather or to high relative humidities, provide fasteners with a hot-dip zinc coating per ASTM A 153 or of stainless steel, Type 304 or 316.
- B. Nails, Wire, Brads and Staples: FS FF-N-105.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: CABO NER-272.
- D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
- E. Lag Bolts and Screws: ASME B18.2.1.
- F. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A; with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.

### **2.5 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS**

- A. General: Provide metal framing anchors of structural capacity, type, size, metal, and finish indicated that comply with requirements specified, including the following:
- B. Research or Evaluation Reports: Provide products for which model code research or evaluation reports exist that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and that evidence compliance of metal framing anchors for application indicated with building code in effect for this Project.
- C. Allowable Design Loads: Provide products with allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer that meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.
- D. Galvanized Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653, G60 coating designation; structural, commercial, or lock-forming quality, as standard with manufacturer for type of anchor indicated.
- E. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304 or 316, chromium nickel steel sheet; 33,000-psi minimum yield strength.

### **2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or DOD-P-21035, with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight.

### **2.7 FABRICATION**

- A. Cut truss members to accurate lengths, angles, and sizes to produce close-fitting joints.
- B. Fabricate metal connector plates to size, configuration, thickness, and anchorage details required to withstand design loadings for types of joint designs indicated.

METAL PLATE CONNECTED WOOD TRUSSES  
06192-4

- C. Assemble truss members in design configuration indicated using jigs or other means to ensure uniformity and accuracy of assembly with joints closely fitted to comply with tolerances of ANSI/TPI 1. Position members to produce design camber indicated.
  - 1. Fabricate wood trusses within manufacturing tolerances of ANSI/TPI 1.
- D. Connect truss members by metal connector plates located and securely embedded simultaneously into both sides of wood members by air or hydraulic press.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Do not install wood trusses until supporting construction is in place and is braced and secured.
- B. Before installing, splice trusses delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
- C. Hoist trusses in place by lifting equipment suited to sizes and types of trusses required, exercising care not to damage truss members or joints by out-of-plane bending or other causes.
- D. Install and brace trusses according to recommendations of TPI and as indicated.
- E. Install trusses plumb, square, and true to line and securely fasten to supporting construction.
- F. Space, adjust, and align trusses in location before permanently fastening and as follows:
  - 1. Truss Spacing: As indicated.
- G. Anchor trusses securely at all bearing points using metal framing anchors. Install fasteners through each fastener hole in metal framing anchor according to manufacturer's fastening schedules and written instructions.
- H. Securely connect each truss ply required for forming built-up girder trusses.
  - 1. Anchor trusses to girder trusses as indicated.
- I. Install and fasten permanent bracing during truss erection and before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of permanent bracing where terminating at walls or beams.
  - 1. Install and fasten strongback bracing vertically against vertical web of parallel-chord floor trusses at centers indicated.
- J. Install wood trusses within installation tolerances of ANSI/TPI 1.
- K. Do not cut or remove truss members.
- L. Return wood trusses that are damaged or do not meet requirements to fabricator and replace with trusses that do meet requirements.
  - 1. Do not alter trusses in the field.

#### **3.2 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION**

- A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on exposed surfaces with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### **END OF SECTION**

METAL PLATE CONNECTED WOOD TRUSSES  
06192-5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 06200 - FINISH CARPENTRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Definition: Finish carpentry includes carpentry work which is exposed to view, is non-structural, and which is not specified as part of other sections. Types of finish carpentry work in this section include:
  - 1. Interior running and standing trim.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Indicate Product description including product information and compliance with specified performance requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit Shop Drawings for work of this Section in accordance with section 01600. Indicate plans, sections, dimensions, component sizes, edge details, fabrication details, attachment provisions, sizes of furring, blocking, including concealed blocking and coordination requirements with adjacent work. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for receptacles and other items installed in the specified product.
- C. Samples: Submit samples in accordance with Section 01300. Submit minimum 2' x 2' samples.
  - 1. Cut sample and seam together for representation of inconspicuous seam. Indicate full range of pattern variation. Approved samples will be retained as standards for work.

#### 1.4 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finish carpentry materials during transit, delivery, storage and handling to prevent damage, soiling and deterioration.
- B. Do not deliver finish carpentry materials, until operations which could damage, soil or deteriorate woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If, due to unforeseen circumstances, finish carpentry materials must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas meeting requirements specified for installation areas.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS - INTERIOR

- A. Standing and Running Trim for Painted Finish
  - 1. Moldings, Bases, Casings, Crowns and Miscellaneous Trim: "B" and better fir or poplar, sizes and shapes as indicated on plans.

#### 2.2 MATERIALS - EXTERIOR

- A. Exterior Wood Decks, Stairs, Landings and Ramps
  - 1. Exterior Treads: minimum 5/4-inch, kiln-dried, pressure-preservative-treated (Southern pine, B & B finish boards minimum) stepping with half-round nosing.
  - 2. Exterior Risers: minimum 3/4-inch kiln-dried, pressure-preservative-treated Southern pine, B & B finish boards minimum.
  - 3. Exterior Railings & Balusters: minimum Clear, kiln-dried, pressure-preservative-treated southern pine minimum.
  - 4. Top Rails: Tubular steel (See Drawings)

- B. Facia and Shingle Strip:
  - 1. 1x to match existing in #2 spruce, pine or fir – painted.
- C. Fiberglass Columns
  - 1. Square 12 inch x 12 inch fiberglass columns. Plain/Smooth. Heights as indicated on drawings.
  - 2. Include Beveled Base & Cap.
  - 3. Manufacturers:
    - a. Equal to HB&G PermaCast Columns or equal. 1015 Brundidge Blvd., Troy, Alabama 36081; [www.hgbcolumns.com](http://www.hgbcolumns.com); Ph.: 1.800.264.4424.
- D. Beaded Wood Ceilings:
  - 1. 5/4" x 1' x 6', Double Beaded, C & Better, T&G Southern Yellow Pine - Stained.
- E. Western Red Cedar Beams and Columns:
  - 1. Kiln Dried Western Red Cedar Beams sizes and shapes as indicated on plans. All boards to be rough sawn.
  - 2. Grade A and Better with a percentage of B Clear allowed (NLGA 200c/WCLIB 102-d/WWPA 20.13). Grading Rule Paragraph NLGA 200b.
    - a. NLGA – National Lumber Grades Authority
    - b. WCLIB – West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau
    - c. WWPA – Western Wood Products Association

## **2.3 FABRICATION**

- A. Nominal sizes are indicated, except as shown by detailed dimensions. Provide dressed or worked and dressed lumber, as applicable, manufactured to the actual sizes as required by PS 20 or to actual sizes and pattern as shown, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Moisture Content of Softwood Lumber: Provide kiln-dried (KD) lumber having a moisture content from time of manufacture until time of installation not greater than values required by the applicable grading rules of the respective grading and inspecting agency for the species and product indicated.
- C. Fasteners and Anchorages: Provide nails, screws and other anchoring devices of the proper type, size, material and finish for application indicated to provide secure attachment, concealed where possible, and complying with applicable Federal Specifications.
  - 1. Where finish carpentry is exposed on exterior or in areas of high relative humidity, provide fasteners and anchorages with a hot-dipped zinc coating (ASTM A 153).
- D. Inspect each piece of lumber and plywood or each unit of finish carpentry after drying; do not use twisted, warped, bowed or otherwise damaged or defective wood.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Condition wood materials to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas prior to installing.
- B. Back-prime lumber for finish exposed on the exterior or to moisture and high relative humidity on the interior. Comply with requirements of section on painting within Division 9 for primers and their application.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Discard units of material which are unsound, warped, bowed, twisted, improperly treated, not adequately seasoned or too small to fabricate work with minimum of joints or optimum jointing arrangements, or which are of defective manufacturer with respect to surfaces, sizes or patterns.
- B. Install the work plumb, level, true and straight with no distortions. Shim as required using concealed shims. Install to a tolerance of 1/8" in 8'-0" for plumb and level countertops; and with 1/16" maximum offset in flush adjoining and 1/8" maximum offsets in revealed adjoining surfaces.
- C. Scribe and cut work to fit adjoining work and refinish cut surfaces or repair damaged finish at cuts.
- D. Standing and Running Trim: Install with minimum number of joints possible, using full-length pieces (from maximum length of lumber available) to the greatest extent possible. Stagger joints in adjacent and related members. Cope at returns, miter at corners, to produce tight fitting joints with full surface contact throughout length of joint. Use scarf joints for end-to-end joints.
- E. Anchor finish carpentry work to anchorage devices or blocking built-in or directly attached to substrates. Secure to grounds, stripping and blocking with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing as required for a complete installation. Except where prefinished matching fasteners heads are required, use fine finishing nail for exposed nailings, countersunk and filled flush with finished surface, and matching final finish where transparent is indicated.

### **3.3 ADJUSTMENT, CLEANING, FINISHING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Repair damaged and defective finish carpentry work wherever possible to eliminate defects functionally and visually; where not possible to repair properly, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean finish carpentry work on exposed and semi-exposed surfaces. Touch-up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.
- C. Refer to Division 9 for final finishing of installed finish carpentry work.
- D. Protection: Installer of finish carpentry work shall advise Contractor of final protection and maintained conditions necessary to ensure that work will be without damage or deterioration at time of acceptance.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 07115 - BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes cold-applied, emulsified-asphalt dampproofing applied to the following surfaces:
  - 1. Exterior face of inner wythe of exterior masonry cavity walls and concrete walls above top of foundation.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include recommendations for method of application, primer, number of coats, coverage or thickness, and protection course.
- B. Material Certificates: For each product, signed by manufacturers.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary dampproofing materials and primers through one source from a single manufacturer. Provide secondary materials recommended by manufacturer of primary materials.

#### 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit asphalt dampproofing to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Cold-Applied, Emulsified-Asphalt Dampproofing:
  - 2. Euclid Chemical Company (The)
  - 3. Gardner Asphalt Corporation
  - 4. Henry Corporation
  - 5. Koppers Industries, Inc.
  - 6. Malarkey Roofing Company
  - 7. Meadows, W. R., Inc.
  - 8. Sonneborn, Div. Of ChemRex, Inc.
  - 9. Tamms Industries

#### 2.2 BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

- A. Fibered Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type II, Class I.

BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING  
07115-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Emulsified-Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class I, except diluted with water as recommended by manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for surface smoothness and other conditions affecting performance of work.
  - 1. Begin dampproofing application only after substrate construction and penetrating work have been completed and unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protection of Other Work: Mask or otherwise protect adjoining exposed surfaces from being stained, spotted, or coated with dampproofing. Prevent dampproofing materials from entering and clogging weep holes and drains.
- B. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to work; fill voids, seal joints, and apply bond breakers if any, as recommended by prime material manufacturer.

### 3.3 APPLICATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with manufacturers written recommendations unless more stringent requirements are indicated or required by Project conditions to ensure satisfactory performance of dampproofing.
- B. Apply additional coats if recommended by manufacturer or required to achieve coverage's indicated.
- C. Allow each coat of dampproofing to cure 24 hours before applying subsequent Coats.
- D. Apply dampproofing to top of footings and grade beams where applicable, whether indicated or not.
  - 1. Apply from finished-grade line to top of footing.
  - 2. Extend 12 inches (300 mm) onto intersecting walls and footings, but do not extend onto surfaces exposed to view when Project is completed.
  - 3. Install flashings and corner protection stripping at internal and external corners, changes in plan, construction joints, cracks, and where shown as "reinforced," by embedding an 8-inch (200 mm) wide strip of asphalt-coated glass fabric in a heavy coat of dampproofing. Dampproofing coat required for embedding fabric is in addition to other coats required.
- E. Apply dampproofing to provide continuous plane of protection on exterior face of inner wythe of exterior masonry cavity walls.
  - 1. Lap dampproofing at least ¼ inch (6 mm) onto flashing, masonry reinforcement, veneer ties, and other items that penetrate inner wythe.
  - 2. Extend dampproofing over outer face of structural members and concrete slabs that interrupt inner wythe, and lap dampproofing at least ¼ inch (6 mm) onto shelf angles supporting veneer.

### 3.4 COLD-APPLIED, EMULSIFIED-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. On Exterior Face of Inner Wythe of Cavity Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq.m).
- B. On Backs of Concrete Retaining Walls: Apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1.5 gal. / 100 sq. ft.
- C. On Backs of Masonry Retaining Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than
  - a. gal. /100 sq. ft.

BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING  
07115-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

**3.5 CLEANING**

- A. Remove dampproofing materials from surfaces not intended to receive dampproofing.

**END OF SECTION**

BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING  
07115-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



## SECTION 07200 - INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections shall apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Extent of insulation work is shown on drawings and indicated by provisions of this section.
- B. Applications of insulation specified in this section include the following:
  - 1. Blanket type building above new ceiling
  - 2. Cavity Wall Insulation.
  - 3. Foam Insulation at CMU Cells

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product specifications and installation instructions for each type of insulation and vapor barrier material required.

#### 1.4 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. General Protection: Protect insulations from physical damage and from becoming wet, soiled, or covered with ice or snow. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for handling, storage and protection during installation.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 BATT INSULATION

##### A. MANUFACTURERS:

- 1. The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function.
  - a. Certain-Teed Products Corp.; Valley Forge, PA
  - b. Manville Bldg. Materials Corp.; Denver, CO.
  - c. Owens-Corning Fiberglass Corp.; Toledo, OH.
- 2. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.

##### B. MATERIALS:

- 3. Above Ceilings: Provide unfaced batts at exposed wood framed roof areas between the trusses at the bottom cord or joists that will receive interior coverings at the bottom of the system (ie: sheetrock, plywood, concrete, etc.).
  - a. **Thickness: R-Factor: 30 (minimum) as follows:**

#### 2.2 CAVITY WALL INSULATION - **POLYSTYRENE**

##### A. MANUFACTURERS:

- 1. The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function.
  - a. Styrofoam SM/SB; Dow Chemical USA.
  - b. Foamular 250; UC Industries.

INSULATION  
07200-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- c. Certifoam, Minnesota Diversified Products, Inc.
2. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.

**B. MATERIALS:**

1. Extruded Polystyrene Board Insulation: Rigid cellular polystyrene thermal insulation with closed cells and integral high density skin, formed by the exposition of polystyrene base resin in an extrusion process to comply with ASTM C 578, Type IV; 5-year aged
2. All Cavity Walls: Provide rigid thermal insulation at the cavity space.
  - a. R-value of 7.5 Btu/ (hr x sf x degree F) at 75 degree F in manufacturer's standard lengths and widths
  - b. 1 ½" thick, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Adhesive:
  - a. Type recommended by insulation board manufacturer for application indicated.

**2.3 CMU FILLED CELL WALL INSULATION**

**A. MANUFACTURERS:**

1. The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function.
  - a. Core-Fill 500, as manufactured by Tailored Chemical Products, Inc., Hickory, NC. Phone: (800) 627-1687: www.core-fill500.com.
  - b. R501, as manufactured by PolyMaster, Inc.", Knoxville, TN. Phone: (800) 580-3626.
  - c. Core Foam Masonry Foam Insulaton by cfiFOAM, Inc., Knoxville, TN. Phone: (800) 656-3626.
2. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.

**B. MATERIALS:**

1. Insulation: Aminoplast foam for injection application.
  - a. Thermal Resistivity: **R/inch equal to R-4.4/inch @ 75 degrees F** mean when tested per either ASTM C-177 or ASTM C518.
  - b. Water Vapor Transmission: Average ≤15 perms when tested per ASTM E 96/E96M.
  - c. Potential Heat: ≤7700 Btu/lb. when tested per NFPA 259.
  - d. Cured Density: ≤1.0 lb/ft<sup>3</sup> (dry) when tested per ASTM D 1622.
  - e. Surface Burning Characteristics: Class A - Flame Spread ≤25, Smoke Developed ≤450 per ASTM E 84.

**C. INSTALLATION:**

1. Fill **masonry cells** with foam insulation from exterior face of building.
2. Foam Insulation at exterior concrete block wall **cells**:
  - a. Fill **cells** of concrete masonry with amino-plast foam insulation. Holes for filling cells of masonry shall be drilled at horizontal masonry joint on the exterior side of exposed masonry walls and re-grouted.
  - b. Installed insulation value: **R-10**.

INSULATION  
07200-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

3. Reference Standards:
  - a. ASTM C 177 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded-Hot-Plate Apparatus; 2004.
  - b. ASTM C518 - 01 Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus; 2001.
  - c. ASTM D 1621 - Standard Test Method for Compressive Properties of Rigid Cellular Plastics; 2004a.
  - d. ASTM D 1622 - Standard Test Method for Apparent Density of Rigid Cellular Plastics; 2008.
  - e. ASTM D 2842 - Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Rigid Cellular Plastics; 2006.
  - f. ASTM E 84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2008.
  - g. ASTM E 96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials; 2005.
  - h. NFPA 259 - Standard Test Method for Potential Heat of Building Materials
4. **NOTE: Both Cavity Wall Insulation and CMU Filled Cell Wall Insulation is required at all exterior CMU walls.**

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSPECTION AND PREPARATION**

- A. Installer must examine substrates and conditions under which insulation work is to be performed and must notify Contractor in writing of unsatisfactory conditions. Do not proceed with insulation work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in manner acceptable to Installer.
- B. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulations or vapor barriers, including removal of projections which might puncture vapor barriers.
- C. Close off openings in cavities to receive poured-in-place and insulation, sufficiently to prevent escape of insulation. Provide bronze or stainless steel screen (inside) where openings must be maintained for drainage or ventilation.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's instructions for particular conditions of installation in each case. If printed instructions are not available or do not apply to project conditions, consult manufacturer's technical representative for specific recommendations before proceeding with work.
- B. Extend insulation full thickness as shown over entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions, and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections which interfere with placement.

### **3.3 CAVITY WALL INSULATION**

- A. On units of plastic insulation, install small pads of adhesive spaced approximately 1'-0" o.c. both ways on inside face. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other confining obstructions in cavity, with edges butted tightly both ways. Press units firmly against inside wythe of masonry or other construction as shown.
  1. Fill all cracks and open gaps in insulation with crack sealer compatible with insulation and masonry.

### **3.4 PROTECTION**

INSULATION  
07200-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- A. General: Protect installed insulation and vapor barriers from harmful weather exposures and from possible physical abuses, where possible by non-delayed installation of concealing work or, where that is not possible, by temporary covering or enclosure. Installer shall advise Contractor of exposure hazards, including possible sources of deterioration and fire hazards.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 07310**  
**ARCHITECTURAL SHINGLES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections apply to work of this section.

**1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK**

- A. The work under this section consists of all composition asphalt shingle roofing, underlayment, ridge vent system, sheet metal, roof drainage accessories and all related items necessary to complete the roofing system work indicated on the drawings and herein specified including but not limited to the following:
1. Underlayment.
  2. Dimensional Fiberglass Asphalt Shingle Roofing.
  3. Ridge Vent System.
  4. Roof Vents.
  5. Sheet Metal items furnished and installed in accordance with Section 07600, Flashing and Sheetmetal.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. The Contractor shall engage the services of a Professional Roof Consultant. The Consultant must hold a minimum title of Registered Roof Observer (RRO) through the International Institute of Building Enclosure Consultants (IIBEC) and provide evidence of adequate insurance as required below. The Consultant should perform three (3) inspections during the installation of each new roof system type (1 – Start up inspection; 2 – Interim inspection; 3 – Final inspection). The Consultant must document all site visits with photographs and written reports. All reports shall be forwarded to the Architect with documentation of the roofing progress and any deficiencies noted during the inspections. ***(Note: Although the contractor will be paying the roof consultant from their proceeds, the roof consultant will be considered an agent of the owner and architect throughout the project and will perform the required inspections on behalf of the owner and architect. The above specification shall be applied to individual facilities when multiple site locations are included in the project.)***

1. Roof Consultant Insurance Requirements:
  - a. Gen. Liability - \$1,000,000 each occurrence - \$2,000,000 General Aggregate / Auto. Liability - \$1,000,000 / Umbrella Liability. - \$1,000,000 / Workers Compensation - \$1,000,000 per statute / Professional Liability - \$1,000,000
2. Approved Roof Consulting Firm:
  - a. Roof Asset Management, Inc.  
David Lee, RRO, CIT, FAA-107  
Millbrook, AL / (334) 590-7999 / [dlee@roof-asset.com](mailto:dlee@roof-asset.com)
  - b. Professional Roof Observers, LLC.  
1200 Sumac Road  
Pulaski, TN 38478  
Kevin Turner / (931) 703-6018 / [kturner@professionalroofobservers.net](mailto:kturner@professionalroofobservers.net).

ARCHITECTURAL SHINGLES  
07310-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- c. Substitutions: Roof consulting firms must be pre-approved by the Architect. Requests for a substituting firm must be submitted "In writing" 10 (Ten) days prior to the bid opening.
  
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in Asphalt Roofing Products with fifteen (15) years minimum experience. Provide primary roofing material products from a single source including composition asphalt shingles, preformed ridge & hip cap shingles, starter strip and underlayments all produced by a single manufacturer. Provide secondary products only as recommended by manufacturer of primary products for use with roofing system specified. Being listed as pre-qualified manufacturer does not release manufacturer from providing complete, current, and acceptable test data for each performance, thermal, and wind load requirement specified.
  
- C. Installer's Qualifications: Installer / sub-contractor must be currently in the primary business of roofing with not less than (5) five consecutive years of recorded successful experience with roofing systems comparable to that of this project under the same company name. Installer shall be licensed or otherwise authorized by state and local authorities to install all products specified in this section. **Installer shall be certified by the roofing material manufacturer as trained and approved for installation of such roofing materials indicated for this project.** Installer shall perform work in accordance with NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual. Joint ventures shall not be allowed.
  
- D. A full-time field supervisor or foreman with minimum of (5) years of experience in a roofing supervisory role, having performed on projects of comparable scope and type shall be required to be on site at all times during roofing work. Any roofing installed during times when the supervisor/foreman is not on site is subject to rejection.
  
- E. The Roofing Contractor shall be responsible for weather-tightness of the entire roofing system.
  
- F. The Roofing Contractor shall inspect and accept condition of the roof deck and components of mechanical penetrations prior to installation of the roofing system.

ARCHITECTURAL SHINGLES  
07310-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

#### 1.4 ASSEMBLY REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. Underwriters Laboratories Fire Test of Roof Deck Construction Standard 1256.
- B. Underwriters Laboratories Test for Wind Uplift resistance of Roof Deck
- C. Assemblies Standard 580.
- D. ASTM D 3161 Class F Wind Resistance
- E. ASTM D 7158, Class H Wind Resistance.
- F. ASTM D 3462 – Standard Specification for Asphalt Shingle Made from Glass Felt and Surfaced with Mineral Granules.
- G. ASTM D 3018 – Standard Specification for Class A Shingles Surfaced with Mineral Granules.
- H. ASTM E108 Fire Resistance: Class A
- I. UL 790 Fire Resistance: Class A
- J. Roof Deck Manufacturers Design Manual.
- K. NRCA – “The NCRA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual”
- L. Impact Resistance: Roof coverings installed on low-slope roofs (roof slope <2:12) shall resist impact damage based on the results of tests conducted in accordance with ASTM D 3746

#### 1.5 ROOFING PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. The roof deck assembly shall exhibit the following performance characteristics:
  - 1. Wind Uplift Rating - FM 1-135 (or per local codes whichever is greater.)
  - 2. Factory Mutual Classifications - FM Class 1
  - 3. Fastener Withdrawal Strength - 40 lbs. min. (or per local codes whichever is greater.)
- B. Composition Asphalt Shingles shall be self-sealing and provided resistant to wind damage as tested up to **130 MPH** winds.
- C. Certification of Roofing System: Contractor(s), Roofing Material Manufacturer, and Roofing Material Manufacturer’s Field Inspector shall provide a final inspection to verify proper installation and execute the Certification of Roofing System.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's warranty, technical product data, test reports, maintenance data, installation instructions and recommendations for each type of roofing product required. Include highlighted data substantiating that materials comply with requirements. Include similar color charts of trim and accessories involving color selection.
- B. Submit a sample panel to match existing adjacent shingles for approval (If required).
- C. Installer’s Qualification Data
- D. Sample Warranty

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery and storage of material: Store and handle roof materials in a manner which will ensure that there is no possibility of significant moisture pick up. Store in a dry, well ventilated, weather tight place. Unless protected from weather or other moisture sources, do not leave unused roofing materials on the roof surface overnight or when roofing work is not in progress. Store rolls

ARCHITECTURAL SHINGLES  
07310-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

of materials and other materials on pallets or other raised surface. Handle and store materials or equipment in a manner to avoid significant or permanent deflection of deck. All material must be protected from the weather by protective tarps. Manufacturer's plastic covers are not acceptable means of protection.

- B. Scheduling and coordinating work: Schedule and coordinate roofing and sheet metal installations with the work of other trades where it is integral or contiguous therewith. Materials furnished under this section, which are to be built-in by other trades, shall be delivered to the site in sufficient time to avoid delays to construction progress. Instruct other trades concerning the location and placement of reglets, wood nailers and cleats.
- C. Proper surfaces: Surfaces to which roofing, and sheet metal are to be applied shall be even, smooth, sound, thoroughly clean and dry, and free from projection nail heads or other defects that would affect the application. Report in writing any unsatisfactory surfaces to the Architect in advance of roofing work.
- D. Dis-similar metals: Where dis-similar metals abut, the juncture shall be executed in a manner that will facilitate drainage and thus minimize the possibility of galvanic action.
- E. Accessories: All accessories or other items essential to the completeness of the sheet metal installation shall be provided as required. All such items, unless otherwise indicated on the drawings or specified, shall be of the same kind of materials as the item to which applied, and the gauges shall conform to recognized industry standards of sheet metal practice.
- F. Solvent-based materials: Store and dispose of solvent-based materials and materials used with solvent based materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.
- G. Extra Material: Furnish to owner
  - 1. Provide 400 square feet (4 square) of extra shingles of each color specified.

## **1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Substrate: Proceed with shingle work only after substrate construction and penetrating work have been completed.
- B. Weather Conditions: Proceed with shingle work only when weather conditions are in compliance with manufacturer's recommendations and when substrate is completely dry.

## **1.9 ROOFING GUARANTEE**

- A. Contractor's Roofing Guarantee
  - 1. All work included in this section shall be jointly and unconditionally guaranteed by the General Contractor and the Contractor for this section, against leaks from faulty or defective materials and workmanship for a period of Five (5) Years starting on the date of acceptance of the project by the Owner.
  - 2. Contractor shall furnish Contractors 5 Year Roofing Guarantee. This roofing guarantee is included in the front-end documentation of this project manual.
    - a. The roofing guarantee shall be executed in three (3) original copies, signed by the appropriate parties, and submitted to the Architect, Owner, and the appropriate County / City Departments if required.
  - 3. Warranty shall include the following: The General Contractor and Roofing Installer shall be responsible for all water damaged materials due to roof leaks for a period of 5 years.
- B. Manufacturer's Warranty
  - 1. Manufacturer's roofing warranties which contain language regarding the governing of the warranty by any state other than the State of Alabama, must be amended to exclude such

ARCHITECTURAL SHINGLES  
07310-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama



- language, and substituting the requirement that the Laws of the State of Alabama shall govern all such warranties.
2. The Contractor shall provide to the Roofing manufacturer's fully executed shingle warranty on shingle materials.
    - a. Material Warranty Period: Forty (40) years from Date of Substantial Completion. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - i. Manufacturing defects.
      - ii. Structural failures including failure of asphalt shingles to self-seal after a reasonable time.
    - b. Non-prorated (Labor & Material) Warranty Period: 25 Year Non-Prorated Warranty Period covering material and labor costs for repair or replacement.
    - c. Algae Discoloration Warranty Period: Asphalt shingles will not discolor fifteen (15) years from Date of Substantial Completion.
    - d. Wind Warranty: Asphalt shingles will resist blow-off or damage caused by wind speeds up to 130 MPH for Fifteen (15) years from Date of Substantial Completion.
  3. Insulated Decks and Radiant Barriers
    - a. Manufacturer's warranty, including non-prorated period, will remain in force when shingles are applied to roof deck assemblies where foam insulation is prefabricated into the roof deck system, where insulation is installed beneath an acceptable roof deck system, or where radiant barriers are installed, with or without ventilation, directly below the deck.
  4. The roofing manufacturer shall be required to provide documentation certifying the roofing system and products specified comply with the performance requirements as set forth in IBC Chapter 15, Section 1504. The documentation shall be attached to the roof warranty at the close out of the project.
- C. All roof warranties/guarantees shall be provided to the Owner, by the Contractor at the Final Inspection to obtain the Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 – PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship, and function:
1. Owens-Corning "Duration Series".
  2. GAF "Timberline High Definition HDZ Series".
  3. Tamko "Titan XT"
  4. CertainTeed "Landmark Series".

### **2.2 MATERIALS**

- A. Glass-Fiber Reinforced Dimensional/Architectural Asphalt Shingles: Conforming to ASTM D 3161, ASTM D 7158, UL2390, ASTM E108, UL 790, UL Certified to meet ASTM D 3462, ASTM D 3018; glass fiber mat base; ceramically colored/UV resistant mineral surface granules across entire face of shingle; four-tab shingle with each tab independently colored by granules no bleed over of granules from previous tab.
1. Color: As selected by Architect after bid date from manufacturer's standard selection.

ARCHITECTURAL SHINGLES  
07310-5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

2. Shingle System to be complete with manufacturer's underlayment, starter shingles and hip and ridge shingles.
  3. Limitations: Use on roofs with slopes greater than 2:12 pitch. Low slope applications (2:12 to 4:12 pitch) require additional underlayment. Follow manufacturer's instructions for waterproofing in these areas per applications instructions on shingle package. On slopes greater than 2:12 pitch apply 1 inch diameter spots of asphalt roofing cement (ASTM D 4586 Type II) under the shingle tab corner according to application instructions provided on the shingle package.
- B. Underlayment:
1. Ice and Water Shield: Self-adhering waterproofing membrane underlayment: ASTM D 1970; minimum of 60-mil- thick sheet; glass-fiber-reinforced; SBS-modified asphalt; mineral-granule surfaced.
    - a. Provide at all valleys, ridges, penetrations, curbs, hips, roof edges, below copings, etc.
  2. Synthetic Underlayment/Felt: Polyolefin based scrim reinforced roofing underlayment: ASTM D4869; ASTM D 226; Fire resistance ASTM E 108, UL 790 Fire Resistant. UL classified as a Prepared Roofing Accessory.
    - a. Provide at all open field roof areas.
- C. Starter Shingles:
1. Starter Shingles: Primary shingle manufacturer's starter shingle: Starter must extend beyond primary field shingle nail penetration line. (Shall be located at the eaves and rakes or any other location where shingle roof begins. The nails should be positioned as near to the eave's edge as possible (max 3") while avoiding sealant.)
- D. Hip/ Ridge Shingles:
1. Hip and Ridge Shingles: Primary shingle manufacturer's pre-cut hip and ridge shingles applicable for wind warranty rating required under this Specification Section: ASTM 3018; ASTM 3462; ASTM E108, ASTM 3161
- E. Ridge Vent:
1. Rigid Ridge Vent: High-density polypropylene resin or other UV-stabilized plastic ridge vent: External wind deflector baffles; 18 sq. in. of net free area per linear foot; ASTM G155
- F. Intake Vents: (If required) - Attic roof vent that is an on-the-rooftop, intake ventilation product that lets fresh air in to balance ridge vents. Low profile to blend in with roof. Must have end caps/plugs for weather protection and finished appearance.
1. IN-VENT by Cor-A-Vent.
  2. Smart Vent by DCI attic Intake SV-TAP.
  3. Filtered Edge Vent by CertainTeed.
  4. Color to be selected by architect from manufacturer standards.
  5. Must be strictly installed according to manufacturer requirements.
- G. Gravity Vents:
1. High-Capacity Dome Roof Louver Style Gravity Vents; 144 square inches NFVA each; Galvanized Steel construction.
  2. Slant Roof Louver Style Gravity Vents; 50 square inches NFVA each; Heavy duty Galvanized construction.
  3. Finish: Site Painted with Shingle Color match system paint of shingle manufacturer.

ARCHITECTURAL SHINGLES  
07310-6

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

H. Fasteners:

1. Hot dip galvanized, sharp pointed, conventional ring-shank roof nails, 11 to 12 gauge, with minimum of 3/8" diameter flat heads, minimum of 1-1/4" – 1-1/2" length or of sufficient length to penetrate at least 3/4" into / beyond wood decking shall be used as required.  
Pneumatically driven fasteners, nails, or staples will not be allowed to be used on this project.
2. Dry-in felt shall be fastened with large 1" head plastic cap nails.
3. Fasteners for metal flashing materials shall be heavy galvanized. Exposed fasteners for sheet metal flashings shall be screw-type with weather seal washers. Prefinished to match.

I. Asphalt Roofing Cement:

1. Roof cement shall be asbestos free non-hardening, elastic waterproof type ASTM 4586, Type II; Consistency as required by roofing material manufacturer for application.
2. All other required materials necessary for a complete job as recommended by the roofing manufacturer or as required by good practice.

**2.3 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL WORK**

A. Work under this section includes all other incidental sheet metal items shown on drawings as accessories, trims, and flashings to the composition asphalt roof shingles that may not be specifically included in other sections of the specifications and/or work.

1. Install metal flashing in accordance with The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual per NRCA including but not limited to:
  - a. Step Flashing
  - b. Cricket Flashing
  - c. Rake and Eave Drip Edge Flashing
  - d. Apron Flashing
  - e. Pipe and Post Flashing
  - f. Lead Vent Pipe Flashing

B. Refer to Section 07600, Flashing and Sheetmetal, for additional information.

C. Miscellaneous Items

1. Install and flash all items furnished and set by others as specified, in accordance with good practice, properly flashed and bonded weathertight into roofing.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 PRE-ROOFING CONFERENCE**

- A. A pre-roofing conference is required before any roofing materials are installed. This conference shall be conducted by a representative of the Architect. Required attendees include representatives of the Owner, Department of Construction Management Inspector, General Contractor, Roofing Contractor, Sheet Metal Contractor, Roof Deck Manufacturer (if applicable), Roofing Materials Manufacturer (if warranty is required of this manufacturer) and all installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment. ATTENDANCE OF THE CONTRACTOR'S FOREMAN IS MANDATORY. If equipment of substantial size is to be placed on the roof, the Mechanical Contractor must also attend this meeting. Provide at least 72 hours advance notice to participants prior to convening pre-roofing conference.

ARCHITECTURAL SHINGLES  
07310-7

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- B. The pre-roofing conference is intended to clarify demolition and application requirements for work to be completed before roofing operations can begin. This would include a detailed review of the specifications, roof plans, roof deck information, flashing details, and approved shop drawings, submittal data, and samples. If conflict exists between the specifications and the Manufacturer's requirements, this shall be resolved. If this pre-roofing conference cannot be satisfactorily concluded without further inspection and investigation by any of the parties present, it shall be reconvened at the earliest possible time to avoid delay of the work. In no case should the work proceed without inspection of all roof deck areas and substantial agreement on all points.
- C. The following are to be accomplished during the conference:
1. To review all Factory Mutual and Underwriters Laboratories requirements listed in the specifications and resolve any questions or conflicts that may arise.
  2. To establish trade-related job schedules, including the installation of roof mounted mechanical equipment.
  3. To establish roofing schedule and work methods that will prevent roof damage.
  4. Require that all roof penetrations and walls be in place prior to installing the roof.
  5. To establish those areas on the job site that will be designated as work and storage areas for roofing operations.
  6. To establish weather and working temperature conditions to which all parties must agree.
  7. To establish acceptable methods of protecting the finished roof if any trades must travel across or work on or above any areas of the finished roof.
  8. Tour representative areas of roofing substrates (decks); inspect and discuss condition of substrate, penetrations and other preparatory work performed by other trades.
  9. Review structural loading limitations of deck and inspect deck for proper installation and fastening as required. Inspect deck for required slope etc.
  10. Review roofing system requirements (drawings, specifications, and other contract documents). Review required submittals / warranty issues. Verify that the manufacturer's label contains references to specified ASTM standards.
  11. Review and finalize construction schedule related to roofing work and verify availability of materials.
  12. Review roof application procedures, technique, details, and roof specifics. Maintain one copy of manufacturer's application instructions on the project site.
  13. Review job specific safety requirements, safety barriers, street blocking, haul routes, building access, site contact, facilities, security, etc.
- D. The Architect shall prepare a written report indicating actions taken and decisions made at this pre-roofing conference. This report shall be made a part of the project record and copies furnished the General Contractor and the Owner.

### **3.2 PREPARATION OF SUBSTRATE**

- A. Clean substrate of any projections and substances detrimental to shingling work.
- B. Coordinate installation of shingles with flashing and other adjoining work to ensure proper sequencing.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION – GENERAL**

- A. General: Comply with instructions and recommendations of shingle manufacturer in relationship

ARCHITECTURAL SHINGLES  
07310-8

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

to low slop roof application, except to extent more stringent requirements are indicated.

- B. Installer of shingles must examine substrate and conditions under which shingling work is to be performed and must notify Contractor in writing of unsatisfactory conditions. Do not proceed with shingling work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in manner acceptable to Installer.

### **3.4 APPLICATION OF UNDERLAYMENT AND ROOFING SHINGLES**

- A. (Note: For roof replacement projects, the contractor shall remove the existing shingles, underlayment, and associated flashing components down to the existing deck substrate prior to the application of new underlayment and shingles. Contractor is to notify the Architect of any damaged / deteriorated roof decking. If directed by the Architect, the contractor shall replace damaged portions of the decking per the Unit Price on the proposal form.)
- B. Underlayment Application:
  - 1. Synthetic Underlayment:
    - a. Apply one layer of synthetic underlayment horizontally, free of wrinkles, over entire roof deck surface, lapping succeeding courses 2" minimum in direction to shed water, and lapping ends min. 4" with adjacent end laps staggered 60". Provide 18" each side of hips. Fasten 36" max. o.c. or as necessary to assure stable placement of felt underlayment until the shingles are installed. Fasten with nails (no staples).
    - b. Install saturated felt starter courses as per low slope application requirements lapped and cemented as indicated by the manufacturer.
  - 2. Self-Adhered Underlayment:
    - a. Install at all Valleys, Ridges, Hips and Eaves, Penetrations, Curbs, Rakes, Changes in Elevation, and Miscellaneous Roof Edges.
    - b. Install underlayment centered to the center of the valley. Extend minimum of 18" in each direction from middle of all valleys.
    - c. Install upward from the edge of all eaves a total distance of 36".
    - d. Install on all ridges and hips a minimum of 18" in each direction from middle of ridge / hip line.
    - e. Install 18" wide strip each side of expansion joint flange.
- C. Shingle Application:
  - 1. Install Composition Asphalt Shingles system, including but not limited to shingles, pre-formed ridge, and hip shingles in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions and in accordance with The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual per NRCA.
  - 2. Install all shingles with uniform exposure as specified by the manufacturer.
  - 3. Install manufactured starter strips, pre-formed ridge, and hip shingles in strict accordance with manufacturer's printed requirements.
    - a. Provide starter strip at lowest roof edge and along rake edges.
    - b. Shingles shall extend  $\frac{3}{4}$ " beyond roof edge flashing.
    - c. Fasten ridge shingle with nail of length sufficient to fully penetrate roof decking.
  - 4. Install base and wall cap flashings (where roofing meets masonry walls) in strict accordance with the roofing manufacturer's printed specifications.
  - 5. Provide closed cut valleys per manufacturer's printed instructions; initial layer to lap the valley without fasteners in the valley and upper layer to be cut back two inches parallel to valley center.

ARCHITECTURAL SHINGLES  
07310-9

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

6. Fasten shingles in locations as indicated by the shingle manufacturer's printed instruction according to roof slope and wind load requirements with no less than six (6) nails installed in each shingle regardless of manufacturer's approvals.
  7. The application of the shingles will be by hand nailing ONLY. Pneumatic nail guns will NOT be permitted for installation of shingles.
  8. "Racking" of the shingles will not be permitted.
  9. Staples will NOT be permitted.
  10. Lap cap shingles in direction away from prevailing winds.
- D. Install vent pipe in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instruction for application.
  - E. Properly flash all other penetrations in accordance with the roofing manufacturer's printed instructions.
  - F. Upon completion of application all shingles shall be properly nailed, with even /uniform exposure, and straight lines and free of loose, crooked, or buckled shingles. Entire installation shall be watertight and properly bonded to flashing.

END OF SECTION

ARCHITECTURAL SHINGLES  
07310-10

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 07600 - FLASHING AND SHEET METAL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Extent of each type of flashing and sheet metal work is indicated on drawings and by provisions of this section.
- B. Types of work specified in this section include the following:
  - 1. Metal Counter Flashing and Base Flashing.
  - 2. Metal Diverters. Verify location with Architect for all entry doors.
  - 3. Exposed Metal Trim Units
  - 4. Eave Strip/Drip Edge
  - 5. Fascia
  - 6. Soffit
  - 7. Coping
  - 8. Gutters
  - 9. Downspouts
  - 10. Elastic flashing.
  - 11. Elastic roof/wall expansion joint systems.
- C. Integral masonry flashings are specified as masonry work in sections of Division 4.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AAMA 2604 - Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for High Performance Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels (with Coil Coating Appendix); 2017a.
- B. ASTM B209 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate; 2014.
- C. ASTM B209M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate (Metric); 2014.
- D. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants; 2018.
- E. ASTM D4479/D4479M - Standard Specification for Asphalt Roof Coatings - Asbestos-Free; 2007, with Editorial Revision (2012).
- F. ASTM D4586/D4586M - Standard Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos-Free; 2007, with Editorial Revision (2012).
- G. SMACNA (ASMM) - Architectural Sheet Metal Manual; 2012.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data; Flashing, Sheet Metal, Accessories: Submit manufacturer's product data, installation instructions and general recommendations for each specified sheet material and fabricated product.

#### 1.5 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Coordinate work of this section with interfacing and adjoining work for proper sequencing of each installation. Ensure best possible weather resistance and durability of work and protection of

FLASHING AND SHEETMETAL  
07600-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

materials and finishes.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SHEET METALS

- A. Pre-Finished Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M, with G90/Z275 zinc coating; minimum 24 gage thick base metal, shop pre-coated with PVDF (Polyvinylidene Fluoride) coating.
- B. Finish: The exposed finish on all exposed metals and similar items shall consist of a 70% KYNAR 500® resin base coating applied to a cleaned, pretreated and primed surface. The dry film thickness of the exterior coating shall not be less than .90 mil minimum, inclusive primer. The interior color finish shall consist of a backer coat with a dry film thickness of 0.5 mil. A low gloss finish is required to minimize the appearance of oil canning,
  - a. Colors: As selected by Architect after Bid Date, from manufacturer's standard colors including white.

### 2.2 GUTTERS

- A. Gutters: Provide flat shapes, no rolled formed stiffeners or ribbed allowed. Form gutters in "continuous" sections not less than 8 feet in length, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes and other special pieces as may be required. Join sections with riveted and soldered or sealed joints. Provide expansion-type slip joint at center of runs.
  - 1. Furnish gutter supports spaced at 36" on center constructed of same metal as gutters.
- B. Pre-Finished Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M, with G90/Z275 zinc coating; minimum 24 gage thick base metal, shop pre-coated with PVDF (Polyvinylidene Fluoride) coating.
- C. Finish: The exposed finish on all exposed metals and similar items shall consist of a 70% KYNAR 500® resin base coating applied to a cleaned, pretreated and primed surface. The dry film thickness of the exterior coating shall not be less than .90 mil minimum, inclusive primer. The interior color finish shall consist of a backer coat with a dry film thickness of 0.5 mil. A low gloss finish is required to minimize the appearance of oil canning,
  - a. Colors: As selected by Architect after Bid Date, from manufacturer's standard colors including white.

### 2.3 DOWNSPOUTS

- A. Downspouts: Form downspouts in sections approximately 10 feet long (**no corrugated sections**), complete with elbows and offsets. Join sections with not less than 1-1/2" telescoping joints. Provide fasteners, designed to securely hold downspouts not less than 1" away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and equally spaced at approximately 5 feet on center in between.
- B. Pre-Finished Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M, with G90/Z275 zinc coating; minimum 24 gage thick base metal, shop pre-coated with PVDF (Polyvinylidene Fluoride) coating.
- C. Finish: The exposed finish on all exposed metals and similar items shall consist of a 70% KYNAR 500® resin base coating applied to a cleaned, pretreated and primed surface. The dry film thickness of the exterior coating shall not be less than .90 mil minimum, inclusive primer. The interior color finish shall consist of a backer coat with a dry film thickness of 0.5 mil. A low gloss finish is required to minimize the appearance of oil canning,
  - a. Colors: As selected by Architect after Bid Date, from manufacturer's standard colors including white.

### 2.4 METAL SOFFIT SYSTEM – ALUMINUM SOFFIT

- A. Manufacturers: The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:

FLASHING AND SHEETMETAL  
07600-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama



1. Ply Gem/Mastic Aluminum Soffit (Basis of Design)
2. Alside Aluminum Soffits
3. Kaycan Aluminum
4. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.

B. Materials:

1. Non-Perforated Aluminum Soffit
  - a. Envoy V-Groove by PlyGem/Mastic
  - b. Alupalure 2000 finish
  - c. .019" thick
  - d. 12" exposure or as indicated on drawings.
2. Perforated Aluminum Soffit for ventilation
  - a. Envoy V-Groove by PlyGem/Mastic
  - b. 15 sq. in/Lin. ft..
  - c. Alupalure 2000 finish
  - d. .019" thick
  - e. 12" exposure or as indicated on drawings.

**2.5 SHEET FLASHING**

- A. Provide EPDM synthetic rubber sheet except where metal is indicated.
- B. Manufacturers: The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
  1. Nervastral Seal Pruf HD-20
  2. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.
- C. Materials:
  1. Elastic Sheet Flashing/Membrane: Manufacturer's standard flexible, elastic, black, nonreinforced, flashing sheet of 50 - 65 mils thickness.

**2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS & ACCESSORIES**

- A. Solder:
  1. For use with steel or copper, provide 50 - 50 tin/lead solder (ASTM B 32), with rosin flux.
  2. For use with stainless steel: Provide 60 - 40 tin/lead solder (ASTM B 32), with acid-chloride type flux, except use rosin flux over tinned surfaces.
- B. Fasteners: Same metal as flashing/sheet metal or, other noncorrosive metal as recommended by sheet manufacturer. Match finish of exposed heads with material being fastened.
- C. Bituminous Coating: FS TT-C-494 or SSPC - Paint 12, solvent type bituminous mastic, nominally free of sulfur, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat.
- D. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene; nonhardening, nonskinning, non-drying, nonmigrating sealant.
- E. Epoxy Seam Sealer: 2-part noncrossive metal seam cementing compound, recommended by metal manufacturer for exterior/interior non-moving joints including riveted joints.

FLASHING AND SHEETMETAL  
07600-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- F. Adhesives: Type recommended by flashing sheet manufacturer for waterproof/ weather-resistant seaming and adhesive application of flashing sheet.
- G. Paper Slip Sheet: 5-lb. rosin-sized building paper.
- H. Polyethylene Underlayment: 6-mil carbonated polyethylene film; FS L-P-512.
- I. Reglets: Metal or plastic units of type and profile indicated, compatible with flashing indicated, noncrossive.
- J. Metal Accessories: Provide sheet metal clips, straps, anchoring devices and similar accessory units as required for installation of work, matching or compatible with material being installed, noncrossive, size and gage required for performance.
- K. Roofing Cement: Must be compatible with materials with which it comes in contact.

## **2.9 FABRICATED UNITS**

- A. General Metal Fabrication: Shop-fabricate work to greatest extent possible. Comply with details shown, and with applicable requirements of SMACNA "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and other recognized industry practices. Fabricate for waterproof and weather-resistant performance; with expansion provisions for running work, sufficient to permanently prevent leakage, damage or deterioration of the work. Form work to fit substrates. Comply with material manufacturer instructions and recommendations for forming material. Form exposed sheet metal work without excessive oil-canning, buckling and tool marks, true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
- B. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams in sheet metal with flat-lock seams. For metal other than aluminum, tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder. Form aluminum seams with epoxy seam sealer; rivet joints for additional strength where required.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Where lapped or bayonet-type expansion provisions in work cannot be used, or would not be sufficiently water/weatherproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 2" deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).
- D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, non-expansion type joints are indicated or required for proper performance of work, form metal to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant, in compliance with SMACNA standards.
- E. Separations: Provide for separation of metal from noncompatible metal or corrosive substrates by coating concealed surfaces at locations of contact, with bituminous coating or other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer/fabricator.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. General: Except as otherwise indicated, comply with manufacturer's installation instructions and recommendations, and with SMACNA "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual".
  - 1. Anchor units of work securely in place by methods indicated, providing for thermal expansion of metal units; conceal fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints and seams which will be permanently watertight and weatherproof.
- B. Underlayment: Where aluminum is to be installed directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a slip sheet of red rosin paper and a course of polyethylene underlayment.
- C. Bed flanges of work in a thick coat of bituminous roofing cement where required for waterproof performance.
- D. Install reglets to receive counter-flashing in manner and by methods indicated. Where shown in concrete, furnish reglets to trades of concrete work for installation as work of Division-3 sections.

FLASHING AND SHEETMETAL  
07600-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

Where shown in masonry, furnish reglets to trades of masonry work, for installation as work of Division-4 sections.

1. Install counter-flashing in reglets, either by snap-in seal arrangement, or by wedging in place for anchorage and filling reglet with mastic or elastomeric sealant, as indicated and depending on degree of sealant exposure.

### **3.2 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces, removing substances which might cause corrosion of metal or deterioration of finishes.
- B. Protection: Installer shall advise Contractor of required procedures for surveillance and protection of flashings and sheet metal work during construction, to ensure that work will be without damage or deterioration, other than natural weathering, at time of substantial completion.

**END OF SECTION**

FLASHING AND SHEETMETAL  
07600-5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 07900 - JOINT SEALERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. The extent of each form and type of joint sealer is indicated on drawings and by provisions of this section.
- B. The applications for joint sealers as work of this section include the following:
  - 1. Joints (Interior).
  - 2. Joints (Exterior).
  - 3. Flashing Joints.
  - 4. Interior wall/ceiling joints.
- C. General Performance: Except as otherwise indicated, joint sealers are required to establish and maintain airtight and waterproof continuous seals on a permanent basis, within recognized limitations of wear and aging as indicated for each application. Failures of installed sealers to comply with this requirement will be recognized as failures of materials and workmanship.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product specifications, handling/installation/curing instructions, and performance tested data sheets for each elastomeric product required.

#### 1.4 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of liquid sealants under unfavorable weather conditions. Install elastomeric sealants when temperature by manufacturer for installation.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. General: Manufacturers listed in this article include those known to produce the indicated category of prime joint sealant material, either as a nominally pure generic product or as an equivalent-performance modification thereof or proprietary product.
- B. Manufacturers: The following manufacturer's products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
  - 1. Acrylic Emulsion Latex Sealants:
    - a. Bostik.
    - b. Pecora Corp.
    - c. Sonneborn Building Products.
    - d. Tremco, Inc.
  - 2. Polyurethane Sealants:
    - a. Bostik.
    - b. Master Builders.
    - c. Pecora Corp.
    - d. Sonneborn Building Products.

JOINT SEALERS  
07900-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- e. Tremco, Inc.
- 3. Butyl Sealants:
  - a. Bostik.
  - b. TEC Incorporated.
  - c. Tremco, Inc.
- 4. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.

## **2.2 MATERIALS**

- A. NOTE: The use of silicone sealants shall not be used at any exterior conditions.
- B. General Purpose Exterior Sealant: Polyurethane; ASTM C 920, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses M, G, and A; single component. (Silicone sealant shall not be used at exterior conditions).
  - 1. Color: Standard colors matching finished surfaces.
  - 2. Applications: Use for:
    - a. Control, expansion, and soft joints in masonry, stone or concrete.
    - b. Joints between concrete and other materials.
    - c. Joints between metal frames and other materials.
    - d. Other exterior joints for which no other sealant is indicated.
- C. Exterior Metal Lap Joint Sealant: Butyl or polyisobutylene, nondrying, nonskinning, noncuring.
  - 1. Applications: Use for:
    - a. Concealed sealant bead in sheet metal work.
- D. General Purpose Interior Sealant: Acrylic emulsion latex; ASTM C 834, single component, paintable.
  - 1. Color: Standard colors matching finished surfaces.
  - 2. Applications: Use for:
    - a. Interior wall and ceiling control joints.
    - b. Joints between door and window frames and wall surfaces.
    - c. Other interior joints for which no other type of sealant is indicated.
- E. Acoustical Sealant: Butyl or acrylic sealant; ASTM C 920, Grade NS, Class 12-1/2, Uses M and A; single component, solvent release curing, nonskinning.
  - 1. Applications: Use for concealed locations only:
    - a. Sealant bead between top stud runner and structure and between bottom stud track and floor or wall.
- F. Paving Joint Sealant: Polyurethane, self-leveling; ASTM C 920, Class 25, Uses T, M and A; single component.
  - 1. Color: Standard color matching finished surfaces.
  - 2. Applications: Use for:
    - a. Joints in sidewalks and paving, either vehicular or pedestrian.
    - b. Isolation joints and control joints in slabs on grade.

JOINT SEALERS  
07900-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

G. Bituminous and Fiber Joint Filler (BtmF-JF) provide resilient and non-extruding type premolded bituminous-impregnated fiberboard units complying with ASTM D 1751; FS HH-F-341, Type I; or AASHTO M213.

H. Miscellaneous Materials:

1. Joint Primer/Sealer: Provide type of joint primer/sealer recommended by sealant manufacturer for joint surfaces to be primed or sealed.
2. Bond Breaker Tape (BB-Tp): Provide polyethylene tape or other plastic tape as recommended by sealant manufacturer, to be applied to sealant-contact surfaces where bond to substrate or joint filler must be avoided for proper performance of sealant. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.
3. Sealant Backer Rod (S-BR): provide compressible rod stock of polyethylene foam, polyurethane foam, polyethylene jacketed polyurethane foam, butyl rubber foam, neoprene foam or other recommended by sealant manufacturer for back-up of and compatibility with sealant. Where used with hot-applied sealant, provide heat-resistant type which will not be deteriorated by sealant application temperature as indicated.
  - a. Rod Size to Joint Width: Size of all backer rod width shall be 2 times the width of joint/gap to be sealed.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSPECTION**

- A. Installer must examine substrate, (joint surfaces) and conditions under which joint sealer work is to be performed and must notify Prime Contractor of unsatisfactory conditions.

#### **3.2 JOINT PREPARATION**

- A. Clean joint surfaces immediately before installation of gaskets, sealants or caulking compounds. Remove dirt, insecure coatings, moisture and other substrate which could interfere with seal of gasket or bond of sealant of caulking compound. Etch concrete and masonry joint surfaces as recommended by sealant manufacturer. Roughen vitreous and glazed joint surfaces as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- B. Prime or seal joint surfaces where indicated, and where recommended by sealant manufacturer. Confine primer/sealer to areas of sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

#### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's printed instructions except where more stringent requirements are shown on specified, and except where manufacturer's technical representative directs otherwise.
- B. Set joint filler units at depth or position in joint as indicated to coordinate with other work, including installation of bond breakers, backer rods and sealant. Do not leave voids or gaps between ends of joint filler units.
- C. Install sealant backer rod for liquid-applied sealants, except where shown to be omitted or recommended to be omitted by sealant manufacturer for application indicated.
- D. Install bond breaker tape where indicated and where required by manufacturer's recommendations to ensure that liquid-applied sealants will perform as intended.
- E. Employ only proven installation techniques, which will ensure that sealants are deposited in uniform, continuous ribbons without gaps or air pockets, with complete "wetting" of joint bond surfaces equally on opposite sides. Except as otherwise indicated, fill sealant rabbet to a slightly concave surface, slightly below adjoining surfaces. Where horizontal joints are between a horizontal surface and vertical surface, fill joint to form a slight cove, so that joint will not trap moisture and dirt.

JOINT SEALERS  
07900-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- F. Install sealant to depths as shown or, if not shown, as recommended by sealant manufacturer but within the following general limitations, measured at center (thin) section of beads;
- G. For normal moving joints sealed with elastomeric sealants but not subject to traffic, fill joints to a depth equal to 50% of joint width, but neither more than 1/2" deep nor less than 1/4" deep.
- H. Spillage: Do not allow sealants or compounds to overflow from confines of joints, or to spill onto adjoining work, or to migrate into voids of exposed finishes. Clean adjoining surfaces by whatever means may be necessary to eliminate evidence of spillage.
- I. Recess exposed edges of gaskets and exposed joint fillers slightly behind adjoining surfaces, unless otherwise shown, so that compressed units will not protrude from joints.
- J. Bond ends of gaskets together with adhesive of "weld" by other means as recommended by manufacturer to ensure continuous watertight and airtight performance. Miter-cut and bond ends at corners unless molded corner units are provided.

### **3.4 CURE AND PROTECTION**

- A. Cure sealants and caulking compounds in compliance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, to obtain high early bond strength, internal cohesive strength and surface durability. Advise Prime Contractor of procedures required for cure and protection of joint sealers during construction period, so that they will be without deterioration or damage (other than normal wear and weathering) at time of substantial completion. Cure and protect sealants in manner which will minimize increases in modulus of elasticity and other accelerated aging effects. Replace or restore sealants which are damaged or deteriorated during construction period.

**END OF SECTION**

JOINT SEALERS  
07900-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 08100 - STEEL DOOR FRAMES

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes:
  - 1. Steel Frames.
- B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
  - 1. Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry" for building anchors into and grouting frames in masonry construction.
  - 2. Division 8 Section "Wood Doors" for solid-core wood doors installed in steel frames.
  - 3. Division 8 Section "Finish Hardware" for door hardware and weatherstripping.
  - 4. Division 8 Section "Glazing" for glass in steel doors and sidelights.
  - 5. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies".
  - 6. Division 9 Section "Painting".

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's specifications for fabrication and installation, including data substantiating that products comply with requirements.
- C. Shop Drawings: Submit for fabrication and installation of steel door frames. Include details of each frame type, conditions at openings, details of construction, location and installation requirements of finish hardware and reinforcements, and details of joints and connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.
- D. Frame Schedule: Submit schedule of frames using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Contract Drawings.
  - 1. Indicate coordination of glazing frames and stops with glass and glazing requirements.
- E. Samples for initial selection in the form of manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors available for factory-finished frames.
- F. Samples for verification of each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples not less than 3 by 5 inches (75 by 125 mm) and of same thickness and material indicated for final unit of Work. Where finishes involve normal color and texture variations, include Sample sets showing the full range of variations expected.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Provide frames complying with ANSI/SDI 100 "Recommended Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames" and as specified.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver frames cardboard-wrapped or crated to provide protection during transit and job storage. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to finish of factory-finished frames.
- B. Inspect frames on delivery for damage. Minor damages may be repaired provided refinished items match new work and are acceptable to Architect; otherwise, remove and replace damaged items as directed.

STEEL DOOR FRAMES  
08100-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



- C. Store frames at building site under cover. Place units on minimum 4-inch- (100-mm-) high wood blocking. Avoid using non-vented plastic or canvas shelters that could create a humidity chamber. If cardboard wrappers on frames become wet, remove cartons immediately. Provide minimum 1/4-inch (6-mm) spaces between stacked frames to promote air circulation.

## **PART 2 – PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Pioneer Industries
  - 2. Rocky Mountain Metals, Inc.
  - 3. Republic Frames/Allegion
  - 4. Steelcraft - Allegion
  - 5. Amweld Building Products Div.
  - 6. Ceco Corp.
  - 7. Curries Mfg. Inc.
  - 8. Fenestra.
  - 9. Bymoco
  - 10. Mesker

### **2.2 MATERIALS**

- A. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheets and Strip: Commercial-quality carbon steel, pickled and oiled, complying with ASTM A 569 (ASTM A 569M) and ASTM A 568.
- B. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheets: Carbon steel complying with ASTM A 366 (ASTM A 366M), commercial quality, and ASTM A 568.
- C. Supports and Anchors: Fabricated from not less than 18 gauge galvanized steel sheet.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard units. Where items are to be built into exterior walls, hot-dip galvanize complying with ASTM A 153, Class C or D as applicable.
- E. Shop Applied Paint:
  - 1. Primer: Rust-inhibitive enamel or paint, either air-drying or baking, suitable as a base for specified finish paints.

### **2.3 FRAMES**

- A. Provide metal frames for doors, transoms, sidelights, borrowed lights, and other openings, according to ANSI/SDI 100 and of types and styles as shown on Drawings and schedules.
- B. Conceal fastenings, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate frames as follows:
  - 1. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped and face welded corners.
  - 2. Interior Frames: 16 gage cold rolled steel
  - 3. Exterior Frames: 14 gage A60 galvanized steel.
- C. Door Silencers: Except on weather stripped frames, drill stops to receive 3 silencers on strike jambs of single-door frames and 2 silencers on heads of double-door frames.
- D. Plaster Guards: Provide minimum 0.0179-inch- (0.45-mm-) thick steel plaster guards or mortar boxes at back of hardware cutouts where mortar or other materials might obstruct hardware operation and to close off interior of openings.

STEEL DOOR FRAMES  
08100-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- E. Grout: When required in masonry construction, as specified in Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry."

## **2.4 FABRICATION**

- A. Fabricate steel door frame units to be rigid, neat in appearance, and free from defects, warp, or buckle. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. Clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment, to assure proper assembly at Project site. Comply with ANSI/SDI 100 requirements.
  - 1. Tolerances: Comply with SDI 117 "Manufacturing Tolerances Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
- B. Galvannealed Steel Frames: For the following locations, fabricate door frames from galvannealed steel sheet according to SDI 112.
  - 1. At exterior locations.
  - 2. Where indicated.
- C. Exposed Fasteners: Unless otherwise indicated, provide countersunk flat or oval heads for exposed screws and bolts.
- D. Hardware Preparation: Prepare doors and frames to receive mortised and concealed hardware according to final door hardware schedule and templates provided by hardware supplier.
- E. Comply with applicable requirements of ANSI A115 Series specifications for door and frame preparation for hardware.
  - 1. For concealed overhead door closers, provide space, cutouts, reinforcing, and provisions for fastening in top rail of doors or head of frames, as applicable.
- F. Reinforce doors frames to receive surface-applied hardware. Drilling and tapping for surface-applied hardware may be done at Project site.
- G. Locate hardware as indicated on Shop Drawings or, if not indicated, according to the Door and Hardware Institute's (DHI) "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."

## **2.5 FINISHES, GENERAL**

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual" for recommendations relative to applying and designating finishes.
- B. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1," for steel sheet finishes. Apply primers and organic finishes to doors and frames after fabrication.

## **2.6 GALVANIZED STEEL SHEET FINISHES**

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint for regalvanizing welds in galvanized steel, with dry film containing not less than 94 percent zinc dust by weight, and complying with DOD-P-21035 or SSPC- Paint 20.
- B. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply air-dried primer specified below immediately after cleaning and pretreatment.
  - 1. Shop Primer: Zinc-dust, zinc-oxide primer paint complying with performance requirements of FS TT-P-641, Type II.

## **2.7 STEEL SHEET FINISHES**

- A. Surface Preparation: Solvent-clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1 to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel to comply with SSPC-SP 5 (White Metal Blast Cleaning) or SSPC-SP 8 (Pickling).
- B. Pretreatment: Immediately after surface preparation, apply a conversion coating of type suited to organic coating applied over it.
- C. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Apply shop primer that complies with ANSI A224.1

STEEL DOOR FRAMES  
08100-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

acceptance criteria, is compatible with finish paint systems indicated, and has capability to provide a sound foundation for field-applied topcoats. Apply primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.

### **PART 3 – EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install steel door frames, and accessories according to Shop Drawings, manufacturer's data, and as specified.
- B. Placing Frames: Comply with provisions of SDI 105, unless otherwise indicated. Set frames accurately in position, plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. Install foot brace at bottom of all metal frames until installation of door. After wall construction is completed, remove temporary braces and spreaders, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
  - 1. Except for frames located in existing concrete, masonry, or gypsum board assembly construction, place frames before constructing enclosing walls and ceilings.
  - 2. Metal frames at all interior wall conditions shall be inset 1/4" from edge of wall to allow for caulk bead, see detail on drawings.
  - 3. In plaster or masonry walls constructed with antifreeze additives, protect inside (concealed) faces of door frames using fibered asphalt emulsion coating. Apply approximately 1/8" thick over shop primer and allow to thoroughly dry before handling.
  - 4. In masonry construction, install at least 3 wall anchors per jamb adjacent to hinge location on hinge jamb and at corresponding heights on strike jamb. Acceptable anchors include masonry wire anchors and masonry T-shaped anchors.
  - 5. At existing concrete or masonry construction, install at least 3 completed opening anchors per jamb adjacent to hinge location on hinge jamb and at corresponding heights on strike jamb. Set frames and secure to adjacent construction with bolts and masonry anchorage devices.
  - 6. Install fire-rated frames according to NFPA 80.

#### **3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Prime Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth any rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying primer.
- B. Protection Removal: Immediately before final inspection, remove protective wrappings from doors and frames.

**END OF SECTION**

STEEL DOOR FRAMES  
08100-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 08211 - WOOD DOORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Solid core doors with wood veneer faces.
  - 2. Factory finishing of flush wood doors.
  - 3. Louvers for flush wood doors.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product data for each type of door, including details of core and edge construction, trim for openings and louvers, and factory-finishing specifications.
- C. Shop drawings indicating location and size of each door, elevation of each kind of door, details of construction, location and extent of hardware blocking, fire ratings, requirements for veneer matching and factory finishing and other pertinent data.
  - 1. For factory-machined doors, indicate dimensions and locations of cutouts for locksets and other cutouts adjacent to light and louver openings.
- D. Samples for initial selection in the form of color charts consisting of actual materials in small sections for the following:
  - 1. Faces of factory-finished doors with transparent finish. Show the full range of colors available for stained finishes.
  - 2. Faces of factory-finished doors with opaque finish. Show the full range of colors available.
- E. Samples for verification in the form and size indicated below:
  - 1. Corner sections of doors approximately 12 inches (300 mm) square with door faces and edgings representing the typical range of color and grain for each species of veneer and solid lumber required. Finish sample with same materials proposed for factory-finished doors.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Quality Standard: Comply with the following standard:
  - 1. NWWDA Quality Standard: I.S.1-A, "Architectural Wood Flush Doors," of the National Wood Window and Door Association.
  - 2. AWI Quality Standard: "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" of the Architectural Woodwork Institute for grade of door, core, construction, finish, and other requirements.
- B. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Provide wood doors that comply with NFPA 80; are identical in materials and construction to units tested in door and frame assemblies per ASTM E 152; and are labeled and listed by UL, Warnock Hersey, or another testing and inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Oversized Fire-Rated Wood Doors: For door assemblies exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide manufacturer's certificate stating that doors conform to all standard construction requirements of tested and labeled fire-door assemblies except for size.

WOOD DOORS  
08211-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

2. Temperature Rise Rating: At stairwell enclosures, provide doors that have a temperature rise rating of 450 deg F (250 deg C) maximum in 30 minutes of fire exposure.
  3. Temperature Rise Rating: At stairwell enclosures, provide doors that have a temperature rise rating of 250 deg F (139 deg C) maximum in 30 minutes of fire exposure.
- C. Single-Source Responsibility: Obtain doors from one source and by a single manufacturer.

## **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING**

- A. Protect doors during transit, storage, and handling to prevent damage, soiling, and deterioration. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's instructions.
1. Comply with Technical Bulletin 420-R for delivery, storage, and handling of doors.
- B. Identify each door with individual opening numbers as designated on shop drawings, using temporary, removable, or concealed markings.

## **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Conditioning: Do not deliver or install doors until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and will maintain temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

## **1.7 WARRANTY**

- A. General Warranty: Door manufacturer's warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Door Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit written agreement on door manufacturer's standard form signed by manufacturer, Installer, and Contractor, agreeing to repair or replace defective doors that have warped (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch (6.35 mm) in a 42-by-84-inch (1067-by-2134-mm) section or that show telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch (0.25 mm in a 75-mm) span, or do not conform to tolerance limitations of referenced quality standards.
1. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors where defect was not apparent prior to hanging.
  2. Warranty shall be in effect during the following period of time after date of Substantial Completion.
    - a. Solid Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering doors that may be incorporated in the Work (No other Manufacturer to be used unless prior approved by addenda)
- B. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide doors by one of the following:
1. Oshkosh Door Company; 2501 Universal Street, P.O. Box 2468, Oshkosh, WI 54904; Ph.: 920.233.6161; [www.oshkoshdoor.com](http://www.oshkoshdoor.com).
  2. VT Industries; 1000 Industrial Park, P.O. Box 490, Holstein, IA 51025; Ph.: 712.368.4381; [www.vtindustries.com](http://www.vtindustries.com).
  3. Haley Brothers, Inc.; 6291 Orangethorpe Ave., Buena Park, CA 90620; Ph.: 714.670.2112; [www.haleybros.com](http://www.haleybros.com).

### **2.2 INTERIOR FLUSH WOOD DOORS**

WOOD DOORS  
08211-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- A. Solid Core Doors for Transparent Finish: Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Faces: Plain Sliced White Birch, Book/Run Matching
  - 2. Grade: Premium "A"
  - 3. Construction: 5 ply, Hot Pressed
  - 4. Core: Particleboard Core to meet or exceed ANSI/A208.1 for 1-LD-1 or 1-LD-2 door core
  - 5. Bonding: Stiles and rails bonded to core, then entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.
  - 6. Pair Matching: Required at all pairs of doors.
- B. Fire-Rated Solid Core Doors: Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Faces and Grade: Provide faces and grade to match non-fire-rated doors in same area of building, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Construction: Manufacturer's standard core construction as required to provide fire-resistance rating indicated.
  - 3. Edge Construction: Provide manufacturer's standard laminated-edge construction for improved screw-holding capability and split resistance compatible hardwood
  - 4. Pairs: Furnish formed-steel edges and astragals for pairs of fire-rated doors, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 5. Pairs: Provide fire-rated pairs with fire-retardant stiles that are labeled and listed for kinds of applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals.

### **2.3 FABRICATION**

- A. Fabricate flush wood doors to comply with following requirements:
  - 1. In sizes indicated for job-site fitting.
  - 2. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated, with the following uniform clearances and bevels:
    - a. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting. Comply with requirements of NFPA 80 for fire-resistance-rated doors.
  - 3. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame shop drawings, DHI A115-W series standards, and hardware templates.
    - a. Coordinate measurements of hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before proceeding with factory machining.
    - b. Metal Astragals: Pre-machine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.
- B. Openings: Cut and trim openings through doors to comply with applicable requirements of referenced standards for kind(s) of door(s) required.
  - 1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
  - 2. Louvers: Factory install louvers in prepared openings.

### **2.4 SHOP PRIMING**

- A. Transparent Finish: Shop-seal faces and edges of doors for transparent finish with stain (if required), other required pretreatments, and first coat of finish as specified.

### **2.5 FACTORY FINISHING**

- A. General: Comply with referenced quality standard's requirements for factory finishing.
- B. Finish wood doors at factory.

WOOD DOORS  
08211-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- C. Transparent Finish: Comply with requirements indicated for grade, finish system, staining effect, and sheen.
  - 1. Grade: Premium.
  - 2. Finish: AWI System TR-6 or better in Factory standard color as directed by the Architect.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine installed door frames prior to hanging door:
  - 1. Verify that frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with plumb jambs and level heads.
  - 2. Reject doors with defects.
- B. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Hardware: For installation see Division 8 Section "Door Hardware."
- B. Manufacturer's Instructions: Install wood doors to comply with manufacturer's instructions and referenced quality standard and as indicated.
  - 1. Install fire-rated doors in corresponding fire-rated frames according to requirements of NFPA 80.
- C. Job-Fit Doors: Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted with fire-rated doors. Machine doors for hardware. Seal cut surfaces after fitting and machining.
  - 1. Fitting Clearances for Non-Fire-Rated Doors: Provide 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) at jambs and heads, 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) per leaf at meeting stiles for pairs of doors, and 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) clearance from bottom of door to top of threshold.
  - 2. Fitting Clearances for Fire-Rated Doors: Comply with NFPA 80.
  - 3. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) at lock and hinge edges.
  - 4. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) on lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.
- D. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
- E. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish after installation, if fitting or machining is required at the job site.

### **3.3 ADJUSTING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Operation: Re-hang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Finished Doors: Refinish or replace doors damaged during installation.
- C. Protect doors as recommended by door manufacturer to ensure that wood doors will be without damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.

## **END OF SECTION**

WOOD DOORS  
08211-4

**SECTION 08220 – FIBERGLASS REINFORCED PLASTIC (FRP) DOORS & IMPACT RESISTANT ALUMINUM FRAME SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections apply to work of this section.

**1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK**

- A. The extent of each type of door is shown on the drawings and schedules. The following types of doors are required:
  - 1. Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic (FRP) Doors & Impact Resistant Aluminum Frame Systems.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufactures Certification: Manufacturer is to have a minimum of 25 years experience in the production of pre-hardwared and pre-assembled door systems, using the type of materials specified for this project.
- B. Installers Qualifications: For the installation of the entrance systems, use only mechanics who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the skills required and who are completely familiar with the manufacturer's recommended methods of installation plus the requirements of this work.

**1.4 WARRANTY**

- A. Warranty all fiberglass doors for a period of 10 years against failure due to corrosion. Additionally, warranty all fiberglass doors on materials and workmanship for a period of 10 years, including warp, separation or delaminating and expansion of the core.

**1.5 TEST REPORTS AND PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR ALUMINUM HYBRID FRP NARROW STILE DOORS – HURRICANE RATED**

- A. Entrance systems must comply with requirements for system performance characteristics as determined by the testing methods that follow:
  - 1. Two copies of current test reports covering the test procedures as listed are to be included with the submittals.
- B. Complete System Requirements Test: Complete system units that include door, frame and hardware are to meet the following criteria:
  - 1. FBC Protocol for TAS 201; TAS 202; TAS 203 – Pass, and the following additional minimum criteria in conjunction with the qualifications as outlined by previously referenced standards:
    - a. Thermal Transmittance Tests:
      - 1) U-factors expressed in Btu/ hr-ft (2)-F - AAMA 1503-98 - 0.58
      - 2) R-value expressed in hr-ft (2)-F/Btu - ASTM 1503-98 - 1.73
    - b. Structural Performance Tests:
      - 1) Air Infiltration –  
ASTM E283 @ 1.56 psf (25 mph) - 0.41 cfm/ft (2)  
ASTM E283 @ 6.24 psf (50 mph) – 1.06 cfm/ft (2)
      - 2) Water Penetration –  
ASTM E331 - 15 Min Cycle - NO ENTRY
      - 3) Uniform Static Load for single door- ASTM E330 - (+) - 195.0
    - c. Structural Integrity Tests:

FIBERGLASS REINFORCED PLASTIC (FRP) DOORS &  
IMPACT RESISTANT ALUMINUM FRAME SYSTEMS  
08220-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



- 1) Exit Bar Pull Off Test - 1300 lbs. minimum load resistance before exit bar disengages from door.
- 2) Closer Pull Off - 1638 lbs. minimum load resistance before closer disengages from door.
- d. Windborne Debris Resistance Tests:
  - 1) Large Missile Impact Test - SFBC PA 201 - 94 – PASSED
  - 2) Cyclic Wind Pressure Test - SFBC PA 203 - 94 - 65PSF
  - 3) Forced Entry Test - SFBC 3603.2 - 300 lbs. – PASSED
- e. Indoor Air Quality Test: ASTM D 6670-01: GREENGUARD Environmental Institute Certified including GREENGUARD for Children and Schools Certification.
- C. Face Sheet Requirements Test: FRP material and FRP face sheets with core material are to meet the following criteria:
  1. Center Door Section (face sheet/core/face sheet) Gardner Impact Test – Nominal Value, ASTM D 3029 120 in-lb.
  2. FRP Material (MR85)
    - a. Flexural Strength Test – ASTM D790 - 22,600 psi (inward) 24,400 psi(outward)
    - b. Izod Impact Strength Test – ASTM D256 - 15.36 ft-lb./in thickness
    - c. Barcol Hardness – ASTM D2583 – 50

## **1.6 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Technical Data Including:
  1. Acknowledgment that products submitted meet requirements of standards referenced.
  2. Manufacturer shall provide certificate of compliance with current local and federal regulations as it applies to the manufacturing process.
  3. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
  4. Schedule of doors indicating the specific reference numbers used on the owner's project documents, noting door type, frame type, size, handing and applicable hardware.
  5. Details of core and edge construction, including factory construction specifications.
  6. Certification of manufacturer's qualifications.
- B. Submittal Drawings for approval shall be submitted prior to manufacture and shall include the following Information and formatting:
  1. Summary door schedule indicating the specific reference numbers as used on owner's drawings, with columns noting door type, frame type, size, handing, accessories and hardware.
  2. A drawing depicting front and rear door elevations showing hardware with bill of material for each door.
  3. Drawing showing dimensional location of each hardware item and size of each door.
  4. Individual part drawing and specifications for each hardware item and FRP part or product.
  5. Construction and mounting detail for each frame type.

## **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Each door shall be delivered individually crated for protection from damage in cardboard containers, clearly marked with project information, door location, specific reference number as

FIBERGLASS REINFORCED PLASTIC (FRP) DOORS &  
IMPACT RESISTANT ALUMINUM FRAME SYSTEMS  
08220-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

shown on drawings, and shipping information. Each crate shall contain all fasteners necessary for installation as well as complete installation instructions.

1. Doors shall be stored in the original container on edge, out of inclement weather for protection against the elements.
2. Handle doors pursuant to the manufacturer's recommendations as posted on outside of crate.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
  1. Special-Lite - SL-17 HR Series, FRP/Aluminum Hybrid
  2. Commercial Door Systems - F200-HR Series, Aluminum Hybrid FRP Doors
- B. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.
- C. NOTE: Manufacturer must meet all technical requirements listed herein.
- D. Door Systems Classifications: Door systems for this project are based on criteria as cited for Systems meeting FBC Protocols TAS 201, 202, 203. **Doors were tested as a unit** and as such, to meet specified criteria all specifications regarding frame and door size must be met and testing documentation outlining the unit specifics as tested must be provided.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Members:
  1. Doors, frames, miscellaneous components and entrance systems accessories are to be from the same manufacturer. Splitting the source for these items will not be permitted.
  2. Provide alloy and temper as recommended for resistance to corrosion and color control. Aluminum member references are ASTM B 221 for extrusions and ASTM B 209 for sheets.

### 2.3 ALUMINUM FRAMES

- A. Standard Closed Back Frames shall be of extruded aluminum 6063-T5 alloy and a wall thickness of .125".
  1. Vertical Members: All vertical frame jambs and mullions will be full height of opening.
  2. Sections: Tube sections will be 2" x 4 1/2" with joints connected by use of reinforcing clips and machine screws.
  3. Finish to be determined by architect.
  4. Closed Back Frames are: **CDS Model 2400** or equal

### 2.4 FIBERGLASS NARROW STILE HURRICANE RATED ALUMINUM HYBRID (FRP) DOORS

- A. Structural Main Frame: Doors have an aluminum main frame constructed from extruded aluminum 6063 - T5 alloy. Doors are 1 3/4" thick. Main-frame tube is to be a single extruded unit measuring 1 1/2" x 2 1/2" (O.D.) on Sides; Bottom and top rail with a 6" (O.D.) tube.
- B. Main Frame Stile Wall Thickness:
  1. Side Stiles Minimum 1/8" thick hinge edge wall.
  2. Side Stiles Minimum 1/8" thick face walls.
  3. Bottom Rail Minimum 1/8" thick face walls.
  4. Top Rail Minimum 1/8" thick all walls.

FIBERGLASS REINFORCED PLASTIC (FRP) DOORS &  
IMPACT RESISTANT ALUMINUM FRAME SYSTEMS  
08220-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- C. Main Frame Joinery: Assembly for the meeting joints of the Rails and Stiles on the main-frame are to include the following:
  - 1. Tie rods inserted into top and bottom rails.
  - 2. Mortise & Tenon with four-point connect fasteners (per joint).
  - 3. **\*\*WELDED JOINTS WILL NOT BE ACCEPTED\*\***
- D. Face Sheets: Face sheets will be fiberglass reinforced polyester, .120" thick, and have a pebble-like embossed finish. Face sheet color will be selected from manufacturer's standard color chart.
- E. FRP face sheets are MR85 HIGH IMPACT FRP MATERIAL that has been tested by ASTM S5420 Gardner Impact Test with "Mean Failure Energy" rating no lower than 411.84 in-lb. (or equal).
- F. Core Material: Core material will be 5-lb. density polyurethane with a flame spread rating of no more than 25.
  - 1. URETHANE CORE DOORS will require a letter from the manufacturer offering a special guarantee that the FRP face sheets will not delaminate (bubble) for a period of 25 years, AND that the manufacturer will cover ALL replacement costs if delamination does occur.
- G. Edge Trim: Stile Edge Trim is an INTEGRAL part of the main frame and interlocks with the panel. Top and bottom edge trim is removable.
  - 1. Snap on edge trim will not be accepted.
- H. Weather Stripping: Weather stripping package as provided by door manufacturer as tested and passed with unit.
- I. Hardware Reinforcing: Closer reinforcing to be 1/8" minimum aluminum plate or channel. Surface Applied Exit Device reinforcing to be 1/8" aluminum channel.
- J. Narrow Stile Hurricane (FRP) Doors are by one of the following:
  - 1. Basis of Design: Commercial Door Systems F200-HR
  - 2. Approved Manufacturer: SPECIAL LITE, Hurricane Rated Model SL-17 (must provide proof of test reports to confirm hardware configuration for each set of specified hardware passes TAS protocol 201, 202, 203)
- K. Vision Lites:
  - 1. Vision lite trim moldings will be aluminum extrusion - 6063-T5 alloy and removable from the inside only.
  - 2. **Door Vision Lites will be Factory glazed with insulated hurricane tested glass size.**
  - 3. Hurricane Rated Vision Lite not to exceed 22" x 32" inches
  - 4. Door Vision Lite Kits are by THE DOOR MANUFACTURER ONLY.

## 2.5 HARDWARE

- A. Hardware locations to be templated as tested for Hurricane approval.
- B. Refer to specification section 08700 for hardware requirements.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 VERIFICATION

- A. Verification of Conditions:
  - 1. Verify openings are correctly prepared to receive doors and frames.

FIBERGLASS REINFORCED PLASTIC (FRP) DOORS &  
IMPACT RESISTANT ALUMINUM FRAME SYSTEMS  
08220-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

2. Verify openings are correct size and depth in accordance with submittal drawings.

B. Installer's Examination:

1. Door installer shall examine conditions under which construction activities of this section are to be performed and submit a written report to general contractor if conditions are unacceptable.
2. General Contractor shall submit two copies of the installer's report to the architect within 24 hours of receipt.
3. Installer shall not proceed with installation until all unacceptable conditions have been corrected.

**3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Doors shall be delivered at job site individually crated. Each crate to be clearly marked with the specific opening information for quick and easy identification.
- B. All single doors to be shipped completely assembled in the frame with hardware installed. Double doors to be prehung at the factory to ensure a proper fit and that hardware functions properly, then disassembled for shipping purposes.
- C. Install door opening assemblies in accordance with shop drawings and manufacturer's printed installation instructions, using installation methods and materials specified in installation instructions.
- D. Field alteration of doors or frames to accommodate field conditions is strictly prohibited. Site tolerances: Maintain plumb and level tolerance specified in manufacturer's printed installation instructions.
- E. Fire labeled doors, frames and any associated hardware must be installed by qualified professional installers in strict accordance with manufacturer's instructions and the latest revision of NFPA 80.

**3.3 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust doors in accordance with the door manufacturer's maintenance instructions to swing open and shut without binding and to remain in place at any angle without being moved by gravitational influence.
- B. Adjust door hardware to operate correctly in accordance with hardware manufacturer's maintenance instruction.

**3.4 CLEANING**

- A. Clean surfaces of door opening assemblies and exposed door hardware in accordance with respective manufacturer's maintenance instructions.

**3.5 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED PRODUCTS**

- A. Protect door opening assemblies and door hardware from damage by subsequent construction activities until final inspection.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 08410 - ALUMINUM STOREFRONTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Extent of aluminum entrances and storefronts is indicated on drawings and schedules.
- B. Types of aluminum entrances required include the following:
  - 1. Frames for exterior entrances
  - 2. Frames for interior entrances
- C. Glazing: Refer to "Glass and Glazing" section of Division 8 for glazing requirements for aluminum entrances and storefronts specified herein to be factory pre-glazed.

#### 1.3 SYSTEM PERFORMANCES

- A. General: Provide exterior entrance and storefront assemblies that have been designed and fabricated to comply with requirements for system performance characteristics listed below as demonstrated by testing manufacturer's corresponding stock systems according to test methods designated. System shall be of design styles indicated. System components and accessories shall be from the same manufacturer, to the maximum extent possible.
- B. Thermal Movement: Allow for expansion and contraction resulting from ambient temperature range of 120 degree F.
- C. Wind Loading: Provide capacity to withstand loading indicated below, tested per ASTM E 330.
  - 1. Uniform pressure of 20 psf inward and 20 psf outward.
- D. Transmission Characteristics of Fixed Framing: Comply with requirements indicated below for transmission characteristics and test methods.
  - 1. Air and Water Leakages: Air infiltration of not more than 0.06 CFM per sq. ft. of fixed area per ASTM E 283 and no uncontrolled water penetration per ASTM E 331 at pressure differential of 6.24 psf (excluding operable door edges).
  - 2. Condensation Resistance: Not less than 51 CRF per AAMA 1502.7.
  - 3. Thermal Transmittance: U-value of not more than 0.65 Btu/(hr x sf x degree F) per AAMA 1503.1.
- E. Transmission Characteristics of Entrances: Provide entrance doors with jamb and head frames which comply with requirements indicated below for transmission characteristics and test methods.
  - 1. Air Leakage: Air infiltration per linear foot of perimeter crack of not more than 0.50 CFM for single doors and 1.0 CFM for pairs of doors per ASTM E 283 at pressure differential of 1.567 psf.
  - 2. Condensation Resistance: Not less than 48 CRF per AAMA 1502.7.
  - 3. Thermal Transmittance: U-value of not more than 0.93 Btu/(hr x sf x degree F) per AAMA 1503.1.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drawings: Plans, elevations and details show spacings of members as well as profile and similar dimensional requirements of aluminum entrances and storefront work. Minor deviations will be accepted in order to utilize manufacturer's standard products when, in Architect's sole judgment, such deviations do not materially detract from design concept or intended performances.

ALUMINUM STORE FRONT  
08410-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

## **1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's specifications, standard details, and installation recommendations for components of aluminum entrances and storefronts required for project, including test reports certifying that products have been tested and comply with performance requirements.
- B. Samples: Submit samples of each type and color of aluminum finish on 12" long sections of extrusions or formed shapes and on 6" square sheets. Where normal color and texture variations are to be expected, include 2 or more units in each set of samples showing limits of such variations.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 ALUMINUM DOORS, FRAMES & STOREFRONTS**

- A. Manufacturers: The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
  - 1. Kawneer North America
  - 2. Tubelite, Inc.
  - 3. Coral Industries, Inc./Coral Architectural Products
  - 4. YKK AP America, Inc.
  - 5. Oldcastle
  - 6. Record
- B. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.

### **2.2 MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES**

- A. Aluminum Members: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for strength, corrosion resistance, and application of required finish; ASTM B 221 for extrusion, ASTM B 209 for sheet/plate.
- B. Fasteners: Aluminum, non-magnetic stainless steel, or other materials warranted by manufacturer to be noncorrosive and compatible with aluminum components.
  - 1. Do not use exposed fasteners except where unavoidable for application of hardware. Match finish of adjoining metal.
  - 2. Provide Phillips flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners.
- C. Concealed Flashing: Dead-soft stainless steel, 26 gauge minimum, or extruded aluminum, 0.062" minimum, of an alloy and type selected by manufacturer for compatibility with other components.
- D. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's high-strength aluminum units where feasible; otherwise, non-magnetic stainless steel or hot-dip galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 386.
- E. Concrete/Masonry Inserts: Cast-iron, malleable iron, or hot-dip galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 386.
- F. Bituminous Coatings: Cold-applied asphalt mastic complying with SSPC-PS 12, compounded for 30-mil thickness per coat.
- G. Compression Weatherstripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable stripping of either molded neoprene gaskets complying with ASTM D 2000 or molded PVC gaskets complying with ASTM D 2287.
- H. Sliding Weatherstripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable stripping of wool, polypropylene, or nylon woven pile, with nylon fabric or aluminum strip backing, complying with AAMA 701.2.

ALUMINUM STORE FRONT  
08410-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- I. Glass and Glazing Materials: Provide glass and glazing materials which comply with requirements of "Glass and Glazing" section of these specifications.

## **2.3 HARDWARE**

- A. General: Hardware shall comply with requirements of the "Americans with Disabilities Act". Refer to hardware section of Division 8 for requirements for hardware items other than those indicated herein to be provided by manufacturer of aluminum entrances.
  - 1. Push/Pull Handles: CO-9 design, by Kawneer. Finish as per the Door Schedule.
  - 2. All other hardware shall be as per Section 08700, Finish Hardware.

## **2.4 FRAMING**

- A. Types:
  - 1. Storefront type framing system for insulated exterior applications:
    - a. Framing system shall be equal to TriFab Versaglaze 451, by Kawneer.
  - 2. Storefront type framing system for non-insulated interior applications:
    - a. Framing system shall be equal to TriFab Versaglaze 450, by Kawneer.
- B. General:
  - 1. Support Members: Extruded aluminum alloy 6063-T6 or 6061-T6 complying with ASTM B-221.
  - 2. Flashing/Closures: Formed aluminum 5005-H34 alloy, min. thickness .040", complying with ASTM B-209.
  - 3. Cap System: Manufacturer's standard cap glazing system consisting of rectangular (rafter) and beveled (horizontal) glazing gaps which will secure all sides of each light of glass against negative and positive loads.
  - 4. Fasteners: A300 stainless steel.
  - 5. Sealant: Silicone (FS TT-S-0015 43A and TT-S-0023 o.c.)

## **2.5 FABRICATION**

- A. Sizes and Profiles: Required sizes for door and frame units, including profile requirements, are indicated on drawings. Any variable dimensions are indicated, together with maximum and minimum dimensions required to achieve design requirements and coordination with other work.
- B. Prefabrication: To greatest extent possible, complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application, and other work before shipment to project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation.
  - 1. Preglaze door and frame units to greatest extent possible, in coordination with installation and hardware requirements.
  - 2. Do not drill and tap for surface-mounted hardware items until time of installation at project site.
  - 3. Perform fabrication operations, including cutting, fitting, forming, drilling and grinding of metal work in manner which prevents damage to exposed finish surfaces. For hardware, perform these operations prior to application of finishes.
- C. Welding: Comply with AWS recommendations to avoid discoloration; grind exposed welds smooth and restore mechanical finish.
- D. Reinforcing: Install reinforcing as necessary for performance requirements; separate dissimilar metals with bituminous paint or other separator which will prevent corrosion.
- E. Continuity: Maintain accurate relation of planes and angles, with hairline fit of contacting members.

ALUMINUM STORE FRONT  
08410-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- F. Fasteners: Conceal fasteners wherever possible.
- G. Weatherstripping: For exterior doors, provide compression weatherstripping against fixed stops; at other edges, provide sliding weatherstripping retained in adjustable strip mortised into door edge.
  - 1. Provide EPDM/vinyl blade gasket weatherstripping in bottom door rail, adjustable for contact with threshold.

## **2.6 STOREFRONT FRAMING SYSTEM**

- A. General: Provide inside-outside matched center glazed system with provisions for glass replacement. Shop-fabricate and preassemble frame components where possible.

## **2.7 ALUMINUM DOOR FRAMES**

- A. Fabricate tubular and channel frame assemblies, as indicated, with either welded or mechanical joints in accordance with manufacturer's standards, reinforced as necessary to support required loads.

## **2.8 STILE-AND-RAIL TYPE ALUMINUM DOORS:**

- A. Frame: Provide tubular frame members, fabricated with mechanical joints using heavy inserted reinforcing plates and concealed tie-rods or j-bolts, or fabricate with structurally welded joints, at manufacturer's option.
- B. Design:
  - 1. Provide doors equal to Model 500 by Kawneer, wide stile design with 8" high horizontal crossrail.
- C. Glazing: Fabricate doors to facilitate replacement of glass or panels, without disassembly of door stiles and rails. Provide snap-on extruded aluminum glazing stops, with exterior stops anchored for non-removal.

## **2.9 FINISHES**

- A. Baked Enamel Finish: Premium color selection equal to Kawneer #22 Stock Permafluor Architectural Coating (Hylar 5000 or Kynar 500), factory applied and oven baked for a topcoat thickness of 1.0 - 1.3 mils.
  - 1. Color to be selected by Architect after bid date from manufacturer standards
  - 2. Color selections MUST include "White".

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Field Measurement: Wherever possible, take field measurements prior to preparation of shop drawings and fabrication, to ensure proper fitting of work.

## **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for installation of aluminum entrances.
- B. Set units plumb, level, and true to line, without warp or rack of framing members, doors, or panels. Anchor securely in place, separating aluminum and other corrodible metal surfaces from sources of corrosion of electrolytic action at points of contact with other materials.
- C. Drill and tap frames and apply surface-mounted hardware items, complying with hardware manufacturer's instructions and template requirements. Use concealed fasteners wherever possible.

ALUMINUM STORE FRONT  
08410-4



- D. Set sill members and other members in bed of sealant as indicated, or with joint fillers or gaskets as indicated to provide weathertight construction. Comply with requirements of Division 7 for sealants, fillers, and gaskets.
- E. Refer to "Glass and Glazing" section of Division 8 for installation of glass and spandrel panels indicated to be glazed into framing, and not preglazed by manufacturer.

**3.3 ADJUST AND CLEAN:**

- A. Adjust operating hardware to function properly, without binding, and to prevent tight fit at contact points and weatherstripping.
- B. Clean completed systems, inside and out, promptly after erection and installation of glass and sealants. Remove excess glazing and joint sealants, dirt, and other substances from aluminum surfaces.
- C. Institute protective measures and other precautions required to assure that aluminum entrances and storefronts will be without damage or deterioration, other than normal weathering, at time of acceptance.

**END OF SECTION**

ALUMINUM STORE FRONT  
08410-5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 08520 - ALUMINUM WINDOWS - SINGLE HUNG

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Extent of each type of aluminum window units including window column covers, panning trim, as shown on drawings.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Standards: Except as otherwise indicated requirements for aluminum windows, terminology and standards of performance, and fabrication workmanship are those specified and recommended in ANSI/AAMA 506 and applicable general recommendations published by AAMA and AA. Where more stringent requirements are shown, manufacturer shall provide proof of compliance as required by the architect.
- B. Performance and Testing:
- C. General: Except as otherwise indicated, comply with air infiltration tests, water resistance tests, and applicable load tests specified in ANSI/AAMA 506 for type and classification of window units required in each case.
- D. Prior Approval: Window manufacturers other than those specified requesting approval shall submit samples and test data ten days prior to bid opening for approval. Architect will list those approved manufacturers by addendum. No verbal approvals will be issued.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's specifications, recommendations, and standard details for aluminum window units, including certified test laboratory reports as necessary to show compliance with requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings, including wall elevations at 1/4" scale, typical unit elevations at 3/4" scale and full size detail sections of every typical composite member. Show anchors, hardware, operators and other components not included in manufacturer's standard data. Include glazing details.
  - 1. Architect reserves right to require additional samples which will show fabrication techniques, workmanship of component parts, and design of hardware and other exposed auxiliary items.

#### 1.5 SPECIAL PROJECT WARRANTY

- A. Submit written warranty signed by manufacturer, installer and contractor, agreeing to replace aluminum window units which fail in materials or workmanship within 3 years of date of acceptance. Failure of materials or workmanship shall include (but not be limited to) excessive leakage or air infiltration, excessive deflections, faulty operation of sash, deterioration of finish or metal in excess of normal weathering, and defects in hardware, weather-stripping and other components of work.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURES

- A. The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
  - 1. Traco – Series TR-9100 Single Hung
  - 2. Peerless – Series 4130-R Single Hung

ALUMINUM WINDOWS (SINGLE HUNG)  
08520-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

3. Georgia Palm Beach - Series 3500 Single Hung

- B. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.

**2.2 MATERIALS - GENERAL**

- A. GENERAL: All aluminum prime windows shall be single hung type and shall conform to the Architectural Aluminum Manufacturer's Association specification requirements for DH-C-70.
- B. All windows shall be of the type and size shown on the drawings.
- C. Aluminum Extrusions: Alloy and temper recommended by window manufacturer for strength, corrosion resistance, and application of required finish, but not less than 22,000 psi ultimate tensile strength and not less than 0.062" thickness at any location for main frame and sash members. Comply with ASTM B 221.
- D. Fasteners: Aluminum, non-magnetic stainless steel, or other materials warranted by manufacturer to be noncorrosive and compatible with aluminum window members, trim, hardware, anchors and other components of window units.
1. Reinforcement: Where fasteners screw-anchor into aluminum less than 0.125" thick, reinforce interior with aluminum or non-magnetic stainless steel to receive screw threads, or provide standard non-corrosive pressed in splined grommet nuts.
  2. Do not use exposed fasteners except where unavoidable for application of hardware. Match finish of adjoining metal.
  3. Provide Phillips flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners.
- E. Anchors, Clips and Window Accessories: Depending on strength and corrosion-inhibiting requirements, fabricate units of aluminum, non-magnetic stainless steel, or hot-dip zinc coated steel or iron complying with ASTM A 386.
- F. Sealant: Unless otherwise indicated for sealants required within fabricated window units, provide type recommended by window manufacturer for joint size and movement, to remain permanently elastic, non-shrinking and non-migrating. Comply with Division 7 sections for installation of sealants.

**2.3 MATERIALS**

- A. All sections of frame and sash members shall be of commercial quality extruded 6063-T5 aluminum alloy. Frame shall have a minimum depth of 3-1/4" with a minimum wall thickness of not less than .062". Sill members and panning trim minimum thickness shall not be less than .078". All horizontal ventilator rails shall be of tubular construction and shall have a minimum glazing depth of 7/8". Snap trim, where required, shall be of extruded aluminum of not less than .078" thick. Window to have individual mulls exposed at exterior.
- B. CONSTRUCTION: Frame and sash member joints shall be neatly and securely fastened by means of 2 screws per corner which fasten into screw bosses extruded integrally in the section. Frame corners shall be sealed with an approved sealant in order to provide a permanently leakproof joint. Sash shall have nylon guides to prevent metal to metal contact between sash and frame members.
- C. HARDWARE: Each window shall have a set of heavy duty emergency sill latches. Latch shall be secure lock when windows are in the closed and locked position. Bottom sash shall have a pair of 1/2" heavy block & tackle balances, easily replaceable and adjustable.
- D. WEATHERSTRIPPING: The sash shall have integral grooves containing a silicone treated wool pile with fin seal vinyl barrier. Each sash shall be weather-stripped around the perimeter and double weather-stripped at the jambs.
- E. GLASS AND GLAZING: Provide factory glazed insulated glazing construction (1/4", 1/2", 1/4") as indicated on the drawings, with exterior pane to be tempered Low E - 1/4" Gray tinted on surface #2, 1/2" airspace, and inboard lite to be tempered 1/4" clear. **Equal to 1" Cardinal 366 Gray Lo-E,**

ALUMINUM WINDOWS (SINGLE HUNG)  
08520-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

**35% Visible Trans, 10% Visible Reflect (Out), SHGC 0.25, U value 0.29.** Glass shall be back bedded with an approved bedding compound and held securely in place with an extruded aluminum snap in glazing bead for easy replacement of broken glass. Wrap around or marine type glazing will not be permitted. Muntins shall be between the glass.

- F. FINISH: Windows shall receive a baked on paint finish to meet AAMA 603.8. Color to be selected from manufactures standards.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's specifications and recommendations for installation of window units, hardware, operators, and other components of work.
- B. Set units plumb, level and true to line, without warp or rack of frames or sash. Anchor securely in place. Separate aluminum and other corrodible surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action.
- C. Set sill members and other members in bed of compound as shown, or with joint fillers or gaskets as shown, to provide weathertight construction. Refer to Division 7 sealant sections for compounds, fillers and gaskets to be installed with window units. Coordinate installation with wall flashings and other components of work.

#### **3.2 ADJUST AND CLEAN**

- A. Adjust operating sash and hardware to provide tight fit at contact points and at weather-stripping, for smooth operation and weathertight closure.
- B. Clean aluminum surfaces promptly after installation of windows, exercising care to avoid damage to protective coatings and finishes. Remove excess glazing and sealant compounds, dirt and other substances. Lubricate hardware and moving parts.
- C. Initiate and maintain all protection and other precautions required to ensure that window units will be without damage or deterioration (other than normal weathering) at time of acceptance.

### **END OF SECTION**

ALUMINUM WINDOWS (SINGLE HUNG)  
08520-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 08700 - FINISH HARDWARE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes items known commercially as finish or door hardware that are required for swing, sliding, and folding doors, except special types of unique hardware specified in the same sections as the doors and door frames on which they are installed.
- B. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Hinges.
  - 2. Key control system.
  - 3. Lock cylinders and keys.
  - 4. Lock and latch sets.
  - 5. Bolts.
  - 6. Exit devices.
  - 7. Push/pull units.
  - 8. Closers.
  - 9. Overhead holders.
  - 10. Miscellaneous door control devices.
  - 11. Door trim units.
  - 12. Protection plates.
  - 13. Weather-stripping for exterior doors.
  - 14. Sound stripping for interior doors.
  - 15. Astragals or meeting seals on pairs of doors.
  - 16. Thresholds.
- C. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
  - 1. Division 8 Section "Standard Steel Doors and Frames" for silencers integral with hollow metal frames.
  - 2. Division 8 Section "Flush Wood Doors" for factory pre-fitting and factory pre-machining of doors for door hardware.
  - 3. Division 8 Section "Aluminum Entrances and Storefronts" for aluminum entrance door hardware, except cylinders.

#### 1.3 HARDWARE ALLOWANCE

- A. Allowance of \$1,000.00 for Certified AHC (Architectural Hardware Consultant) – (document of certification from DHI must be provided) to visit job site upon substantial completion as directed by Architect. A written report will be required for the Owner, Architect, and Contractor

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Door hardware supplier's responsibilities shall be as follows:
  - 1. Submittals: Submit through Contractor required product data, final hardware schedule; separate keying schedule, and samples as specified in this Section, unless otherwise indicated.

2. **Hardware Review Meeting:** Hardware Supplier shall attend a scheduled "Hardware Review Meeting" with the Contractor, Owner and Architect representative. All Hardware products, hardware installation locations, finishes, color selections, ratings and keying is to be reviewed and discussed. The Hardware Supplier understands the Hardware Submittal is not deemed "Fully Approved" until the Owner has completed their review and given "Approval".
  3. Construction Schedule: Inform Contractor promptly of estimated times and dates that will be required to process submittals, to furnish templates, to deliver hardware, and to perform other work associated with furnishing door hardware for purposes of including this data in construction schedule. Comply with this schedule.
  4. Coordination and Templates: Assist Contractor as required to coordinate hardware with other work in respect to both fabrication and installation. Furnish Contractor with templates and deliver hardware to proper locations.
  5. Product Handling: Package, identify, deliver, and inventory door hardware specified in this Section.
  6. Discrepancies: Based on requirements indicated in Contract Documents in effect at time of door hardware selection, furnish types, finishes, and quantities of door hardware, including fasteners, and Owner's maintenance tools required to comply with specified requirements and as needed to install and maintain hardware. Furnish or replace any items of door hardware resulting from shortages and incorrect items at no cost to the Owner or Contractor. Obtain signed receipts from Contractor for all delivered materials.
- B. Contractor's responsibilities shall be as follows:
1. Submittals: Coordinate and process submittals for door hardware in same manner as submittals for other work.
  2. **Hardware Review Meeting:** Contractor is to schedule and attend a "Hardware Review Meeting" with the Owner, Hardware Supplier and Architect Representative. All Hardware products, hardware installation locations, finishes, color selections, ratings and keying is to be reviewed and discussed. The Contractor understands the Hardware Submittal is not deemed "Fully Approved" until the Owner has completed their review and given "Approval".
  3. Construction Schedule: Cooperate with door hardware supplier in establishing scheduled dates for submittals and delivery of templates and door hardware. Incorporate in construction schedule the times and dates related to furnishing hardware by door hardware supplier.
  4. Coordination: Coordinate door hardware with other Work. Furnish hardware supplier or manufacturer with shop drawings of other work where required or requested. Verify completeness and suitability of hardware with supplier. Coordinate all wiring, raceways, accesses and final connections to all electronic devices and components per manufacturer requirements for a fully functioning system.
  5. Product Handling: Provide secure lock-up for hardware delivered to the site. Inventory hardware jointly with representative of hardware supplier and issue signed receipts for all delivered materials.
  6. Installation Information: The general types and approximate quantities of hardware required for this Project are indicated at the end of this Section in order to establish Contractor's costs for installation and other work not included in allowance.
  7. No adjustments in Contract sum will be made for costs other than those covered by the allowances for subsequent increases or decreases in quantity of one or more hardware types that do not exceed 5 percent.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification sections.
- B. Product data including manufacturers' technical product data for each item of door hardware, installation instructions, maintenance of operating parts and finish, and other information necessary to show compliance with requirements.

- C. Final hardware schedule coordinated with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.
  - 1. Upon return of the reviewed finish hardware schedule, arrange for a meeting with the Owner and representatives of Architect. A keying schedule will be established and submitted to the Architect and Owner. After review, the keying schedule will be returned to representatives of Finish Hardware Supplier so that permanent cylinders and keys can be prepared on a timely basis.

## **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Substitutions: All substitution requests must be submitted before bidding and within the procedures and time frame as outlined in Division 1, General Requirements. Approval of products is at the discretion of the architect and his hardware consultant.
- B. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain each type of hardware (latch and lock sets, hinges, closers, etc.) from a single manufacturer.
- C. Supplier Qualifications: A recognized architectural door hardware supplier, with warehousing facilities in the Project's vicinity, that has a record of successful in-service performance for a minimum of 10 years, for supplying door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality to that indicated for this Project and that employs an experienced " Certified "architectural hardware consultant (AHC)" as recognized by the Door and hardware Institute (DHI). All submittals shall be signed by an AHC who is available to Owner, Architect, and Contractor, at reasonable times during the course of the Work, for consultation.
- D. Fire-Rated Openings: Provide door hardware for fire-rated openings that complies with NFPA Standard No. 80 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide only items of door hardware that are listed and are identical to products tested by UL, Warnock Hersey, FM, or other testing and inspecting organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on types and sizes of doors indicated in compliance with requirements of fire-rated door and door frame labels.

## **1.7 PRODUCT HANDLING**

- A. Tag each item or package separately with identification related to final hardware schedule, and include basic installation instructions with each item or package.
- B. Packaging of door hardware is responsibility of supplier. As material is received by hardware supplier from various manufacturers, sort and repackage in containers clearly marked with appropriate hardware set number to match set numbers of approved hardware schedule. Two or more identical sets may be packed in same container.
- C. Inventory door hardware jointly with representatives of hardware supplier and hardware installer until each is satisfied that count is correct.
- D. Deliver individually packaged door hardware items promptly to place of installation (shop or Project site).
- E. Provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to the Project, but not yet installed. Control handling and installation of hardware items that are not immediately replaceable so that completion of the Work will not be delayed by hardware losses both before and after installation.

## **1.8 MAINTENANCE**

- A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.

# **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

## **2.1 HINGES**

- A. MANUFACTURERES

1. Ives
2. McKinney
3. Bommer

**B. MATERIAL:**

1. Provide only template produced units
2. Provide Phillips flat-head or machine screws for installation of units, except furnish Phillips flat-head wood screws for installation of units in to wood. Finish screw heads to match surface of hinges or pivots.
3. Hinge pins, except as noted, are to be provided as follows:
  - a. Steel Hinges: Steel pins
  - b. Non-ferrous Hinges: Stainless steel pins
  - c. Exterior Doors: Use Non-Removable Pins
  - d. Interior Doors: Non-rising pins
  - e. Electric Hinges: Non-removable pins
4. Tips shall be flat button and matching plug, finished to match leaves.
5. Provide number of hinges indicated but not less than three (3) hinges for door leaf of 90" or less in height and one additional hinge for each 30" of additional height.
6. Provide ball bearing hinges of the type and weight suggested by the hinge manufacturer for each type of door application.

**2.2 LOCK CYLINERS AND KEYING:**

**A. MANUFACTURERES**

1. Match existing keying system of the school. Provide a master keyed cylinder for all locks and exit devices. *Cylinders shall be standard 6-pin or small/large format interchangeable core – type as required to match the owner's existing master key system. Match existing keyways.* Hardware supplier shall field verify key system with the owner.

**B. MATERIAL**

1. Existing System: Grandmaster key the locks to the Owner's existing system, with a new master key for the Project.
2. Review the keying system with the Owner and provide the type required (master, grandmaster or great-grandmaster), either new or integrated into Owner's existing system.
3. Metals: Construct lock cylinder parts from brass or bronze, stainless steel, or nickel silver.
4. Comply with Owner's instructions for master keying and, except as otherwise indicated, provide individual change key for each lock that is not designated to be keyed alike with a group of related locks.
5. Permanently inscribe each key with number of lock that identifies cylinder manufacturer's key symbol, and notation, "DO NOT DUPLICATE".
6. Key Material: Provide keys of nickel silver only.
7. Key Quantity: Furnish (3) change keys for each lock, (5) master keys for each master system, (5) grandmaster keys for each grandmaster system, (10) construction master keys.
  - a. Furnish one extra blank for each lock.
  - b. Furnish construction master keys to General Contractor.
  - c. Deliver keys to Owner.

**2.3 LOCKSETS AND LATCHSETS**

**A. MANUFACTURERES**

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education

FINISH HARDWARE  
08700-4



1. Schlage L9000 Series, 17A design
2. Sargent 8200 Series, LNP Design
3. Accurate 9100UL Series, 39L-1R Design

**B. MATERIAL**

1. Locksets and latch-sets of all manufacturers must conform to the requirements of Sub paragraphs 2 and be approved by the Architect.
2. Mortise Lock Type
  - a. Locksets and latch sets must conform to ANSI A156.2 Series 1000, Operational Grade 1, and be UL Listed.

**2.4 EXIT DEVICES**

**A. MANUFACTURERES**

1. Von Duprin 98 Series
2. Falcon 25 Series
3. Detex 10 Series

**B. MATERIAL**

1. All exit devices to be of one manufacturer and provided in same finish design as locksets.
2. Provide sex nuts and bolts for attachment of surface applied items to doors.
3. Devices shall be UL listed. Devices for fire rated openings shall bear factory installed UL markings that indicate approval for fire rated openings.
4. All exit devices shall be touch-bar type design.
5. All exit devices shall comply with ANSI A156.3, Grade 1.
6. Exit device lever trim shall be equal to Von Duprin break away vandal resistant #996I-17.
7. All exit devices shall be equipped with flush end caps.
8. All exit devices shall be equipped with guarded (deadlocking) latch bolts.
9. Security Indicators for "Keyed Cylinder Dogging" - Provide Von Duprin "CDSI", dogging indicator provides an at-a-glance verification of the status of the door from inside of the room. Visible "LOCKED" and "UNLOCKED" indicators show whether the device is undogged or dogged.
10. Security Indicators for "-2SI-Classroom Exit Device Locking Lever Trim". The "-2SI" Security Indicator provides an at-a-glance verification of the LOCKED/UNLOCKED status of the door from inside of the room. Facility staff to be able to lock/unlock outside exit device lever trim from classroom side of door, avoiding corridor exposure.
11. All exit devices shall be provided with anti-microbial coated stainless steel touch bars. Plastic touch pads or plastic covered touch pads will not be accepted.
12. All exit devices are to be installed using through-bolts. All exit devices and exit device strikes shall be installed using manufacturer's supplied fasteners. Substitution of manufacturer's fasteners will not be allowed.
13. ICC500 rated exit devices are to be compatible with the specified Tornado-Resistant Assemblies, see specification Section 08349.

**2.5 CLOSERS**

**A. MANUFACTURERES**

1. LCN 4000/1461 series
2. Sargent 281 Series

3. Norton 9500
4. Provide the closer series specified in the door hardware sets.

**B. MATERIAL**

1. Size of units: Except as otherwise specifically indicated, comply with the manufacturer's recommendations for size of door control unit, depending upon size of door, exposure to weather and anticipated frequency of use.
  - a. Where parallel arms are indicated for closers, provide closer unit one size larger than recommended for use with standard arms.
  - b. Where manual closers are indicated for doors required to be accessible to the physically handicapped, provide adjustable units, ANSI opening force and delayed action closing.
2. All surface closers are to be fully hydraulic, rack and pinion action with high strength cast iron cylinders and one piece forged steel pistons. Closer case piston diameter at exterior doors shall be minimum 1½". Hydraulic regulation to be controlled by tamper-proof, non-critical screw valves, adjustable with a hex by tamper-proof, non-critical screw valves, adjustable with a hex wrench. Separate adjustments for back check, general speed, and latch speed. Where detailed in the door hardware sets, provide delayed action feature to delay closing up to one minute for maximum opening to approximately 75. Back check shall be properly located for protection of the door, frame and applied hardware.
3. All door closers shall comply with ANSI A156.4 Grade 1 and meet the standards of ANSI A117.1 for barrier-free accessibility.
4. Provide closers with full metal covers.
5. All closers are to be through bolt mounted. All door closers are to be installed using manufacturer supplied fasteners. Substitution of manufacturers supplied fasteners is not permitted.
6. All surface door closers are to be provided with required mounting brackets, mounting plates, drop plates, shims, spacers, arms, special templating, etc. as required for the specified closer and arm function, whether specified in the door hardware sets or not.

**2.6 OVERHEAD STOPS AND HOLDERS**

**A. MANUFACTURERES**

1. Glynn Johnson
2. Sargent
3. Rixson

**B. MATERIAL**

1. Conform to ANSI A156.8 Grade 1.

**2.7 PUSH/PULLS & PROTECTION PLATES**

**A. MANUFACTURERES**

1. Ives
2. Trimco
3. Burns

**B. MATERIAL**

1. Provide manufacturers standard exposed fasteners for installation, through bolted for matched pairs, but not of single units.
2. Provide 16 gauge minimum thickness for plates.
3. Where specified in the schedule, push/pulls shall have an antimicrobial coating.

**2.8 THRESHOLDS, WEATHERSTRIPPING & GASKETING**

A. MANUFACTURERES

- 1. Zero
- 2. National Guard
- 3. Pemko

B. MATERIAL

- 1. Provide continuous weather-stripping at each edge of every exterior door leaf, except as otherwise indicated.
- 2. Provide type, size and profile shown as scheduled.
- 3. Provide non-corrosive fasteners as recommended by manufacturer for application indicated. Do not specify adhesive backed weather-strip or gasket material.
- 4. Where replaceable seal strips are scheduled, provide only those units where resilient or flexible seal strip is easily replaceable from stocks maintained by manufacturer.
- 5. Proved standard metal threshold unit of type, size and profile shown as scheduled.

**2.9 FINISHES**

A. Hardware finishes shall conform to ANSI and shall be as listed below for aluminum, FRP, hollow metal and wood doors:

B. Finishes Table:

Butt Hinges	652 Satin Chrome Plated Steel
Continuous Geared Aluminum Hinges	628 Clear Anodized Aluminum for wood and hollow metal doors. Aluminum Storefront Doors provide custom anodized color or custom color Kynar paint finish as required to match the specified door finish.
Flush Bolts	626 Satin Chrome Plated
Locksets	626AM Satin Chrome Plated, Anti-Microbial
Exit Devices	626AM Satin Chrome Plated, Anti-Microbial
Door Closers	Wood and Hollow Metal Doors: 689 Powder Coat Aluminum. Aluminum storefront doors, provide LCN RAL custom color as required to match specified frame and door finish.
Push Plates	630AM Satin Stainless Steel, Anti-Microbial
Pull Plates	630AM Satin Stainless Steel, Anti-Microbial
Protective Plates	630 Satin Stainless Steel
Door Stops	626 Satin Chrome Plated
Overhead Holders	630 Satin Stainless Steel

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Install each hardware item in compliance with manufacturer’s instructions and recommendations. Where cutting and fitting is required to install hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, install each item completely and then remove and store in a secure place during the finish application. After completion of the finishes, reinstall each item.

- 1. Do not install surface mounted items until finishes have been completed on the substrate.

B. Conform to ANSI A117.1 for positioning requirements for the handicapped.

**3.2 PROTECTION AND CLEANING**

A. After installation, clean metal surfaces on both interior and exterior of all mortar, paint and other contaminants. After cleaning, protect work against damage.

### 3.3 FINAL ADJUSTMENT

- A. Whenever hardware is installed more than one month prior to occupancy or acceptance, return during the week prior to acceptance or occupancy and make a final inspection and adjustment of all hardware items in such space or area.

### 3.4 SCHEDULE

HWSET: 01

DOOR NUMBER:

108

EACH TO HAVE:

2	CONT. HINGE	112XY	IVE
1	KEYED REMOVABLE MULLION	KR4954	VON
1	EXIT DEVICE	98-EO-990EO-SNB-299-SNB	VON
1	EXIT DEVICE	LD-98-NL-990NL-299-SNB	VON
1	RIM CYLINDER HOUSING W/CONST. CORE	80-159	SCH
1	MORTISE CYLINDER HOUSING W/CONST. CORE	80-159	SCH
2	PERMANENT CORE	80-037	SCH
2	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP-CUSH TBSRT	LCN
1	MULLION SEAL	139N-PSA	ZER
1	THRESHOLD	65A	ZER
1	DOOR SWEEP	8198AA	ZER
1	GASKETING	8144S-BK	ZER
1	OVERHEAD DRIP CAP	142A	ZER
2	MEETING EDGE SEALS	328AA	ZER

HWSET: 02

DOOR NUMBER:

116

EACH TO HAVE:

3	BUTT HINGES	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 X NRP	IVE
1	STOREROOM LOCKSET W/CONSTRUCTION CORE	L9080HD	SCH
1	PERMANENT CORE	80-037	SCH
1	SURFACE CLOSER	1461 CUSH TBSRT	LCN
1	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1 1/2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	MOP PLATE	8400 6" X 1" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	IVE
3	SILENCERS	SR64	IVE

HWSET: 03  
DOOR NUMBER:

104                      105

EACH TO HAVE:

3	BUTT HINGES	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	PRIVACY SET W/OUTSIDE AND OUTSIDE OCCUPANCY INDICATOR	L9040 OS-OCC IS-OCC	SCH
1	SURFACE CLOSER	1461 SCUSH TBSRT	LCN
1	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1 1/2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	MOP PLATE	8400 6" X 1" LDW B-CS	IVE
3	SILENCERS	SR64	IVE

HWSET: 04  
DOOR NUMBER:

110

EACH TO HAVE:

3	BUTT HINGES	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	PRIVACY SET	L9040	SCH
1	MOP PLATE	8400 6" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	IVE
3	SILENCERS	SR64	IVE

HWSET: 05  
DOOR NUMBER:

114b

EACH TO HAVE:

3	BUTT HINGES	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	ENTRY LOCKSET	L9050HD	SCH
1	PERMANENT CORE	80-037	SCH
1	SURFACE CLOSER	1461 REGULAR ARM TBSRT	LCN
1	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1 1/2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	MOP PLATE	8400 6" X 1" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	IVE
3	SILENCERS	SR64	IVE

HWSET: 06  
DOOR NUMBER:

102                      103                      103a                      106                      109                      111  
113

EACH TO HAVE:

3	BUTT HINGES	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	ENTRY LOCKSET	L9050HD	SCH
1	PERMANENT CORE	80-037	SCH
1	MOP PLATE	8400 6" X 2" LDW B-CS (*)	IVE
1	MOP PLATE	8400 6" X 1" LDW B-CS (*)	IVE
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	IVE
3	SILENCERS	SR64	IVE

(\*) OMIT MOP PLATES ON CARPETED SIDE OF DOOR. SEE FLOORING TYPES ON FINISH SCHEDULE.

HWSET: AL-01

DOOR NUMBER:

101a                      107a                      107b  
EACH TO HAVE:

2	CONT. HINGE	112XY	IVE
1	KEYED REMOVABLE MULLION	KR4954	VON
1	EXIT DEVICE W/ VISIBLE AT DISTANCE LOCKED/UNLOCKED SECURITY INDICATOR	CDSI-35A-EO-299	VON
1	EXIT DEVICE W/ VISIBLE AT DISTANCE LOCKED/UNLOCKED SECURITY INDICATOR	CDSI-35A-NL-OP-388-299	VON
1	RIM CYLINDER HOUSING W/CONST. CORE	80-159	SCH
3	MORTISE CYLINDER HOUSING W/CONST. CORE	80-132	SCH
4	PERMANENT CORE	80-037	SCH
2	CONCEALED OVERHEAD STOPS	100S	GLY
2	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP TOP JAMB TBSRT	LCN
2	SURFACE CLOSER MOUNT PLATES	4040XP-18G SRT	LCN
1	THRESHOLD	65A	ZER
1	WEATHER SEALS	PROVIDED BY FRAME/DOOR SUPPLIER	

HWSET: AL-02

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education

FINISH HARDWARE  
08700-10

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

DOOR NUMBER:

101b

EACH TO HAVE:

2	CONT. HINGE	112XY	IVE
1	KEYED REMOVABLE MULLION, FACTORY PRE- FIRED FOR ELECTRIC STRIKE AND PLUG CONNECTOR	KR4854-6111-299-HAND	VON
1	EXIT DEVICE W/ VISIBLE AT DISTANCE LOCKED/UNLOCKED SECURITY INDICATOR	CDSI-35A-EO-299	VON
1	EXIT DEVICE W/ VISIBLE AT DISTANCE LOCKED/UNLOCKED SECURITY INDICATOR	CDSI-35A-NL-OP-388-299	VON
1	RIM CYLINDER HOUSING W/CONST. CORE	80-159	SCH
3	MORTISE CYLINDER HOUSING W/CONST. CORE	80-132	SCH
4	PERMANENT CORE	80-037	SCH
2	CONCEALED OVERHEAD STOPS	100S	GLY
2	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP TOP JAMB TBSRT	LCN
2	SURFACE CLOSER MOUNT PLATES	4040XP-18G SRT	LCN
1	MULLION SEAL	139N-PSA	ZER
1	WEATHER SEALS	PROVIDED BY FRAME/DOOR SUPPLIER	
1	ELECTRIC STRIKE W/MONITOR SWITCH	6111-DS-VOLATAGE AS REQ'D	VON
1	ELECTRIC STRIKE POWER SUPPLY W/RELAY AND TIME DELAY CONTROL BOARD	904-4RL	VON
1	REMOTE CONTROLS	PROVIDED BY ELECTRICAL SUB CONTRACTOR OR SIMILAR	

HWSET: AL-03

DOOR NUMBER:

114a

EACH TO HAVE:

1	CONT HINGES	112XY	IVE
1	ENTRY LOCKSET	L9050HD	SCH
1	PERMANENT CORE	80-037	SCH
1	SURFACE CLOSER	1461 RW/PA FC TBSRT	LCN
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	IVE
1	WEATHER SEALS	PROVIDED BY FRAME/DOOR SUPPLIER	

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 08800 – GLAZING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Glass for windows
  - 2. Glass for doors
  - 3. Glass for interior borrowed lites
  - 4. Glass for storefront framing.
  - 5. Glazing sealants and accessories.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Fabricators: Firms that produce the fabricated glass products. Fabrication processes include cutting, heat processing, insulating, spandrel, laminating and other as fabrication activities defined in referenced glazing publications.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. American Society of Test and Material (ASTM)
  - 1. ASTM C1036: Standard Specification for Flat Glass
  - 2. ASTM C1048: Standard Specification for Heat-Treated Flat Glass--Kind HS, Kind FT Coated and Uncoated Glass
  - 3. ASTM C1172: Standard Specification for Laminated Architectural Flat Glass
  - 4. ASTM C1376: Standard Specification for Pyrolytic and Vacuum Deposition Coatings on Glass.
  - 5. ASTM E119: Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials
  - 6. ASTM E1886: Standard Test Method for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors, and Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Missile(s) and Exposed to Cyclic Pressure Differentials
  - 7. ASTM E1996: Standard Specification for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors, and Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Windborne Debris in Hurricanes
  - 8. ASTM E 2190 - Standard Specification for Insulating Glass Unit Performance and Evaluation
- B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
  - 1. ANSI z97.1: For Safety Glazing Materials Used In Buildings - Safety Performance Specifications And Methods Of Test
- C. Consumer Products Safety Commission
  - 1. CPSC 16 CFR 1201: Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials
- D. International Code Council
  - 1. ICC 500: ICC/NSSA Standard for the Design and Construction of Storm Shelters
- E. Underwriters Laboratory (UL)
  - 1. UL 263: Standard for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Material
  - 2. UL 9: Standard for Fire test of Window Assemblies

GLAZING  
08800-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



3. UL 10B: Standard for Fire Tests of Door Assemblies
  4. UL 10C: Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies
- F. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
1. NFPA 80: Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
  2. NFPA 257: Standard on Fire Test for Window and Glass Block Assemblies
  3. NFPA 252: Standard Methods of Fire Test of Door Assemblies

#### **1.4 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.

#### **1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product provide performance characteristics, certificates of compliance, installation instructions, and cleaning and maintenance instructions.
- B. Glass Samples: For each type of glass product other than clear monolithic vision glass; 12" x 12" inches (300 mm) square. For each type of sealant/gasket exposed to view; 12" length sample. Install sealant/gasket sample between two strips of materials representative of adjoining framing system in color.
- C. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For glass indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### **1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.

#### **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
- B. Single Source Responsibility: Provide materials obtained from one source for each type of glass and glazing product indicated

#### **1.8 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING**

Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Test each glass product, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member for adhesion to and compatibility with elastomeric glazing sealants.

1. Testing is not required if data are submitted based on previous testing of current sealant products and glazing materials matching those submitted.

#### **1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect glass and glazing materials during delivery, storage and handling to comply with manufacturer's directions and as required to prevent edge damage to glass, and damage to glass and glazing materials from effects of moisture including condensation, of temperature changes, of direct exposure to sun, and from other causes.

#### **1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Conditions: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside the limits permitted by glazing material manufacturer or when joint substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation or other causes. Install glazing sealants only when temperatures are in middle third of manufacturer's recommended installation temperature range.

GLAZING  
08800-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

## 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Ten (10) years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Laminated Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five (5) years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Insulating Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Ten (10) years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Approved Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide AGC Glass North America, Inc or approved equal product by one of the following:
  - 1. Vitro Architectural Glass (Basis of Design)
  - 2. Guardian Glass.
- B. Approved Fabricators: Subject to compliance with requirements
  - 1. American Insulated Glass
  - 2. OldCastle Building Envelope
  - 3. Trulite Glass and Aluminum Solutions
  - 4. Tristar Glass

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer to design glazing. A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- B. Structural Performance: Glazing shall withstand the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated determined according to the 2021 International Building Code and ASTM E 1300.
  - 1. Design Wind Pressures: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Design Snow Loads: As indicated on Drawings.

GLAZING  
08800-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- C. Differential Shading: Design glass to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading within individual glass lites.
- D. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- E. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
  1. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 100 and based on LBL's WINDOW 7.3 computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
  2. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 200 and based on LBNL's WINDOW 7.3 computer program.
  3. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 300.

### **2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL**

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
  1. GANA Publications: "Laminated Glazing Reference Manual", "Glazing Manual", and "Sealant Manual".
  2. AAMA Publications: AAMA GDSG-1, "Glass Design for Sloped Glazing," and AAMA TIR A7, "Sloped Glazing Guidelines."
  3. IGMA Publication for Sloped Glazing: IGMA TB-3001, "Guidelines for Sloped Glazing."
  4. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."
- B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
- C. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of IGCC.
- D. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than the thickness indicated.
- E. Strength: Where annealed float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, heat-strengthened float glass, or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where heat-strengthened float glass is indicated, provide heat-strengthened float glass or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where fully tempered float glass is indicated, provide fully tempered float glass.
- F. Heat-Treated Float Glass: Where heat treated float glass is required or indicated provide glass in accordance to ASTM C 1048; Type I; Quality-Q3; Class I (clear) unless otherwise indicated; of kind and condition indicated.
  1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
  2. For uncoated glass, comply with requirements for Condition A.
  3. For coated vision glass, comply with requirements for Condition C (other coated glass).

### **2.4 GLASS PRODUCTS**

- A. Clear Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.

GLAZING  
08800-4

- B. Tinted Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 2 (tinted), Quality-Q3.  
Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
- C. Heat-Strengthened Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind HS (heat strengthened), Type I, Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
- D. Sputtered Coated Low-Emissivity Clear Vision Glass, ASTM C 1376, Kind CV (coated vision glass), coated by sputtered process, ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
- E. Pyrolytic Coated Low-Emissivity Clear Vision Glass, ASTM C 1376, Kind CO (coated overhead glass), coated by pyrolytic process, ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 as indicated, Quality-Q3.
- F. Ceramic-Coated Vision Glass: ASTM C 1048, Condition C, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3; and complying with Specification No. 95-1-31 in GANA's "Engineering Standards Manual."
- G. Reflective-Coated Vision Glass: ASTM C 1376.

## **2.5 INSULATING GLASS**

- A. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E 2190.
  - 1. Sealing System: Dual seals.
    - a. Primary Seal: Polyisobutylene
    - b. Secondary Seal: Two-part Silicone
  - 2. Spacer: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction
    - a. Color: As select by architect from fabricators full range of colors

## **2.6 FIRE PROTECTIVE-RATED GLASS**

- A. Fire -Protective -Rated Glazing: Listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire -protection ratings indicated, based on positive -pressure testing according to NFPA 257 or UL 9, including the hose -stream test, and shall comply with NFPA 80.
  - 1. Fire -protection -rated glazing required to have a fire -protection rating of 20 minutes shall be exempt from the hose -stream test.
- B. Fire -Protective -Rated Glazing Labeling: Permanently mark fire -protection -rated glazing with certification label of a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name; test standard; whether glazing is permitted to be used in doors or openings; if permitted in openings, whether or not glazing has passed the hose -stream test; whether or not glazing meets 450 deg F (250 deg C) temperature -rise limitation; and the fire -resistance rating in minutes.
- C. Fire -Protective -Rated Tempered Glass: 6 -mm thickness, fire -protection -rated tempered glass; and complying with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Safti First; SuperLite I
    - b. Technical Glass Products; Fireglass20
    - c. Vetrotech Saint-Gobain; SSG Pyroswiss US
- D. Fire-Protective Rated Ceramic: 5mm thickness, fire protective rated ceramic, non-safety rated
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

GLAZING  
08800-5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- a. Schott Pyran Platinum
  - b. Technical Glass Products Firelite
- E. Fire-Protective Rated Ceramic-Filmed: 5mm thickness, fire protective rated ceramic, safety rated, complying with 16 CFR 1201, Category II
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Schott Pyran Platinum-F
    - b. Technical Glass Products Firelite-NT
- F. Fire-Protective Rated Ceramic-Laminated: 9mm thickness, fire protective rated ceramic, safety rated, complying with 16 CFR 1201, Category II
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Schott Pyran Platinum-L
    - b. Technical Glass Products Firelite-Plus

## **2.7 FIRE -RESISTANCE -RATED GLAZING**

- A. Fire -Resistance -Rated Glazing: Listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire -resistance ratings indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 119 or UL 263.
- B. Fire -Resistance -Rated Glazing Labeling: Permanently mark fire -resistance -rated glazing with certification label of a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, test standard, that the glazing is approved for use in walls, and the fire -resistance rating in minutes.
- C. Fire-Resistance Rated Intumescent Glazing: 16mm-52mm thickness, multiply constructed laminated with fire resistive intumescent interlayers, and complying with 16 CRF 1201, Category II.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. GC Glass - Pyrobel
    - b. Pilkington - Pyrostop

## **2.8 GLAZING SEALANTS**

- A. General:
- 1. Compatibility: Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
  - 3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation.
    - b. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
    - c. May National Associates, Inc.; a subsidiary of Sika Corporation.

GLAZING  
08800-6

- d. Pecora Corporation.
  - e. Sika Corporation.
  - f. Tremco Incorporated.
- C. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. BASF Corporation-Construction Systems.
    - b. Dow Corning Corporation.
    - c. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
    - d. May National Associates, Inc.; a subsidiary of Sika Corporation.
    - e. Pecora Corporation.
    - f. Polymeric Systems, Inc.
    - g. Sika Corporation.
    - h. Tremco Incorporated.
- D. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Bostik, Inc.
    - b. Dow Corning Corporation.
    - c. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
    - d. May National Associates, Inc.; a subsidiary of Sika Corporation.
    - e. Polymeric Systems, Inc.
    - f. Schnee-Morehead, Inc., an ITW company.
    - g. Sika Corporation.
    - h. Tremco Incorporated.
- E. Glazing Sealant: Acid-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. BASF Corporation-Construction Systems.
    - b. Bostik, Inc.
    - c. Dow Corning Corporation.
    - d. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
    - e. May National Associates, Inc.; a subsidiary of Sika Corporation.
    - f. Pecora Corporation.
    - g. Polymeric Systems, Inc.
    - h. Schnee-Morehead, Inc., an ITW company.
    - i. Sika Corporation.

GLAZING  
08800-7

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- j. Tremco Incorporated.
- F. Glazing Compounds for Fire-rated Glazing Materials
  - 1. Glazing Compound: DAP 33 putty
  - 2. Silicone Sealant: One-part neutral curing silicone, medium modulus sealant, Type S;
  - 3. Grade NS; Class 25 with additional movement capability of 50 percent in both extension and compression (total 100 percent); Use (Exposure) NT; Uses (Substrates) G, A, and O as applicable. Available Products:
    - a. Dow Corning 795 - Dow Corning Corp.
    - b. Silglaze-II 2800 - General Electric Co.
    - c. Spectrem 2 - Tremco Inc

## **2.9 GLAZING TAPES**

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
  - 1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
  - 2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
  - 3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.
- B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
  - 1. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
  - 2. AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.
- C. Fire-rated Glazing Tape: Closed cell polyvinyl chloride (PVC) foam, coiled on release paper over adhesive on two sides, maximum water absorption by volume of 2 percent. Glass panels that exceed 1,393 sq. inches for 90-minute ratings must be glazed with fire-rated glazing tape supplied by manufacturer.

## **2.10 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS**

- A. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- B. Non-Fire Rated Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- C. Fire-rated Setting Blocks: Neoprene, EPDM, or silicone; tested for compatibility with glazing compound; of 70 to 90 Shore A hardness.
- D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).
- F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

GLAZING  
08800-8

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.
- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches (1270 mm).
- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.

### 3.2 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first, then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs, then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant where indicated.
- F. Center glass lites in openings on setting block and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- G. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape where indicated.

### 3.3 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-

GLAZING  
08800-9



glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

### 3.4 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

- A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.  
Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.
  - 1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.
- B. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.
- C. Wash glass on both faces not more than 4 days prior to date scheduled for inspection intended to establish date of substantial completion in each area of the project. Wash glass with methods as recommended by glass manufacturer.

### 3.6 MONOLITHIC GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Glass Type [GL-1]: **Solarban 70** Clear fully tempered float glass.
  - 1. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
  - 2. Visible Light Transmittance: 88 percent minimum.
  - 3. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: **.84** maximum.
  - 4. Safety glazing required.
- B. Glass Type [GL-2]: Tinted fully tempered float glass.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Vitro Architectural Glass.
  - 2. Tint Color: Pure Grey, Bronze or Forest Green.
    - a. **Color to be selected by Architect after Bid Date.**
  - 3. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
  - 4. Visible Light Transmittance: 45 percent minimum.
  - 5. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: .60 maximum.
  - 6. Safety glazing required.

### 3.7 INSULATING GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Glass Type [IG-3]: **Solarban 70** Tinted Low-E insulating glass.

GLAZING  
08800-10

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Vitro Architectural Glass.
2. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm).
3. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6 mm.
4. Outdoor Lite: Tinted fully tempered float glass.
5. Tint Color: Pure Grey, Bronze or Forest Green.
  - a. **Color to be selected by Architect after Bid Date.**
6. Interspace Content: Air.
7. Indoor Lite: Clear fully tempered float glass.
8. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second surface
9. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: .29 maximum.
10. Summer Daytime U-Factor: .27 maximum.
11. Visible Light Transmittance:
  - a. Pure Grey -36 percent minimum.
  - b. Bronze -39 percent minimum.
  - c. Forest Green -48 percent minimum.
12. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient:
  - a. Pure Grey -.25 maximum.
  - b. Bronze -.25 maximum.
  - c. Forest Green -.25 maximum.
13. Safety glazing required.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 09250 - GYPSUM DRYWALL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Types of work include:
  - 1. Gypsum drywall at walls and ceilings.
  - 2. Drywall finishing (joint tape-and-compound treatment).

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where gypsum drywall systems with fire- resistance ratings are indicated, provide materials and installations which are identical with those of applicable assemblies tested per ASTM E 119 by fire testing laboratories acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Provide fire-resistance rated assemblies identical to those indicated by reference to GA File No.'s. in GA "Fire Resistance Design Manual" or to design designations in UL "Fire Resistance Directory" or in listing of other testing and agencies acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Gypsum Board Terminology Standard: GA-505 by Gypsum Association.
- C. Single-Source Responsibility: Obtain gypsum board products from a single manufacturer, or from manufacturers recommended by the prime manufacturer of gypsum boards.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product specifications and installation instructions for each gypsum drywall component, including other data as may be required to show compliance with these specifications.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original packages, containers or bundles bearing brand name and identification of manufacturer or supplier.
- B. Store material inside under cover and in manner to keep them dry, protected from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, corrosion and damage from construction traffic and other causes. Neatly stack gypsum boards flat to prevent sagging.
- C. Handle gypsum boards to prevent damage to edges, ends or surfaces. Protect metal corner beads and trim from being bent or damaged.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Requirements, General: Comply with requirements of referenced gypsum board application standards and recommendations of gypsum board manufacturer, for environmental conditions before, during and after application of gypsum board.
- B. Cold Weather Protection: When ambient outdoor temperatures are below 55 degrees F maintain continuous, uniform, comfortable building working temperatures of not less than 55 degrees F for a minimum period of 48 hours prior to, during and following application of gypsum board and joint treatment materials or bonding of adhesives.
- C. Ventilation: Ventilate building spaces as required to remove water in excess of that required for drying of joint treatment material immediately after its application. Avoid drafts during dry, hot weather to prevent too rapid drying.

GYPSUM DRYWALL  
09250-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
  - 1. Gypsum Board and Related Products:
    - a. Georgia-Pacific Corp.
    - b. Gold Bond Building Products Div., National Gypsum Co.
    - c. United States Gypsum Co.
    - d. CertainTeed Corporation
    - e. Lafarge North America
- B. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 36, of types, edge configuration and thickness indicated below; in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints.
  - 1. Provide Type "X" fire-resistant at all locations unless otherwise where identified by a UL Listing or Classification or as denoted on the drawings.
  - 2. Provide Type "C", fire-resistant where identified by a UL Listing or Classification where denoted on the drawings.
  - 3. Impact/Penetration Resistant Type "X" fire-resistant at locations as identified on the drawings. Equal to Hi-Impact Brand 2000 Fire Shield by National Gypsum. Tested in accordance with ASTM C36/C 1396 Type X, ASTM E 695, ASTM D 1037, ASTM D4977 and ASTM D 4060.
  - 4. Provide Type "MR" moisture resistant, where gypsum board is shown at all wet areas (Restrooms, etc.) install 5/8" moisture resistant gypsum board at all wet walls where plumbing fixtures are shown.
  - 5. Thickness: 5/8" unless otherwise indicated.
  - 6. Edges: Manufacturer's standard.

### 2.3 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard trim accessories of types indicated for drywall work, formed of galvanized steel unless otherwise indicated, with either knurled and perforated or expanded flanges for nailing or stapling, and beaded for concealment of flanges in joint compound. Provide corner beads, L-type edge trim-beads, U-type edge trim-beads, special L-kerf-type edge trim-beads, and one-piece control joint beads.
- B. Non-Beaded Trim: Non-beaded trim shall not be used, except with specific approval by the Architect.

### 2.4 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: ASTM C 475; type recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated, except as otherwise indicated.
- B. Joint Tape: Paper reinforcing tape.
- C. Joint Compound: Ready-mixed vinyl-type for interior use.
  - 1. Grade: A single multi-purpose grade, for entire application.

### 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

GYPSUM DRYWALL  
09250-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials for gypsum drywall work of the type and grade recommended by the manufacturer of the gypsum board.
- B. Gypsum Board Screws: Comply with ASTM C 646.
- C. Gypsum Board Nails: Comply with ASTM C 514.
- D. Concealed Acoustical Sealant: Nondrying, nonhardening, nonskinning, nonstaining, nonbleeding, gunnable sealant for concealed applications per ASTM C 919.
- E. Exposed Acoustical Sealant: Nonoxidizing, skinnable, paintable, gunnable sealant for exposed applications per ASTM C 919.
- F. Water-Resistant Adhesive: Type I organic adhesive for ceramic tile complying with ANSI A136.1.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 GENERAL GYPSUM BOARD INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Gypsum Board Application and Finishing Standards: ASTM C 840 and GA 216.
- B. Locate exposed end-butt joints as far from center of walls possible, and stagger not less than 1'-0" in alternate courses of board.
- C. Install wall/partition boards vertically to avoid end-butt joints wherever possible.
- D. Install exposed gypsum board with face side out. Do not install imperfect, damaged or damp boards. Butt boards together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16" open space between boards. Do not force into place.
- E. Locate all edge and end joints over supports. Stagger vertical joints over different studs on opposite sides of partitions.
- F. Attach gypsum board to supplementary framing and blocking provided for additional support at openings and cutouts.
- G. Form control joints and expansion joints with space between edges of boards, prepared to receive trim accessories.
- H. Cover both faces of stud framing with gypsum board in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chase walls which are braced internally.
  - 1. Except where concealed application is required for sound, fire, air or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. area and may be limited to not less than 75% of full coverage.
- I. Isolate perimeter of non-load-bearing drywall partitions at structural abutments. Provide 1/4" to 1/2" space and trim edge with J-type semi-finishing edge trim. Seal joints with acoustical sealant.
- J. Space fasteners in gypsum boards in accordance with referenced standards and manufacturer's recommendations, except as otherwise indicated.

### **3.2 METHODS OF GYPSUM DRYWALL APPLICATION**

- A. Single-Layer Application: Install gypsum wallboard.
- B. On partitions/walls apply gypsum board vertically unless otherwise indicated and provide sheet lengths which will minimize end joints.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION OF DRYWALL TRIM ACCESSORIES**

- A. General: Where feasible, use the same fasteners to anchor trim accessory flanges as required to fasten gypsum board to the supports. Otherwise, fasten flanges by nailing or stapling in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.
- B. Install metal corner beads at external corners of drywall work.
- C. Install metal edge trim whenever edge of gypsum board would otherwise be exposed or

GYPSUM DRYWALL  
09250-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

semi-exposed, and except where plastic trim is indicated. Provide type with face flange to receive joint compound except where semi-finishing type is indicated. Install L-type trim where work is tightly abutted to other work and install special kerf-type where other work is kerfed to receive long leg of L-type trim. Install U-type trim where edge is exposed, revealed, gasketed, or sealant-filled (including expansion joints).

- D. Install semi-finishing trim where indicated, and where exterior gypsum board edges are not covered by applied moldings or indicated to receive trim with face flanges covered with joint compound.
- E. Provide control joints horizontally and/or vertically at no less than 24'-0" o.c. max. Refer to plans for specific location or installed as directed by Architect.
- F. Install H-molding in exterior gypsum drywall work where control joints are indicated.

### 3.4 FINISHING OF DRYWALL

- A. General: Apply treatment at gypsum board joints (both directions), flanges of trim accessories, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects and elsewhere as required to prepare work for decoration. Prefill open joints and rounded or beveled edges, if any, using type of compound recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Apply joint tape at joints between gypsum boards, except where trim accessories are indicated.
  - 2. Apply joint compound in 3 coats (not including prefill of openings in base), and sand between last 2 coats and after last coat.
  - 3. Tape and finish gypsum board in accordance with ASTM C 840, GA 214 and GA 216.
  - 4. Provide joint, fastener depression, and corner treatment. Do not use fiber glass mesh tape with conventional drying type joint compounds; use setting or hardening type compounds only. Provide treatment for water-resistant gypsum board as recommended by the gypsum board manufacturer.
  - 5. Where gypsum surfaces are to be finished to Level 5 in accordance with GA 214, apply a thin skim coat of joint compound to the entire gypsum board surface, after the two-coat joint and fastener treatment is complete and dry.
  - 6. **All Exposed gypsum board surfaces** shall be finished to a minimum **Level 4** in accordance with GA 214.
  - 7. Where gypsum board is to receive eggshell, semi-gloss or gloss paint finish, or where severe, up or down lighting conditions occur, shall be finished to **Level 5** in accordance to GA 214 Level 5, unless indicated otherwise.
  - 8. All gypsum board surfaces at **all Corridors** shall be finished to **Level 5** in accordance to GA 214 Level 5.
  - 9. Plenum areas above ceilings shall be finished to **Level 1** in accordance with GA 214.
  - 10. Water resistant gypsum backing board, ASTM C 630/C 630M, to receive ceramic tile shall be finished to **Level 2** in accordance with GA 214.
  - 11. Walls and ceilings to receive a heavy-grade wall covering or heave textured finish before painting shall be finished to **Level 3** in accordance with GA 214.
- B. Partial Finishing: Omit third coat and sanding on concealed drywall work which is indicated for drywall finishing or which requires finishing to achieve fire-resistance rating, sound rating or to act as air or smoke barrier.
- C. Refer to section on painting in Division 9 for decorative finishes to be applied to drywall work.

### 3.5 PROTECTION OF WORK

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner suitable to Installer, which ensures gypsum drywall work being without damage or deterioration at time of substantial completion.

GYPSUM DRYWALL  
09250-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

**END OF SECTION**

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

GYPSUM DRYWALL  
09250-5

## SECTION 09301 - PORCELAIN TILE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Definition: Tile includes ceramic surfacing units made from clay or other ceramic materials.
- B. Extent of tile work is indicated on drawings and schedules.
- C. Types of tile work in this section include the following:
  - 1. Wall Tile.
  - 2. Floor Tile.
  - 3. Wainscot Accent Tile.
  - 4. Wainscot Tile Cap.
  - 5. Base.
  - 6. Stone Thresholds.
- D. Portland cement plaster scratch coat on wall surfaces indicated to receive tile is work of this section.
- E. Sealing expansion and other joints in tile work with elastomeric joint sealers is work of this section.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source of Materials: Provide materials obtained from one source for each type and color of tile, grout, and setting materials.
- B. Mock-Up: Contractor shall provide mock-up panels for evaluation of materials, surface preparation techniques and application workmanship.
  - 1. Mock-up panel shall be no less than 4'-0" x 4'-0" panel as follows:
    - a. One (1) panel per room, per surface. (i.e. 1 panel for wall surface and 1 panel for floor surface for each room of different selection).
    - b. Mock-up panels shall be marked identifying room location and product manufacturer, type, style, size and color information.
    - c. Do not proceed with work until materials, workmanship, color, and sheen are approved by Architect.
    - d. Provide additional mock-up panels as required to produce acceptable work.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical information and installation instructions for materials required, except bulk materials.
- B. Samples for Selection Purposes: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of actual tiles or sections of tile showing full range of colors, textures and patterns available for each type of tile indicated. Include samples of grout and accessories involving color selection.

#### 1.5 PRODUCT HANDLING

PORCELAIN TILE  
09301-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Prevent damage or contamination to materials by water, freezing, foreign matter or other causes.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions and protect work during and after installation to comply with referenced standards and manufacturer's printed recommendations.
- B. Vent temporary heaters to exterior to prevent damage to tile work from carbon dioxide buildup.
- C. Maintain temperatures at not less than 50 degrees F in tiled areas during installation and for 7 days after completion, unless higher temperatures required by referenced installation standard or manufacturer's instructions.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
  - 1. Porcelain Tile:
    - a. StonePeak (Basis of Design)
    - b. American Olean Tile Co.
    - c. Marazzi
  - B. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.

### 2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Standard for Ceramic Tile: Comply with ANSI A137.1 "American National Standard Specifications for Ceramic Tile" for types and grades of tile indicated.
  - 1. Furnish tile complying with "Standard Grade" requirements unless otherwise indicated.
- B. ANSI Standard for Tile Installation Materials: Comply with ANSI standard referenced with installation products and materials indicated.
- C. Colors, Textures and Patterns: For tile and other products requiring selection of colors, surface textures or other appearance characteristics, provide products to match characteristics indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.
  - 1. Provide tile trim and accessories which match color and finish of adjoining flat tile.
- D. Mounting: Where factory-mounted tile is required provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer unless another mounting method is indicated.
  - 1. Where tile is indicated for installation on exteriors or in wet areas, do not use back or edge-mounted tile assemblies unless tile manufacturer specifies that this type of mounting is suitable for these kinds of use and has been successfully used on other projects.

### 2.3 TILE PRODUCTS

- A. Provide tile complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Manufacturer/Series:
    - a. **StonePeak "Simply Modern" Collection.**
  - 2. Type:
    - a. Porcelain
  - 3. Wearing Surface for Floors:

PORCELAIN TILE  
09301-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- a. "stable, firm and slip resistant", (exceeds 0.60 on the ASTM C-1028 test, wet and dry).
- 4. Nominal Thickness:
  - a. 3/8"
- 5. Nominal Facial Dimensions as follows:
  - a. Floor Tile
    - 1. **12" x 24" Floor Tile** - "Simply Modern" Series, Unglazed, with 1/4" grout joints.
  - b. Wall Tile
    - 1. **12" x 24" Wall Tile** – "Simply Modern" Series, Unglazed, with 1/4" grout joints.
    - 2. **4" x 12" "Adamas" Series Wall Tile Accent Band – 3 layers high located 6'-0" AFF.** Glazed, with 1/8" grout joints.
  - c. Base:
    - 1. **6" x 12" Coved Base** – "Schluter Dilex" Series.
  - d. Wainscot Cap:
    - 1. **3" x 12" Bullnose** – "Simply Modern" Series.
- 6. Face: Plain with cushion edges.
- B. Trim Units: Provide tile trim units to match characteristics of adjoining flat tile and to comply with following requirements:
  - 1. Size:
    - a. As indicated, coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile, where applicable.
  - 2. Shapes:
    - a. Selected from manufacturer's standard shapes.
  - 3. External Corners for Portland Cement Mortar Installations:
    - a. Bullnose shape with a radius of not less than 3/4" unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Internal Corners:
    - a. Field-buttet square corners, except use internal cove and cap angle pieces designed to member with stretcher shapes.

## 2.4 STONE THRESHOLDS

- A. General: Provide stone which is uniform in color and finish, fabricated to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between tile surfaces and adjoining finished floor surfaces.
- B. Marble Thresholds: Provide marble thresholds complying with ASTM C 503 requirements for exterior use and abrasion resistant for uses subject to heavy foot traffic.
  - 1. Provide white, bonded marble complying with MIA Group "A" requirements for soundness.

## 2.5 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement Mortar Installation Materials: Provide materials to comply with ANSI A108.1 as required for installation method designated, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.6 GROUTING MATERIALS – FLOOR & WALL

- A. High Performance Epoxy grout that offers color uniformity, durability and stain resistance with extraordinary ease of use.
  - 1. Laticrete "Spectralock Pro Grout".

PORCELAIN TILE  
09301-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

2. Color to be selected by architect after the bid date from manufacturer standards
- B. Epoxy grout is to be installed per manufacturer's instructions.

## **2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. Single-Component Sealants: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, use NT (for use in joints in non-traffic areas).
- B. Two-Component Sealants: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, use T (for use in joints subject to pedestrian traffic).
- C. Tile Cleaner: Product specifically acceptable to manufacturer of tile and grout manufacturer for application indicated and as recommended by National Tile Promotion Federation, 112 North Alfred St., Alexandria, VA 22134 or Ceramic Tile Institute, 700 N. Virgil Ave., Los Angeles, CA 90029.

## **2.8 TILE BACKING PANELS**

- A. Fiber-Cement Backer Board: ASTM C1288, in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Custom Building Products.
    - c. James Hardie Building Products, Inc.
  2. Thickness: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) unless otherwise indicated on drawings.
- B. Install panels and treat joints in accordance with ANSI A108.11, APA guidelines, and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated

## **2.9 WATERPROOF MEMBRANE**

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product that complies with ANSI A118.10 and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Polyethylene Sheet: Polyethylene faced on both sides with fleece webbing; 0.008-inch (0.2-mm) nominal thickness.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Schluter Systems L.P.
    - b. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.
- C. Install waterproof membrane to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
  1. Allow waterproof membrane to cure and verify by testing that it is watertight before installing tile or setting materials over it.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSPECTION**

PORCELAIN TILE  
09301-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- A. Examine surfaces to receive tile work and conditions under which tile will be installed. Do not proceed with tile work until surfaces and conditions comply with requirements indicated in referenced tile installation standard.

### **3.2 PRE-INSTALLATION CONFERENCE**

- A. A pre-installation conference is required before any tiling materials are installed. This conference shall be conducted by a representative of the Architect and attended by the General Contractor and Tile Contractor. Provide at least 72 hours advance notice to participants prior to convening pre-installation conference.
- B. The pre-installation conference is intended to clarify demolition and application requirements for work to be completed before tiling operations can begin. This would include a detailed review of the specifications, plans, finish schedules and approved shop drawings, submittal data, samples and mock-ups. If this pre-installation conference cannot be satisfactorily concluded without further inspection and investigation by any of the parties present, it shall be reconvened at the earliest possible time to avoid delay of the work. In no case should the work proceed without inspection of all tiling areas and substantial agreement on all requirements.
- C. The following are to be accomplished during the conference:
  - 1. To review all requirements listed in the specifications and resolve any questions or conflicts that may arise.
  - 2. To establish trade-related job schedules.
  - 3. To establish tiling schedule and work methods that will prevent progress of other trades.
  - 4. Require that all surface preparations and conditions be complete prior to installing tile work.
  - 5. To establish those areas on the job site that will be designated as work and storage areas for tiling operations.
  - 6. To establish acceptable methods of protecting the finished tile surfaces if any trades must travel across or work on, above or around any areas of the finished tile work.
- D. The Architect shall prepare a written report indicating actions taken and decisions made at this pre-installation conference. This report shall be made a part of the project record and copies furnished to the General Contractor and the Owner.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. ANSI Tile Installation Standard: Comply with applicable parts of ANSI 108 series of tile installation standards included under "American National Standard Specifications for the Installation of Ceramic Tile".
- B. TCA Installation Guidelines: TCA "Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation"; comply with TCA installation methods indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, as applicable to installation conditions shown.
- C. Setting beds:
  - 1. Floor tile: Thinset.
  - 2. Wall tile: Thinset.
- D. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures, to form a complete covering without interruptions, except as otherwise shown. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- E. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures and other penetrations so that plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- F. Jointing Pattern: Unless otherwise shown, lay tile in grid pattern. Align joints when adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls and trim are same size. Layout tile work and center tile fields in both

PORCELAIN TILE  
09301-5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

directions in each space or on each wall area. Adjust to minimize tile cutting. Provide uniform joint widths, unless otherwise shown.

1. For tile mounted in sheets make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so that extent of each sheet is not apparent in finished work.
- G. Lay out tile wainscots to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.
- H. Expansion Joints: Locate expansion joints and other sealant filled joints, including control, contraction and isolation joints, where indicated, or if not indicated, at spacing and locations recommended in TCA "Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation", and approved by Architect.
1. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements of referenced standards and sealant manufacturer.
- I. Grout tile to comply with referenced installation standards, using grout materials indicated.

### **3.4 FLOOR INSTALLATION METHODS**

- A. Porcelain Tile: Install tile to comply with requirements indicated below for setting bed methods, TCA installation methods related to types of subfloor construction, and grout types:
1. Concrete Subfloors, Interior: TCA F113 with isolation membrane equal to Nobleseal CIS.
- B. Grout:
1. High Performance Epoxy grout is to be installed per manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Stone Thresholds: Install stone thresholds at locations indicated; set in same type of setting bed as abutting field tile unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Metal Edge Strips: Install at locations indicated or where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood or other flooring which finishes flush with top of tile.

### **3.5 WALL TILE INSTALLATION METHODS**

- A. Install types of tile designated for wall application to comply with requirements indicated below for setting bed methods, TCA installation methods related to subsurface wall conditions, and grout types:
1. Solid Backing, Interior: TCA W221 in wet areas and W213 or W223 25
    - a. applicable in other areas.
- B. Grout:
1. High Performance Epoxy grout is to be installed per manufacturer's instructions.

### **3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Cleaning: Upon completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
1. Unglazed tile shall be cleaned with non-acid solutions only recommended by tile and grout manufacturer's printed instructions, but no sooner than 14 days after installation. Protect metal surfaces, cast iron and vitreous plumbing fixtures from effects of tile cleaning. Flush surface with clean water after cleaning.
- B. Finished Tile Work: Leave finished installation clean and free of cracked, chipped, broken, unbonded, or otherwise defective tile work.
- C. Protection: When recommended by tile manufacturer, apply a protective coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage and wear.
- D. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from using tiled floors for at least 7 days after grouting is completed. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral cleaner from tile surfaces.

PORCELAIN TILE  
09301-6

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

**3.7 EXTRA STOCK**

- A. Deliver stock of maintenance materials to Owner. Furnish maintenance materials from same manufactured lot as materials installed and enclosed in protective packaging with appropriate identifying labels.
  - 1. Tile Flooring: Furnish not less than one box for each type, color, pattern and size installed.

**END OF SECTION**

PORCELAIN TILE  
09301-7

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 09510 - ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Extent of acoustical ceilings specified in this section include the following:
  - 1. Acoustical lay-in panel ceilings in an exposed suspended metal grid system.

#### SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data for each type of acoustical ceiling unit and suspension system required.
  - 1. Full size sample of each acoustical panel type, pattern and color.
  - 2. Set of 12" long samples of exposed runners and moldings for each color and system type required.
- B. Certificates: Submit certificates from manufacturers of acoustical ceiling units and suspension systems attesting that their products comply with specification requirements.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire Performance Characteristics: Provide acoustical ceiling components that are identical to those tested for the following fire performance characteristics, according to ASTM test method indicated, by UL or other testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify acoustical ceiling components with appropriate marking of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Surface Burning Characteristics: As follows, tested per ASTM E 84.
  - 2. Flame Spread: 25 or less.
  - 3. Smoke Developed: 50 or less.
- B. Fire Resistance Ratings: As indicated by reference to design designation in UL "Fire Resistance Directory" for floor, roof or beam assemblies in which acoustical ceilings function as a fire protective membrane; tested per ASTM E 119. Provide protection materials for lighting fixtures and air ducts to comply with requirements indicated for rated assembly.
- C. Coordination of Work: Coordinate layout and installation of acoustical ceiling units and suspension system components with other work supported by, or penetrating through, ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system components (if any), and partition system (if any).
- D. Single-Source Responsibility: Provide acoustical panel units and grid components by a single manufacturer.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical ceiling units to project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, direct sunlight, surface contamination or other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical ceiling units, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.
- C. Handle acoustical ceiling units carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

#### 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS  
09510-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- A. Space Enclosures: Do not install interior acoustical ceilings until space is enclosed and weatherproof, wet-work in space is completed and nominally dry, work above ceilings is complete and ambient conditions of temperature and humidity will be continuously maintained at values near those indicated for final occupancy.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:

USG Interiors, LLC. (Basis of Design) | [www.usg.com](http://www.usg.com) | Ph: 1.800.950.3839

1. Certainteed Corporation | [www.certainteed.com](http://www.certainteed.com) | Ph: 1.800.233.8990
2. Armstrong World Industries Inc. | [www.armstrongceilings.com](http://www.armstrongceilings.com) | Ph: 877.276.7876

- B. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work provide such products have been approved, by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.

### **2.2 GENERAL ACOUSTICAL CEILING TILE UNITS**

- A. Standard for Acoustical Ceiling Tile Units: Provide manufacturer's standard units of configuration indicated which are prepared for mounting method designated and which comply with FS SS-S-118 requirements, including those indicated by reference to type, form, pattern, grade (NRC or NIC' as applicable), light reflectance coefficient (LR), edge detail, and joint detail (if any).

1. Mounting Method for Measuring NRC: No. 7 (mechanically mounted on special metal support), FS SS-S-118; or Type E-400 mounting as per ASTM E 795.

- B. Sound Attenuation Performance: Provide acoustical ceiling units with ratings for ceiling sound transmission class (STC) of range indicated as determined according to AMA 1-II "Ceiling Sound Transmission Test by Two-Room Method" with ceilings continuous at partitions and supported by a metal suspension system of type appropriate for ceiling unit of configuration indicated (concealed for tile, exposed for panels).

- C. Colors, Textures and Patterns: Provide products to match appearance characteristics indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors, surface textures, and patterns available for acoustical ceiling units and exposed metal suspension system members of quality designated.

### **2.3 ACOUSTICAL TILES**

#### **A. Acoustical Panel Type: Vinyl Covered Ceiling Panels**

1. USG "Sheetrock Brand Clean Room Lay-In Gypsum Panels".
2. Classification: Provide ceiling panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for type, form and pattern as follows:
  - a. Type XX, mineral based with membrane faced overlay. Vinyl face, back and sides covered gypsum ceiling panels.
  - b. Form: Not Applicable
  - c. Pattern: Smooth
3. Color: Flat White 050.
4. LR: Not less than 0.77
5. NRC: Not less than: N/A
6. CAC: Not less than 35
7. Edge / Joint Detail:

ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS  
09510-2



- a. Square (Typical if not indicated on drawings).
- b. SLT Beveled Reveal (Only if indicated on drawings).
- 8. Panel Thickness: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).
- 9. Modular Size: 24 by 24 inches (610 by 610 mm).
- 10. Recycled Content: 80%.
- 11. Panel Features: Washable, scrubbable, soil and impact resistant finish. Meets USDA/FSIS guidelines for use in food processing areas.
- 12. Clean room performance: Acceptable in applications up to Class 100 Clean rooms.
- 13. ClimaPlus™ 30 year limited system warranty. Contains a broad spectrum antimicrobial additive on the face and back of the panel that provides resistance against the growth of mold and mildew. Includes sag resistance performance.
- 14. Suspension Grid/Width: USG Donn ZXLA; 15/16”.

**B. Acoustical Panel Type: Lay-In Acoustical Ceiling Panels**

- 1. USG “Radar” Acoustical Panels
- 2. Classification: Provide ceiling panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for type, form and pattern as follows:
  - a. Type III, mineral base with painted finish
  - b. Form: 2, water felted.
  - c. Pattern: Perforated, small holes and light texture.
- 3. Color: Flat White 050.
- 4. LR: Not less than 0.84
- 5. NRC: Not less than 0.45
- 6. CAC: Not less than 33
- 7. Edge / Joint Detail:
  - a. SQ Square (Typical if not indicated on drawings).
  - b. SLT Beveled Reveal (Only if indicated on drawings).
- 8. Panel Thickness: 5/8 inch (15.8mm).
- 9. Modular Size: 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm).
- 10. Recycled Content: Up to 59%.
- 11. Panel Features:
  - a. Biobased product that is USDA certified.
  - b. Abuse Resistant, high durability and can be cleaned easily with a soft brush & vacuummed.
- 12. ClimaPlus™ 30 year limited system warranty. Contains a broad spectrum antimicrobial additive on the face and back of the panel that provides resistance against the growth of mold and mildew. Includes sag resistance performance.
- 13. Suspension Grid/Width: USG Donn DX; 15/16” (24mm).

**2.4 GENERAL METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS**

- A. Standard for Metal Suspension Systems: Provide metal suspension systems of type, structural classification and finish indicated which comply with applicable STM C 635 requirements.

ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS  
09510-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- B. Finishes and Colors: Provide manufacturer's standard factory applied finish for type of system indicated. For exposed suspension members and accessories with painted finish, provide color indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of standard colors.
  - 1. White.
- C. Attachment Devices: Size for 5 times design load indicated in ASTM C 635, Table 1, Direct Hung.
- D. Hanger Wire: Galvanized carbon steel wire, ASTM A 641, soft temper, prestretched, Class 1 coating, sized so that stress at 3- times hanger design load (ASTM C 635, Table 1, Direct Hung), will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 12 gage.
- E. Edge Moldings and Trim: Formed steel section; exposed surfaces prefinished to match suspension system components.
  - 1. Provide shadow molding for edges equal to MS174; 9/16" thick exposed flange; 3/8" x 3/8" reveal; 7/8" vertical flange.
  - 2. At penetrations of ceiling install manufacturer's standard molding which fits with type of edge detail and suspension system indicated.
  - 3. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.
- F. Hold-Down/Impact Clips: Where indicated provide manufacturer's standard impact clip system design to absorb impact forces against lay-in panels. Install hold down clips at all ceiling panels within 10'-0" of and exterior door.

## 2.5 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

### A. USG Donn Brand ZXLA 15/16" Acoustical Suspension System

- 1. Double-web design; Intermediate Duty as defined by ASTM C635. Bottom face with 15/16" (24mm) exposed flange with pre-painted aluminum cap; cross tee holes and hanger wire holes at 6 in oc; integral reversible splices, commercial quality pretreated and painted, exposed surfaces prefinished in manufacturer's enhanced corrosion resistant polyester paint finish. Cross tees; roll-formed into double-web design with rectangular bulb; 15/16 (24mm) in exposed flange with pre-painted aluminum cap; Stainless Steel clips clenched to the web Main tees and cross tees shall be positively locked yet shall be removable without the use of tools.
- 2. Structural Classification: Intermediate Duty.
- 3. Tee Profile: 15/16" (24mm) wide.
- 4. Color: White

### B. USG Donn Brand DX/DXL 15/16" Acoustical Suspension System

- 1. Narrow Face, Capped, Double Web, Cold Rolled Steel Suspension System: Main and Cross Tees as defined by ASTM C635, commercial quality pretreated and painted hot-dipped galvanized cold-rolled steel, exposed surfaces prefinished in manufacturer's standard corrosion resistant enamel paint finish
- 2. Structural Classification: Intermediate Duty.
- 3. Tee Profile: Narrow Face 15/16" (22mm) wide.
- 4. Color: White

## 2.6 SEALANT

- A. Acoustical Sealant: Resilient, non-staining, non-shrinking, non-hardening, non-skinning, non-drying, non-sag sealant intended for interior sealing of concealed construction joints.

ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS  
09510-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- B. Manufacturers: The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
1. BA-98; Pecora Corp.
  2. Tremco Acoustical Sealant; Tremco
  3. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to schedule bid opening.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Coordination: Furnish layouts for inserts, clips, or other supports required to be installed by other trades for support of acoustical ceilings.
1. Furnish concrete inserts and similar devices to other trades for installation well in advance of time needed for coordination of other work.
- B. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical units to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Coordinate ceiling layout with lighting layout. Avoid use of less-than-half width units at borders, and comply with reflected ceiling plans.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions, and to comply with governing regulations, fire-resistance rating requirements as indicated, and Cisca standards applicable to work.
- B. Arrange acoustical units and orient directionally-patterned units (if any) in manner shown by reflected ceiling plans.
- C. Install suspension systems to comply with ASTM C 636, with hangers supported only from building structural members.
1. Locate hangers within 6" inches from each end and spaced 4'-0" along each carrying channel or direct-hung runner, unless otherwise indicated, leveling to tolerance of 1/8" in 12'-0".
  2. Locate hangers on all 4 corners of the ceiling grid where a projector is installed
- D. Secure wire hangers by looping and wire-tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye-screws, or other devices which are secure and appropriate for substrate, and which will not deteriorate or fail with age or elevated temperature.
- E. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum which are not part of supporting structural or ceiling suspension system. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal force by bracing, counter-splaying or other equally effective means.
- F. Install edge moldings of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and at locations where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical units.
- G. Sealant Bed: Apply continuous ribbon of acoustical sealant, concealed on back of vertical leg before installing moldings.
- H. Screw-attached moldings to substrate at intervals not over 16" o.c. and not more than 3" from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to tolerance of 1/8" in 12'-0". Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
- I. Install acoustical panels in coordination with suspension system with edges concealed by support of suspension members. Scribe and cut panels to fit accurately at borders and at penetrations.
- J. Install hold-down clips on panels, within 10'-0" of exterior door openings, where panels are other than horizontal, and in areas where required by governing regulations or for fire-resistance ratings; space as recommended by panel manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated or required.

#### **3.3 EXTRA STOCK**

ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS  
09510-5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- A. Deliver stock of maintenance materials to Owner. Furnish maintenance materials from same manufactured lot as materials installed and enclosed in protective packaging with appropriate identifying labels.
1. Ceiling Tile: Furnish not less than one box for each type, color, pattern and size installed.

**END OF SECTION**

ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS  
09510-6

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 09650 - RUBBER BASE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Extent of rubber base is shown on drawings and in schedules.

#### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer: Provide each type of rubber base as produced by a single manufacturer, including recommended, adhesives.
  - 1. Wherever possible, provide required rubber base produced by a single manufacturer.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit 2 copies of manufacturer's technical data and installation instructions for each type of rubber base.
- B. Samples: Submit, for verification purposes, samples of each type, color, and pattern of rubber base,

#### 1.4 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain minimum temperature of 65°F in spaces to receive rubber base for at least 48 hours prior to installation, during installation, and for not less than 48 hours after installation. Store rubber base materials in spaces where they will be installed for at least 48 hours before beginning installation. Subsequently, maintain minimum temperature of 55°F in areas where work is completed.
- B. Install after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Flexco
  - 3. Roppe Corporation
- B. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work provide such products have been approved, by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.

#### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.
- B. Wall Base: Provide rubber base complying with FS SS-W-40, Type II, with matching end stops and pre-formed or molded corner units and as follows:
  - 1. Height: 4"
  - 2. Thickness: 1/8"
  - 3. Style: Standard Top-Set Cove
  - 4. Finish: Matte

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

RUBBER BASE  
09650-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- A. Apply wall base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and other permanent fixtures in rooms or areas where base is required. Install base in lengths as long as practicable, with preformed corner units, or fabricated from base materials with mitered or coped inside corners. Tightly bond base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with continuous contact at horizontal and vertical surfaces.
  - 1. On masonry surfaces, or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient wall base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- B. Place resilient edge strips tightly butted to flooring and secure with adhesive. Install edging strips at edges of flooring which would otherwise be exposed.

### **3.2 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Remove any excess adhesive or other surface blemishes, using neutral type cleaners as recommended by flooring manufacturer. Protect installed flooring with heavy Kraft paper or other covering.
- B. Finishing: After completion of project and just prior to final inspection of work, thoroughly clean floors and accessories.
- C. Apply polish and buff, with type of polish, number of coats, and buffing procedures in compliance with flooring manufacturer's instructions.

**END OF SECTION**

RUBBER BASE  
09650-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 09651 – LUXURY VINYL TILE FLOORING (LVT)

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Luxury Vinyl Tile flooring and accessories as indicated on drawings and in schedules.

#### 1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 09650 – Rubber Base.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer: Provide each type of Luxury Vinyl Tile flooring and accessories as produced by a single manufacturer, including recommended primers, adhesives, sealants and leveling compounds.
  - 1. Wherever possible, provide required Luxury Vinyl Tile flooring and accessories produced by a single manufacturer.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit 2 copies of manufacturer's technical data and installation instructions for each type of Luxury Vinyl Tile flooring and accessory.
- B. Samples: Submit, for verification purposes, samples of each type, color, and pattern of Luxury Vinyl Tile, including accessories, required, indicating full range of color and pattern variation.

#### 1.5 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Store Luxury Vinyl Tile flooring products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by the manufacture, but not less than 55 deg F (13 deg C) or more than 85 deg F (29 deg C).
- B. Maintain minimum temperature of 65°F in spaces to receive Luxury Vinyl Plank Tile flooring for at least 48 hours prior to installation, during installation, and for not less than 48 hours after installation. Store Luxury Vinyl Tile materials in spaces where they will be installed for at least 48 hours before beginning installation.
- C. Maintain the ambient relative humidity between 40% and 60% during installation.
- D. Until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by the manufacture but not less than 55 deg F (13 deg C) or more than 85 deg F (29 deg C).
- E. Install Luxury Vinyl Tile flooring and accessories after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed. Do not install Luxury Vinyl Tile Flooring over concrete slabs until the latter have been cured and are sufficiently dry to achieve bond with adhesive as determined by manufacturer's recommended bond and moisture test.

### PART 2 – PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
  - 1. Mannington Commercial, 1844 U.S. Highway 41 S.E. Calhoun, GA 30701; PH: 800.241.2262; [www.manningtoncommercial.com](http://www.manningtoncommercial.com).
  - 2. Patcraft; P.O. Box 2128, Dalton, GA 30722; PH: 334.462.9547; [www.patcraft.com](http://www.patcraft.com).
- B. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.

#### 2.2 MATERIALS

LUXURY VINYL TILE FLOORING (LVT)  
09651-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- A. LVT: "Spacia" Collection; "Abstract" Series
  - 1. Construction High Performance Luxury Vinyl Tile flooring
  - 2. Class / ASTM F 1700 Class III Printed Film Vinyl Tile, Type B (embossed)
  - 3. Wear layer Thickness 20 mil or 0.020" (0.5 mm) Quantum Guard Elite
  - 4. Overall Thickness 4.0 mm or nominal
  - 5. Nominal Dimensions: 4" wide x 36" long
  - 6. Backing Class Commercial Grade
  - 7. Installation Glue Down
  - 8. Slip Resistance / ASTM D 2047 >0.65 (wet/dry)
  - 9. Warranty: 15 year limited commercial wear warranty.
  - 10. Colors as selected by the Owner.
- B. Concrete Slab Primer: Non-staining type as recommended by flooring manufacturer.
- C. Leveling Compound: ProSpec Feather Edge, premium, polymer modified, rapid setting, trowelable underlayment that results in a very smooth, ultra thin finish or as recommended by the flooring manufacture.
- D. Surfaces must be solid, completely clean, free of oil, gypsum compounds, wax, grease, sealers, curing compounds, asphalt, paint, dirt, loose surface material and any contaminants that act as a bond breaker. Weak concrete surfaces must be cleaned down to solid sound concrete by mechanical means. Acid etching or chemical cleaning is not acceptable. Remove all dirt by vacuuming. All subfloors must be clean, dry and at least 40° F (4° C) prior to applying ProSpec Feather Edge.
- E. Installation: ProSpec Feather Edge will accept standard floor coverings such as VCT, vinyl sheet goods, tile and carpeting in approximately 15-30 minutes after placement.
- F. Materials: Extruded rubber accessories as required (i.e. nosings, reducer strip.)

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the work.
- B. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufactures written instructions to ensure adhesion of Luxury Vinyl Tile Flooring.
  - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  - 2. Remove substrate paint, coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives or contain soap, wax, oil, solvents, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  - 3. Mechanically remove contamination on the substrate that may cause damage to the resilient flooring material. Permanent and non-permanent markers, pens, crayons, paint, etc., must not be used to write on the back of the flooring material or used to mark the substrate as they could bleed through and stain the flooring material.

LUXURY VINYL TILE FLOORING (LVT)  
09651-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



4. Prepare Substrates according to ASTM F 710 including the following:
  - a. Moisture Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
    - i. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Results must not exceed 5 lbs. Moisture Vapor Emission Rate per 1,000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.  
**or**
    - ii. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Results must not exceed 80%.
  - b. A pH test for alkalinity must be conducted. Results should range between 7 and 9. If the test results are not within the acceptable range of 7 to 9, the installation must not proceed until the problem has been corrected.
  - c. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Fill cracks, holes, depressions and irregularities in the substrate with good quality Portland cement based underlayment leveling and patching compound and remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- C. Floor covering shall not be installed over expansion joints.
- D. Do not install resilient products until they are the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
- E. Move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours in advance of installation.
- F. Sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products immediately before installation.

### **3.3 FLOORING INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient tile flooring.
  1. Install with manufactures adhesive specified for the site conditions and follow adhesive label for proper use.
  2. Follow manufactures recommendation and lay tiles so graining follows the same direction.
  3. Roll the flooring in both directions using a 100 pound three-section roller.
- B. Lay tile from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so that tile at opposite edges of room area of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid use of cut widths less than 1/2 tile at room perimeters. Lay tile square to room axis, from wall to wall and under all casework or other fixed equipment. Where construction joints in concrete slab occur, lay tile joint with construction joint.
- C. Match tiles for color and pattern by using tile from cartons in same sequence as manufactured and packaged if so numbered. Cut tile neatly around all fixtures. Broken, cracked, chipped, ordeformed tiles are not acceptable.
  1. Lay each color of tile with grain running in basket weave pattern.
- D. Adhere tile flooring to substrates using full spread of adhesive applied in compliance with flooring manufacturer's directions.
- E. Accessories: Apply wall base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and other permanent fixtures in rooms or areas where base is required. Install base in lengths as long as practicable, with preformed corner units, or fabricated from base materials with mitered or coped inside corners. Tightly bond base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with continuous contact at horizontal and vertical surfaces.

LUXURY VINYL TILE FLOORING (LVT)  
09651-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

1. On masonry surfaces, or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient wall base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- F. Place resilient edge strips tightly butted to flooring and secure with adhesive. Install edging strips at edges of flooring which would otherwise be exposed.

### **3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protection of resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient product installation:
  1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
  2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
  3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. No heavy traffic, rolling loads, or furniture placement for 72 hours after installation.
- E. Cover resilient products until Substantial Completion.
- F. Wait 72 hours after installation before performing initial cleaning.
- G. A regular maintenance program must be started after the initial cleaning.

### **3.5 EXTRA STOCK**

- A. Deliver stock of maintenance materials to Owner. Furnish maintenance materials from same manufactured lot as materials installed and enclosed in protective packaging with appropriate identifying labels.
  1. Flooring: Furnish not less than one box for each type, color, pattern and size installed.

**END OF SECTION**

LUXURY VINYL TILE FLOORING (LVT)  
09651-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 09680 – CARPETING

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 09650 – Rubber Base.

#### 1.3 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. The extent of each type of carpeting is indicated on the drawings, and by specifications, and is defined to include carpet and accessories.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data for each type of carpet specified.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings indicating seam layout for approval by Architect.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer: Firm with not less than 5 years of carpeting experience, similar to work of this section.
- B. Manufacturer: Firm (Carpet Mill) with not less than 5 years of production experience with carpet similar to types specified in this section, and whose published product literature clearly indicates compliance of products with requirements of this section.
- C. General Standard: "Carpet Specifier's Handbook" by the Carpet and Rug Institute; comply with recommendations which can be reasonably applied to types of carpeting work required.
- D. Maintenance Materials: Deliver specified overrun (if any) and usable scraps of carpet to Owner's designated storage space, properly packaged (paper wrapped) and identified. Usable scraps are defined to include roll ends of less than 9'0" length, and pieces of more than 3 sq. ft. area and more than 8" wide. Dispose of smaller pieces.

#### 1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY AND STORAGE

- A. Deliver carpeting material in protective wrapping, and store inside, protected from weather, moisture and soiling.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Provide special project warranty, signed by the Contractor, Installer and Manufacturer (Carpet Mill), agreeing to repair or replace defective materials and workmanship of carpeting work during a 1 year warranty period from date of final acceptance of the project. Attach copies of product warranties.

### PART 2 – PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function:
  - 1. Mohawk (Basis of Design)
  - 2. Milliken
  - 3. Mannington

#### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Series: "Hyper Earth" – 12BY36; 12" x 36" carpet planks.

CARPET  
09680-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

- B. Color: To be selected by Architect from Series color selections.

### **2.3 PERFORMANCE**

- A. Permanent Static Protection: Dissipates unwanted static electricity and effectively prevents static build-up in excess of 3.0 KV at 70° F, 20% relative humidity when tested under AATC-134-75.
- B. Flammability: DOC-FF-1-70 Pill Test passes. Floor Radiant Panel meets NFPA Class 1 when tested under ASTM E648 Glue Down. NBS Smoke Chamber NFPA-258 (450 or less) Flaming Mode.
- C. Construction Materials: 100% man-made materials for superior stability. Specifications are subject to change without notice when such changes do not alter product performance. Slight color variations may occur from dye lot to dye lot.

### **2.4 CARPET ACCESSORIES**

- A. Wall Base: See Section 09650 – Rubber Base.
- B. Carpet Edge Guard, Metallic: Color as selected by Architect.
- C. Reducer Strip: Install vinyl reducer strip where carpet meets other finishes.
- D. Installation Adhesive: Water-resistant type as recommended by carpet or cushion manufacturer, and which complies with flammability requirements for installed carpet.
- E. Seaming Cement: Hot-melt seaming adhesive or similar product recommended by carpet manufacturer, for taping seams and buttering cut edges at backing to form secure seams and prevent pile loss at seams.
- F. Miscellaneous Materials: As recommended by manufacturers of carpet, cushions and other carpeting products; and selected by Installer to meet project circumstances and requirements.

## **PART 3 – EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PRE-INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Installer must examine substrates for moisture content and other conditions under which carpeting is to be installed, including the temperature of the area that the carpet is to be installed in, and notify Contractor in writing of conditions detrimental to proper completion of the work. Do not proceed until satisfactory conditions have been met.
- B. Sequence carpeting with other work so far as to minimize the possibility of damage and soiling of carpet during remainder of construction period.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION- GENERAL**

- A. Comply with manufacturers' instructions and recommendations for seam locations and direction of carpet; maintain uniformity of direction and lay of pile. At doors, center seams under doors; do not place seams in traffic direction at doorways. Provide seam layout to Architect for approval before any work is performed.
- B. Extend carpet under open-bottomed obstructions and under removable flanges and furnishings, and into alcoves and closets of each space.
- C. Provide cut-outs where required, and bind cut edges properly where not concealed by protective edge guards or overlapping flanges.
- D. Install carpet edge guard where edge of carpet is exposed; anchor guard to substrate.

### **3.3 GLUE-DOWN INSTALLATION**

- A. Fit sections of carpets into each space prior to application of adhesive. Trim edges and butter cuts with seaming cement.
- B. Apply adhesive uniformly to substrate in accordance with manufacturers' instructions. Butt carpet edges tightly together to form seams without gaps. Roll lightly to eliminate air pockets and

CARPET  
09680-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

ensure uniform bond. Remove adhesive promptly from face of carpet.

- C. All seams are to be sealed or bonded together with the manufacturer's approved product and method.

### **3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Remove debris, sorting pieces to be saved from scraps to be disposed of.
- B. Vacuum carpet using commercial machine with face-beater element. Remove spots and replace carpet where spots cannot be removed.
- C. Advise Contractor of protection methods and materials needed to ensure that carpeting will be without deterioration or damage at time of substantial completion.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 09900 - PAINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Extent of painting work is indicated on drawings and schedules, and as herein specified including accent painting.
- B. Work includes painting and finishing of interior and exterior exposed items and surfaces throughout project, except as otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Surface preparation, priming and coats of paint specified are in addition to shop-priming and surface treatments specified under other sections of work.
- C. Work includes field painting of exposed bare and covered pipes, conduits and ducts (including color coding), and of hangers, exposed steel and iron work, and conduits and primed metal surfaces of equipment installed under mechanical and electrical work, except as otherwise indicated.
- D. "Paint" as used herein means all coating systems materials, including primers, emulsions, enamels, stains, sealers and fillers, and other applied materials whether used as prime, intermediate or finish coats.
- E. Surfaces to be Painted: Except where natural finish of material is specifically noted as a surface not to be painted, paint exposed surfaces whether or not colors are designated in "schedules". Where items or surfaces are not specifically mentioned, paint the same as similar adjacent materials or areas. If color or finish is not designated, Architect will select these from standard colors or finishes available.
- F. Following categories of work are not included as part of field-applied finish work.
  - 1. Pre-Finished Items: Unless otherwise indicated, do not include painting when factory-finishing or installer finishing is specified for such items as (but not limited to) metal toilet enclosures, prefinished partition systems, acoustic materials, elevator entrance doors and frames, elevator equipment, and finished mechanical and electrical equipment, including light fixtures, switchgear and distribution cabinets.
  - 2. Concealed Surfaces: Unless otherwise indicated, painting is not required on surfaces such as walls or ceilings in concealed areas and generally inaccessible areas, foundation spaces, furred areas, utility tunnels, pipe spaces, duct shafts and elevator shafts.
  - 3. Finished Metal Surfaces: Unless otherwise indicated, metal surfaces of anodized aluminum, stainless steel, chromium plate, copper, bronze and similar finished materials will not require finish painting.
  - 4. Operating Parts: Unless otherwise indicated, moving parts of operating units, mechanical and electrical parts, such as valve and damper operators, linkages, sinkages, sensing devices, motor and fan shafts will not require finish painting.
- G. Following categories of work are included under other sections of these specifications.
  - 1. Shop Priming: Unless otherwise specified, shop priming of ferrous metal items is included under various sections for structural steel, metal fabrications, hollow metal work and similar items.
  - 2. Unless otherwise specified, shop priming of fabricated components such as shop-fabricated or factory-built mechanical and electrical equipment or accessories is included under other sections of these specifications.

PAINTING  
09900-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- H. Do not paint over any code-required labels, such as Underwriters' Laboratories and Factory Mutual, or any equipment identification, performance rating, name, or nomenclature plates.

### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Single Source Responsibility: Provide primers and other undercoat paint produced by same manufacturer as finish coats. Use only thinners approved by paint manufacturer and use only within recommended limits.
- B. Coordination of Work: Review other sections of these specifications in which prime paints are to be provided to ensure compatibility of total coatings system for various substrates. Upon request from other trades, furnish information or characteristics of finish materials provided for use, to ensure compatible prime coats are used.

### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical information including paint label analysis and application instructions for each material proposed for use.
- B. Samples: Prior to beginning work, Architect will furnish color chips for surfaces to be painted. Use representative colors when preparing samples for review. Submit samples for Architect's review of color and texture only.
- C. Provide a listing of material and application for each coat of each finish sample. Provide a 4' x 4' sample application of each color paint for Architect's approval prior to final ordering of product. Sample application shall be applied in an inconspicuous place, satisfactory to the Architect.

### **1.5 DELIVERY AND STORAGE**

- A. Deliver materials to job site in original, new and unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label, and following information:
  - 1. Name or title of material.
  - 2. Fed. Spec. number, if applicable.
  - 3. Manufacturer's stock number and date of manufacturer.
  - 4. Manufacturer's name.
  - 5. Contents by volume, for major pigment and vehicle constituents.
  - 6. Thinning instructions.
  - 7. Application instructions.
  - 8. Color name and number.
- B. Store materials not in actual use in tightly covered containers. Maintain containers used in storage of paint in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 1. Protect from freezing where necessary. Keep storage area neat and orderly. Remove oily rags and waste daily. Take all precautions to ensure that workmen and work areas are adequately protected from fire hazards and health hazards resulting from handling, mixing and application of paints.

### **1.6 JOB CONDITIONS**

- A. Apply water-base paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air temperatures are between 50 degree F and 90 degrees F, unless otherwise permitted by paint manufacturer's printed instructions.
- B. Apply solvent-thinned paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air temperatures are between 45 degree F and 95 degree F, unless otherwise permitted by paint manufacturer's printed instructions.
- C. Do not apply paint in snow, rain, fog or mist, or when relative humidity exceeds 85% or to damp or wet surfaces, unless otherwise permitted by paint manufacturer's printed instructions.

PAINTING  
09900-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

1. Painting may be continued during inclement weather if areas and surfaces to be painted are enclosed and heated within temperature limits specified by paint manufacturer during application and drying periods.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. The following manufacturers are listed as acceptable substitutions to the establish minimum standards. Sherwin Williams Products are listed as the standard of product performance and quality.
  1. Sherwin Williams Paint Company (SW)
  2. Benjamin Moore and Co. (Moore).
  3. Pittsburgh Paints (PPG).
- B. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.

### **2.2 MATERIALS**

- A. Material Quality: Provide best quality grade of various types of coatings as regularly manufactured by acceptable paint materials manufacturers. Materials not displaying manufacturer's identification as a standard, best-grade product will not be acceptable.
  1. Proprietary names used to designate colors or materials are not intended to imply that products of named manufacturers are required to exclusion of equivalent products of other manufacturers.
  2. Federal Specifications establish minimum acceptable quality for paint materials. Provide written certification from paint manufacturer that materials provided meet or exceed these minimums.
  3. Manufacturer's products which comply with coating qualitative requirements of applicable Federal Specifications, yet differ in quantitative requirements, may be considered for use when acceptable to Architect. Furnish material data and manufacturer's certificate of performance to Architect for any proposed substitutions.
- B. Color Pigments: Pure, non-fading, applicable types to suit substrates and service indicated.

## **PART 3 – EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSPECTION**

- A. **Applicator must examine areas and conditions under which painting work is to be applied and notify Contractor in writing of conditions detrimental to proper and timely completion of work. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to Applicator. If work is begun before satisfactory conditions are met, then it shall be the Applicators' responsibility for the finish surfaces conditions.**
- B. Starting of painting work will be construed as Applicator's acceptance of surfaces and conditions within any particular area.
- C. Do not paint over dirt, rust, scale, grease, moisture, scuffed surfaces, or conditions otherwise detrimental to formation of a durable paint film.

### **3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION**

- A. General: Perform preparation and cleaning procedures in accordance with paint manufacturer's instructions and as herein specified, for each particular substrate condition.
  1. Provide barrier coats over incompatible primers or remove and reprime as required. Notify Architect in writing of any anticipated problems in using the specified coating systems with substrates primed by others.

PAINTING  
09900-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



2. Remove hardware, hardware accessories, machined surfaces, plates, lighting fixtures, and similar items in place and not to be finish-painted or provide surface-applied protection prior to surface preparation and painting operations. Remove, if necessary, for complete painting of items and adjacent surfaces. Following completion of painting of each space or area, reinstall removed items.
  3. Contractor MUST remove ALL foreign matter/material not pertinent to new paint from all surfaces before application of any new paint. Foreign matter/material includes, but is not limited to, flaking paint, tape, tacks, nails, poster gum, adhesives of any kind etc.
  4. Clean surfaces to be painted before applying paint or surface treatments. Remove oil and grease prior to mechanical cleaning. Program cleaning and painting so that contaminants from cleaning process will not fall onto wet, newly-painted surfaces.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Prepare cementitious surfaces of concrete, concrete block, cement plaster and cement-asbestos board to be painted by removing efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, grease, oils, and by roughening as required to remove glaze.
1. Determine alkalinity and moisture content of surfaces to be painted by performing appropriate tests. If surfaces are found to be sufficiently alkaline to cause blistering and burning of finish paint, correct this condition before application of paint. Do not paint over surfaces where moisture content exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's printed directions.
  2. Clean concrete floor surfaces scheduled to be painted with a commercial solution of muriatic acid, or other etching cleaner. Flush floor with clean water to neutralize acid and allow to dry before painting.
- C. Wood: Clean wood surfaces to be painted of dirt, oil, or other foreign substances with scrapers, mineral spirits, and sandpaper, as required. Sandpaper smooth those finished surfaces exposed to view and dust off. Scrape and clean small, dry, seasoned knots and apply a thin coat of white shellac or other recommended knot sealer, before application of priming coat. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood-filler. Sandpaper smooth when dried.
1. Prime, stain, or seal wood required to be job-painted immediately upon delivery to job. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of such wood, including cabinets, counters, cases, paneling.
  2. When transparent finish is required, use spar varnish for backpriming.
  3. Backprime all exposed exterior wood. Backprime paneling on interior partitions only where masonry, plaster, or other wet wall construction occurs on backside.
  4. Seal tops, bottoms, and cut-outs of unprimed wood doors with a heavy coat of varnish or equivalent sealer immediately upon delivery to job.
- D. Ferrous Metals: Clean ferrous surfaces, which are not galvanized or shop-coated, of oil, grease, dirt, loose mill scale and other foreign substances by solvent or mechanical cleaning.
1. Touch-up shop-applied prime coats wherever damaged or bare. Clean and touch-up with same type shop primer.
- E. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean free of oil and surface contaminants with non-petroleum based solvent.

### 3.3 MATERIALS PREPARATION

- A. Mix and prepare painting materials in accordance with manufacturer's directions.
- B. Maintain containers used in mixing and application of paint in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
- C. Stir materials before application to produce a mixture of uniform density and stir as required during application. Do not stir surface film into material. If film exists, remove film and strain paint material.

PAINTING  
09900-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

### 3.4 APPLICATION

- A. General: Apply paint in accordance with manufacturer's directions. Use applicators and techniques best suited for substrate and type of material being applied. Paint colors, surface treatments, and finishes, are indicated in "schedules" of the contract documents.
  - 1. Provide finish coats which are compatible with prime paints used.
  - 2. Apply additional coats when undercoats, stains or other conditions show through final coat of paint, until paint film is of uniform finish, color and appearance. Give special attention to insure that surfaces, including edges, corners, crevices, welds, and exposed fasteners receive a dry film thickness not less than specified thickness.
  - 3. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Paint surfaces behind permanently-fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only before final installation of equipment.
  - 4. Paint interior surfaces of ducts, where visible through registers or grilles, with a flat, non-specular black paint.
  - 5. Paint back sides of access panels, and removable or hinged covers to match exposed surfaces.
  - 6. Finish exterior doors on tops, bottoms and side edges same as exterior faces, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 7. Sand lightly between each succeeding enamel or varnish coat.
  - 8. Omit first coat (primer) on metal surfaces which have been shop-primed and touch-up painted, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Scheduling Painting: Apply first-coat material to surfaces that have been cleaned, pretreated or otherwise prepared for painting as soon as practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface deterioration.
  - 1. Allow sufficient time between successive coatings to permit proper drying. Do not recoat until paint has dried to where it feels firm, does not deform or feel sticky under moderate thumb pressure, and application of another coat of paint does not cause lifting or loss adhesion of the undercoat.
- C. Minimum Coating Thickness: Apply materials at not less than manufacturer's recommended spreading rate, to establish a total dry film thickness as indicated or, if not indicated, as recommended by coating manufacturer.
- D. Prime Coats: Apply prime coat where required to be painted or finished, and which has not been primed coated by others.
  - 1. Recoat primed and sealed surfaces where there is evidence of suction spots or unsealed areas in first coat, to assure a finish coat with no burn-through or other defects due to insufficient sealing.
- E. Pigmented (Opaque) Finishes: Completely cover to provide an opaque, smooth surface of uniform finish, color, appearance and coverage. Cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness or other surface imperfections will not be acceptable.
- F. Transparent (Clear) Finishes: Use multiple coats to produce glass-smooth surface film of even luster. Provide a finish free of laps, cloudiness, color irregularity, runs, brush marks, orange peel, nail holes, or other surface imperfections.
  - 1. Provide satin finish for final coats, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Completed Work: Match approved samples for color, texture and coverage. Remove, refinish or repaint work not in compliance with specified requirements.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

PAINTING  
09900-5

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- A. The right is reserved by Owner to invoke the following material testing procedure at any time, and any number of times during period of field painting:
  - 1. Engage services of an independent testing laboratory to sample paint being used. Samples of materials delivered to project site will be taken, identified and sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
  - 2. Testing laboratory will perform appropriate tests for any or all of following characteristics: Abrasion resistance, apparent reflectivity, flexibility, washability, absorption, accelerated weathering, dry opacity, accelerated yellowness, recoating, skinning, color retention, alkali resistance and quantitative materials analysis.
- B. If test results show that material being used does not comply with specified requirements, Contractor may be directed to stop painting work, and remove non-complying paint; pay for testing; repaint surfaces coated with rejected paint; remove rejected paint from previously painted surfaces if, upon repainting with specified paint, the two coatings are non-compatible.

### **3.6 CLEAN-UP AND PROTECTION**

- A. Clean-Up: During progress of work, remove from site discarded paint materials, rubbish, cans and rags at end of each day.
- B. Upon completion of painting work, clean window glass and other paint-spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paint by proper methods of washing and scraping, using care not to scratch or otherwise damage finished surfaces.
- C. Protection: Protect work of other trades, whether to be painted or not, against damage by painting and finishing work. Correct any damage by cleaning, repairing or replacing, and repainting, as acceptable to Architect.
  - 1. Provide "Wet Paint" signs as required to protect newly painted finishes. Remove temporary protective wrappings provided by others for protection of their work, after completion of painting operations.
- D. At completion of work of other trades, touch-up and restore all damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### **3.7 EXTRA STOCK**

- A. Deliver stock of maintenance materials to Owner. Furnish maintenance materials from same manufactured lot as materials installed and enclosed in protective packaging with appropriate identifying labels.
  - 1. Paint: Furnish not less than one gallon for each type and color, applied.

### **3.8 EXTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE**

#### **A. GENERAL**

- 1. Paint all new roof penetrations at roof areas, including roof attic ventilators and exhaust fan housings.
- 2. General: Provide the following paint systems for the various substrates, as indicated.

#### **B. EXTERIOR METALS**

- 1. Zinc-Coated Metal.
  - a. Alkyd Gloss Enamel Finish.
    - i. 2 Coats over primer, with total dry film thickness not less than 2.5 mils.
    - ii. 1st Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl® Universal Acrylic Primer, B66-01310 Series (5.0-10.0 mils wet, 1.9-3.8 mils dry per coat).
    - iii. 2nd Coat: S-W Industrial Enamel, Gloss Finish, B54 Series.
    - iv. 3rd Coat: S-W Industrial Enamel, Gloss Finish, B54 Series, (2-4 mils dry per coat).

PAINTING  
09900-6

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- b. *(Contractor Option)* Waterbased Alkyd Gloss Enamel Finish.
    - i. 2 Coats over primer, with total dry film thickness not less than 2.5 mils.
    - ii. 1st Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl® Universal Acrylic Primer, B66-01310 Series (5.0-10.0 mils wet, 1.9-3.8 mils dry per coat).
    - iii. 2nd Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Waterbased Alkyd Urethane Enamel, Gloss Finish, B53 Series.
    - iv. 3rd Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Waterbased Alkyd Urethane Enamel, Gloss Finish, B53 Series, (1.4 – 1.7 mils dry per coat).
2. Ferrous Metal.
- a. Alkyd Gloss Enamel Finish.
    - i. 2 Finish Coats over primer, with total dry film thickness not less than 6.0 mils.
    - ii. 1st Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl® Universal Acrylic Primer, B66-01310 Series (5.0-10.0 mils wet, 1.9-3.8 mils dry per coat).
    - iii. 2nd Coat: S-W Industrial Enamel, Gloss Finish, B54 Series.
    - iv. 3rd Coat: S-W Industrial Enamel, Gloss Finish, B54 Series, (2-4 mils dry per coat).
  - b. *(Contractor Option)* Waterbased Alkyd Gloss Enamel Finish.
    - i. 2 Finish Coats over primer, with total dry film thickness not less than 6.0 mils.
    - ii. 1st Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl® Universal Acrylic Primer, B66-01310 Series (5.0-10.0 mils wet, 1.9-3.8 mils dry per coat).
    - iii. 2nd Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Waterbased Alkyd Urethane Enamel, Gloss Finish, B53 Series.
    - iv. 3rd Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Water-based Alkyd Urethane Enamel, Gloss Finish, B53 Series, (1.4 – 1.7 mils dry per coat).

**C. EXTERIOR WOODWORK**

- 1. Painted Woodwork.
  - a. Exterior Acrylic Latex Gloss Finish.
    - i. 2 finish coats over primer with total dry film thickness of not less than 5.0 mils. Back prime all trim.
    - ii. 1st Coat: S-W Exterior Oil-Based Wood Primer, Y24W08020 (4 mils wet, 2.2 mils dry).
    - iii. 2nd Coat: S-W SuperPaint Exterior Latex Gloss Paint, A84 Series.
    - iv. 3rd Coat: S-W SuperPaint Exterior Latex Gloss Paint, A84 Series (4 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry per coat).
- 2. Stained Woodwork.
  - a. Acrylic Solid Color Stain.
    - i. Stained Finish: 2 Coats of stain on open grain wood.
    - ii. 1st Coat: S-W Woodscapes Exterior Acrylic Solid Color Stain (200-400 sq ft/gal) @ 4-8 mils wet; 1.3-2.6 mils dry.
    - iii. 2nd Coat: S-W Woodscapes Exterior Acrylic Solid Color Stain (200-400 sq ft/gal) @ 4-8 mils wet; 1.3-2.6 mils dry.

**D. EXTERIOR MASONRY UNITS**

- 1. Concrete / Mortar Surfaces (Pre-cast, Cast-In-Place, EIFS, Stucco, etc).

PAINTING  
09900-7

- a. Acrylic Coating.
  - i. 1st Coat: S-W Loxon Concrete & Masonry Primer / Sealer, LX02W0050 (5.3 – 8.0 mils wet, 2.1 – 3.2 mils dry per coat).
  - ii. 2nd Coat: S-W Loxon Self-Cleaning Acrylic Coating, LX13 Series.
  - iii. 3rd Coat: S-W Loxon Self-Cleaning Acrylic Coating, LX13 Series (5.0 – 7.0 mils wet, 2.1 – 2.9 mils dry per coat).
  
- 2. Concrete Masonry Units (CMU).
  - a. Acrylic Coating.
    - i. 1st Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Heavy Duty Block Filler, B42W00150 (16.0 – 21.0 mils wet, 8.0 - 10.5 mils dry per coat).
    - ii. 2nd Coat: S-W Loxon Self-Cleaning Acrylic Coating, LX13 Series.
    - iii. 3rd Coat: S-W Loxon Self-Cleaning Acrylic Coating, LX13 Series (5.0 – 7.0 mils wet, 2.1 – 2.9 mils dry per coat).

### 3.9 INTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE

#### A. GENERAL

1. Provide the following paint systems for the various substrates, as indicated on drawings, schedules and specifications.
2. Paint all exposed metals (steel framing, mechanical ducts, conduit, etc.) unless otherwise indicated on drawings.
3. Painter shall identify all fire and smoke partitions above lay in ceilings as follows: Wording shall be "FIRE AND SMOKE BARRIERS - PROTECT ALL OPENINGS" (4" high), to be applied every 8'- 0" on center.

#### B. INTERIOR METALS

1. Structural Steel / Metal Building Components.
  - a. Epoxy Egshel Finish.
    - i. 2 coats over primer with total dry film thickness not less than 6.0 mils.
    - ii. 1st Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer, B66W01310 (5 – 10 mils wet, 1.9 – 3.8 mils dry per coat).
    - iii. 2nd Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Waterbased Catalyzed Epoxy EgShel Finish, B73-360 Series (5.0 – 12.0 mils wet, 2.0 – 5.0 mils dry per coat).
    - iv. 3rd Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Waterbased Catalyzed Epoxy EgShel Finish, B73-360 Series (5.0 – 12.0 mils wet, 2.0 – 5.0 mils dry per coat).
  - 2. Zinc-Coated Metal
    - a. Alkyd Gloss Enamel Finish.
      - i. 2 Coats over primer, with total dry film thickness not less than 6.0 mils.
      - ii. 1st Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl® Universal Acrylic Primer, B66-01310 Series (5.0-10.0 mils wet, 1.9-3.8 mils dry per coat) .
      - iii. 2nd Coat: S-W Industrial Enamel, Gloss Finish, B54 Series.
      - iv. 3rd Coat: S-W Industrial Enamel, Gloss Finish, B54 Series, (2-4 mils dry per coat).
    - b. (*Contractor Option*) Waterbased Alkyd Gloss Enamel Finish.
      - i. 2 Coats over primer, with total dry film thickness not less than 6.0 mils.

PAINTING  
09900-8

- ii. 1st Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl® Universal Acrylic Primer, B66-01310 Series (5.0-10.0 mils wet, 1.9-3.8 mils dry per coat).
- iii. 2nd Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Waterbased Alkyd Urethane Enamel, Gloss Finish, B53 Series.
- iv. 3rd Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Waterbased Alkyd Urethane Enamel, Gloss Finish, B53 Series, (1.4 – 1.7 mils dry per coat).

3. Ferrous Metal

a. Alkyd Gloss Enamel Finish.

- i. 2 Finish Coats over primer, with total dry film thickness not less than 6.0 mils.
- ii. 1st Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl® Universal Acrylic Primer, B66-01310 Series (5.0-10.0 mils wet, 1.9-3.8 mils dry per coat).
- iii. 2nd Coat: S-W Industrial Enamel, Gloss Finish, B54 Series.
- iv. 3rd Coat: S-W Industrial Enamel, Gloss Finish, B54 Series, (2-4 mils dry per coat).

b. (*Contractor Option*) Waterbased Alkyd Gloss Enamel Finish..

- i. 2 Finish Coats over primer, with total dry film thickness not less than 6.0 mils.
- ii. 1st Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl® Universal Acrylic Primer, B66-01310 Series (5.0-10.0 mils wet, 1.9-3.8 mils dry per coat).
- iii. 2nd Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Waterbased Alkyd Urethane Enamel, Gloss Finish, B53 Series.
- iv. 3rd Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Water-based Alkyd Urethane Enamel, Gloss Finish, B53 Series, (1.4 – 1.7 mils dry per coat).

**C. INTERIOR MASONRY UNITS**

1. Concrete Masonry Units (CMU).

a. Latex Semi-Gloss Enamel Finish

- i. 2 Finish coats over filled surface with total dry film thickness of not less than 11.4 mils.
- ii. 1st Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Heavy Duty Block Filler, B42W00150 (16.0 – 21.0 mils wet, 8.0 - 10.5 mils dry per coat).
- iii. 2nd Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Semi-Gloss, B31W12651 Series.
- iv. 3rd Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Semi-Gloss, B31W12651 Series (4 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry per coat).
- v. Locations: Typical at all CMU unless otherwise indicated in the schedule.

b. Epoxy - Pre-Catalyzed Waterbased Semi-Gloss Finish.

- i. 2 Finish coats over filled surface with total dry film thickness of not less than 11.4 mils.
- ii. 1st Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Heavy Duty Block Filler, B42W00150 (16.0 – 21.0 mils wet, 8.0 - 10.5 mils dry per coat).
- iii. 2nd Coat: S-W Pro Industrial® Pre-Catalyzed Waterbased Epoxy Semi-Gloss, K46-01151 Series (4 mils wet, 1.4 mils dry per coat).

PAINTING  
09900-9

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- iv. 3rd Coat: S-W Pro Industrial® Pre-Catalyzed Waterbased Epoxy Semi-Gloss, K46-01151 Series (4 mils wet, 1.4 mils dry per coat).
  - v. Locations: All Wet Areas in Athletic Facilities.
- c. Epoxy – Catalyzed Waterbased EgShel Finish.
- i. 2 Finish coats over filled surface with total dry film thickness not less than 14.0 mils.
  - ii. 1st Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Heavy Duty Block Filler, B42W00150 (16.0 – 21.0 mils wet, 8.0 - 10.5 mils dry per coat).
  - iii. 2nd Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Catalyzed Waterbased Epoxy EgShel Finish, B73-360 Series.
  - iv. 3rd Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Catalyzed Waterbased Epoxy EgShel Finish, B73-360 Series (5.0 – 12.0 mils wet, 2.0 – 5.0 mils dry per coat).
  - v. Locations:
    - 1. All Showers Areas.
    - 2. Kitchens / Cafeterias / Servicing / Dining / Kitchen Storage / Dishwashing / Freezer-Coolers.
    - 3. FACS.
2. Existing Concrete Masonry Units (CMU).
- a. If existing concrete block walls are covered with an enamel paint finish, the following shall be used:
    - i. 1st Coat: S-W Extreme Bond Primer, B51W00150 (3.1 mils wet, .9 mils dry).
    - ii. 2nd Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Semi-Gloss, B31W12651 Series.
    - iii. 3rd Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Semi-Gloss, B31W12651 Series (4 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry per coat) .
  - b. If the existing concrete block walls are covered with a latex paint finish, the following shall be used:
    - i. 1st Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W02600 (4 mils wet, 1.0 mils dry).
    - ii. 2nd Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Semi-Gloss, B31W12651 Series.
    - iii. 3rd Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Semi-Gloss, B31W12651 Series (4 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry per coat).

**D. GYPSUM DRYALL**

- 1. Walls and Ceilings
  - a. Interior Acrylic Latex Semi-Gloss Finish.
    - i. 3 Coat system with dry film thickness not less than 3.8 mils.
    - ii. 1st Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Primer, B28W02600 (4 mils wet, 1.0 mils dry).
    - iii. 2nd Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Semi-Gloss Finish, B31W02651 Series.
    - iv. 3rd Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Semi-Gloss Finish, B31W02651 Series (4 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry per coat).
    - v. Locations: Typical at all Gypsum Drywall Walls and Ceilings unless otherwise indicated in the schedule.

PAINTING  
09900-10

- b. Epoxy - Pre-Catalyzed Waterbased EgShel Finish.
  - i. 2 Finish coats over Primer with total dry film thickness not less than 14.0 mils.
  - ii. 1st Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W02600 (4 mils wet, 1.0 mils dry).
  - iii. 2nd Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Pre-Catalyzed Waterbased Epoxy EgShel Finish, K45-01151.
  - iv. 3rd Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Pre-Catalyzed Waterbased Epoxy EgShel Finish, K45-01151 (2-4 mils dry per coat).
  - v. Locations: Walls and Ceilings at Showers Areas. *NOT in Shower Stalls.*
- c. *(Contractor Option)* Epoxy - Catalyzed Waterbased EgShel Finish.
  - i. 2 Finish coats over Primer with total dry film thickness not less than 14.0 mils.
  - ii. 1st Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W02600 (4 mils wet, 1.0 mils dry).
  - iii. 2nd Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Catalyzed Waterbased Epoxy EgShel Finish, B73-360 Series.
  - iv. 3rd Coat: S-W Pro Industrial Catalyzed Waterbased Epoxy EgShel Finish, B73-360 Series (5.0 – 12.0 mils wet, 2.0 – 5.0 mils dry per coat).
  - v. Locations: Walls and Ceilings at Showers Areas. *NOT in Shower Stalls.*

## E. INTERIOR WOODWORK

- 1. Painted Woodwork.
  - a. Interior Semi-Gloss Acrylic Latex with dry film thickness not less than 3.8 mils.
    - i. 1st Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Primer, B28W02600 (4 mils wet, 1.0 mils dry).
    - ii. 2nd Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Semi-Gloss Finish, B31W02651 Series.
    - iii. 3rd Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Semi-Gloss Finish, B31W02651 Series (4 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry per coat).
- 2. Stained Woodwork
  - a. Stained Varnish Rubbed Finish: 3 Finish Coats over stain plus filler on open grain wood.
    - i. 1st Coat: S-W MinWax Performance Series Tintable Interior Stain 550 VOC, (450-550 sq ft/gal) Available in 250 VOC Version.
    - ii. 2nd Coat: S-W MinWax Performance Series Fast-Dry Varnish.
    - iii. 3rd Coat: S-W MinWax Performance Series Fast-Dry Varnish (600-700 sq ft/gal) (available in Gloss, Semi-Gloss, Satin)
- 3. Wall Panels (Wood and Acoustical).
  - a. Interior Semi-Gloss Finish Acrylic Latex with dry film thickness not less than 3.8 mils.
    - i. 1st Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Primer, B28W02600(4 mils wet, 1.0 mils dry)
    - ii. 2nd Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Semi-Gloss, B31W02651 Series
    - iii. 3rd Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Semi-Gloss, B31W02651 Series (4 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry per coat)

**END OF SECTION**

PAINTING  
09900-11

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



## SECTION 10410 - IDENTIFYING DEVICES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Types of identifying devices specified in this section include the following:
  - 1. Room Signs (See Door Schedule)
- B. Note to the Contractor: If the Contract Sum (as awarded) is \$100,000.00 or more, the Contractor shall furnish and erect a project sign and interior plaques as shown in "Detail of Project Sign" (DCM Form C-15) and "Plaque Detail" bound in the Project Manual at the end of "General Conditions". The project sign shall be erected in a prominent location selected by the Architect and Owner and shall be maintained in good condition until completion of Work.
- C. Extent of signs and plaque is indicated on the drawings.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drawings and Specifications are based on one manufacturer's standard products. Another standard system of a similar and equivalent nature may be acceptable when the differences do not materially detract from the design concept or intended performance as judged solely by the Architect.
- B. **General Contractor is responsible for verifying signage requirements and correct wording, names etc. with Owner and Architect before ordering.**

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for each type of device. Include large scale sections of typical members and other components. Provide dimensioned elevations. Show anchorages, grounds and reinforcement and indicate finishes.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ROOM SIGNS

- A. MANUFACTURER:
  - 1. The following manufacturers' products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function.
    - a. ASI Sign Systems, Inc., 8181 Jetstar Drive, Suite 100, Irving, TX 75063; [www.asisignage.com](http://www.asisignage.com); 1-800-274-7732
    - b. Best Sign Systems, [www.bestsigns.com](http://www.bestsigns.com); 1202 N. Park Avenue, Montrose, CO 81401-3171, Phone (970) 249-2378 or 1-800-235-2378; Fax (970) 249-0223
    - c. Leeds Architectural Letters of Alabama Inc, [www.leedsletters.com](http://www.leedsletters.com); P.O. Box 40, Leeds, AL 35094; Phone (205) 699-5271; Fax (205) 699-3342
    - d. Bayuk Graphic Systems, Inc., [www.bayukgraphics.com](http://www.bayukgraphics.com); 5005 Old Lincoln Highway Parkesburg, PA 19365; Phone: (717)-442-0274; Fax: (717)-442-1289
    - e. Mohawk Sign Systems; [www.mohawksign.com](http://www.mohawksign.com); 5 Dandreano Dr, Amsterdam, NY 12010; Ph. 518.842.5303.
  - 2. Substitutions: Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.

IDENTIFYING DEVICES  
10410-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## B. MATERIALS:

1. Provide 6" x 8" high laminated plastic with raised lettering complying with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).
2. All Signs MUST include 1" Slide In Window Slot.
3. Color to be selected by the Architect after bid date from manufacturer standards.
4. Use International Symbols of accessibility for identifying facilities as accessible.
5. Letters and numerals shall be raised 1/32 in (0.8 mm) minimum, upper case, sans serif or simple serif type and shall be accompanied with Grade 2 Braille.
6. Raised characters shall be at least 5/8 in (16 mm) high, but no higher than 2 in (50 mm).
7. Pictograms shall be accompanied by the equivalent verbal description placed directly below the pictogram. The border dimension of the pictogram shall be 6 in (152 mm) minimum in height.
8. **See Door Schedule. If not shown provide 20 letter characters per room sign.**
9. **The Supplier will be required to meet with the Owner for exact wording for all room signs before preparation of the shop drawing submittal to the Architect for approval.)**
10. Tactile characters on signs shall be located 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground surface, measured from the baseline of the lowest tactile character and 60 inches (1525 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground surface, measured from the baseline of the highest tactile character.
  - a. Where a tactile sign is provided at a door, the sign shall be located alongside the door at the latch side.
  - b. Where a tactile sign is provided at double doors with one active leaf, the sign shall be located on the inactive leaf.
  - c. Where a tactile sign is provided at double doors with two active leafs, the sign shall be located to the right of the right hand door.
  - d. Where there is no wall space at the latch side of a single door or at the right side of double doors, signs shall be located on the nearest adjacent wall.
  - e. Signs containing tactile characters shall be located so that a clear floor space of 18 inches (455 mm) minimum by 18 inches (455 mm) minimum, centered on the tactile characters, is provided beyond the arc of any door swing between the closed position and 45 degree open position. Mounting devices shall be concealed.

## 2.2 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate signs to comply with requirements indicated including, dimensions, design details, quality, thickness and finish of materials. Use materials and shapes of sufficient thickness, with reinforcing, if needed, to produce sufficient flatness, free of "oil canning", and to impart sufficient strength for size, design and application indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units plumb and level, in locations and with mounting shown. Securely attach to the supporting structure with concealed fasteners, in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

### 3.2 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

IDENTIFYING DEVICES  
10410-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- A. At completion of the installation, clean surfaces in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Protect units from damage until acceptance by the Owner.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 10440 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS AND ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fire Extinguishers.
  - 2. Extinguisher cabinets.
  - 3. Accessories.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. ASTM International (ASTM):
    - a. ASTM E814-11a, Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Penetration Firestop Systems.
  - 2. International Code Council (ICC):
    - a. International Building Code (IBC) - Current Edition.
  - 3. Intertek Testing Services/Warnock-Hersey International (ITS/WHI)
  - 4. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
    - a. NFPA 10-2010, Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers: For criteria covering installations for Class A, B, C, D, and K hazards as well as the selection, inspection, maintenance, recharging, and testing of portable fire extinguishing equipment.
    - b. NFPA 70-2011, National Electrical Code.
  - 5. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL)
  - 6. United States Code (USC):
    - a. Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, as amended by the ADA Amendments Act of 2008: For restrictions relating to cabinet projections in corridors.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01600:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Cabinets: Materials description for fire extinguisher cabinets include roughing-in dimensions, details showing mounting methods, relationships to surrounding construction, door hardware, cabinet type and materials, trim style and door construction, door style and materials.
    - b. Extinguishers: Materials description for fire extinguishers; include ratings and classifications.
    - c. Installation instructions for each product specified.
  - 2. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Small-scale plans showing locations of fire extinguisher cabinets and individual fire extinguishers.
    - b. Schedules showing each type of cabinet and extinguisher to ensure proper fit and

FIRE EXTINGUISHERS AND ACCESSORIES  
10440-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

function.

- c. Indicate installation procedures and accessories required for a complete installation.
3. Samples:
  - a. Extinguisher Cabinet Door and Trim Finishes: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on samples of size indicated below:
    - i. Size: 6 inches (150 mm) square.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with standards referenced in Article 1.02 - REFERENCES.
- B. Provide fire extinguishers, cabinets and accessories produced by a single manufacturer.
- C. Provide fire extinguishers of type approved by UL, State Fire Marshal's Office, and local regulatory agencies, if any.
- D. Fire-Rated, Fire Protection Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements in ASTM E814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.

#### **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver, store, and handle fire protection specialties and related materials using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, or loss.
  1. Deliver components in manufacturer's original packaging, properly labeled for identification.

#### **1.7 WARRANTY**

- A. All Fire Protection Products (except fire extinguishers) carry a one year warranty after date of shipment against defects in materials or workmanship. Fire extinguishers carry a longer warranty. We will replace or repair any product found defective within this period. No other warranty expressed or implied is valid. Manufacturer's warranty, terms and conditions apply in all cases. Please see complete warranty on our website for more details.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 FIRE PROTECTION SPECIALTIES MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  1. J. L. Industries, Inc., a division of Activar Construction Products Group; 9702 Newton Av S Bloomington, MN 55431; (800) 554-6077, (952) 835-6850, (952) 835-2218 (FAX); [SALES@ACTIVARCPG.COM](mailto:SALES@ACTIVARCPG.COM); [www.activarcp.com](http://www.activarcp.com)
  2. Larsen's Manufacturing Company
  3. Modern Metal Products
- B. Substitutions: Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work provided such products have been approved by the Architect, not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.

#### **2.2 FIRE EXTINGUISHERS**

- A. Multi-Purpose Chemical Type: Extinguisher unit containing a fluidized and siliconized mono ammonium phosphate powder; nonconductive and nontoxic.
  1. Construction: Heavy duty steel cylinder with metal valve and siphon tube, O-ring seal, replaceable valve stem seal, visual pressure gage, pull pin and upright squeeze grip.
  2. Finish: Factory powder-coated; Red.

FIRE EXTINGUISHERS AND ACCESSORIES  
10440-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

3. Effectiveness (Rating): Class A, B, and C fires.
  4. Model Identification and UL Rating: Cosmic **10E; 4A-80BC**.
  5. "Start Up Tags" for each fire extinguisher must be provided and approved by Local Fire Department before Final Inspection.
- B. Class K Wet Chemical Type: Extinguisher unit containing a low "pH" potassium acetate solution.
1. Construction: Stainless steel cylinder with protective nozzle tip orifice seal and nonmetallic nozzle tip finger guard, O-ring seal, replaceable valve stem seal, visual pressure gage, pull pin, and upright squeeze grip.
  2. Effectiveness (Rating): Class K fires.
  3. Model Identification and and UL Rating: **25; Class K**. Capacity: 2.5 gal.

## 2.3 EXTINGUISHER CABINETS

- A. Cabinet with Steel Trim and Door:
1. **Ambassador Series, Model 1017F10** at Non-Fire Rated Walls.
  2. **Ambassador Series, Model 1017F10FX2** at Fire Rated Walls.
- B. Cabinet Style: **Semi-recessed**.
1. Tub: Cold-rolled steel.
    - a. Finish: Factory-applied powder coat paint finish.
      - i. To be selected by Architect after bid date from manufacturer Standard Colors.
  2. Door and Trim Construction: Cold-rolled steel; flush doors with 5/8 inch (15.88 mm) door stop attached by continuous hinge and equipped with zinc-plated handle with roller catch.
    - a. Finish: Factory-applied powder coat paint finish.
      - i. To be selected by Architect after bid date from manufacturer Standard Colors.
  3. Trim Style and Depth: Cabinets located in corridors shall not protrude into the hall way more than 2 1/2".
    - a. Semi-Recessed Cabinet:
      - i. Rolled Edge: 2-1/2 inch (63.50 mm).
      - b. Trim Dimensions: 1-3/4 inch (44.45 mm) face trim on frame and 1-1/4 inch (31.75 mm) face trim on door.
- C. Fire-Rating: Provide Fire-Rated cabinets for 1-hour and 2-hour combustible and noncombustible wall systems as required.

## 2.4 CABINET DOOR STYLES, GLAZING TYPES, AND ADDITIONAL OPTIONS

- A. Door Style:
1. Style F: Full glazing; with pull handle.
- B. Door Glazing:
1. Type 10: Clear acrylic.
- C. Additional Options:
1. Cabinet Lettering:
    - a. Text: FIRE EXTINGUISHER.
    - b. Color(s): [Red] [Black] [White]. To be selected by Architect after bid date.

## 2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

FIRE EXTINGUISHERS AND ACCESSORIES  
10440-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- A. Ship extinguishers to the Project site fully charged, EXCEPT those which contain water as an extinguishing agent, if any.
- B. Obtain Fire Extinguishers and Fire Extinguisher Brackets from same manufacturer to ensure compatibility.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where recessed and semi-recessed cabinets will be installed and blocking where surface mounted cabinets will be installed.
  - 1. Notify the Contractor in writing of conditions detrimental to proper and timely completion of the installation.
  - 2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated, or if not indicated, at heights to comply with applicable regulations of governing authorities.
  - 1. Prepare recesses in walls for fire extinguisher cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and style of trim and to comply with manufacturer's instructions.
  - 2. Securely fasten mounting brackets and fire extinguisher cabinets to structure, square and plumb, to comply with manufacturer's instructions.
  - 3. Maintain fire ratings where cabinets are recessed into fire-rated wall systems.
- B. Cabinet Lettering:
  - 1. Identify fire extinguisher in cabinet with lettering spelling "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" painted on door by silk screen process. Provide lettering on door as indicated, or if not indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard letter sizes, styles, colors and layouts.

#### **3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Ensure that each extinguisher is fully charged, and that inspection of each extinguisher has been performed, as evidenced by the National Association of Fire Equipment Distributors certification tag, just prior to turnover.

#### **3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.
- E. Replace fire protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

### **END OF SECTION**

FIRE EXTINGUISHERS AND ACCESSORIES  
10440-4

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

## SECTION 10800 - TOILET ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 GENERAL

- A. Drawings and general provisions of contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Section 06100, Rough Framing for Blocking

#### 1.3 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- B. Extent of each type of toilet accessory is indicated on drawings and schedules.
- C. **NOTE: Prior to placing any orders for items within this section, the General Contractor is responsible for verifying all toilet accessories with the Owner. Should the owner choose to provide/supply any of these toilet accessories, the General Contractor shall issue a deductive Change Order for material only. The General Contractor will maintain responsibility for installation.**
- D. Toilet Accessories **Furnished by Owner and Installed by the Contractor** as follows:
  - 1. Soap Dispensers
  - 2. Toilet Tissue Dispensers
  - 3. Paper Towel Dispensers

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Inserts and Anchorages: Furnish inserts and anchoring devices which must be set in concrete or built into masonry; coordinate delivery with other work to avoid delay.
- B. Accessory Locations: Coordinate accessory locations with other work to avoid interference and to assure proper operation and servicing of accessory units.
- C. Products: Provide products of same manufacturer for each type of accessory unit and for units exposed in same areas, unless other- wise acceptable to Architect.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data and installation instructions for each toilet accessory.

### PART 2 – PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. The following manufacturer's products have been used to establish minimum standards for materials, workmanship and function.
  - 1. Soap Dispensers:
    - Wall Mounted over each sink
    - a. Approved Products:
      - i. Bobrick #B-2112
      - ii. ASI #0345
      - iii. Bradley #6562
  - 2. Toilet Tissue Dispensers:

TOILET ACCESSORIES  
10800-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251



- a. Roll Type: (One each water closet)
- b. Approved Products:
  - i. Bradley #5425
  - ii. ASI #0040
- 3. Paper Towel Dispensers:
  - a. Roll Type
  - b. Surface Mounted
  - c. Approved Products:
    - i. Bobrick #B52860
- B. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work provided such products have been approved by the Architect not less than Ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.

## **2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL**

- A. Stainless Steel: AISI Type 302/304, with polished No. 4 finish, 22 gage minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mirror Units: Mirror glass shall be FS DD-G-451, Type I, Class I, Quality q2, 1/4" thick, with silver coating, copper protective coating, and non-metallic paint coating complying with FS DD-M-411. Mirror shall be provided in stainless steel frames.
- C. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit or of galvanized steel where concealed.

## **2.3 FABRICATION**

- A. General: Stamped names or labels on exposed faces of toilet accessory units are not permitted, except where otherwise indicated; in obtrusive labels on surfaces not exposed to view are acceptable. Where locks are required for a particular type of toilet accessory, provide same keying throughout project.
- B. Furnish two keys for each lock.
- C. Surface Mounted Toilet Accessories General: Except where otherwise indicated, fabricate units with tight seams and joints, exposed edges rolled. Hang doors or access panels with continuous stainless steel piano hinge. Provide concealed anchorage wherever possible.
- D. Recessed Toilet Accessories, General: Except where otherwise indicated, fabricate units of all welded construction, without mitered corners. Hang doors or access panels with full-length stainless steel piano hinge. Provide anchorage which is fully concealed when unit is closed.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install toilet accessory units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, using fasteners which are appropriate to substrate and recommended by manufacturer of unit. Install units plumb and level, firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.

### **3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Adjust toilet accessories for proper operation and verify that mechanisms function smoothly. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Clean and polish all exposed surfaces after removing labels and protective coatings.

## **END OF SECTION**

TOILET ACCESSORIES  
10800-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

## SECTION 13670 - EXTRUDED ALUMINUM CANOPY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections apply to work of this section.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Scope of Work: Work in this section shall include design, fabrication and installation of a complete extruded aluminum canopy system (roll formed not acceptable) with welded drain beams and trusses in accordance with the drawings and this specification.
- B. All components shall be as required to support design loads in accordance with engineering prints and calculations provided by the manufacturer, sizes shown on the drawings are for diagrammatical purposes only.
- C. Water shall drain from deck into the existing beams and out at grade level of columns through weepholes.
- D. The extent of aluminum walkway cover is shown on the drawings and as specified herein.

#### 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. Aluminum Design Manual 2000, Specifications & Guidelines for Aluminum Structures.
- B. ASCE 7, Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures.
- C. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA)
- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product information, specifications and installation instructions for components and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit complete erection drawings showing attachment system, column and gutter beam framing, transverse cross sections, covering and trim details, and optional installation details to clearly indicate proper assembly of components, sealed by a State Registered Structural Engineer in the state in which the work is being performed.
- C. Certification: Submit written Certification prepared and signed by a State Registered Structural Engineer verifying that framing design will safely resist wind uplift as computed by ANSI A58.1, IV=150, Exposure C, as well as meet indicated loading requirements of the Standard Building Code, latest edition as referenced in State Requirements for Educational Facilities 1999 and wind loading requirements of ANSI/ASCE 7-98, live and dead loads and other load requirements.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with provisions of the following except as otherwise indicated.
  - 1. International Building Code, latest addition with amendments, if any. AWS (American Welding Society) standards for structural aluminum welding.
- B. Manufacturer: Obtain aluminum covered walkway system from only one (1) manufacturer, although several may be indicated as offering products complying with requirements.
- C. Installer Qualification: Firm with not less than three (3) years experience in installation of aluminum walkway covers of type, quantity and installation methods similar to work of this section.
- D. Field Measurements: Take field measurements prior to preparation of shop drawings and fabrication where possible, to insure proper fitting of work. However, allow for adjustments within specified tolerations wherever taking of field measurements before fabrication might delay work.

EXTRUDED ALUMINUM WALKWAY COVER  
(CANOPY)  
13670-1

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

- E. Shop Assembly: Pre-assemble units in shop to greatest extent possible and disassemble as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- F. Coordination: Coordinate work of this section with work of other sections which interface with covered walkway system (sidewalks, curbs, building fascias, etc.).

**1.6 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. System Performance: Provide aluminum covered walkway system that has been designed, produced, fabricated and installed to withstand normal temperature changes as well as live loading, dead loading and wind loading in compliance with Standard Building Code requirements for geographic area in which work is located and as follows:
- B. The system shall be designed by a registered Engineer in the State of Alabama, certifying the system meets all wind, foundation and all other applicable loads and requirements set forth by local or state building requirements.
  - 1. Live Load: 30 p.s.f. minimum
  - 2. Structural design for wind forces: Comply with ANSI A58.1-1982
  - 3. Design Wind Velocity: **120.p.h.**
  - 4. Importance Factor: 1.1.
  - 5. Stability Criteria: International Building Code 2015
- C. Sizes shown on drawings are to be considered minimum.
- D. Roof structure shall be capable of sustaining severe icing, hail, hurricane force winds and supporting a concentrated load such as being walked upon.

**PART 2 – PRODUCT**

**2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. The following manufacturers products have been used to establish minimum requirements for materials, workmanship, and function:
  - 1. Extruded Aluminum Walkway Cover System.
    - a. Tennessee Valley Metals, Inc. (Basis of Design and Standard of Quality) | 190 Industrial Park Road, Oneonta, Alabama 35121 | (205) 274-9500 | [www.tvmetals.com](http://www.tvmetals.com).
    - b. Dittmer Architectural Aluminum | 1006 Shepherd Road | Winter Springs, Florida 32708 | (800) 822-1755; (407) 699-1755 | [www.dittdeck.com](http://www.dittdeck.com) | [info@dittdeck.com](mailto:info@dittdeck.com).
    - c. Superior Mason Products LLC. | 116 Citation Court, Birmingham, Alabama 35209 | (877) 445-1200 | [www.superiormetalproducts.com](http://www.superiormetalproducts.com) | [canopysales@superior-mason.com](mailto:canopysales@superior-mason.com).
    - d. Mitchell Metals | 1761 McCoba Dr. SE Suite B, Smyrna, Georgia 30080 | (770) 285-5875; | [www.mitchellmetals.net](http://www.mitchellmetals.net) | [sales@mitchellmetals.net](mailto:sales@mitchellmetals.net).
    - e. Gulf South Metals | 17869 Samantha Drive, Foley, Alabama 36535 | (251) 943-6443; | [www.gulfsouthmetals.com](http://www.gulfsouthmetals.com) | [info@gulfsouthmetals.com](mailto:info@gulfsouthmetals.com).
- B. Equal products of other manufacturers may be used in the work, provided such products have been approved, by the Architect, not less than ten (10) days prior to scheduled bid opening.

**2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. All aluminum extrusions shall be alloy 6063 heat treated to a T-6 temper.
- B. Components:

EXTRUDED ALUMINUM WALKWAY COVER  
(CANOPY)  
13670-2

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

1. Columns: Columns shall be radius-cornered tubular extrusion of size shown on drawings with cutout and internal diverter for drainage where indicated. Circular downspout opening in column is not acceptable. Provide a small weep hole at the bottom of all non-draining columns to allow for the escape of condensation.
  2. Beams (when used): Beams shall be tubular extrusions of size and shape shown on drawings (open-top tubular extrusions of size and shape shown on drawings with top edges thickened for strength as necessary).
  3. Deck: Deck shall be extruded self-flashing sections interlocking into a composite unit.
  4. Fascia: Fascia shall be manufacturer's standard shape. Size as indicated on drawings.
  5. Flashing: Flashing shall be .032" aluminum (min.). All thru-wall flashing is completed by others.
  6. Arches: Arches for barrel vault protective covers shall be sharp-cornered tubular extrusions of size shown in drawings.
- C. Fasteners:
1. Deck Screws (rivets not permitted): Type 18-8 non-magnetic stainless steel sealed with a neoprene "O" ring beneath 5/8" outside dimension, conical washer.
  2. Fascia Rivets: Size 3/16" by 1/2" grip range aluminum rivets with aluminum mandrel.
  3. Bolts: All bolts, nuts and washers to be 18-8 non-magnetic stainless steel.
  4. Tek Screws: not permitted

## 2.2 FINISHES

- A. Standard:
1. Factory baked enamel finish, AAMA 603.8.
    - a. Color to be selected by Architect after bid date from manufactures standards.
    - b. Standard Color Selection must include "White".

## 2.3 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer shall warrant the entire system against defects in labor and materials for a period of one (1) year commencing on the date of substantial completion as established in Division One of these specifications.
- B. Intention of this warranty is the manufacturer will come onto the jobsite and do all necessary to effect corrections of any deficiencies.
- C. Prima Facie Evidence of defects in labor and material may include but is not limited to, one or more of the following:
1. Moisture leaks
  2. Metal failure including excessive deflection
  3. Fastener failure
  4. Finish failure

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Drainage: Water shall drain internally from deck to fascia to beams (when used) to columns, for discharge out of rain diverters at or below ground level as indicated on architectural drawings.
- B. Deck Construction: Deck shall be manufactured of extruded modules that interlock in a self-flashing manner. Interlocking joints shall be positively fastened at 18" O.C. creating a monolithic structural unit capable of developing the full strength of the sections. The fastenings must have minimum shear strength of 350 pounds each. Deck shall be assembled with sufficient camber to

EXTRUDED ALUMINUM WALKWAY COVER  
(CANOPY)  
13670-3

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

offset dead load deflection.

**END OF SECTION**

New Admin Building at  
Red Bay High School for the  
Franklin County Board of Education  
Russellville, Alabama

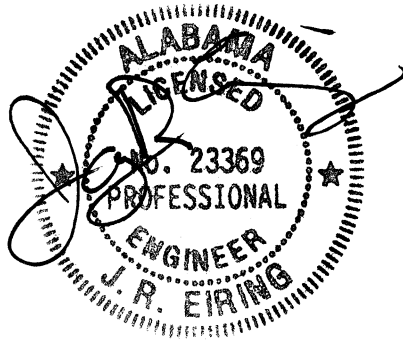
MCKEE PROJECT NO. 23.251

EXTRUDED ALUMINUM WALKWAY COVER  
(CANOPY)  
13670-4

A New Admin Building  
At Red Bay High School

These specifications sections were prepared by and under the direct supervision of the Engineer of Record for this project.

Division 15 – MECHANICAL  
15010 Mechanical General Provisions  
15400 Plumbing  
15700 Heating, Ventilating & Air Conditioning



May 18, 2024

## SECTION 15010

### GENERAL MECHANICAL PROVISIONS

#### PART 1. GENERAL

- 1.1. **General Requirements:** Carefully and completely read all the specifications, review all plans and all related construction documents. Pay particular attention to strict submittal requirements and note the ramifications of providing incomplete or incorrectly formatted and incorrectly submitted submittals.

No consideration will be given after bid opening for alleged misunderstanding regarding the specifications, plans, utility connections, permits, fees, etc...

Division One is applicable in full hereto. Where the words, "provide", "furnish", "include" or "install" are used in the specifications, Codes or on the Drawings, it shall mean to furnish, install, and test, complete and ready for operation as specified and required.

No materials or products that contain asbestos, formaldehyde, polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), lead or mercury, in excess of limits mandated and defined by OSHA, LEED and the EPA, shall be utilized.

Manufacturers not named in the specifications require prior approval, seven (7) days prior to bid date. Follow procedures set forth in Division 1 of the specifications. All prior approvals shall be submitted through the Architect. Where substitutions are proposed, unless the Contractor states in writing, on a separate recap/summary sheet in the front of the respective submittal, the differences of the substituted equipment or material, he shall be responsible to replace such items any time discrepancies are found.

Where conflicts occur between a Code, Standard or Listing and the contract drawings or contract specifications, the most stringent requirements shall govern and be applied.

The Architect and Engineer shall interpret the meaning of the drawings and specifications and will reject all work and materials, which in their judgment, is not in full accordance therewith.

- 1.2. **Spare Parts:** Manufacturer of any equipment specified shall have a wholesale outlet for readily available replacement parts in the nearest major USA city.
- 1.3. **Codes and Standards and Listings:** Unless specified otherwise, comply with all current editions of all referenced publications within these specifications and all current editions of applicable NFPA, ASME, OSHA, IBC, ASHRAE, ASTM, ASME, ANSI, SMACNA, Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), ADA Standards for Accessible Design, with Local Building Codes, Mechanical Codes, Gas Codes, Plumbing Codes, ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1, ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135, International Energy Conservation Code (IECC), International Fuel Gas Code (IFGC), International Fire Code (IFC), Americans with Disability Act Accessibility Guidelines (ADA) and with all applicable local ordinances and codes. Equipment shall bear Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL) listing label, Canadian Standards Association (CSA) listing label or ETL approved rating. All electrical components and products shall also comply with the respective Code of Federal Regulations (CFR).

Where conflicts occur between a Code, Standard or Listing and the contract drawings or contract specifications, the most stringent requirements shall govern and be applied. Advisory provisions listed in all Codes referenced in the Contract Documents are mandatory and the word "should" shall be interpreted as "shall".

- 1.4. Permits and Inspections:** Provide all permits, pay all fees and arrange for inspections as required by all applicable Governing Authorities. Furnish certificates of all inspections and approvals from all Governing Authorities to the Architect. Include certificates of all inspections and approvals from all Governing Authorities in the Plumbing, Fire Protection and HVAC closeout documents. Provide additional materials, parts, methods, etc. and modify the work as required by Governing Authorities' Inspections and Regulations. Correct all deficiencies required by Code officials at no additional cost to the Owner or the Owner's Project Design Professionals.

The Plumbing Contractor shall arrange and pay for the State of Alabama Boiler and Pressure Vessel Safety Division/Inspection Divisions, Elevators/Boilers Inspector to visit job site to inspect water heater and/or boiler installation and obtain written approval, certification and Certificate for Potable Water Heater (PWH) as required. This inspection shall be accomplished prior to the final site visit, to include the tagging of the equipment with the inspection tag, else DCM will cancel the site visit and impose a reinspection fee.

Correct all deficiencies required by any Governmental Inspector without additional cost to the Owner or the Owner's Project Design Professionals, using materials and methods, as directed by, State of Alabama Boiler and Pressure Vessel Safety Division/Inspection Divisions and Elevators/Boilers Inspector as required.

- 1.5. Site Visits:** It is the contractor's responsibility to have the job ready for site visits when they are scheduled. If the project is not ready for the requested site visit and the Architect, any governmental agency or any other entity requires a re-inspection with the Engineer present, the contractor shall pay Zgouvas, Eiring & Associates a re-inspection fee of \$2,000. The payment shall be made directly to Zgouvas, Eiring & Associates 5 days prior to the scheduled re-inspection.

**The Contractor is urged to carefully review the extensive requirements of Paragraph "Identification" in this Section 15010 of the specifications and note that certain identification is required to be completed before certain site visits. There are specific identification requirements prior to the above ceiling and final site visits, respectively, that are mandatory. The State of Alabama Department of Construction Management (DCM) will cancel, on-site, the site visit if not completed as specified. Failure to comply with this provision will be cause for cancellation of the site visit, and a fee imposed for the additional site visit, with all costs of the additional site visit to be borne by the respective Contractor responsible.**

- 1.6. Drawings and Specifications:** The Architect and Engineer shall interpret the meaning of the drawings and specifications and will reject all work and materials, which in their judgment, is not in full accordance therewith. Where doubt arises as to the meaning of the plans and specifications, obtain the Architect's decision, in writing, before proceeding with parts affected; otherwise assume liability for damage to other work and for making necessary corrections to work in question.

All drawings are diagrammatic and are intended to quantify the materials specified



and indicate their intended relationship to each other. The drawings and specifications are complementary, and work shown, but not specified, or specified, but not shown, shall be the same as though required by both.

The Contractor shall carefully examine the contract documents during the bidding phase. Any missing information in the contract documents that is required for obtaining accurate pricing shall be brought to the attention of the Architect, **prior to bid date**, so all may be clarified and/or corrected. Failure to identify and resolve the issues prior to bid shall require the Contractor to provide said items, complete, without additional cost to the Owner or the Owner's Project Design Professionals, using materials and methods specified by, and as directed by, the Owner's Design Professionals.

The Contractor shall carefully investigate the conditions that would affect the work to be performed and shall arrange such work as necessary to comply with the intent of the construction documents.

**DO NOT SCALE** the Plumbing, Fire Protection and HVAC drawings. In the interest of clearness, the work is not always shown to scale or exact location. Refer to Architectural drawings for dimensions and verify scale shown on the drawings. The various scales used on the drawings do not allow for all fittings, offsets and accessories that may be required to complete the work. Check all measurements, location of pipe, all required and specified appurtenances for duct and piping, ducts, and equipment with the architectural and electrical drawings, and lay out work to fit in with ceiling grids, lighting, and other parts. All wiring, piping, ductwork, etc., shall be concealed unless specified or noted otherwise. Adjust in the field as required to provide the optimum result to facilitate ease of service, efficient operation, and best appearance.

- 1.7. Conflicts, Coordination and Changes:** If interferences or conflicts occur, the Architect shall decide which equipment shall be relocated regardless of which was first installed. In the interest of avoiding such conflicts, each Sub-Contractor who is using common space, etc., shall coordinate his work with all other trades and other parts of his own work. If, during this coordination, it is discovered that necessary or desirable changes should be made, advise the Architect, and secure his decision in writing. Do not fabricate any duct nor install any pipe until all coordination has been accomplished.

Coordinate location of all Division 15 work with Division 16. Do not run piping, ductwork and similar Division 15 work in NEC dedicated service areas for electrical equipment, including above panel boards, starters, communication panels, control panels, telephone backboards, data panels and similar electrical elements.

- 1.8. Coordination Drawings:** Follow procedures set forth in Division 1. Before starting work, submit for review, coordination shop drawings showing proposed arrangement of all equipment, all piping, ducts, floor drains, power requirements, all equipment maintenance requirements and controls. As a minimum, submit detail layouts of potential conflicts at plumbing risers, equipment rooms, limited ceiling space, etc. Refer to subsequent Sections for additional specific requirements.

Coordinate the submission of shop drawings and refer questionable locations to Architect/Engineer for resolution prior to installation. Failure to coordinate all items, and correct non-conforming installed work, shall be provided at no additional cost to the Owner or the Owner's Project Design Professionals.

Failure to submit shop drawings shall make the Contractor responsible for changes required to facilitate installation of, and the proper operation of, all systems at no additional cost to the Owner or the Owner's Project Design Professionals.

- 1.9. Maintenance, Replacement and Service Access:** Locate equipment as shown on the plans. The Contractor shall install equipment, valves, piping, etc. with the maintenance, service and replacement access required by the Manufacturer of the respective installed item. All items shall be installed to provide maximum safety, service, replacement, and maintenance access.

To ensure proper maintenance access, all piping with valves, any equipment, and any other items that may require maintenance, service or replacement, shall be located no more than 12" above the finished ceiling and no more than 14'-0" above finish floor in areas without ceilings.

Coordinate all questionable access or location of items that may present a problem, if installed as specified above, with the Engineer or the Architect's field representative prior to installing any item; else, relocation will be at the Contractor's expense once discovered.

- 1.10. Warranty:** Refer to Division 1. Additionally, guarantee in writing to make good without cost any defects in materials and workmanship for one year following the date of substantial completion of the project as determined by the Architect. Provide free maintenance and service during the guarantee period.

Refer to other Division 15 Sections for additional detailed warranty requirements.

- 1.11. Submittal Data:** Within 25 days after award of the contract, submit for review a **complete** schedule of material and equipment for **all** specified items proposed. The Architect and/or Engineer's review of submittal data does not relieve the contractor of his responsibility to comply with the contract documents.

Variations from the specifications and plans for the items submitted for review shall be explicitly indicated in the front of the submittal, immediately after the submittal cover page, otherwise, it will be assumed the product will conform to the plans and specifications in all respects.

Where substitutions are proposed, unless the Contractor states in writing, on a separate recap/summary sheet in the front of the respective submittal, the differences of the substituted equipment or material, he shall be responsible to replace such items any time discrepancies are found.

Submittals shall include catalog data, scheduled capacities, fan curves, sound data, materials and methods of installation, various components of various assemblies, etc.

**Only ONE complete submittal will be accepted for each specification section.**

Do not submit plumbing fixtures separately without the remaining Section 15400 items submittal. **Providing submittals piecemeal is not allowed.** If a partial or incomplete submittal is provided, it will be automatically rejected.

All submittals shall be separately bound in pdf format. Submittals shall be electronically indexed and tabbed. Refer to the Architectural General Conditions and Division 1 for the format required by the Architect.

A cover sheet shall be provided in the front of the submittal package which states, as

a minimum, the Project name and location, the name of the Owner, the Architectural firm, the Engineering firm, **the Engineer's Project number located in the Engineer's logo** on the plans, the General Contractor, the Mechanical Contractor, Fire Protection Contractor and Plumbing Contractor and each Contractors' point of contact, with phone number.

A recap/summary sheet shall be inserted at the beginning of each tabbed section to summarize the contents of each respective tabbed section. The recap/summary sheet shall include all items that have been changed or removed due to Project cost constraints, addendums, or Value Engineering (VE).

**Failure to include items changed or removed due to Project cost constraints, addendums or VE items that require an additional review by the Engineer will require the Contractor to reimburse the Engineer a minimum of \$700 for the effort involved to review the corrected submittal.**

Submittals shall include materials used, methods of installation, product manufacturer, equipment capacities, etc. HVAC equipment items shall follow the identical tabular format, category by category, nomenclature, etc., as shown on the HVAC equipment schedules. As a minimum, the recap/summary sheet shall indicate the submitted values compared to each of the specified values. **Failure to provide the submittals in the format specified will be cause for immediate rejection without review.** If there is any doubt as to the format required for the HVAC equipment summary sheet, contact ZEA and an example will be provided. Plumbing and Fire Protection submittals shall follow the identical procedure specified for the Mechanical Contractor.

The General Contractor shall review and stamp all submittals prior to submitting them to the Architect. Submittals provided without the General Contractor's review will be automatically rejected.

- 1.12. **Submittal Rejection and Resubmittal:** The Contractor shall carefully review the submittal data requirements specified above. Pay attention to specific items within the specifications that are cause for immediate rejection when submittals are not provided to the Engineer as specified. Any submittal that requires a review before the Engineer receives a complete submittal or portions thereof that are rejected TWICE and resubmitted a third, fourth, etc. time for review will require the Contractor to reimburse the Engineer each time for his effort. The minimum fee for each review is \$700.
- 1.13. **Site and Existing Conditions:** Bidders shall visit the site and become acquainted with all job conditions that may affect the work shown on the plans. Report to the Architect, prior to bid, any new or existing conditions that require modifications to accomplish the installation of all items. Provide for required adjustments to complete the intent of the work. No consideration will be given after bid opening for alleged misunderstanding regarding new or existing job conditions, utility connections, permits, fees, etc.
- 1.14. **Line Locators:** Before proceeding with excavating or trenching, arrange with the Owner, all utility companies, and line locating firm(s) to describe, mark and locate utilities, piping, conduits, etc. which might be damaged by construction operations. Failure to provide the above shall make the offending Contractor responsible for all costs involved to correct the damage incurred.
- 1.15. **Phasing:** Interrupt existing services only at times approved by the Architect and the

Owner. The General Contractor shall provide a written request to the Architect and the Owner for permission to interrupt services to the facility. The request shall be provided a minimum of seven (7) days prior to the desired date of the interruption. Hold interruptions to a minimum in duration and frequency.

**1.16. Record Documents:** Provide in such detail, as is set forth under General and Supplemental Conditions.

Keep an accurate record of changes made during construction. The respective Contractor shall take as-built measurements, including all depths, prior to commencement of backfilling operations. It will not be sufficient to check off line locations. Definite measurements shall be taken for each service line. The location of buried piping shall be shown on the drawings and dimensioned from fixed points.

**The Plumbing Contractor shall take as-built measurements, including all depths, inverts, etc., prior to commencement of backfilling operations. It shall not be sufficient to check offline locations. Definite measurements shall be taken for each line entering and leaving the facility. The location of buried piping shall be shown on the record drawings and dimensioned from fixed points. Additionally, the Plumbing Contractor shall indicate the location of all cleanouts, dielectric unions and valve numbers from the specified valve chart on record/as-built drawings.**

The respective Contractor shall complete the Record Documents, using the As-Built Drawings from the General Contractor's construction site office. Transfer these changes to a set of reproducible copies of original drawings that the Architect will sell to Contractor at printing cost. The drawings will be provided to the Contractor "As Is".

The final drawing set within the Record Documents shall be labeled "**Record Documents**" in the Title Block and shall not include "clouds" or other indications of the changes during the project process. The Contractor shall provide hard copies and an electronic set of all documented modifications to the contract documents.

The Contractor is responsible for providing and showing all changes to the drawings that are different from the original contract drawings, including but not limited to addendums, change-orders, VE items, RFI's, test reports, field observations/site visit reports, etc. Hard copy plans may be a set of reproducible copies of the final corrected contract drawings. When work is completed, submit corrected reproducible drawings to the Architect for record and include copies in the Owner's Operating and Maintenance Manual.

Record documents shall also be provided in PDF digital format on CD-R type CD(s). Include a CD of the documents in the Owner's Operating and Maintenance Manual.

**PART 1. WORK RELATED TO OTHER TRADES**

**2.1. Foundations and Supports:** The Plumbing, Fire Protection and Mechanical Contractor, as applicable, shall provide foundations, supports, etc. not specified under other Divisions, and as required to mount all items in a safe, professional and structurally sound manner. The respective Contractor shall provide all supplemental steel between various types of structural members, including between bar joists, purloins, wood trusses, miscellaneous structural items, etc. as required for the item(s) proper support. All supports and related components and assemblies shall be sized for minimum of 300% (3 times) the anticipated load carried by the respective item.

Where the Contractor has doubt as to proper supporting requirements, he shall consult with, and seek the guidance of, the Architect and the project Structural Engineer for resolution. Consult all contract documents pertaining to other trades to determine extent of their work.

Concrete pads for outside equipment are specified under other Sections. Concrete work shall meet requirements of Division 3. Respective Contractor shall provide all concrete pads not indicated or specified on the Architectural, Civil or Structural plans. Refer to the various equipment specifications for requirements in the absence of requirements by the various disciplines and provide as specified.

- 2.2. **Pipe Sleeves:** Refer to Section 15700 for ductwork sleeves. Refer to Part Firestopping at the end of this Section. **Note that ALL penetrations of partitions that go to the deck/structure above require sleeves and a firestopping assembly, regardless of if partition is rated or not.** Fit all pipes passing through walls, partitions, and floors (except slabs on grade construction) with minimum 16 gauge galvanized sleeves. All sleeves and firestopping assemblies shall be built-in as work progresses.

Do not route any wiring through sleeves/firestop assembly in partitions containing piping. Do not route multiple items through a single sleeve/firestop assembly. **All wiring penetrating any exterior wall, interior partition, floor, and similar construction shall be in conduit with protective grommets on the conduit ends.** See HVAC Controls in Section 15700 for conduit requirements and Part "Miscellaneous Requirements", Paragraph "Firestopping" for detailed requirements.

Do not route multiple pipes or conduits through a singular pipe sleeve/firestop assembly. Each pipe and conduit shall have its dedicated sleeve/firestopping assembly. See firestopping requirements below for penetrations of partitions that extend to the deck/structure above. Refer to plan details for additional requirements.

Demolish and modify all existing walls, partitions and ceilings as required to accomplish the required work. All penetrations of new construction that were not built-in and, all existing floors and partitions, shall be core drilled or sawcut large enough to allow all conduits, piping, sleeves, firestopping assemblies, etc., to continue uninterrupted, and to provide proper firestopping of the penetration as required to install new items as shown and/or specified. Reconstruction and repair of the demolished/modified items shall be as directed by the Architect. Coordinate demolition and repairing/rebuilding of items with General Contractor prior to bid to allow for installation of carriers, piping, etc., as applicable.

Where walls or partitions do not extend to the structure above, a firestopping assembly or device is not required at the penetration. Instead, provide a 16 ga. galvanized sleeve of size required and specified, pack the opening on both sides of the partition/sleeve with mineral wool insulation and seal on both sides with materials the same as the material penetrated. i.e., If it is a penetration of gypsum board, seal with gypsum board joint compound. If it is a penetration of concrete block, seal with cementitious type product. Do not use split sleeves.

All floor sleeves, except slab on grade, shall be cast-in-place Schedule 40 steel pipe. Floor sleeves in foundations above the finish floor shall terminate 2" above finish floor or housekeeping pad as applicable, and flush on the bottom side of the concrete foundation.

In general, a U.L listed firestopping assembly shall be provided for **all** penetrations as specified below in Part "Miscellaneous Requirements", Paragraph "Firestopping". All penetrations are required to be firestopped regardless of if the penetrated assembly is fire rated or not.

See plan details for additional requirements.

Sleeves for piping passing through exterior walls or exterior partitions shall be Schedule 40 PVC pipe, 1" larger in diameter than piping and piping covering, neatly sawed off flush with the exterior wall, sealed water tight and vermin proof and exposed edge painted to match building, unless specified otherwise. Spray foam is not an approved sealant. Refrigerant piping suction and liquid lines routed through a singular pipe sleeve in an exterior wall is acceptable only in this circumstance.

Any pipe that passes through a below grade foundation wall shall be provided with a relieving arch, or a pipe sleeve pipe cast in place into the foundation wall. The sleeve shall be two pipe sizes greater than the pipe passing through the wall. Example: A 6" uninsulated pipe shall require an 8" sleeve.

Piping installed through a foundation wall shall be structurally protected from any transferred loading from the foundation wall. The annular space between pipe and sleeve shall be filled with backing material and sealants in the joint between the pipe and concrete or masonry wall. Sealant selected for the earth side of the wall shall be compatible with damp proofing/waterproofing materials that are specified in Architectural section of the specifications to be applied over the joint sealant.

- 2.3. Access Panels and Doors:** Do not locate serviceable items above inaccessible, hard ceilings without written approval from the Architect. Coordinate all items locations with the Architectural ceiling plans before installing any items. Furnish access panels and doors located in finished spaces to the General Contractor for installation for access to valves, controllers, actuators, manual dampers, motorized dampers, air vents, cleanouts, smoke detectors, fire dampers, smoke dampers and any other items requiring maintenance access.

Doors/panels shall be suitable for wall or ceiling finish involved, 16" x 16" unless otherwise indicated, required or specified to permit removal of equipment and provide acceptable maintenance access.

Access panels and doors shall be fire rated where rated assemblies are penetrated. Access panels and doors for items located outdoors or in damp environments shall be weatherproof.

See specification section 15010, "Miscellaneous Requirements, Identification" for materials and methods required. Access panels and doors shall be as manufactured by Milcor, Philip Carey, Zurn, Mifab or another approved equivalent. The Architect must approve the use of, and type of, panels and doors to be installed in areas that are exposed to view or in finished areas. Exposed access panels and doors shall be factory cleaned and primed for painting in the field. Colors shall be as selected by the Architect. Refer to Architectural Section, Painting, for additional information.

Where device occurs above a lift-out acoustical ceiling panel, provide engraved plastic labels of type specified in "Miscellaneous Requirements, Identification" below.

In addition to identification of items above the ceiling, provide engraved plastic labels below the item, on the ceiling grid. Engraved plastic labels shall match ceiling grid

color and be neatly glued to the ceiling grid adjacent to the ceiling tile that should be removed for access to the item. The label shall have engraved on it the item being identified and its designation as shown on the plans, valve chart, etc. Refer to Section "Identification" below for additional requirements.

- 2.4. Cutting and Patching:** All openings shall be laid out. Furnish detailed layout shop drawings to other trades in advance of their work. Failure to furnish layout shop drawings to the General Contractor shall make the applicable Mechanical/Plumbing/Fire Protection Contractor responsible to rebuild openings as directed by the Architect. Where openings have not been laid out or built in, or they occur in existing partitions, floors, etc., they shall be core drilled or saw cut large enough to allow all penetrating items with or without insulation to continue uninterrupted, with clearances specified.

Piping and duct within walls or behind walls shall be installed before wall is erected otherwise, walls, floors, ceilings, etc., affected shall be reworked by the trade which erected it at expense of the respective Contractor. Chasing and cutting of new work is not allowed without written permission from the Architect.

- 2.5. Duct and Miscellaneous Items Painting and Finishes:** Painting of ducts, piping, piping insulation, grilles, diffusers, and other surfaces in finished areas is specified in Architectural Section "Painting" or similar section. Refer to those sections for requirements. If not specified in other sections, paint as directed by the Architect. Where the Architectural specifications require items to be painted, the Contractor shall furnish it with a Manufacturer provided, factory applied prime coat.

Where factory finished items are marred, scratched, or damaged, replace the item, or upon approval from the Architect or Owner, refinish or touch-up as required or specified to bring to a like new condition.

All paint and coatings shall have a fire hazard rating not to exceed 25 for flame spread and 50 for fuel contributed and smoke developed as determined by ASTM E84. Also, see Specification Section, "Identification" for additional requirements.

### **PART 3. EXCAVATION, TRENCHING & BACKFILLING**

- 3.1. Excavation:** Keep excavation free from water by pumping if necessary. Ensure that walls and footings and adjacent loadbearing soils are not disturbed in any way, except where lines must cross under a footing. Where a line must pass under a footing, make crossing with the smallest possible trench to accommodate the pipe. Where a line must pass adjacent to and below the bottom of a column footing, or the corner of a continuous footing, backfill the trench with concrete up to the level of the footing bottom, for a distance away from the footing equal to the depth of the fill.
- 3.2. Over-Excavation:** Where trenches are excavated below the installation level of the pipe such that the bottom of the trench does not form the bed for the pipe, the trench shall be backfilled to the installation level of the bottom of the pipe with sand or fine gravel placed in layers not greater than 6 inches in depth. Such backfill shall be compacted after each placement.
- 3.3. Trenching and Bedding of Piping:** Buried piping shall be supported throughout its entire length. Where trenches are excavated such that the bottom of the trench forms the bed for the pipe, solid and continuous load-bearing support shall be provided between joints. Bell holes, hub holes and coupling holes shall be provided at points

where the pipe is joined. Such pipe shall not be supported on blocks to grade. In instances where the material manufacturer's installation instructions are more restrictive than those prescribed by the IPC, the material shall be installed in accordance with the more restrictive requirement.

- 3.4. Backfilling:** Backfill within the building and under paved areas shall meet compaction requirements established under Division 2.

Backfill shall be free from discarded construction material and debris. Loose earth free from rocks, broken concrete and frozen chunks shall be placed in the trench in 6-inch layers and tamped in place until the crown of the pipe is covered by 12 inches of tamped earth. The backfill under and beside the pipe shall be compacted for pipe support. Backfill shall be brought up evenly on both sides of the pipe so that the pipe remains aligned. In instances where the manufacturer's instructions for materials are more restrictive than those prescribed by the IPC, the material shall be installed in accordance with the more restrictive requirement.

- 3.5. Protection of Footings:** Trenching installed parallel to footings and walls shall not extend into the bearing plane of a footing or wall. The upper boundary of the bearing plane is a line that extends downward, at an angle of 45 degrees from the horizontal, from the outside bottom edge of the footing or wall.
- 3.6. Rock Removal:** Where rock is encountered in trenching, the rock shall be removed to not less than 3 inches below the installation level of the bottom of the pipe, and the trench shall be backfilled to the installation level of the bottom of the pipe with sand tamped in place so as to provide uniform load-bearing support for the pipe between joints. The pipe, including the joints, shall not rest on rock at any point.
- 3.7. Soft Load-Bearing materials:** If soft materials of poor load-bearing quality are found at the bottom of the trench, stabilization shall be achieved by over excavating not less than two pipe diameters and backfilling to the installation level of the bottom of the pipe with fine gravel, crushed stone or a concrete foundation. The concrete foundation shall be bedded with sand tamped into place so as to provide uniform load-bearing support for the pipe between joints.
- 3.8. Shoring, Sub-Soil Assumptions and Data, Work Around Trees and Surplus Earth:** Refer to Section "Earthwork".
- 3.9. Broken Pavement:** In public streets, sidewalks, right of ways, etc., backfill and repair to satisfaction of authorities having jurisdiction.

#### **PART 4. PIPE, PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- 4.1. General:** Below requirements do not apply to refrigerant piping. Refer to Section 15700, Refrigerant Piping and Accessories for refrigerant piping support requirements.

Provide factory fabricated galvanized pipe hangers and supports for all piping of type and properly sized bolts, washers, etc. as required for a complete and safely functioning installation. Material items, methods and general requirements not covered in this specification shall be provided in strict accordance with current edition of Manufacturer's Standardization Society Specification MSS SP-58 and Manufacturer's Published Product Information. Refer to plumbing plans and details for various piping support requirements.



All hangers, supports and related components and assemblies shall be sized for minimum of 300% (3 times) the anticipated load carried by the respective item. Where the Contractor has doubt as to proper supporting requirements, he shall consult with, and seek the guidance of, the Architect and the project Structural Engineer for resolution.

Hangers shall be as manufactured by Elcen Metal Products Co., Fee & Mason Mfg. Co., ITT Grinnell Corp, B-Line Systems or preapproved equivalent.

- 4.2. Coatings and Finishes:** All damaged or rusted steel pipe and, all hangers and support assemblies, shall be cleaned, primed and painted with two coats of black enamel paint. Include uncoated cast iron pipe, hangers, brackets, etc. Any rusted piping shall have the rust removed, etched and primed for painting as recommended by the respective piping manufacturer, and then painted with two coats of black, compatible, rustproof enamel paint. Do not use spray paint. All paint and coatings shall have a fire hazard rating not to exceed 25 for flame spread and 50 for fuel contributed and smoke developed as determined by ASTM E84. See specification section, "Identification" for additional requirements.

Provide hangers and Unistrut assemblies with powder coating, plastic, painted or approved equivalent as required to meet a fire hazard rating not to exceed 25 for flame spread and 50 for fuel contributed and smoke developed as determined by ASTM E84. Galvanized or zinc items are considered to NOT be coated and are required to be painted, powder coated plastic coated as specified above. Do not paint hanger rods and associated bolts, nor clamps on Unistrut assemblies.

Where factory finished items are marred, scratched, or damaged, replace the item, or upon approval from the Architect and the Owner, refinish or touch-up as required or specified to bring to a new condition.

- 4.3. Hangers at Typical Single Suspended Horizontal Pipe:** Galvanized adjustable clevis or split-ring type equal to Elcen Fig. 12 or 10c. Refer to Coatings and Finishes above for additional requirements. See other specifications and plan details for additional requirements. See part "Hanger Rods" below for limitations on use of clevis hangers.

**Do not use clevis hangers for refrigerant piping.** See refrigerant piping support requirements in Section 15700, Refrigerant Piping and Accessories.

- 4.4. Manifolds and Parallel Runs:** At his option, Contractor may provide a Unistrut system complete with fittings, clamps and accessories required and specified. Horizontal and vertical mounted piping shall all be secured to each Unistrut hanger assembly. Refer to plan details and specifications for requirements. Refer to Coatings and Finishes above for additional requirements. Refer to "Hanger Rods" below for locations that require a Unistrut assembly. Furnish for review proposed system components.

Unistrut assemblies shall also be provided for refrigerant piping. Refer to Section 15700, Refrigerant Piping and Accessories for requirements.

- 4.5. Where in Contact with Bare Copper Pipe:** Same as above except assembly shall be copper plated.
- 4.6. Spacing:** Install supports as required or specified to prevent sags, bends or vibration.

Provide additional building supports and attachments where support is required or specified for additional concentrated loads, including valves, in-line pumps, flange guides, strainers, expansion joints and at all changes in direction of piping.

At no-hub pipe, support as specified below for cast iron piping.

In all cases, provide on all sides of, and within 12 inches of, all elbows, take-off fittings, joints, valves, any change in direction of item supported, at ends of branches over 5 feet long and on centers not exceeding the following:

<u>Piping Material</u>	<u>Pipe Size</u>	<u>Maximum Spacing</u>
Copper Piping/Tubing (Water)	1 1/4" or less	6 ft. Horizontal 8 ft. Vertical
	1 1/2" or larger	8 ft. Horizontal 8 ft. Vertical
Refrigerant Piping	All	8 ft. Horizontal 6 ft. Vertical
Cast Iron	All	4 ft. Horizontal 12 ft. Vertical

Where horizontal cast iron pipe is installed in 10ft. lengths, spacing shall be increased to 9 ft. In addition to specified cast iron support requirements, provide additional support for cast iron pipe within 6" of each fitting on all sides of the fitting.

PVC	All	4 ft. Horizontal 8 ft. Vertical
-----	-----	------------------------------------

Where vertically installed piping is provided, a guide shall be installed midway between the specified/required vertical supports. Such guides shall prevent pipe movement in a direction perpendicular to the axis of the pipe.

- 4.7. Protection of Physical Damage for Piping:** In concealed locations where piping is installed through holes or notches in studs, joists, rafters or similar type members, the pipe shall be protected by shield plates. Protective steel shield plates having a minimum thickness of 0.0575 inch (16 gage) and shall cover the area of the pipe where the member is notched, drilled or bored, and shall extend not less than 2 inches above sole plates and below top plates.

- 4.8. Hanger Rods:** Shall be mild steel, hot dipped galvanized, threaded as required. Rods shall be selected as specified hereinbefore. Use not smaller than 3/8" rods for pipe 2" and under, 1/2" rods for pipes 2 1/2" through 4", 3/4" rods for 5" through 12" and 1" rods for piping over 12". Support rods with threaded Underwriters' listed inserts, expansion shields or beam clamps shall be all galvanized. Beam clamps shall be equal to Elcen Fig. 34 or 36 with rod and eye end.

At bar joists, support from bottom chord at panel points. For piping over 6" provide supplemental steel angle supports and welding to span 3 joists when running parallel to joists and welded angle between two panel points for piping running perpendicular to joists. Concrete inserts shall be equal to Grinnell Figure 282.

Wherever piping hanger support rods heights exceed 36" length from top of the

supported item to the structure above, Contractor shall provide a Unistrut support assembly and bracing of the assembly with minimum 1"x1"x1/4" angle iron or as required for the weight of the supported item, whichever is greater, and anchor to structure above to prevent swaying. Assembly shall be welded at connection to Unistrut and building structural assembly. Follow welding procedures set forth in the structural division of the specifications.

- 4.9. **Bracing:** Where hanger rods heights exceed 36", provide sway bracing as specified above in "Hanger Rods". Bracing shall be provided at each Unistrut assembly and attached to the building structural system.
- 4.10. **Approved Equivalents:** By Grinnell, Elcen, Stockham or Crane will be accepted.

## **PART 5. MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS**

- 5.1. **Materials and Equipment:** New and of best quality in every respect. Pipe and fittings shall conform to the ASTM Standard designated for pipe of each material. Equipment shall bear Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL) listing label, Canadian Standards Association (CSA) listing label or ETL approved rating.

All electrical components and products shall also comply with the respective Code of Federal Regulations (CFR). All pressure vessels shall be constructed and tested in accordance with applicable ASME Codes and shall bear ASME stamps unless specified otherwise. Minimum pressure rating shall satisfy job conditions.

Where two or more units of the same class of equipment are required or specified, these units shall be products of a single manufacturer, however, the component parts of each unit need not be. No mix matching of equipment Manufacturers is allowed unless specified as such.

No materials or products that contain asbestos, formaldehyde, lead or mercury, in excess of limits mandated and defined by OSHA, LEED and the EPA, shall be utilized.

Where conflicts occur between a Code, Standard, Listing and the contract drawings or contract specifications, the most stringent requirements shall govern and be applied.

- 5.2. **Workmanship:** First class, premium and in accordance with superior practice. Work shall be executed by experienced mechanics and shall present a neat and professional appearance. Exact location of pipe, duct, equipment, etc., shall be determined in field, considering work of other trades.

Lines required to be sloped have right of way over those not required to be sloped. Lines whose elevations cannot be changed have right of way over lines whose elevations can be changed. Lines and equipment whose locations are dimensioned have precedence over lines and equipment not dimensioned.

Except in unfinished areas and where specifically indicated on the drawings or approved in writing, ductwork, piping, conduit, wiring, and similar items shall be concealed in the construction.

Pipe shall be clean, cut clean, properly reamed, threaded or soldered, erected plumb and secure. Make changes in pipe size with reducing fittings without the use of

bushings. Install all items in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Absolute coordination is required with the other Contractors on the project before proceeding with installation of any system or item.

At all stages of installation, protect pipe openings, floor drains, hub drains, fixtures, ductwork, condenser coils and equipment against the entrance of foreign materials and from damage by the elements, mortar, concrete, paint, etc. Plugs of rags, wool, cotton, waste or similar materials are not acceptable.

If air moving equipment must be used during construction, temporary filtration media with a Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value (MERV) of 11, as determined by ASHRAE 52.2, current edition, and shall be installed at each return air grille, return air register, exhaust grille, exhaust register, and unit return air inlet. ALL open portions of ductwork and equipment shall be covered with a self-adhesive film (not Visqueen) or airtight sheet metal caps to prevent the intrusion of contaminants.

All equipment openings, duct openings, duct take-offs, etc., shall be protected immediately after the tap, take-off, opening, etc. has been fabricated in the field. In effect, there shall be no ductwork opening or equipment opening that is exposed to the ambient air. The material shall be a minimum of 3 mils thick and have a minimum tensile strength of 10 psi. It shall be waterproof and recyclable. Material shall be DuroDyne Dyn-O-Wrap or approved equivalent.

Where bare sheet metal is delivered unassembled to the job site, all ductwork shall be covered and protected with Visqueen. After fabricating the duct in the field, the interior bare metal shall be wiped clean with a clean damp cloth before installing in the field. After installation, duct shall be protected as specified above. Any ductwork discovered to be unprotected as specified is subject to immediate rejection for use on this project.

- 5.3. **Testing Documentation:** Throughout the Division 15 specifications, there are various tests required and specified. Provide the Architect written certification and results of all tests specified, including those indicating failure. The absence of written testing certification and results will be considered the same as if testing was never done. Include all testing documentation in the Operating and Maintenance Manuals.
- 5.4. **Factory Finishes:** Furnish to the Architect, color cards for standard and premium colors available. The Architect shall select color where choices exist. Provide Manufacturer's standard color where color choices are not available. Coordinate all color selections with appropriate Architectural specification sections.
- 5.5. **Expansion:** Provide for expansion and contraction of all piping, ductwork, etc. and make proper provisions so that excessive strain will not occur on piping, ductwork or other parts. Provide flexible connections for all piping and ductwork at all building expansion joints.
- 5.6. **Safety Provisions:** Provide covers or guards on all hot, moving and projecting items that could be construed as a hazard to occupants of the building or to service/maintenance personnel.
- 5.7. **Cleaning and Adjusting:** Upon completion of work, clear all drains, traps, fixtures, ducts and pipe. Adjust all valves, remove rubbish and leave work in clean and excellent operating condition. Clean and polish all floor drains, floor and wall cleanouts, wall hydrants and any other exposed metal objects.

Install final permanent type filters only after cleaning of building is completed.

- 5.8. **Escutcheons:** Where pipes pass through cabinets, walls and ceilings of finished rooms provide pressed chrome-plated brass or stainless steel type securely fastened in place with screws. Pack penetrations with mineral wool insulation, seal with firestopping compound and install escutcheons to prevent passage of fire, smoke and vermin. Do not use split ring type escutcheons.
- 5.9. **Identification:** All above ceiling identification specified shall be completed prior to the above ceiling site visit. All remaining identification shall be completed prior to the final site visit.

**The State of Alabama Department of Construction Management (DCM) will cancel, on-site, the site visit if not completed as specified. Failure to comply with this provision will be cause for cancellation of the site visit, and a fee imposed for the additional site visit, with all costs of the additional site visit to be borne by the respective Contractor responsible.**

All identification shall follow nomenclature used on the plans.

All equipment, filter access locations, access panels, access doors, motor starters, disconnects, thermostats, humidistats, sensors, valves, control systems components, control switches, and all items or devices which cannot be readily identified by the Owner or his personnel, shall be equipped with engraved laminated plastic nameplates, as described below.

Filter access locations' identification shall include the size and number of filters required for each specific piece of equipment.

Identify all access openings/panels/doors to indicate item for which access is provided. Ex. Motorized damper, filters, valves, etc. Additionally, add the following to each access identifier: "**ACCESS - DO NOT BLOCK.**"

In addition to identification of items above the ceiling, provide engraved plastic labels below the item, on the ceiling grid. Engraved plastic labels shall match ceiling grid color and be neatly glued to the ceiling grid adjacent to the ceiling tile that should be removed for access to the item. The label shall have engraved on it the item being identified and its designation as shown on the plans, valve chart, etc. Refer to Section "Identification" below for additional requirements.

Each piece of equipment, item, valve or device located above the ceiling shall be identified with an engraved laminated label, of the type specified above, and also neatly attached to the ceiling tile grid, below the item, with permanent adhesive.

Engraved equipment designation and numbers shall be as shown on the drawings on upper half of tag, leaving lower half of tag for future engraving by Owner. Where equipment is typed (HP-A, HP-B, EF-A, etc.) rather than numbered (HP-1, HP-2, EF-1, etc.) the tag shall include the room number(s) of the area served. Room numbers shall be as designated by the Owner. In absence of Owner's room numbers, numbers shall be as indicated on the architectural plans.

Identify all piping, including refrigerant suction lines, refrigerant liquid lines, refrigerant hot gas reheat coil lines, condensate drainage piping located in concealed areas above ceilings and exposed to view in finished spaces, all water piping, fire sprinkler piping, gas piping, air piping, jacket of all insulated pipe and all pipe exposed to view

and/or accessible through removable ceilings, attics, access panels, etc... Sanitary vent piping above the ceiling, in chases and similar areas, and condensate drainage piping on the floor in mechanical rooms are not required to be identified **except that all sanitary vent piping associated with an acid resistant waste and vent piping system shall be identified.**

Identification shall be visible from all sides of the piping, bear name of pipe contents and show direction of flow. In the case of gas/air systems, the identification shall also indicate pressure of the pipe contents. Install identification within 12" of all flanges, valves, fittings, elbows, change in piping direction, at each branch take-off, both sides of floor and wall penetrations, and along all straight runs of pipe not further apart than 15 feet.

Pipe labels shall be flat wrap-around markers that completely surround the pipe. The markers colors, designations, etc., shall comply with IBC/IPC/IMC requirements, ANSI/ASME Standard A13.1 and ANSI Z535.1, current editions.

Markers shall be Seton "Snap-Around" or Seton "Strap-Around" pipe line markers, Marking Services Inc (MSI) Series MS-970, Kolbi Pipe Marker Co., Brimar or approved equivalent. **Stick-on, painted, stenciled or hand written type identification is not allowed.**

Piping identification shall be provided over every space, including small areas (closets, storage rooms, etc.) above accessible ceilings. All piping identification shall be installed such that the Owner or maintenance personnel can remove any ceiling tile and visually identify any overhead piping with the specified identification markers.

Fit all Plumbing dielectric unions, all plumbing valves (except equipment service valves and sprinkler valves) with a custom laser engraved brass valve tag at each valve and dielectric union and include on the specified valve chart. Tag shall be 1-1/2 inches diameter, 18-gauge polished brass tags with 3/16-inch chain hole and 1/4-inch-high stamped, black-filled service designation. Number tags in sequence, starting with number 1; prefix the number with "P" for plumbing items. After numbering plumbing valves, also indicate valve numbers on the record/as-built drawings.

Fit all Fire Protection valves with engraved laminated plastic valve tags firmly secured with brass jack-chain and S-hooks to valve yoke or stem (not handles) or adjacent pipe. Fabricate tags as 4" x 3" x 1/16" white plastic with beveled corners, engraved both sides with 1/2" high x 1/4" stroke red letters and numerals. After numbering all fire protection valves, also indicate valve numbers on the record/as-built drawings.

Provide a valve chart laminated and framed which shows the number and location of each valve and dielectric union, and type of service. Locate a valve chart in each water heater room and each janitor closet. Permanently attach each chart to the wall as directed by the Architect. All valves' numbers shall also be shown on the Record drawings. Include a copy of the valve chart and the record drawings with the valves' and dielectric union identification in the Owner's Operation and Maintenance Manuals.

In addition to valves identification specified above, provide an engraved laminated label, of the type specified above, and glue to the ceiling tile grid below the valve for each valve concealed from view. Where there is more than one valve located within a span of eight (8) feet, above the ceiling, it is not necessary to provide multiple identifiers on the ceiling grid. It will be acceptable to place a single identifier on the

ceiling grid reading as, "Water Valves". Each valve above the ceiling is still required to have its own, individual valve tag and identified on the specified valve chart. Example: Over the toilets ceiling, there may be multiple shut-off valves to each individual fixture instead of to a bank of fixtures. Where there are multiple valves for each fixture, the Contractor may attach a single identifier on the ceiling grid that states, "Water Valves", or similar description. Thereafter, each individual valve above the ceiling still requires its own engraved valve brass tag as originally specified. The intent is to NOT have multiple individual identifiers for each valve exposed to view on the ceiling grid and thereby creating an undesirable appearance.

Permanently affixed warning labels shall be attached to all equipment, on a highly visible location on the equipment, which can be automatically started. The warning label shall read as follows: **"CAUTION!! This equipment is operating under automatic control and may start or stop at any time without warning. Place disconnect switch in the "OFF" position before servicing or attempting to work on equipment."**

Permanently affixed warning labels shall be attached to all motor starters and all control panels which are connected to multiple power sources utilizing separate disconnect switches. The warning labels shall read as follows: **"THIS EQUIPMENT IS FED FROM MORE THAN ONE POWER SOURCE WITH SEPARATE DISCONNECTS. DISCONNECT ALL POWER SOURCES BEFORE SERVICING OR WORKING ON THIS ITEM"**

Provide signage on each access point to the UV-C lights and on each side of the unit. Signage materials and methods shall be as specified below, white letters with red background. Do not use the UV-C Manufacturer provided signage.

Warning signage shall read as follows: **"DANGER!! UV-C LIGHT SOURCE! UV-C RADIATION CAN CAUSE SEVERE BURNS OF THE SKIN AND EYE INJURIES. DISCONNECT POWER BEFORE SERVICING UNIT OR UV-C LIGHTING!"**

Identify the UV-C lighting redundant shut-off switch specified in Section 15700. Signage materials and methods shall be as specified below, white letters with red background.

UV-C lighting redundant shut-off switch signage shall read as follows: **"UNIT XX-YY UV-C LIGHTING REDUNDANT SHUT-OFF SWITCH."** XX denotes the unit, and YY is the unit number or type, all as scheduled on the plans.

Labels shall be a minimum of 4" x 3" x 1/8" thick, laminated plastic labels (larger if needed) with 1" high x 1/4" stroke numerals and all capital letters to identify all items furnished under Division 15 specifications. Labels attached to the ceiling grid shall be the same width as the ceiling grid it is attached. Properly adjust lettering height to fit within the smaller width label. Labels color on ceiling grid shall be white with red letters. Remaining items shall be red with white letters.

Where the tag, label or marker occurs in a plenum (return air) space, the plastic employed shall carry a Class A Flame Spread Rating per ASTM E84 and shall meet ASTM D-635 (such as Westinghouse Micarta engraving stock). If plastic does not meet the Class A Flame Spread Rating per ASTM E84, provide custom laser engraved, 0.029" thickness, red, 316 Stainless Steel. Sizes, letter heights, etc., and colors shall be as specified for the laminated plastic labels specified hereinbefore.

All piping exposed to view in unoccupied finished spaces, mechanical rooms,

housekeeping and similar spaces, and jacket of insulated piping exposed to view in mechanical rooms, janitor/housekeeping and similar type spaces shall be painted with two coats of enamel paint in accordance with IBC/IPC/IMC requirements and ANSI Standard A13.1, current edition. After piping is painted, identify with pipe markers, valves tags, etc. as specified hereinbefore.

Exposed piping and jacket of insulated piping in occupied finished spaces shall be painted with two coats of enamel paint, with color selected by the Architect.

Painting of the jacket of the insulated piping is not required where a protective aluminum jacket is specified and provided. Provide identification markers as specified hereinbefore on piping with aluminum jacket. Refer to Sections 15400 and Section 15700 for piping requiring aluminum jacket.

- 5.10. Refrigerant Piping Identification: All refrigerant piping shall be identified.** The pipe identification shall be located at intervals not exceeding 15 feet on the refrigerant piping or pipe insulation. Provide piping identification over every space, including small areas (closets, storage rooms, etc.) above accessible ceilings. All piping identification shall be provided such that the Owner or maintenance personnel can remove any ceiling tile and visually identify any overhead refrigerant piping with the specified identification markers. Minimum height of lettering of the identification label shall be 3/4".

IMC 1109.2.7 requires that the identification shall indicate the refrigerant designation and safety group classification of refrigerant used in the piping system. For Group A2, A3, B2 and B3 refrigerants, the identification shall also include the following statement: "**DANGER - Risk of Fire or Explosion. Flammable Refrigerant.**" For any Group B refrigerant, the identification shall also include the following statement: "**DANGER - Toxic Refrigerant.**"

Basic identification for all refrigerant lines to and from all of the various split systems and VRF System branch controllers shall be identified as specified above. Refrigerant piping identification shall use the nomenclature on the plans for the specific unit it identifies. Where equipment is typed (HP-A, HP-B, F-A, F-B, etc.) the piping identification shall include the room number of the space the respective unit serves. Ex. An HP-A that serves Classroom 102A shall be identified as "Refrigerant Suction Line HP-A Rm. 102A", "Refrigerant Liquid Line HP-A Room 102A" and "Refrigerant HGRHC Hot Gas Line HP-A Room 102A" as required.

Note that due to the complexity of the required identification, the piping may require multiple, side by side identification wrap arounds.

Refrigerant piping identification upstream and downstream of all VRF Controllers shall also indicate the respective indoor and outdoor unit number and associated branch controller. Example: Refrigerant suction line - BC VRF-1, VRF-1A.

All branch controllers shall be identified with engraved laminated plastic as specified hereinbefore. Numbering of Branch Controllers shall follow nomenclature indicated on the plans and equipment schedule.

**Custom factory fabricated refrigerant piping labels are required. Stick-on, painted, stenciled or hand written type identification is not allowed.**

- 5.11. Firestopping:** Provide factory fabricated firestop assemblies to form a specific, U.L. listed system maintaining the required or specified integrity of the fire barrier and non-



fire barrier to stop the passage of fire, gases and smoke. The through-penetration firestop systems and firestop devices shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479 using the "F" or "T" rating to maintain the same rating and integrity as the fire barrier being sealed, or a minimum of 1-hour protection for non-rated assemblies. The assembly or device shall prevent passage of fire, smoke, gases and water through openings, and prevent transmission of sound and vibration from the penetrating element to the structure. Penetrations involving insulated piping shall be a through-penetration firestop system not requiring removal of insulation and in accordance with ASTM E 814 or UL 1479.

Wherever pipes, conduit, ducts, etc. penetrate any type of interior construction that extends to the underside of the structure/deck above it, **regardless of if the wall, partition or floor is a rated assembly or not**, the space between the penetrating member and the building construction shall be sealed with an ASTM E814 or UL 1479 listed and approved, factory fabricated firestop assembly or device as specified above.

**Where partitions are not indicated as fire rated, the firestopping assembly used shall provide a minimum of one-hour resistance.**

Where walls or partitions do not extend to the structure above, a factory fabricated firestopping assembly is not required. Instead, provide a 16 ga. galvanized sleeve or conduit and pack the respective sleeve or conduit with mineral wool insulation and seal.

All fire stop material employed on the project must be same brand throughout. The firestopping assemblies shall be as manufactured by Hilti, 3M, USG or other pre-approved Manufacturer.

- 5.12. **Delivery and Storage:** All equipment and materials delivered and placed in storage shall be protected from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, and other contaminants. See Section 15700 and this Section 15010 for additional requirements for ductwork and equipment.
- 5.13. **Dielectric Isolation:** Provide dielectric isolation where dissimilar metals are joined, at supports, etc. For pipe sizes 2" through 6", copper piping flanges shall be drilled to ANSI B 16.5 150/125 Standard and powder coated, with an EPDM insulator adhered to the plate steel flange protruding inside of the steel flange to prevent contact with the copper flange adapter. The copper component of the flange adapter shall be Third Party Classified by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. Minimum working pressure shall be 300 psi at 272°F.

Wherever any bare metallic piping or conduit is in contact with externally insulated duct or bare sheet metal duct, there shall be dielectric separation provided. The Contractor shall provide 1/2" thickness, unslit AP Armaflex insulation of sufficient inside tubular diameter to snugly and completely cover the respective piping. The insulation shall extend the full length of the affected area. Where channel shapes are used, orient the open side, down. Refer to Section 15700, Part "Pipe and Miscellaneous Insulation Work" for AP Armaflex material specification.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 15400

### PLUMBING

#### PART 1. GENERAL & MISCELLANEOUS

- 1.1. **General Provisions:** Section 15010 is applicable in full hereto. No building materials or products that contain asbestos, formaldehyde, polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), lead or mercury, in excess of limits mandated and defined by OSHA, LEED and the EPA, shall be utilized.
- 1.2. **Qualifications:** Shall be properly licensed and established as a Plumbing Contractor at location of the work and shall maintain locally adequate service facilities. He shall have had previous experience in the satisfactory installation of at least six (6) systems of this type, size and scope.
- 1.3. **General Scope:** Include all equipment, material and labor required for a complete operating plumbing system even though every item involved is not indicated. Refer to architectural drawings and verify all plumbing fixture's locations and mounting heights. Notify the architect prior to bid of any discrepancies. Do not attach any items to other trades' assemblies. Items shall be attached to building structural system.

Advisory provisions listed in all Codes referenced in the Contract Documents are mandatory. Codes are minimum requirements. Where conflicts occur between a Code, Standard, the contract drawings or these specifications, the more stringent requirements shall govern and be applicable.

Manufacturers not named in the specifications require prior approval, seven (7) days prior to bid date. Follow procedures set forth in Division 1 and Section 15010 of the specifications. All prior approvals shall be submitted through the Architect.

Arrange and install piping systems sizes as shown, as close as practical, straight, properly supported and run as directly as possible forming right angles or running parallel with building lines, true to line and grade, free of sags and bends. Locate piping as high as practical and in parallel groups as close together as practical.

Coordinate demolition and repairing/rebuilding of items with General Contractor prior to bid to allow for installation of carriers, piping, etc., as applicable. All piping shall be clean and rust free when it is installed. Before installation, it shall be checked, upended and swabbed. All rust or dirt from materials in storage or from lying on the ground shall be removed. Any installed dirty piping shall be cleaned. Any rusted piping shall have the rust removed, etched and primed for painting as recommended by the respective piping manufacturer, and then painted with two coats of black, compatible, rustproof enamel paint. Do not use spray paint. Refer to gas piping specification for requirements of gas piping painting. Paint shall comply with the requirements of ASTM E84 for flame spread and smoke development.

The Plumbing Contractor shall take as-built measurements, including all depths, inverts, etc., prior to commencement of backfilling operations. It shall not be sufficient to check offline locations. Definite measurements shall be taken for each line entering or leaving the facility. **The location of buried piping shall be shown on the record drawings and dimensioned from fixed points.**

1.4. **Record Documents:** Provide in such detail, as is set forth under General and Supplemental Conditions and in Section 15010. **Note that the Plumbing Contractor shall take as-built measurements, including all depths, inverts, etc., prior to commencement of backfilling operations. It shall not be sufficient to check offline locations. Definite measurements shall be taken for each line entering or leaving the facility. The location of buried piping shall be shown on the record drawings and dimensioned from fixed points. Also, show locations of all dielectric unions, cleanouts and all valve numbers on the record documents.**

1.5. **Access Panels and Doors:** Do not locate serviceable items above inaccessible, hard ceilings without written approval from the Architect. Coordinate all items locations with the Architectural ceiling plans before installing any items. Furnish access panels and doors to the General Contractor for installation wherever required for access to valves, controllers, actuators, trap primer assemblies, water hammer arrestors, air vents and similar devices requiring maintenance access.

Doors/panels shall be suitable for wall or ceiling finish involved, 16" x 16" unless otherwise indicated or as required to permit removal of equipment and acceptable maintenance access. Access panels and doors shall be fire rated where rated assemblies are penetrated. Access panels and doors for items located outdoors shall be weatherproof.

Access panels and doors shall be as manufactured by Milcor, Elmdor, Zurn, Mifab or approved equivalent. The Architect must approve the use of, and type of, all panels and doors to be installed in areas that are exposed to view or in finished areas. Exposed access panels and doors shall be factory cleaned and primed for painting in the field. Colors shall be as selected by the Architect. Refer to Architectural Section, Painting, for additional information.

1.6. **Warranty:** Guarantee work as set forth in Section 15010 and Division 1. Guarantee in writing to make good without cost any defects in materials and workmanship for one year following the date of substantial completion of the project as determined by the Architect, unless specified otherwise. Flush valves and all sensor operated devices shall be provided with a complete replacement, including labor, five year guarantee in the event of failure. Provide free maintenance and service during the guarantee period. Refer to other parts for additional requirements and extended warranty requirements.

1.7. **Site Visits:** It is the contractor's responsibility to have the job ready for site visits when they are scheduled. If the project is not ready for the requested site visit and the Architect, any governmental agency or any other entity requires an additional site visit with the Engineer present, the contractor shall pay Zgouvas, Eiring & Associates a re-visit fee of \$2,000. The payment shall be made directly to Zgouvas, Eiring & Associates 5 days prior to the scheduled site visit.

The Contractor is urged to carefully review the extensive requirements of Paragraph "Identification" in Section 15010 of the specifications and note that certain identification **is required to be completed before certain site visits. There are specific identification requirements prior to the above ceiling and final site visits, respectively, that are mandatory. The State of Alabama Department of Construction Management (DCM) will cancel, on-site, the site visit if not completed as specified. Failure to comply with this provision will be cause for cancellation of the site visit, and a fee imposed for the additional site visit, with all costs of the additional site visit to be borne by the respective Contractor responsible.**

- 1.8. **Governmental Inspections:** The Plumbing Contractor shall arrange and pay for the State of Alabama Boiler and Pressure Vessel Safety Division/Inspection Divisions, Elevators/Boilers Inspector to visit job site to inspect water heater and/or boiler installation and obtain written approval, certification and Certificate for Potable Water Heater (PWH) as required. The written approval, certification and Certificate for Potable Water Heater (PWH) shall be provided and be attached to the respective item prior to the date of the final site visit. Failure to provide the aforementioned requirement prior to the final site visit will be cause for cancellation of the site visit by DCM and a reinspection fee imposed.

Correct all deficiencies required by the Inspector without additional cost to the Owner or the Owner's Project Design Professionals, using materials and methods, as directed by, State of Alabama Boiler and Pressure Vessel Safety Division/Inspection Divisions and Elevators/Boilers inspector as required.

- 1.9. **Miscellaneous:** Bidders shall visit the site and become acquainted with all job conditions that may affect the work shown on the plans. Report to the Architect, prior to bid, any new or existing conditions that require modifications to accomplish the installation of all items. Provide for required adjustments to complete the intent of the work. No consideration will be given after bid opening for alleged misunderstanding regarding new or existing job conditions, utility connections, permits, fees, etc.

The Contractor shall carefully examine the contract documents during the bidding phase. Any missing information in the contract documents that is required for obtaining accurate pricing shall be brought to the attention of the Architect, **prior to bid date**, so all may be clarified and/or corrected. Failure to identify and resolve the issues prior to bid shall require the Contractor to provide said items, complete, without additional cost to the Owner or the Owner's Project Design Professionals, using materials and methods specified by, and as directed by, the Owner's Design Professionals.

- 1.10. **Spare Parts:** Manufacturer of any equipment specified shall have a wholesale outlet for readily available replacement parts in the nearest major USA city.
- 1.11. **Electrical Work:** All electric power wiring required for installation of equipment under this Section is specified under Electrical Division. Plumbing Contractor shall furnish and install all controls and control wiring as specified or required to properly complete the installation. Control conduit is specified under Electrical Division or shown on electrical drawings; all other control conduit shall be provided under this Section of the work.

All control conduit, power wiring, relays, transformers, contactors, etc. which are required and are not shown on the electrical drawings or specified in the Electrical Division of the specifications, shall be provided under this Plumbing Section.

Coordinate all requirements with the Electrical Sub-Contractor prior to bid. Electrical work performed under this Section shall meet requirements set forth in the Electrical Division and the National Electric Code (NEC), current edition.

- 1.12. **Submittals:** Refer to Section 15010 for **strict requirements** and, especially as it applies to format, project cost constraints, addendums and Value Engineering (VE) items.

**Only ONE complete submittal will be accepted for review.** Providing submittals piecemeal is not allowed. If a partial or incomplete submittal is provided, it shall be cause for immediate rejection.

- 1.13. **Identification:** The Contractor is urged to carefully review the extensive requirements of Paragraph "Identification" in Section 15010 of the specifications and note that certain identification is required to be completed before certain site visits. **There are specific identification requirements prior to the above ceiling and final site visits, respectively, that are mandatory. The State of Alabama Department of Construction Management (DCM) will cancel, on-site, the site visit if not completed as specified. Failure to comply with this provision will be cause for cancellation of the site visit, and a fee imposed for the additional site visit, with all costs of the additional site visit to be borne by the respective Contractor responsible.**
- 1.14. **Firestopping:** Refer to Section 15010, Part "Miscellaneous Requirements", Paragraph "Firestopping". **Note that Division 15 firestopping specifications require firestopping of all penetrations regardless of wall/ceiling/floor construction. Refer to Division 1 for additional requirements.** Where there is a conflict between Division 1 specifications and Division 15 specifications, the most stringent requirements shall govern, be applicable and shall be provided.
- 1.15. **Motors:** All motors furnished shall be designed, manufactured, and tested in accordance with the current applicable standards of NEMA, ANSI, IEEE, and ASTM. As a minimum requirement, all motors shall conform to the current applicable sections of NEMA Standard No. MG-1. Motors shall meet or exceed The Consortium for Energy Efficiency (CEE) Premium Efficiency full load efficiencies. All motors shall be listed under UL recognized component file as applicable. All motors shall be suitable for installation according to the requirements of NEC. Motors shall be wound for the specified voltage and a 1.5 service factor, 1750 RPM open drip proof construction unless otherwise shown or specified.

All motors shall be provided with overload protection and phase protection on all legs. Do not run motors until correct overload elements are installed in starters, as applicable.

All motors serving outdoor equipment exposed to weather shall have TEFC motors meeting the requirements set forth previously.

- 1.16. **Operating and Maintenance Manuals:** **Two weeks before the final site visit,** furnish three complete sets of operating and maintenance instructions, bound in hard cover, indexed and tabbed.

The Contractor shall also provide this information in digital Adobe Acrobat PDF format, on a CD-R CD. The PDF file shall be provided with an embedded index for each item specified. The index shall appear in the left hand window of the opened document so that the Owner or his maintenance personnel can "click" on the indexed item and move immediately to that specific item.

Minimum requirements for the Operating and Maintenance Manuals shall be as follows:

- a. The first page of the bound instructions shall be a listing of:
  1. The Owner/Project Title.
  2. The Architect and Architect's Job Number.
  3. The Engineer and Engineer's Job Number (Found in the Engineer's Logo in the Bottom Right Corner of the Plumbing Plans).
  4. The General Contractor and Contact Information.
  5. The Plumbing Subcontractor and Contact Information.

- b. Second page shall be a Table of Contents listing all products in the order which they appear in the specifications and label the tab accordingly. Include all "P" numbers for fixtures, water heater numbers, valves, floor drains, etc.
- c. The third page shall be a summary page that lists each item with its respective warranty listed, including all extended warranties.
- d. All warranty card information shall be filled in by the Plumbing Contractor; Serial numbers, Model Numbers, etc. all as required for proper warranty registration. Warranty registration date shall be the date of substantial completion as determined by the Architect.
- e. Provide copies of all filled in warranty cards.
- f. Provide a local source of supply for parts and replacement, including names and telephone numbers of parts suppliers.
- g. Provide a general maintenance summary section. Section shall be a list of each piece of equipment or device using the designations as shown on the plans, and the routine maintenance procedures based on the respective manufacturer's recommended intervals. As a minimum, maintenance shall be grouped and individually tabbed to indicate maintenance operations required:
  - 1. Once a month
  - 2. Quarterly
  - 3. Once every six months
  - 4. Once a year
- h. Provide drawings of system controls and wiring diagrams and condensed operating instructions. Include hard copy in binder and digital copy on CD in PDF format. All components shall be numbered and identified on diagram. Laminate, frame under plastic and mount in each mechanical/water heater room(s) in an optimally viewed location for the respective equipment.
- i. Provide written results of all tests specified.
- j. Copies of all Site Visit Reports including Contractor's written response that items listed were corrected.
- k. Copies of all certificates of all site visits, comments and approvals from all Governing Authorities, to include all water heater and pressure vessel inspections by the Authority having jurisdiction.
- l. Provide domestic water samples testing and results specified.
- m. Provide copy of valve chart required in Section 15010, Identification. Include all dielectric unions on chart.
- n. Provide copy of Section 15010 and 15400 Specifications.
- o. Provide a copy of all shop drawings/submittals.
- p. Provide record drawings of the Plumbing drawings, in hard copy and PDF format on CD. Refer to Section 15010, Part 1, General, Paragraph, Record Drawings for detailed requirements. Record drawings shall indicate the valve numbers from the required valve chart, all cleanouts and all dielectric unions.

## **PART 2. TESTS**

- 2.1. **General: Do not test when freezing conditions exist or are anticipated. Test when freezing conditions have subsided.** Perform all tests in the presence of the Architect. Refer to Division One for Fuel, water and power required, therefore. In absence of specific testing procedure comply with code requirements and/or nationally acceptable industry standards. Furnish written reports of all tests results specified to Architect.
- 2.2. **Drainage and Vent System Pretest: Do not test PVC, CPVC nor any plastic piping with compressed air.** A water test shall be applied to the drainage system in its

entirety. All openings in the piping shall be tightly closed, except the highest opening. Then, the system shall be filled with water to the point of overflow.

If the system is tested in sections, each opening shall be tightly plugged except the highest openings of the section under test. Each section shall then be filled with water. Sections shall not be tested with less than a 10-foot head of water. In testing successive sections, not less than the upper 10 feet of the next preceding section shall be tested so that no joint or pipe in the building, except the uppermost 10 feet of the system, shall have been submitted to a test of less than a 10-foot head of water.

Test pressure shall be held for not less 8 hours. Check all portions for leaks. Correct all leaks and retest. The system shall then be tight at all points.

**Do not test when freezing conditions exist or are anticipated. Test when freezing conditions have subsided.**

- 2.3. Drainage and Vent System Final Test:** A smoke test shall be utilized as a final test. It shall be made by filling all traps with water and then introducing into the entire system a pungent, thick smoke produced by one or more smoke machines as required to achieve the specified pressure. **Do not test when freezing conditions exist or are anticipated. Test when freezing conditions have subsided.**

When the smoke appears at stack openings on the roof, the stack openings shall be closed and a pressure equivalent to a 1-inch water column shall be held for a test period of not less than 3-hours. Check all piping visually for smoke leakage and odors and correct all leaks.

The final test of the completed drainage and vent systems shall be visual and in sufficient detail to determine compliance with the provisions of the International Plumbing Code.

- 2.4. Water Supply System:** Test and secure acceptance of entire system before the piping is insulated or otherwise concealed. **Do not test when freezing conditions exist or are anticipated. Test when freezing conditions have subsided.**

Disconnect and cap all outlets to all plumbing fixtures and all other equipment not designed for the full test pressure. Fill the system with water and prove tight under a water pressure not less than the working pressure of the system; or, for piping systems other than plastic, by an air test of not less than 50 psi. Do not test plastic piping with air. This pressure shall be held for not less than 8-hours without a loss of pressure. The water utilized for the test shall be obtained from a potable source of supply. All piping throughout shall be tight under test. Water piping shall remain under normal water pressure during construction except when freezing weather is expected.

- 2.5. Fixtures:** Test for soundness, stability of support and satisfactory operation.

### **PART 3. SANITARY PIPING**

- 3.1. General Scope:** Provide a system of soil, waste and vent piping connecting all plumbing fixtures, equipment, etc. to the house sewer, with consolidated vent connections extending through the building roof, all as shown on the drawings and as required for complete installation. All piping shall be concealed below grade, within walls, chases, above ceilings, etc., unless specifically noted otherwise. Waste and vent piping shall be sloped in accordance with the applicable codes.

The Plumbing Contractor is responsible for and shall consider pipe-grading requirements when coordinating pipe routing for the project. Contractor shall determine inverts/connection points in the field based on the shop drawings of the sanitary system submitted. Coordination is required with Civil Contractor.

Do not begin work until elevation of final connection point is verified and grading of entire system can be determined (even if final connection is specified under another Section.)

Do not route the sewer line in the same trench with the domestic water line. Maintain a minimum of six (6) feet of separation between the two utilities.

Each length of pipe and each pipe fitting, trap, fixture, material and device utilized in the plumbing system shall bear the identification of the manufacturer and any markings required by the applicable referenced standards.

Rework existing waste roughing as required to facilitate renovation work as applicable.

**3.2. Utility Connection:** Utility connection is specified under Division 2. Connect to temporarily capped main as indicated on the plumbing plans.

**3.3. Soil, Waste and Vent Piping Underground, Inside the Building Walls and to Points Outside the Building as Indicated:** Provide service weight hub-and spigot cast iron soil pipe and fittings for underground service and hubless for above ground service, meeting ASTM A-74 for hub and spigot and ASTM A-888 for hubless, coated inside and out. Pipe exposed within the building shall be uncoated outside, primed and left clean for painting. Fittings to receive screwed pipe arms shall be recessed drainage type. Soil and waste pipe shall have long sweep connections. All cast iron soil pipe and fittings shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute (CISPI) and be listed by NSF International.

Joints for hub and spigot pipe shall be made with compression gaskets meeting ASTM C-564. Joints for hubless pipe and fittings shall be equivalent to MG couplings meeting ASTM A-48 and C-564, or Anaco Husky SD 4000, super-duty, shielded couplings of Type 304 AISI stainless steel, meeting ASTM C1540 standard or equivalent by Ideal Tridon Heavy Duty HD (Green), Mission Rubber Company, Heavy Weight, shielded or Charlotte Pipe Heavy Duty HD .

**Option:** Contractor may use solid wall PVC Schedule 40 DWV pipe and fittings meeting ASTM Standard D2665 and ASTM Standard 1785 for above ground service and underground service with the following exceptions. Use cast iron as specified hereinbefore or PVDF (Polyvinylidene Fluoride) piping and fittings in areas used as return air plenums, return air platforms and when passing through or within a fire rated assembly.

Piping and fittings above the floor shall be solid wall PVC Schedule 40 DWV pipe and fittings, cast iron pipe and fittings as specified above or PVDF pipe and fittings as specified below, and with exceptions as noted.

**THE USE OF "CELLCORE" OR "FOAMCORE" TYPE PIPING IS EXPRESSLY FORBIDDEN.**

PVDF piping and fittings, where specified and required, shall be Orion Super Blue PVDF (Polyvinylidene Fluoride) or equivalent products as manufactured by Enfield, Zurn, GEO or Fisher. The PVDF material shall conform to ASTM D3222 ASTM F1673, ASTM E-84 and UL 723. Pipe shall be marked with its UL Classification to



indicate compliance with UL723 (ASTM E84). All fittings shall meet or exceed Schedule 40 dimensions.

All vents thru roof shall be cast iron pipe (minimum 10" both sides of the roof). Secure the cast iron VTR to structure with heavy gauge 1-hole strap. **THE CAST IRON PIPING THROUGH THE ROOF DOES NOT APPLY TO GAS FIRED APPLIANCES. Vents through the roof for gas appliances shall be as specified for the appliance in its respective specification section.**

All floor drains shall have cast iron deep seal p-traps with trap primer and required connections.

- 3.4. **Laying Out Work:** Vents from any fixture, when connected to a vent line serving other fixtures, shall be extended at least 6 inches above flood level rim of highest of such fixtures to prevent use of vent lines as a waste. Make changes in direction by appropriate use of 45-degree Y's, 1/2 Y's, or long sweep 1/4, 1/6, 1/8 or 1/16 bends. Sanitary T's or short 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks or drainage lines where change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical; except that long-radiused, double TY's shall be used when two fixtures are installed back-to-back with common drain. Do not use double sanitary T's. Straight T's, Ells and Crosses may be used on vent lines. Make no change in direction of flow greater than 90 degrees. Where different sizes of drainage pipe or fittings are connected use standard increasers and reducers of proper size. Do not reduce size of drainage piping in direction of flow. Drilling and tapping of house drains, soil, waste or vent pipes, and use of saddle hubs and bands are prohibited. Route all vent lines high as possible while maintaining proper slope. All plumbing vents **through the roof, EXCEPT FOR NATURAL GAS FIRED EQUIPMENT VENTS, shall be cast iron and located a minimum of 10'-0" away from all outside air intakes.** Coordinate all plumbing vent locations with the HVAC plans.
- 3.5. **Hangers and Sway Bracing:** Refer to Section 15010 and plans for requirements.
- 3.6. **Grading:** Uniform and not less than 1/8" PLF for pipe 4" and over, and not less than 1/4" PLF for 2" and 3" piping.
- 3.7. **Roof Flashing:** Roof penetrations are to be flashed by the roofing contractor, using materials as recommended by the roofing manufacturer and approved by the Architect. Coordinate work with Roofing Contractor. Offset vents as required to clear gravel guards and flashing courses. Extend vents to 10" above roof level.
- 3.8. **Waste Arms:** Type K copper or IPS brass pipe typical; Schedule 40 PVC or IPS brass pipe at urinals.
- 3.9. **Escutcheons:** Where pipes pass through cabinets, walls and ceilings of finished rooms provide pressed chrome-plated brass or stainless steel type escutcheons securely fastened in place with screws. Pack penetrations with mineral wool insulation, seal with firestopping compound and install escutcheons to prevent passage of fire, smoke and vermin. Do not use split ring type escutcheons.
- 3.10. **Test Fittings:** Not shown on the drawings; provide where required for partial tests.

#### **PART 4. DRAINAGE SPECIALTIES**

- 4.1. **Manufacturers:** Except as noted, catalog numbers are from J.R. Smith and/or Zurn. Equivalentents by Josam, Sioux Chief or MIFAB will be considered.

- 4.2. **Cleanouts:** Provide in sanitary piping at all changes in direction, at ends of branches, at intervals not exceeding 40 feet on straight runs, and elsewhere as shown. Cleanouts shall be full opening type and completely accessible without obstruction. Size same as lines in which they occur, but not larger than 4 inch. Tees and extensions shall be of same weight as soil pipe. Plugs shall be countersunk or raised head type with lead-free seals. Coordinate with plan details and specifications and provide as required. Provide flashing clamps and flashing flanges in all areas where cleanouts are accessible from floor below or above, as applicable.

Extreme care shall be taken when roughing in cleanouts at each wall mounted lavatory and hand sink. Cleanouts shall be located within the specified Lav Shield piping cover when possible. All cleanouts shall be roughed in high enough to clear the Architectural base molding without cutting the base molding.

All cleanouts shall be indicated on the record/as-built drawings.

**In Tile Floors:** J.R. Smith 4052L, Zurn Model ZN1400-T-BP, adjustable, cast iron body with bronze plug and satin finished square scoriated nickel bronze top. Where soft tile occurs, provide 4172L, Zurn ZN1400-TX-BP, recessed square nickel bronze cover.

**In Concrete Floors:** J.R. Smith 4238L, Zurn Model Z1400-BP, adjustable head, cast iron head and ferrule with bronze plug, round loose-set scoriated tractor cover.

**In Outside Lines:** J.R. Smith 4262L-NB, Zurn Model Z1474-N-BP, cast iron head and ferrule with bronze plug. Terminate cleanout within 8" of finish grade at grade in 18"x18"x18" deep concrete pad with tooled edges or flush in pavement as applicable. Provide with loose set scoriated bronze tractor cover as shown on the plan details.

**In Accessible Unfinished Spaces:** J.R. Smith 4400 or 4511-S, Zurn Model ZS1468, cast iron with bronze plug, as appropriate.

**In Finished Walls:** J.R. Smith 4530S, Zurn Model Z1446-BP cast iron cleanout tee with bronze plug and 16 ga., 304 stainless steel, flat, wall plate cover. Where distance from plug to finish wall exceeds 4 inches provide extension from sanitary tee to bring plug within 2 inches of the stainless steel cleanout cover. rough in all wall cleanouts such that stainless steel cover occurs above the Architectural base. Do not cut Architectural base.

**In Terrazzo Floors:** J.R. Smith 4192L, Zurn Model ZN1400-Z-BP, adjustable cast iron head and ferrule, bronze plug and round nickel bronze cover and rim.

**In Carpeted Floors:** J.R. Smith 4032L-X, Zurn Model ZN1400-CM-BP, adjustable head, cast iron, round polished bronze top with carpet clamping device.

- 4.3. **Typical Drains:** Size outlets same as pipe to which they connect. Install temporary closures during construction. **Each drain connected to sanitary sewer shall have cast iron deep seal P-trap with trap primer and required connections.** Provide trap primer connections on floor drains and trap primers as specified below.

**Mechanical Room Drain (MFD):** J.R. Smith Series 2005G, Zurn Model Z541-P, galvanized cast iron body drain with adjustable strainer head, gasketed outlet, P05 trap primer connection, sediment bucket and cast-iron grate.

## **PART 5. WATER PIPING**

- 5.1. General Scope:** Connect to water main as indicated and extend to all plumbing fixtures, wall hydrants, water heaters, etc.; and to all plumbing items as indicated or required. All piping shall be concealed below grade, within walls, chases, above ceilings, etc., unless specifically noted otherwise.

Refer to Section 15010 for hanger rods, hangers, spacing and uni-strut support assembly requirements.

- 5.2. General Workmanship:** All water piping shall be routed within the building insulation envelope unless specifically noted otherwise. Cut accurately to measurements established at site and work into place without springing or forcing, clearing all openings, finished ceilings, etc.

All piping not in an accessible attic or similar spaces that contain valves and other items which may require maintenance or service access shall be located no more than 12" above the finished ceiling. Piping located in attics shall be supported such that maintenance access can be accomplished without the use of a ladder.

In finished spaces where water piping is exposed to view, route piping high as possible. Where valves or other items requiring service or maintenance are shown in piping of finished areas and exposed to view, the piping shall be installed high as possible, except where a valve or other item requiring maintenance and service is shown in the line, the item shall be no more than 14'-0" above the finish floor. Provide a drop, offset, etc., as required to maintain maximum service height of 14'-0" above the finished floor.

Route all piping through previously built-in sleeves/firestopping assembly as specified in Section 15010. Avoid excessive cutting or other weakening of the building structure. Make changes in direction and size with fittings. Cap or plug open pipe ends during installation to keep out foreign material. Make connections carefully to ensure unrestricted flow, eliminate air pockets, and to permit complete drainage of the systems. All water piping exposed to view in finished areas shall be routed high as possible.

Supply piping to fixtures, faucets, hydrants and flush valves shall be anchored to prevent movement. Install all buried piping with at least 36" of earth cover. Do not route the water line in the same trench with the sewer/sanitary piping. Maintain a minimum of six (6) feet of separation between the two utilities.

Uninsulated pipes passing through concrete or cinder block walls and floors, or other corrosive material shall be protected against external corrosion by a protective sheathing or wrapping that will withstand any reaction from the lime and acid of concrete, cinder block or other corrosive material. Sheathing or wrapping shall allow for movement including expansion and contraction of piping. The wall thickness of the sheathing material shall be not less than 0.125 inch thickness. The protective wrapping/sheathing is not an alternative where sleeves are specified and required. Coordinate requirement with Section 15010 sleeves/firestopping specifications and provide as specified.

All piping below slab-on-grade construction shall be installed in plastic jacket equivalent to Plasti-sleeve, as manufactured by Plastic Products Co. of Stanton, California.

- 5.3. **Freeze Protection:** Do not install piping or any device in spaces subject to freezing. Install piping within building insulation envelope.
- 5.4. **Grading:** The Contractor shall consider pipe-grading requirements when coordinating pipe routing for the project. All piping shall be carefully installed to eliminate traps and pockets in pressurized lines. Where air pockets and traps cannot be avoided, provide valved hose connections for water traps and valved automatic air vents for air traps. Pipe slope shall be maintained throughout the project. Pressurized plumbing piping systems shall be sloped to drain points. Grade pipe upward from source to facilitate drainage and air relief. Where low points are required because of long runs or where sections may be valved off, provide with 3/4" globe valve and hose nipple for drainage at low point. **Make all connections to risers and fixtures from top or sides of mains.**
- 5.5. **Nipples:** Of same material as pipe in which they are installed; provide extra strong when unthreaded portion is less than 1 inch long. Steel nipples are not allowed.
- 5.6. **Escutcheons:** Where pipes pass through cabinets, walls and ceilings of finished rooms provide pressed chrome-plated brass or stainless steel type escutcheons securely fastened in place with screws. Pack penetrations with mineral wool insulation, seal with firestopping compound and install escutcheons to prevent passage of fire, smoke and vermin. Do not use split ring type escutcheons.
- 5.7. **Piping and Fittings:** ProPress or similar type joints and fittings are not allowed. Typical lines to be of copper tubing meeting ASTM B-88, Type "L" hard above ground and Type "K" soft below ground. Cut copper pipe square and ream to remove burrs. Clean fitting socket and pipe ends with sand cloth, No. 00 cleaning pads or wire brush. No acids shall be used to clean either pipe or fittings or as a flux in sweating joints. Make up joints with sweat fittings of wrought copper, and 0.25% of the total wetted surface area, lead free compliant solder complying with ASTM B-32 and the Safe Drinking Water Act. Surfaces shall be prepared for soldering as required by ASTM B828. Do not make joints or branch connections below a slab on grade.
- 5.8. **Hangers:** Refer to Section 15010 and plan details for requirements.
- 5.9. **House Supply Connection:** Utility connection at street, meter installation, etc. is specified under Division 2. Connect to temporarily capped main as indicated. Where shut-off valve is indicated outdoors on the plumbing plans, provide a concrete or steel valve box with hinged medium duty, traffic rated cover, minimum 16x16, larger as required for proper access to valve. Provide valve extension as required so that top of valve handle is within 8" of top of hinged cover.
- 5.10. **Water Pressure:** Supply system is designed for static pressure of 50 to 75 psi. Gauge city water supply adjacent to building to verify that pressure is within those limits. Submit report in writing. Provide water pressure reducing valve, if required, to meet designed water pressure. See Water Piping Specialties for pressure reducing valve specification.
- 5.11. **Disinfection:** New potable water systems shall be purged of deleterious matter and disinfected prior to utilization. The method to be followed shall be that prescribed by the health authority or water purveyor having jurisdiction or, in the absence of a prescribed method, the procedure described in AWWA C651 or as described in this section below.

The pipe system shall be flushed with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at the points of outlet. The system or part thereof shall be filled with a water/chlorine solution containing not less than 50 parts per million of chlorine, and the system or part thereof shall be valved off and allowed to stand for 24 hours; or the system or part thereof shall be filled with a water/chlorine solution containing not less than 200 parts per million of chlorine and allowed to stand for 3 hours. Following the required standing time, the system shall be flushed with clean potable water until the chlorine is purged from the system.

Upon completion of the disinfection procedure, the Plumbing Contractor shall engage the services of the Alabama Department of Public Health Clinical Laboratories or a certified, licensed, testing laboratory to provide a lead and bacteriological water analysis to include a standard heterotrophic plate count (HPC), microbial, bacterial, pathogens and coliform count.

Test a minimum of two (2) samples of domestic water from two (2) separate locations within the facility.

Test locations shall be selected by the Architect and shall be noted on the Testing Laboratory's report. Test each sample for Coliform Present, Fecal Present, E. Coli and lead present.

If the lab results indicate positive results for Total, Fecal, or E. Coli coliform per 100 ml respectively, or an HPC greater than 500 CFU/mL, or lead maximum contaminant level goal (MCLG) greater than zero, the Contractor shall disinfect the system in its entirety, as specified above, and obtain new test results as outlined hereinbefore until levels are reached as required by AWWA C651. If maximum contaminant level goal (MCLG) of lead is greater than zero, immediately notify the Architect in writing and furnish copy of test results.

**Prior to the final site visit**, the Contractor shall provide to the Architect, certified test results on the testing facility letterhead. The report shall indicate the name of the project, the locations from where the samples were taken, the testing laboratory findings and indication whether the water is safe for consumption. **No Certificate of Occupancy will be provided to the Owner without the required lab results indicating the potable water system is safe for consumption.**

- 5.12. **System Drainage:** Provide valves and hose nipple to allow for drainage of all risers and other system low points.

## **PART 6. WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES**

- 6.1. **General:** All specialties in potable water distribution shall be certified lead free compliant design as required by Code, Regulations and Standards.

All specialties/valves shall be bronze or heat-treated CW511L brass, lead free compliant, AB 1953 compliant and shall be the product of one American Manufacturer and shall meet the Buy American Act 41, USC 10a-10d as specified hereinbefore. Provide extended operators for all valves installed in insulated piping. Seal the opening where the stem, nipple, etc., penetrates the insulation as required to maintain the continuity of the insulation and vapor barrier.

All valves shall be identified. Provide a custom laser engraved brass valve tag at each valve. Tag shall be 1-1/2 inches diameter, 18-gauge polished brass tags with 3/16-inch chain hole and 1/4 inch high stamped, black-filled service designation.

Refer to Section 15010, Identification for detailed requirements and provide all as specified.

Valves shall be Nibco, Jomar, Watts, Apollo, Kitz, Hammond/Milwaukee, Matco-Norca or Mueller. Nibco and Jomar units are basis of design unless specified otherwise.

- 6.2. Unions:** 150 lb. rated; cast brass ground-joint type in copper pipe, galvanized malleable iron in wrought iron or galvanized pipe. Provide in all sizes of threaded pipe, and in sweat-jointed pipe over 1 inch, to facilitate easy repairs. In such lines, install adjacent to water heaters, pumps, tanks, etc. into which piping is terminated; and on at least one side of valves, cocks, strainers, etc. and other devices that occur in piping runs.
- 6.3. Dielectric Unions:** Provide dielectric unions between ferrous and non-ferrous piping as required, including piping and water heater stubs where different and stainless-steel water hammer arrestors. Dielectric unions shall be constructed using lead free compliant materials as required by all Governmental Agencies, Codes and Standards and shall comply with ASTM 1545. Dielectric unions shall be Watts Series LF or equivalent by Mueller or Matco Norca. Where dielectric unions are installed, they shall be provided with factory fabricated brass tag. 1-1/2 inches diameter, 18-gauge polished brass tags with 3/16-inch chain hole and 1/4 inch high stamped, black-filled service designation. Indicate valve tags on the record drawings. **Contractor shall provide a ball valve on entering and leaving side of the respective piping containing the union as required to allow for proper maintenance of the union.**
- 6.4. Valves and Extended Valve Operators:** Provide as specified, including all fixtures or equipment not furnished with stops. Arrange and install valves to be readily accessible for servicing. All valves shall be bronze or heat-treated CW511L brass, lead free compliant, AB 1953 compliant and shall be the product of one American Manufacturer and shall meet the Buy American Act 41, USC 10a-10d as specified hereinbefore. Nibco and Jomar units are basis of design.
- Coordinate handle height requirement with specified insulation thickness. Provide height extension as required to clear insulation and properly operate without causing damage to piping insulation. All handles shall comply with UL 2043 and shall be UL listed for installation in return air plenums.
- 6.5. Globe Valves 2" and Smaller:** Nibco #S-235-Y or Jomar Terminator G, bronze solder-type with replaceable disc, T-235-Y for threaded pipe, 150 WSP.
- 6.6. Check Valves 2" and Smaller:** Nibco T-473-B or Jomar T-511G, bronze threaded, Y-Pattern swing check, 200 WSP.
- 6.7. Ball Valves for Water Piping in Size 1/2" through 3":** Valve shall be "Lead-Free" forged bronze or heat treated CW511L brass, 600 PSI CWP, 150 PSI WP, two-piece body, full port, blowout proof stem, stainless steel ball, stainless steel stem, PTFE seats and 2" minimum valve extension to bring valve handle beyond insulation. Valve shall meet NSF, ANSI, FM, UL and MSS SP-110 standards. Note that ball valves are also required on one side of each dielectric union.
- 6.8. Thermometers:** Trerice Series BX, Model AX9, universally adjustable type with 7-inch scale and suitable temperature range, mercury free, 0°F to 160°F range as manufactured by Trerice. Thermometers shall be "blue liquid" actuated with Phenol Condensate and lead-free cast aluminum case and brass stem and thermowell, with extension neck and other accessories required for a complete installation. Locate for

convenient reading. Equivalent product by Blue Ribbon, Weksler, March or Maxwell Moore will be accepted.

- 6.9. Wall Hydrants (Exterior):** Encased, Ecolotrol, lead-free compliant, non-freeze automatic draining wall hydrant for flush installation. Hydrant shall have integral backflow preventer with anti-siphon type, copper casing, all-bronze interior components with 1/2 turn long-life ceramic disc cartridge, combination 3/4" female solder and 3/4" male pipe thread inlet connection, 3/4" male hose connection, with type 304 stainless steel housing with locking hinged cover stamped "WATER" and operating key. Hydrant housing shall fit within one standard modular masonry course. Provide one spare hydrant repair kit and one spare cartridge removal tool for EACH wall hydrant.

Seal all interior joints, seams, gasket seams/closures including around the hydrant box flange with an appropriate sealant recommended by a sealant manufacturer. Wall hydrant shall be JR Smith 5519 QT, Zurn Z1320XL-EZ or approved equivalent by Woodford. Install approximately 24 inches above finished grade.

- 6.10. Water Hammer Arrestors (Shock Absorbers):** Certified by the American Society of Sanitary Engineers and in compliance with current edition of ASSE 1010-2004, ANSI A112.26.1M, Plumbing and Drainage Institute Standard PDI-WH201, heavy-duty construction and designed for a minimum 150-PSI working pressure. Arrestors shall consist of a Type 304 stainless steel casing and bellows. The device shall be pre-charged and sealed at the factory. Install on both hot and cold-water branch lines in an upright position as close as possible to the valve or valves being served.

Arrestors shall be installed at all solenoids, remote operated or quick closing valves and at each plumbing fixture or battery of plumbing fixtures as recommended by the Manufacturer. Plumbing Contractor shall provide a dielectric union at connection of this device to the copper water piping. Arrestors shall be Zurn Z1700, J.R. Smith Hydrotrol Series 5005-5050, Watts Series SS, Sioux Chief Series 660-G2B or MIFAB Series WHB.

- 6.11. Automatic Drain Trap Primer Units Where Water Closets Occur:** Trap primers shall comply with International Plumbing Code and local codes. Allow for required modifications to meet local codes. Units shall be accessible for service. Provide required piping and drainage. Provide trap primer line to every floor drain and hub drain. Provide isolation valve above ceiling. Water saver type trap primers that attach to lavatory p-traps or any other type of assemblies that use grey water are not allowed. Trap primers shall be Sloan VBF-72-A1, Zurn P6000-TPO, American Standard 6065, Watts LFTP300 or equivalent by Sioux Chief or MIFAB.

- 6.12. Pressure-Reducing Valve and Strainer:** Verify water pressure at site prior to ordering. Device may not be required. If required, provide Zurn/Wilkins 500XL-YsBR or equivalent by Apollo or Watts. Provide full size valved bypass around PRV, two pressure gauges, hose bibb and a valve and union on each side of PRV. Provide if required to meet designed water pressure (not to exceed 70 psi).

## **PART 7. PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- 7.1. General:** Refer to Section 15010, plan details and Pipe Insulation below.
- 7.2. Coatings and Finishes:** See specifications Section 15010 for detailed requirements.

## PART 8. PIPE INSULATION

- 8.1. **General:** The Plumbing Contractor shall not install the piping insulation. All piping insulation work shall be by a licensed, experienced insulation subcontractor whose primary business is the installation of insulating materials in accordance with insulation manufacturers' recommendations and these specifications. Where a conflict exists between these specifications and the Manufacturer's recommendations, the strictest installation shall be provided.

Piping shall be clean, dry and pressure tested before covering is applied. Size pipe hangers to fit insulated pipe size. **No installation of pipe hangers for insulated piping will be allowed to be in contact with piping or penetrate the piping insulation. Piping insulation shall be continuous through partitions sleeve/firestop assembly and shall not be cut away for installation of clamps, valves, fittings, etc.** Refer to details on plans, Section 15010, "Pipe Hangers and Supports", plan details and below for additional requirements.

Insulate all hot and cold-water piping except that below grade and excluding plated brass fixture connections. All piping shall be routed within the building insulation envelope to prevent freezing. Insulate all p-traps and related piping located in return air plenums, return air platforms, all horizontal overhead drain lines, including p-traps and drain sumps from mechanical room floor drains, ice machine drains, cooler drains, condensate drainage piping, hub drains and other condensate receiving drains, as specified below.

Insulate rainwater drainage system as noted in that Part. Cover fittings, valves and flanges with insulation material as hereinafter specified to same thickness as adjacent pipe covering except screwed unions and other specifically named items. Neatly bevel covering edges adjacent to unions, valves and other points of termination and seal insulation. All insulation materials (including coatings, mastics, jackets and adhesives) shall have a composite flame spread rating not to exceed of 25/50 rule as determined by ASTM E-84, NFPA 255 and UL 723.

- 8.2. **Installation of Fiberglass Insulation:** No installation of pipe hangers for insulated piping will be allowed to be in contact with piping or penetrate the piping insulation. Refer to details on plans for additional requirements. Size hanger loops to fit **over** insulation. Insulate with Owens-Corning SSL II with ASJ Max Fiberglass pipe insulation, thickness as shown below, thermal conductivity of  $k= 0.23 \text{ Btu-in/hr-ft}^2\text{-}^{\circ}\text{F}$  at 75°F mean temperature. Insulation shall comply with ASTM C547, ASTM C585, ASTM C1136, ASTM C795, NFPA 90A and 90B and be UL Labeled for Flame Spread Index of 25 or less and Smoke Developed Index of 50.

Adhere SSL by removing release paper after the insulation is installed on pipe and sealing the lap starting in the center of each section, working towards ends. Lap shall be pressurized by rubbing with a plastic sealing tool. Install 3" butt strips in the same manner at the joint between sections and at 3'-0" on center. Staple jacket flaps and premolded PVC fittings with nominal 3/4" wide stainless steel or Monel outward-clinching insulation staples on 8" centers. Insulation staples shall have a vapor retarder coating or covered with greater than 3 ply laminate jacket (less than 0.0001 perms) adhesive tape or vapor barrier mastic that conceals the entire staple.

Insulate all fittings and elbows with premolded fiberglass fittings containing 3lb. density **rigid** polyisocyanurate pipe insulation of equal thickness as the adjacent piping with PVC covering and UL Labeled for Flame Spread Index of 25 or less and Smoke Developed Index of 50.



In lieu of premolded PVC covers at elbows and fittings, which contain rigid polyisocyanurate pipe insulation as specified hereinbefore, Contractor may, at his option, miter the fiberglass insulation. Thereafter, seal staples and cover end on both sides of fitting with butt strip, staple and seal staples with insulating sealant. Where applicable, finish open ends of sectional covering by rounding off with insulating cement, glass cloth and lagging adhesive.

### **Cold Water/Domestic Water Insulation Thickness**

All pipe sizes 1" thickness

### **Hot Water/Domestic Hot Water Insulation Thickness**

For pipe sizes up to 1-1/4" – 1.0" thickness

For pipe sizes 1-1/2" to 6" – 1.5" thickness

- 8.3. Insulation for Piping Within Concrete Block Walls:** Insulate with 1" or 1.5" thickness insulation for the respective piping as specified above. Insulation shall be black, flexible foamed, elastomeric, closed cell pipe insulation with a fire hazard rating not to exceed 25 for flame spread and 50 for fuel contributed and smoke developed as determined by ASTM E84. It shall be GreenGuard certified tubular insulation with Microban antimicrobial protection. Insulation shall have a 'k' factor of not more than 0.26 at 90°F mean temperature and a water vapor transmission rate of 0.05 perm-inches or less. Slip insulation onto pipe prior to installation. **Slit insulation and longitudinal cutting of the insulation is prohibited. Slip insulation onto pipe prior to erecting. Do not stretch or bend insulation at any turn, tee, etc.** Insulate sweat/brazed fittings with miter-cut pieces of insulation as recommended in AP Armaflex installation instructions or, provide factory fabricated, made to order prefabricated fittings for tees, elbows, unions, etc. the same size as on adjacent piping as manufactured by AP Armaflex, Aeroflex Aerofit, K-Flex K-Fit or Aerocell.
- 8.4. Fiberglass Insulation Fittings:** Insulate with Fiberglas insulation mitered to fit snugly or with PVC covers with integral, 3lb. density **rigid** polyisocyanurate pipe insulation of the same thickness as the adjacent pipe insulation. After covering the fitting/elbow with the premolded PVC covering, completely tape the covering to the adjacent pipe insulation, staple and seal as specified above. **Loose insulation in premolded covers is not allowed.** Premolded PVC covers shall have a flame spread index of 0-25 and a smoke developed index of 0-50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- 8.5. Exposed Ends:** Finish open ends of sectional covering by rounding off with cement, and sizing with fiberglass cloth jacket around the pipe and finish with Foster 30-36 mastic cement.
- 8.6. Partitions and Floors:** Refer to Section 15010 Pipe Sleeves and Firestopping. In any case, insulation shall extend through floors, partitions and walls and firestopped. Note that Section 15010, Firestopping, requires firestopping of all penetrations, regardless of rating. Refer to Section 15010, Firestopping, for specifics and additional requirements.
- 8.7. Aluminum Jacket:** All water piping insulation exposed to the outdoors, all piping insulation located in Mech/Elec 108 shall be covered with a preformed, 18 ga., .04" thick, smooth finish, 3003 and 3105 series aluminum jacket conforming to ASTM B-209 standards. Fittings shall be 18 ga., .04" thick, die shaped, and smooth finish, Type

1100 aluminum jacket meeting ASTM C585. Provide 1/2" wide, 18 ga., .04" thick , Type 3003 aluminum bands on maximum 24" centers but not less than two bands per jacket section. Locate longitudinal lap of aluminum jacket on bottom for all horizontal piping. Seal jacket lap and make watertight with silicone caulk any portion of the aluminum jacket exposed to exterior ambient conditions. The aluminum jacket shall extend and terminate a minimum of 12" inside the respective indoor space. Seal the penetration and ends of piping insulation weather tight. **VentureClad or similar product is prohibited.**

- 8.8. **Electric Water Coolers:** Insulate drain connections and traps with 1/8" thick insulating tape by AP Armaflex, K-Flex or Aerocel AC EPDM or 1/2" thick fiberglass insulation as specified for piping insulation.
- 8.9. **Clevis Hanger Saddle Requirements:** For all piping suspended with clevis hangers, provide a factory fabricated pre-formed, pre-insulated saddle assembly consisting of an **integral** G-90 metal saddle per the table below. **Do not use loose saddles.** The assembly shall be a 360-degree section of 3.0 PCF density top section of polyisocyanurate pipe insulation and 6.0 PCF density bottom section of polyisocyanurate pipe insulation, with both sections a minimum of 45-psi compressive strength in compliance with ASTM D1622 and ASTM C518 for thermal conductivity (K-Factor). The assembly shall have a 6-mil thickness, industrial grade vapor retarder film in compliance with ASTM D-374 and 0.01 perm rating in compliance with ASTM E-96. The assembly shall also be provided with an insulation lock joint longitudinal seam. The insulation jacket shall have a hazard rating not to exceed 25 flame spread and 50 for fuel contributed and smoke developed as determined by ASTM E-84, NFPA 255 and UL 723. Insulation thickness required shall be same as specified above.

Installation shall be in strict accordance with the Manufacturer's requirements. After installation, install 3" butt strips at the joint between sections where fiberglass insulation and the polyisocyanurate insulation butt together. Staple insulation jacket flaps and seal staples as specified above for fiberglass insulation.

Each assembly shall have a genuine "Quick-Inspect" sticker applied at the bottom of each saddle for easy jobsite verification by the Engineer or Inspector. Failure to provide the sticker on each assembly will be cause for immediate rejection of the installation.

The assembly shall be Buckaroos Model 3300E or equivalent by Thermal Pipe Shields, Inc, Pipe Shields, Inc. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc. or Clement Support Services. Tru-Balance is the basis of design.

**Clevis Hanger Saddle Requirements**

<b><u>Nominal Pipe Size</u></b>	<b><u>Insulation Length</u></b>	<b><u>Saddle Length</u></b>	<b><u>Saddle Gauge</u></b>
1/2" - 1-1/2"	9"	6"	22 Ga.
2" - 5"	18"	12"	18 Ga.

- 8.10. **Unistrut Support Saddle Requirements:** For all piping supported by Unistrut assembly, vertically and horizontally, provide a preformed, G-90 galvanized metal saddle per the table below and in compliance with ASTM A-527. The saddles shall be pre-formed to fit the exact specified fiberglass insulation diameters per ASTM C-585. The assembly shall be a 2-piece, upper and lower unit for complete self-clamping 360-degree insulation protection. Provide clamps per details on the plans to attach to

the Unistrut assembly. Insulation thickness required shall be same as specified above.

Each assembly shall have a genuine "Quick-Inspect" sticker applied at the side of each saddle for easy jobsite verification by the Engineer or Inspector. Failure to provide the sticker on each assembly will be cause for immediate rejection of the installation.

The assembly shall be Buckaroos 58 Series Saddle or equivalent by Thermal Pipe Shields, Inc, Pipe Shields, Inc. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc. or Clement Support Services. Buckaroos is the basis of design.

#### **Unistrut Saddle Requirements**

<b><u>Nominal Pipe Size</u></b>	<b><u>Saddle Length</u></b>	<b><u>Saddle Gauge</u></b>
1/2" - 3-1/2"	12"	18 Ga.

- 8.11. **Painting:** Paint exposed insulation after insulation is completed as specified in Section 15010.
- 8.12. **Identification:** Refer to Section 15010 for identification of piping systems.

### **PART 9. ELECTRIC WATER HEATING EQUIPMENT**

- 9.1. **Water Heater:** Rheem Series ELD, A.O. Smith Series DEN, Lochinvar ESX or Rheem Series EGSP, A.O. Smith Series DEL or equivalent by Lochinvar or Bradford-White. Water heater(s) shall be light duty, commercial, glass-lined tank with heating elements designed for current shown on the Electrical Drawings, copper dip tube, drain pan, storage capacity not less than indicated on the drawings.

The water heater shall bear the UL or ETL label and covered by a minimum 3-year manufacturer's tank warranty and 1-year parts and labor warranty from the date of substantial completion as determined by the Architect.

- 9.2. **Power Wiring:** Specified under Electrical Division. **Verify voltage and power requirements with Electrical Contractor and Electrical plans prior to ordering equipment.**
- 9.3. **Circulating Pump:** Furnish and install, as shown on the plans, an all lead-free bronze (0.25% or less lead content of all wetted surfaces) or stainless steel construction, pipe-mounted centrifugal pump with high efficiency ECM motor in eight (8) modes of control and stainless steel flanges. Pump shall be ETL or UL listed and be NSF 372 compliant. Provide a strap-on aquastat and wire to control the pump through a 7-day program clock, which shall be programmed to the Owner's requested operating schedule. Clock shall be equivalent to Grasslin digital 2-72 with 24-hour minimum battery back-up power. Provide required control wiring. Pump power shall be as shown on the electrical plans. Pump shall be Armstrong Series Compass H or equivalent by Taco or Grundfos.
- 9.4. **Relief Valve:** The relief valve shall comply with ANSI Z21.22 and CSA/ASME rated temperature and pressure relief valve on the water heater with copper relief line piped as indicated on the plans. Temperature and pressure relief valves, or combinations thereof devices shall bear the label of an approved agency and shall have a temperature setting of not more than 210°F and a pressure setting not

exceeding the tank or water heater manufacturer's rated working pressure or 150 psi, whichever is less. The relieving capacity of each pressure relief valve and each temperature relief valve shall equal or exceed the heat input to the water heater or storage tank. Do not pipe/connect relief discharge line and auxiliary drain pan lines together. Manufacturer shall be Watts, Apollo or McDonnell and Miller.

- 9.5. **Expansion Tank:** Provide diaphragm type with NSF liner, designed for 150 psig working pressure and shall bear an ASME stamp. Tank shall have a minimum acceptance as recommended by heater manufacturer. Expansion tank shall be supported at the wall by a QS-5 or QS-12 Quick Strap tank stainless steel and galvanized assembly as manufactured by HoldRite or approved equivalent.
- 9.6. **Auxiliary Drain Pan:** Provide 1 1/2 "deep, 24 ga. (0.025" thickness) galvanized steel or 18 ga. (0.04") thickness aluminum auxiliary drain pans with seamless, welded or brazed watertight joints, of sufficient size and shape to receive drippings. Width of pan shall provide minimum of 6" clearance between water heater and inside face of the pan. Provide 3/4" copper drain line in **bottom** of pan to floor drain with dielectric separation where water heater is elevated or placed on a stand. Do not pipe relief discharge line and auxiliary drain pan lines together.
- 9.7. **Wall Mounted Water Heater Stand:** This option requires the Architect's approval. Where applicable, in lieu of the assembly indicated on the plans, the Contractor may provide for water heaters up to 40 gallons of capacity and are indicated to be mounted from the wall, a factory fabricated unit with watertight pan constructed of 18 ga. galvanized metal and integral metal 1 1/4" auxiliary drain, 16 ga. galvanized C-brackets, 12 ga. galvanized 45 degree brackets with low carbon steel, zinc plated, threaded rods as required for a 750 lb. load with 2x safety factor. Provide minimum of 1" Rubatex insulation over all edges of the stand to protect individuals from injury should they hit the stand. Cap auxiliary drain connection provided with the specified stand and provide drain in the bottom of the pan. Provide dielectric fitting between galvanized drain outlet and copper auxiliary drain line specified.

Assembly shall be QuickStand 60W-SWHP-WM steel, wall mounted equipment platform as manufactured by HoldRite or approved equivalent. Note that where this assembly is provided, the auxiliary drain pan specified above is not required. In all circumstances, the 1" thick, heat resistant neoprene pad under the respective heater is required. Stand and installation of stand shall be as recommended by the Manufacturer for a 750 lb. load regardless of water heater volume.

- 9.8. **Inspections:** The Plumbing Contractor shall arrange and pay for the State of Alabama Boiler and Pressure Vessel Safety Division/Inspection Divisions, Elevators/Boilers Inspector to visit job site to inspect water heater and/or boiler installation and obtain written approval, certification and Certificate for Potable Water Heater (PWH) as required. Correct all deficiencies required by the Inspector without additional cost to the Owner or the Owner's Project Design Professionals, using materials and methods, as directed by, State of Alabama Boiler and Pressure Vessel Safety Division/Inspection Divisions and Elevators/Boilers inspector as required.

## **PART 10. FIXTURES SUPPORTS AND CONNECTIONS**

- 10.1. **General:** Verify exact size and location of water, vents, waste and supply connections from approved rough-in drawings and/or catalog data sheets. Allow for modifications required by the shop drawings without additional cost to the Owner or the Owner's Project Design Professionals.

All fixtures including lavatories, urinals, water closets, electric water coolers, etc., shall be securely fastened to the walls or floor. **Coordinate all mounting heights and fixture types required with Architectural plans prior to rough-in and ordering fixtures.**

- 10.2. Wall Mounted Fixtures:** Support all wall mounted fixtures that are specified without carriers using 1/4" thick 6" high plates full length and width of fixture, mounted behind wall. Where fixtures are back to back on a solid wall, mount with bolts from fixture hanger to fixture hanger. Do not use toggle bolts or expansion bolts unless noted on the plans or specified.

Where fixtures are mounted on solid (single wythe) walls finished both sides, install fixtures with plated toggle bolts.

Where fixtures are mounted on wood or light gauge steel studs, employ pressure treated blocking of 2" x 12" nominal size well secured into stud line with non-corrosive, dielectric separation fasteners. Fit behind stud flanges, using especially placed studs as required.

Demolish and modify all existing walls, partitions, ceilings and saw cut all floors as required to install new items as shown and/or specified. Reconstruction and repair of the demolished/modified items above shall be as directed by the Architect. Coordinate demolition and repairing/rebuilding of items with General Contractor prior to bid to allow for installation of carriers, piping, etc., as applicable.

- 10.3. Floor Connections:** Provide cast iron or galvanized malleable iron floor flanges at least 3/16" thick, screwed or caulked to drainage pipe. Bolt the connection and make tight to fixture with plumbing fixture setting compound, wax setting ring or polyethylene gasket flange. Offset flanges for water closets are not allowed.
- 10.4. Water Supply Connections:** Provide rigid, lead-free brass nipple from water riser to fixture stop valve threaded connections. Steel pipe is unacceptable. Exposed portion of nipple shall be chromium plated. Stops' risers shall be lead-free, threaded with chrome over copper pipe. Quick connect fittings are not allowed. Stainless steel braided supplies are allowed only where piping is concealed behind the specified Lav Shield for wall mounted lavatories and hand sinks.
- 10.5. Waste Arms to Fixtures:** As specified hereinbefore. Where copper or brass pipe is specified, all joints downstream from the trap shall be brazed joints.

## **PART 11. SCHEDULED FIXTURES AND MISCELLANEOUS ITEMS**

- 11.1. Acceptable Manufacturers:** Fixtures listed are from American Standard (AS), Zurn and Elkay Catalogs. Equivalent products by Toto, Kohler, Just or Sloan will be accepted. Where three (3) Manufacturers are listed for fixtures below, use only those Manufacturers.

Manufacturers not named in the specifications require prior approval, seven (7) days prior to bid date. Follow procedures set forth in Division 1 of the specifications. All prior approvals shall be submitted through the Architect. Where substitutions are proposed, unless the Contractor states in writing, on a separate recap/summary sheet in the front of the respective submittal, the differences of the substituted equipment or material, he shall be responsible to replace such items any time discrepancies are found.

Architect shall select all colors where a choices exists.

- 11.2. **Fixture Trim:** Exposed metal parts to be of heavy weight polished brass, heavily chromium plated, of best quality as regularly furnished by the plumbing fixture manufacturer. Provide stop valve in supply to all fixtures and equipment.
- 11.3. **Compliance with Americans Disabilities Act:** All fixtures, faucets, flush valves, etc., specified or shown to be ADA type shall be manufactured and installed in complete compliance with the current requirements of the Americans Disabilities Act.
- 11.4. **Guarantee:** Guarantee in writing to make good without cost any defects in materials and workmanship for one (1) year. Manually operated flush valves and all faucets shall be provided with a five (5) year, full replacement warranty, including labor.

Warranty/guarantee shall start on the date of substantial completion of the project as determined by the Architect. Provide free maintenance and service during the first 12 months of the guarantee period.

11.5. **Scheduled Items:**

**P – 1 ADA Water Closet:** American Standard Madera 3461.160, EverClean, Zurn Model Z5665-BWL1-AM, 1.6 GPF, 17" high vitreous china, siphon jet, fully glazed trapway, elongated bowl with 1-1/2" top spud, Zurn Z6000AV-WS1, Sloan Royal 111 or equivalent flush valve by Toto with trap primer connection, Bemis 1655SSCT white open-front seat with self-sustaining stainless steel check hinge and hardware with Sta-Tite locking system or equivalent by Zurn or Beneke, Zurn Z5972-COMB closet bolt and wax ring kit, china bolt caps and all other items required for a complete and functional installation. Provide chrome plated YJ split-ring wall bracket for supply pipe. Coordinate flush valve installation with grab bar. Flush valve control/handle shall be mounted for use from the wide side of the toilet stall.

**P – 2 ADA Lavatory:** American Standard Lucerne 0355.012, Zurn Model Z5364, 20" x 18", wall hung vitreous china lavatory complete with Zurn Z81000-XL-3M single control faucet, 1.5 GPM vandal resistant aerator, McGuire #LF2167, Zurn Z8803-XL-LRLK-PC, 1/2" supplies with stops, McGuire #155WC, Zurn Z8746-PC offset drain, McGuire 8872 p-trap and heavy-duty floor supported JR Smith Series 0710, Z1231EZ chair carrier with concealed arms. Where lavatory manufacturer drain outlet complies with ADA requirements, offset drains are not required. Supplies shall be lead-free, AB 1953 certified by recognized authority and bear manufacturer and testing mark. Refer to Architectural plans for mounting heights.

Provide lead-free mixing valve (ASSE 1070) with tempered water line to faucet. Mixing valve shall be provided with wall bracket, dual check valves and 40-mesh stainless steel screen. Mixing valve shall be Watts LFUSG-B-SC-M2, Zurn Wilkins ZW3870XLT or Leonard 170D-LF. The entire assembly shall comply with ADA and ANSI standards.

Provide for each fixture an ADA compliant, heavy-duty, impact-resistant, stain-resistant and chemical-resistant rigid vinyl vandal-resistant enclosure with vandal resistant fasteners that shields all piping, electronic faucet components (as applicable), mixing valves and instantaneous water heaters. If plans indicate an instantaneous water heater to be installed at the lavatory, the Contractor shall contact the Lav Shield Manufacturer for guidance on the required installation. **Do not install Lav Shield until Engineer has inspected the piping installation.**

The Lav Shield shall contain an antimicrobial additive that resists fungal and bacterial growth. The Lav Shield shall comply with ASME A112.18.9-2001, ADA article 4.19.4 (606.5), ANSI A117.1, BOCA P 1203.4, and other required State and Local regulations. The Lav Shield shall be provided in standard white finish for the exact fixture specified or custom color, fit to field Lav Shield in the color selected by the Architect. Furnish standard **and** custom color chart to Architect for selection. Lav Shield shall be as manufactured by Truebro/IPS corporation or approved equivalent.

**P – 3 Mop Basin:** American Standard 7741.000 Florwell, Zurn Model Z5850-D3-RG-HH-MH-WG, acid resisting enameled cast iron corner model floor type service sink, complete with American Standard 8354.112, Zurn Z843M1-XL-CS, wall mounted faucet with offset shanks and integral stops, levered vandal resistant handles, vacuum breaker, integral check valves, adjustable wall brace, pail hook, 3/4" hose thread on spout, four foot rubber hose, Bradley 9933 combination utility shelf/broom holder and utility shelf constructed of 18 ga. 304 stainless steel with 16 ga. stainless steel gussets and hooks, 7745.811 rim guard, strainer for 3" screw connection, 304 stainless steel wall guards and silicone sealant at all points where wall guard meets the basin, wall and floor.

**P – 4 Bi-Level ADA Indoor Electric Water Cooler with Bottle Filler:** Elkay # LZSTL8WSSP-W1, bi-level, ADA cooler, refrigerated stainless steel high capacity lead reduction filtered, wall mounted, front and side bubbler push bar, electronic bottle filler sensor, ADA and ICC A117.1 compliant with cane apron, stainless steel cabinet and receptor, safety and vandal proof bubbler, and 5-year warranty. It shall provide 8 gal/hr. of filtered water at 50°F based on 80°F inlet water and 90°F ambient temperature, per ASHRAE 18 testing. Unit shall be certified to UL 399 and CAN/CSA C22.2 No. 120 and NSF/ANSI 42, 53, 61 & 372 for lead free compliant design. Unit shall be provided with quick filter change wrapper providing easy access to filter from the front and side of cooler for efficient filter changes. Furnish with 1-1/4" rough brass p-trap, 17-gauge brass tailpiece and waste with wheelless stop valve, concealed Elkay MLP200 or equivalent by J.R. Smith or Zurn Bi-Level floor mounted support, related floor support plates and base as required for applicable wall construction. Refer to Architectural plans for wall type. Equivalent units by Halsey Taylor, Oasis or Murdock will be considered.

Provide three (3) 51600C Water Sentry Plus Replacement Filters, 6,000-gallon filter tested and certified to NSF 42 and 53 to reduce lead, Class 1 particulates and chlorine taste and odor certified to NSF 42, NSF 53 and NSF 372 for each set of water coolers provided. Upon completion of the project, turn over replacement filters to Architect for transfer to Owner.

**P – 5 ADA Sink:** Elkay LRAD 221955, 22" x 19" x 6" deep, single compartment 18 gauge stainless steel sink with self-rimming construction complete with one LKGT4083 ADA faucet with forward only lever handle, pull-down spray, deck plate and escutcheon, LK-35 crumb cup strainer and offset tail piece, 8912 1-1/2" P-trap 17 gauge continuous waste and two Brasscraft XR1720A angle stops. Sink shall have drain at rear of the compartment as required to meet ADA regulations. Verify cabinet depth and slope with Architectural plans prior to ordering sink.

Provide lead-free mixing valve (ASSE 1070) with tempered water line to faucet. Mixing valve shall be provided with wall bracket, dual check valves and 40-mesh stainless steel screen. Mixing valve shall be Watts LFUSG-B-SC-M2, Zurn Wilkins ZW3870XLT or Leonard 170D-LF. Insulate supplies, trap and drain with premolded ADA compliant protectors with internal fasteners as Manufactured by Truebro Lav Guard 2, Oatey/Dearborn or McGuire Pro-Wrap only.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 15700

### HEATING, VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

#### PART 1. GENERAL

- 1.1. **General Provisions:** Section 15010 is applicable in full hereto. No materials or products that contain asbestos, formaldehyde, polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), lead or mercury, in excess of limits mandated and defined by OSHA, LEED and the EPA, shall be utilized.

Manufacturers not named in the specifications require prior approval, seven (7) days prior to bid date. Follow procedures set forth in Division 1 of the specifications. All prior approvals shall be submitted through the Architect.

- 1.2. **Qualifications of Mechanical Contractor:** Shall be properly licensed and established as a Heating and Air Conditioning Contractor at location of the work. He shall have had previous experience in the satisfactory installation of at least six (6) systems of this type, size and scope. The Sub-Contractor shall have an adequate service facility to provide complete service and maintenance of the facility within 100 miles of the installation.

- 1.3. **General Scope:** Include all equipment, material, and labor required for complete and proper installation and operation of HVAC systems, even though not every item involved is indicated. Do not attach any items to other trades' assemblies. Items shall be attached to building structural system.

Advisory provisions listed in all Codes referenced in the Contract Documents are mandatory. Where conflicts occur between a Code, Standard, the contract drawings or specifications, the most stringent requirements shall govern and be applied.

Manufacturers not named in the specifications require prior approval, seven (7) days prior to bid date. Follow procedures set forth in Division 1 of the specifications. All prior approvals shall be submitted through the Architect. Where substitutions are proposed, unless the Contractor states in writing, on a separate recap/summary sheet in the front of the respective submittal, the differences of the substituted equipment or material, he shall be responsible to replace such items any time discrepancies are found.

Architect shall select all colors where a choice exists.

- 1.4. **Site Visits:** It is the contractor's responsibility to have the job ready for site visits when they are scheduled. If the project is not ready for the requested site visit and the Architect, any governmental agency or any other entity requires an additional site visit with the Engineer present, the contractor shall pay Zgouvas, Eiring & Associates a re-visit fee of \$2,000. The payment shall be made directly to Zgouvas, Eiring & Associates 5 days prior to the scheduled site visit.

The Contractor is urged to carefully review the extensive requirements of Paragraph "Identification" and "Refrigerant Piping Identification" in Section 15010 of the specifications. Note that certain identification is required to be completed before certain site visits. **There are specific identification requirements prior to the above ceiling and final site visits, respectively, that are mandatory. The State of Alabama Department of Construction Management (DCM) will cancel, on-site, the site visit if not completed as specified. Failure to comply with this provision will be cause for cancellation of the site visit, and a fee imposed for the additional site visit,**

**with all costs of the additional site visit to be borne by the respective Contractor responsible.**

- 1.5. **Miscellaneous:** Bidders shall visit the site and become acquainted with all job conditions that may affect the work shown on the plans. Report to the Architect, prior to bid, any new or existing conditions that require modifications to accomplish the installation of all items. Provide for required adjustments to complete the intent of the work. No consideration will be given after bid opening for alleged misunderstanding regarding new or existing job conditions, utility connections, permits, fees, etc.

The Contractor shall carefully examine the contract documents during the bidding phase. Any missing information in the contract documents that is required for obtaining accurate pricing shall be brought to the attention of the Architect, **prior to bid date**, so all may be clarified and/or corrected. Failure to identify and resolve the issues prior to bid shall require the Contractor to provide said items, complete, without additional cost to the Owner or the Owner's Project Design Professionals, using materials and methods specified by, and as directed by, the Owner's Design Professionals.

- 1.6. **Identification: Custom factory fabricated refrigerant piping labels are required. Stick-on, painted, stenciled or hand written type identification is not allowed.** The Contractor is urged to carefully review the extensive requirements of Paragraph "Identification" in Section 15010 of the specifications and note that certain identification is required to be completed before certain site visits. There are specific identification requirements prior to the above ceiling and final site visits, respectively, that are mandatory. The State of Alabama Department of Construction Management (DCM) will cancel, on-site, the site visit if not completed as specified. Failure to comply with this provision shall be cause for cancellation of the site visit, and a fee imposed for the additional site visit, with all costs of the additional site visit to be borne by the respective Contractor responsible.

- 1.7. **Painting and Colors:** Furnish to the Architect, color cards for standard and premium colors available. **The Architect shall select color where choices exist.** Refer to Architectural Painting Section of the specifications for additional requirements.

- 1.8. **Safety Provisions:** Provide covers or guards on all hot, moving and projecting items that may be deemed by the Engineer, Architect or Owner to be a hazard to occupants of the building or to service personnel.

- 1.9. **Spare Parts:** Manufacturer of any equipment specified shall have a wholesale outlet for readily available replacement parts in the nearest major USA city.

- 1.10. **Submittals:** Refer to Section 15010 for **strict requirements** and, especially as it applies to format, project cost constraints, addendums and Value Engineering (VE) items.

**Only ONE complete submittal will be accepted.** Providing submittals piecemeal is not allowed. If a partial or incomplete submittal is provided, it shall be cause for immediate rejection.

- 1.11. **Firestopping:** Refer to Section 15010, Part "Miscellaneous Requirements", Paragraph "Firestopping". In general, a U.L. listed firestopping assembly shall be required and provided. **Note that Division 15 firestopping specifications require firestopping of all penetrations regardless of wall/ceiling/floor construction.** Refer to Division 1 for additional requirements. Where there is a conflict between Division 1 specifications and Division 15 specifications, the most stringent

requirements shall govern, be applicable and shall be provided.

- 1.12. Service, Charges, Lubrication, Filters, etc.:** Furnish complete first charges of refrigerant, lubrication, oils, etc., and be responsible for such full charges for the guarantee period. Provide service and maintenance for all equipment and systems during the guarantee period. As a minimum, quarterly service calls and reports are required. Make last service call two weeks prior to year-end site visit. All quarterly service shall include lubrication of all motors, bearings, calibration and adjustment of all controls and equipment, full refrigerant charge, new filters, belts, etc.

**The Contractor is responsible for quarterly filter changes of all disposable filters, and cleaning of all washable filters, during the guarantee period. The Contractor shall inscribe onto the disposable filters' casing the date filters were installed/replaced.**

The Contractor shall furnish to the Architect and the Owner individual written service reports for all work done under this warranty. Failure to provide the Architect with the Owner's written acknowledgement of service calls shall be construed to mean that the service calls have not been accomplished and are still required.

- 1.13. Field Instructions:** The Contractor shall operate all systems for a period of six (6) days after completion of the work. During this time, provide competent personnel to thoroughly instruct representatives of the Owner in the proper operation and care of all equipment and control systems. Secure written acknowledgement of such training from the Owner. Failure to provide the Architect with the Owner's written acknowledgement of this training shall be construed to mean that the instructions have not been accomplished and are still required.

- 1.14. Operating and Maintenance Manuals:** Two weeks before the final site visit, furnish three complete sets of operating and maintenance instructions, bound in hard cover, indexed and tabbed.

The Contractor shall also provide this information in digital Adobe Acrobat PDF format, on a CD-R CD. The PDF file shall be provided with an embedded index for each item specified. The index shall appear in the left hand window of the opened document so that the Owner or his maintenance personnel can "click" on the indexed item and move immediately to that specific item.

Minimum requirements for the Operating and Maintenance Manuals shall be as follows:

- a. The first page of the bound instructions shall be a listing of:
  1. The Owner/Project Title.
  2. The Architect and Architect's Job Number.
  3. The Engineer and Engineer's Job Number (Found in the Engineer's Logo in the Bottom Right Corner of the Mechanical Plans).
  4. The General Contractor and Contact Information.
  5. The Mechanical Subcontractor and Contact Information.
  6. HVAC Controls Subcontractor and Contact Information.
- b. Second page shall be a Table of Contents listing all products in the order which they appear in the specifications and label the tab accordingly. Include all equipment using nomenclature shown on the Mechanical plans, UV-C lights, and similar devices, control valves, motorized dampers, fire dampers, etc.
- c. The third page shall be a summary page that lists each item with its respective

- warranty, including all extended warranties.
- d. All warranty card information shall be filled in by the Mechanical Contractor; Serial numbers, Model Numbers, etc. all as required for proper warranty registration. Warranty registration date shall be the date of substantial completion as determined by the Architect.
  - e. Provide copies of all filled in warranty cards.
  - f. Provide a local source of supply for parts and replacement, including names and telephone numbers of parts suppliers.
  - g. Provide a general maintenance summary section. Section shall be a list of each piece of equipment or device using the designations as shown on the plans, and the routine maintenance procedures based on the respective manufacturer's recommended intervals. As a minimum, maintenance shall be grouped and individually tabbed to indicate maintenance operations required:
    1. Once a month
    2. Quarterly
    3. Once every six months
    4. Once a year
  - h. Provide copy of results of all tests specified.
  - i. Copy of Test and Balance Report.
  - j. Copies of all the Mechanical Engineer's Site Visit Reports including Contractor's written response that items listed were corrected.
  - k. Copies of all certificates of all site visits, comments and approvals from all Governing Authorities.
  - l. Provide copy of all start-up reports specified.
  - m. Provide copy of all Division 15 Specifications except Section 15400.
  - n. Provide a copy of all shop drawings/submittals.
  - o. Provide drawings of system control and wiring diagrams, condensed operating instructions, specified sequences of operation. Include hard copy in binder and digital copy on CD in PDF format. All components shall be numbered and identified on diagram. Laminate, frame under plastic and mount in each mechanical room in an optimally viewed location.
  - p. Provide record drawings of the Mechanical drawings, in hard copy and PDF format on CD. Refer to Section 15010, Part 1, General, Paragraph, Record Drawings for detailed requirements. Record drawings shall also indicate all valve numbers from the specified valve chart.

- 1.15. Warranty:** Guarantee work as set forth in Section 15010 and Division 1. Guarantee in writing to make good without cost any defects in materials and workmanship for one year following the date of substantial completion of the project, as determined by the Architect, and unless specified otherwise a 5-year warranty on all air conditioning compressors. Provide free maintenance and service during the guarantee period to **include furnishing and replacing of filters, and the cleaning of all washable filters.** Refer to other parts for additional requirements and extended warranty requirements.

## **PART 2. ELECTRICAL WORK AND EQUIPMENT**

- 2.1. Power:** All power wiring required for installation of equipment is specified under Electrical Division. Electrical equipment shall be compatible with the current shown on electrical drawings. **Contractor shall verify all voltage and power requirements with Electrical Contractor, Electrical plans, and at the project site, prior to ordering equipment.**

- 2.2. Motors:** All motors furnished shall be designed, manufactured, and tested in accordance with the current applicable standards of NEMA, ANSI, IEEE, and ASTM. As a minimum requirement, all motors shall conform to the current applicable sections of NEMA Standard No. MG-1, Part 3. Motors must meet or exceed The Consortium for Energy Efficiency (CEE) Premium Efficiency™ full load efficiencies. All motors 1 HP and over shall be premium efficiency. All motors with scheduled capacity of less than 1 HP shall be ECM type as required by ASHRAE 90.1 and with minimum motor efficiency of 70% when rated in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431.

All motors shall be listed under UL recognized component file as applicable. All motors shall be suitable for installation according to the requirements of NEC. Motors shall be wound for the specified voltage and a 1.5 service factor, 1750 RPM open drip proof construction and minimum of Class "F" insulation unless otherwise shown or specified.

The bearings shall have a rated fatigue life of B-10 of 150,000 hours for direct-coupled applications and 50,000 hours for belted applications minimum. Belted rating shall be based on radial loads and pulley sizes called out in NEMA MG 1. Load on motors shall not exceed 100% nominal horsepower. Routine factory testing shall be conducted in accordance with Method B of IEEE 112 (current edition), Standard Test Procedure for Polyphase Induction Motors and Generators and shall be as described in Article 12.55 of NEMA MG1, Motors and Generators. **Premium efficient motors shall be warranted for 36 months from date of substantial completion of the project as determined by the Architect.**

Where shown, specified or required, furnish increment wound motors for two-step starting. All motors shall be provided with overload protection and phase protection on all legs. Do not run motors until correct overload elements are installed in starters. Trading overload elements for elements of correct size for motors actually furnished shall be included in this Section.

All motors serving outdoor equipment exposed to weather shall have TEFC motors meeting the requirements set forth previously.

Motors shall be by Allis Chalmers, General Electric Goulds, Louis Allis, Westinghouse or approved equivalent.

- 2.3. Fusing:** Provide factory installed fuses in all equipment requiring fusing for branch circuit protection.

- 2.4. Motor Starters as Required:** To be furnished under this Section; installation thereof is specified under Electrical Division, except for those which are specified to be factory assembled. Starters shall be Cutler-Hammer, Allen-Bradley, Square D or General Electric. Starters shall be U.L. and NEMA approved. Where required for interlocks provide built-in step down transformer. Motors for VFD drives shall be designed for NEMA MG-1, Part 30.

Motor starters shall be mounted on wall at accessible height standing from floor. Equipment mounted on Uni-strut type frame mounting is not acceptable.

Provide for each motor or group of motors requiring a single control (and not controlled from a motor-control center), a suitable controller and devices that shall function as specified for the respective motors.

Provide overload protection for each ungrounded conductor to each motor 1/8 HP or larger (manual reset type unless indicated otherwise). The overload-protection device

shall be integral with the motor or controller. Unless indicated otherwise, furnish pilot lights with all remote starters. Where auxiliary control devices are connected into control circuit, these devices shall not bypass safety controls (motor-overload protective devices, high-pressure cutouts, low pressure cutouts, etc.). Provide "Hand - Off - Auto" switches, auxiliary contacts, etc. for all starters.

- 2.5. Unit Protection:** All fan motors, indoor units, outdoor units, condensing units, packaged units, etc., shall be provided with equipment manufacturer, factory installed surge protection and phase protection to insure against voltage unbalance, over/under voltage, phase loss, reversal, incorrect sequencing and rapid short cycling. When not available from the equipment manufacturer, protection shall be provided for all 3-phase equipment utilizing ICM Controls Model 450 A Plus+ or equivalent. All single phase equipment with horsepower greater than or equal to 1/8 HP shall be provided with protection utilizing ICM Controls Model ICM 492 or equivalent. The Contractor shall consult with the Owner's maintenance personnel and set up all programmable options based on the Owner's requirements, within the device's capabilities. Phase protection is not required on equipment being controlled via a variable speed frequency drive; if the specified protection is inherent with the variable speed drive furnished.
- 2.6. Controls:** All HVAC controls cabling and wiring shall be in EMT conduit (no "whips") or on J-hooks. Above accessible lay-in ceilings, control wiring shall be installed on J-Hook assemblies. Above all hard, inaccessible ceilings, in all mechanical rooms and in areas with exposed structure (no ceilings), controls wiring shall be in conduit. Do not attach any wiring, cabling or conduits to refrigerant piping.

Do not route control wiring through sleeves containing piping. **All control wiring penetrating any exterior wall, interior partition, floor, and similar construction shall be in EMT conduit. Through the base control wiring/conduit is not allowed.** EMT control conduit shall be as specified in the Electrical Division of the specifications and/or as shown on electrical drawings. Minimum HVAC Controls conduit size shall be 3/4" in size. All control conduit, power, relays, contactors, transformers, wiring, etc., required for a complete functional system as specified, shown on the plans, or as required to accomplish the specified sequences of operation, which is not shown or specified by the Electrical Division, shall be furnished and installed by the HVAC Controls Contractor. This shall include all power, interlock control wiring between the various components of the heating, ventilating and air conditioning system, lighting interlocks and all smoke detection system electrical wiring.

Electrical work performed under this Section shall conform to requirements set forth in the Electrical Division of the specifications. All wiring shall be in accordance with the National Electrical Code, and all State and local codes. Coordinate all requirements with the Electrical Sub-Contractor prior to bid and provide all as required.

All thermostat and humidistat boxes shall be mounted 46" A.F.F. to the center of the box (ADA height). Where wall mounted CO<sub>2</sub> Sensors are indicated, they shall be mounted 58" A.F.F to the center of the box. Electrical work performed under this Section shall conform to requirements set forth in the Electrical Division of the specifications. All wall-mounted devices shall be provided with hinged, locking metal covers with rounded edges.

All work shall be done by an approved, independent HVAC Controls Contractor whose primary business is the installation and servicing of HVAC controls systems.

- 2.7. **Controls and Instrumentation Cable:** Instrumentation cable shall be minimum AWG as recommended by the equipment Manufacturer or the HVAC controls system Manufacturer. The most stringent shall be provided. All wiring, cabling, conduit, connections, etc., shall be plenum rated and rated for use at temperatures and conditions expected in the location of mounting. Do not attach any wiring, cabling or conduits to refrigerant piping.
- 2.8. **Wiring Diagrams:** Furnish to the Electrical Contractor for the specific makes and models of electric-motor operated equipment to be installed. **Contractor shall verify all voltage and power requirements with Electrical Contractor, Electrical plans, and at the project site, prior to ordering equipment.**
- 2.9. **Modifications:** The cost of any modifications of the electrical power wiring, breakers, and/or control wiring conduit, etc. that is required for any items specified in this Section 15700, or controls having electrical power requirements differing from that shown on the electrical drawings and/or as specified, shall be the responsibility of the Mechanical Contractor.

### **PART 3. VIBRATION AND NOISE CONTROL**

- 3.1. **General:** Elimination of objectionable vibration and noise is the responsibility of the Contractor, who must provide all foundations, isolators, flexible connections, air chambers, curbs, etc. required thereby. Pay special attention to vibration problems at year end site visit and correct all deficiencies noted.

All items of mechanical equipment including air handling equipment, pumps, piping, indoor cassette units and fans shall be properly isolated from the structure by means of the Engineer's approved vibration absorbing accessories, foundations or supports.

- 3.2. **Vibration Isolation Pads - Indoor Units:** One layer of 3/4" thick, fire/heat resistant, continuous neoprene pad. Coordinate with details on plans.
- 3.3. **Sound Levels:** Sound levels caused by operation of pumps, fans, air handling systems, etc., whether generated within rooms or transmitted to rooms through ducts, walls or floors, pipes, etc., shall not exceed specified NC rating at any point within room not more than 6 feet from an air outlet in accordance with ASHRAE octave band method. Offices, classrooms, conference rooms and similar spaces shall have maximum NC-32; kitchens, shops, corridors, and lobbies, NC-40; toilets, NC-45.

### **PART 4. TESTING, START-UP, BALANCING, ETC.**

- 4.1. **General:** Conduct tests upon completion of the heating, ventilation and air conditioning installations, and at times as designated by the Architect. Furnish written reports to the Architect of all tests results. Provide copies of all test results in the Bound and Framed Instructions specified hereinbefore. Furnish all necessary personnel, test instruments, power, fuel, etc., as required to complete the specified requirements.
- 4.2. **Refrigerant Piping Testing:** The Mechanical Contractor shall test the refrigerant piping installation. The medium used for pressure testing the refrigerant system shall be oxygen-free nitrogen, helium or argon. Oxygen, air, combustible gases and mixtures containing such gases shall not be used as a test medium. Systems erected on the premises with tubing not exceeding 5/8 inch outside diameter shall be allowed to use the refrigerant identified on the nameplate label or marking as the test medium.

The refrigerant piping system shall be tested as a whole or separate tests shall be conducted for the low-pressure side and high-pressure side of the piping system. The refrigerant piping system shall be tested in accordance with both of the following methods:

**Test 1:** The system shall be pressurized for a period of not less than 60 minutes to not less than the lower of the design pressures or the setting of the pressure relief device(s). The design pressures for testing shall be the pressure listed on the label nameplate of the condensing unit, compressor, compressor unit, pressure vessel or other system component with a nameplate. Additional test gas shall not be added to the system after the start of the pressure test. The system shall not show loss of pressure on the test pressure measuring device during the pressure test for a minimum 24 hours.

**Test 2:** A vacuum of 500 microns shall be achieved. After achieving a vacuum, the system shall be isolated from the vacuum pump. The system pressure shall not rise above 1,500 microns for a period of not less than 60 minutes.

Where using refrigerant as a test medium as specified above, the test pressure shall be not less than the saturation dew point pressure at 77°F.

- 4.3. **Ductwork for Systems Less Than 2,000 CFM:** The Mechanical Contractor shall test all supply, return, relief and outside air, exhaust ducts, plenums and casings and make substantially airtight before covering with external insulation or concealing masonry. Substantially airtight shall be construed to mean that no air leakage is noticeable to the senses of touch or sound at joints.
- 4.4. **Domestic Water Circulating System:** The Testing and Balancing Contractor shall test and adjust domestic water recirculation system to ensure hot water circulation in all mains. Provide flow rate of pump and determined head.
- 4.5. **Performance Tests:** After cleaning, balancing, and testing are completed as specified, test each system as a whole to see that all items perform as integral parts of the system, and that temperatures and conditions are evenly controlled throughout the building. Verify all sequences of operation and submit report. Make corrections and adjustments as necessary to produce the indicated conditions.

All work shall be performed by an independent test and balancing agency whose primary business is the testing and balancing of heating and air conditioning systems and its related components. The Test and Balancing Contractor shall hold a current NEBB, NBC or AABC certification. Proof of certification shall be provided at the submittal stage.

The test shall cover a period of not less than three days and shall demonstrate that the entire system is functioning properly. Provide the following:

Date of testing, space temperature and humidity, outdoor air temperature (DB & WB), air temperature entering condenser coil; refrigerant suction temperature and pressure at compressor evaporator coil; condensing temperature and pressure and load amperes for all motors. Also, provide CFM readings at all grilles, registers and diffusers and entering and leaving air temperatures at each evaporator coil.

Provide typed list indicating job setting of all automatic controls. Include settings of thermostats, humidity controls, CO<sub>2</sub> sensors, safety controls, minimum damper



settings, fire-safety thermostats, pressure controls, temperature controls, and other similar items. Tabulate to show type of control, location, setting and function. Verify that all safety settings and limits are appropriate and comply with current safety Codes and Regulations for the respective system.

After building is occupied, make adjustments as requested by Owner.

- 4.6. Balancing:** The Testing and Balancing Contractor shall check airflow at all supply air, return air and exhaust air devices, all diffusers and outside air intakes with a recently calibrated direct-reading velocity instrument. Adjust systems to deliver, supply air, return air, outside air and exhaust air quantities to within 10 percent of the indicated amounts. Provide instruments and otherwise assist Architect in checking balancing at final site visit.
- 4.7. Unit Protection Verification:** The Test and Balance Contractor, with cooperation from the Mechanical Contractor, shall verify that all phase protection specified has been installed where specified, and installed per the Manufacturer's requirements. The verification of this requirement shall be furnished in tabular form with findings included in the test and balance report. The summary shall list all equipment specified to have the protection, verification that the device is installed per the Manufacturer's recommendation and has been programmed to the Owner's requirements.
- 4.8. Test Data:** The Testing and Balancing Contractor shall submit typewritten report as specified above. Include schedules of readings taken during the testing and balancing operations and a line diagram or plan of the system indicating specified quantities and final balanced quantities **seven (7) days prior to final site visit. The Alabama Department of Construction Management (DCM) will cancel, on-site, the site visit if the test and balance report has not been submitted as specified. Failure to comply with this provision will be cause for cancellation of the site visit, and a reinspection fee imposed, with all costs of the re-inspection to be borne by the Contractor responsible. No final site visit shall be made without this data.** Report the required or specified reading, the first reading taken, and final balanced reading for the following items:

**Fans:** Size, type, fan motor speed in rpm, outlet velocity in fpm, static pressure inches water, air quantity in cfm, and motor load in amperes.

**Air Handling Equipment:** Size, type, fan speed in rpm, outlet velocity in fpm, external static pressure inches water, total static pressure inches water, air quantity cfm, and motor load in amperes.

**All Air Outlets and Inlets:** Size, velocity in fpm, and air quantity in cfm.

**Coils:** CFM, size, face velocity in fpm; air temperature entering coil and air temperature leaving coil, wet-bulb and dry-bulb degrees F.

**Refrigerant Hot Gas Reheat Coils:** The Mechanical Contractor, with assistance from the Testing and Balancing Contractor shall adjust the humidistat so that the hot gas reheat coil valve opens. Verify modulation of the coil valve. Provide coil size, face velocity in fpm; air temperature entering coil and air temperature leaving coil, wet-bulb and dry-bulb degrees F.

**Ducts:** Size, velocity in fpm, and air quantity in cfm.

**Heat Pumps Auxiliary Heaters:** Provide heater capacity (KW), number of stages of heat and load amperes.

**Air Cooled Condenser Sections of All Outdoor Units:** Air temperature entering condenser coil; refrigerant suction temperature and pressure at compressor and evaporator coil; condensing temperature and pressure and load amperes for all motors.

- 4.9. **Control Settings:** In cooperation with the HVAC Controls Contractor and/or the Mechanical Contractor as required, shall calibrate, adjust, and verify sequences of operation and the control systems, including the refrigerant hot gas reheat coils, to show that the requirements of these specifications have been met.

Verify all specified sequences of operation and provide report.

Provide a tabulation of setting on all controls indicating set point and throttling range, etc. after controls and systems have been finally adjusted. Include settings on safety controls and cutouts. Verify that all safety settings and limits are appropriate and comply with current safety Codes and Regulations for the respective system. Provide typed list indicating job setting of all automatic controls. Include settings of thermostats, humidity controls, CO<sub>2</sub> sensors, safety controls, minimum damper settings, fire-safety thermostats, pressure controls, temperature controls, and other similar items. Tabulate to show type of control, location, setting and function. Verify that all safety settings and limits are appropriate and comply with current safety Codes and Regulations for the respective system.

- 4.10. **Seasonal Adjustments:** At the beginning of the first heating season adjust and balance operating phases and repeat at the beginning of the first cooling season or vice versa as requested by the Architect or Owner.
- 4.11. **Notification:** Notify the Architect one week prior to all testing. The Contractor shall provide all testing equipment and shall furnish written reports to Architect of all tests results. Additionally, provide copies in the Bound and Framed Instructions specified hereinbefore.

## **PART 5. SHEET METAL DUCT WORK (LOW VELOCITY 2" S.P.)**

- 5.1. **General Scope:** Provide as shown and as required for the air conditioning, heating and ventilation systems. Make changes in dimensions, offsets or crossovers as necessary to clear piping, lights and structural members, and to maintain scheduled headroom. Provide all accessories required. Refer to architectural drawings and specifications.

All exposed internally lined or double wall ductwork shall have paint grip finish or shall be primed in the field to receive paint. Refer to Architectural section "Painting" for painting of exposed ductwork. In case of the absence of painting requirements in the aforementioned Specification Section(s), the interior and exterior of ductwork visible from any finished space shall be cleaned, primed and painted as directed by the Architect. Ductwork visible through all grilles, registers, diffusers, ceilings, etc. shall be painted flat black with paint having a fire hazard rating not to exceed 25 for flame spread and 50 for fuel contributed and smoke developed as determined by ASTM E84.

- 5.2. **Protection of Interior of Duct from Debris:** ALL open portions of ductwork shall be covered with a self-adhesive film or airtight sheet metal caps to prevent the intrusion of

contaminates. All duct taps, duct take-offs, etc., shall be protected immediately after the tap, take-off, etc. has been fabricated in the field. When sections of sheet metal are delivered to the facility for fabrication in the field, which cannot be protected with the specified material, the sheet metal shall be covered with Visqueen. Prior to erecting same, ductwork shall be manually cleaned to remove all dust, dirt and construction debris. All ductwork shall be erected clean. After each section of ductwork is erected, immediately protect all openings as specified herein before. In effect, there shall be no ductwork opening that is exposed to the ambient air. The material shall be a minimum of 3-mil thickness and have a minimum tensile strength of 10 psi. It shall be UV resistant, waterproof and recyclable. Material shall be DuroDyne Dyn-O-Wrap or approved equivalent. **Any ductwork discovered to be unprotected as specified is subject to immediate rejection for use on this project.**

**5.3. Protection of Interior of Ductwork and Equipment When Any Air Moving Equipment is Operating During Construction and Prior to Owner's Occupancy:**

It is the Mechanical Contractor's responsibility to ensure the inside of each air handling unit and associated air distribution system is kept clean and not allow construction dust to infiltrate the system. Should the system become contaminated as determined by Architect, Engineer or Owner, the Mechanical Contractor shall be responsible for cleaning.

If air moving equipment must be used during construction, temporary filtration media with a Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value (MERV) of 8, as determined by ASHRAE 52.2 and shall be installed at each return air grille, return air register, exhaust grille, exhaust register, and unit return air inlet.

The General Contractor shall provide a written request to the Architect for permission to temporarily operate any HVAC equipment during construction. The request shall be provided a minimum of seven (7) days prior to the desired date of the interruption. Do not operate any equipment without the Architect's written approval.

**5.4. Sizes:** Take measurements at job and fit work into available space. Report to the Architect any unworkable conditions encountered and alter layout or duct sizes as directed without additional cost to the Owner or the Owner's Project Design Professionals. Unless otherwise approved, conform to dimensions indicated. Duct dimensions shown indicate NET FREE AREA after installation of duct liner; increase sizes indicated to allow, therefore.

**5.5. Sheet Metal:** ARMCO, or equal, prime quality, G-90 galvanized sheet steel. Unless indicated otherwise on the plans, gauges shall be as recommended in the current edition of current SMACNA "Duct Construction Standards" **but in no case shall be less than listed in the table below for the respective duct largest dimension or diameter.**

Up to 30 inches	24 ga.
31 to 54 inches	22 ga.

**5.6. General Fabrication:** Construct and erect in a skillful manner, meeting requirement of the current SMACNA "Duct Construction Standards" for 2" static pressure unless noted or specified otherwise. **Where conflicts occur between current SMACNA requirements and the contract drawings or specifications, the most stringent requirements shall apply. In general, the heaviest gauge metal and the strictest installation/fabrication methods shall be provided.** Form straight and smooth on the inside, with joints neatly finished. Make up in sections of such length that mechanic can reach thru open end to seal insulation at previous joint. Assemble and anchor to be completely free from vibration and drumming under all conditions of

operation. Make takeoffs at round ducts with prefabricated round-to-rectangular and rectangular-to-round transitions.

All rectangular ductwork traverse joints shall be made with all metal DuctMate joints system as manufactured by DuctMate Industries, Inc., Quikduc Transverse Duct Connection Systems, Duro Dyne Dyn-O-Mate or approved equivalent. DuctMate system shall be installed in strict accordance with current SMACNA and Manufacturer's recommendations and instructions.

Where ductwork penetrates non-rated partitions above the ceiling or insulation support/attic air barriers, draft stops and similar partitions, the openings shall be sized as required for duct and insulation, plus 1". Provide duct supports as specified within 12" of each side of the partition penetrated. **DO NOT ALLOW DUCT TO REST ON PARTITION WALLS.**

All openings in new construction shall be laid/blocked out as walls and floors are constructed. Furnish detailed layout shop drawings to other trades in advance of their work. Openings in new construction which were not laid/blocked out, and all openings in existing construction, shall be saw cut and present a neat appearance.

Where penetration occurs at rated assemblies, provide appropriate fire damper and install as specified and detailed.

Where penetration occurs at non-rated assemblies, fill void between partition and duct with fire resistant mineral wool insulation and seal on both sides of the partition with fire stopping material to prevent the passage of smoke and fire. Thereafter, provide a 4" wide, 16 gauge galvanized steel closure plate around the opening on each side of the partition. Closure plates shall fit snugly to duct and shall be secured to wall. All ductwork and closure plates that are exposed to view in finished areas shall be primed and painted as directed by the Architect. **Do not install closure plates until Engineer or Architect has verified the proper sealing of the penetration.**

Provide additional supports to raise ductwork off any metallic item above the ceiling. Wherever any bare metallic piping, conduits and metallic structural members are in contact with externally insulated duct or bare sheet metal duct, there shall be dielectric separation provided. The Contractor shall provide 3/4" thickness, unslit AP Armaflex insulation of sufficient inside tubular diameter to snugly and completely cover the respective metallic item. The insulation shall extend the full length of the affected area plus 6" on both sides. Refer to Part "Pipe and Miscellaneous Insulation Work" in this division for AP Armaflex material specification. The use of Rubatex insulation between piping and the ductwork shall only be allowed when providing the proper supports is not an option.

Refer to Paragraph "Hangers and Supports" for additional requirements.

- 5.7. **Cross-Joints, Seams and Stiffening:** Join and stiffen with combination of joint types and structural angles as recommended in current SMACNA "Duct Construction Standards". **Cross break all flat areas over 35 inches wide.** Install internal ends of slip joints in the direction of flow.

All transverse joints with long dimension over 24" shall be made with all metal DuctMate joints system as manufactured by DuctMate Industries, Inc., Quikduc Transverse Duct Connection Systems or Dyn-O-Mate with roll-formed flanges, corner pieces, gasket, and cleat. System used shall be installed in strict accordance with

current SMACNA and Manufacturer's recommendations and instructions.

Make all cross joints and all branch, grille and diffuser take-offs, except DuctMate joints, air tight by applying fibrated, low VOC, LEED IEQ 4.1 compliant duct sealer. Sealer shall meet and pass ASTM D-2202, ASTM C-731 and EPA regulations. Sealer shall meet the requirements for the pressure classification of the ductwork installed. Sealer shall be Hardcast Iron Grip 601 with 10-year warranty or equivalent by Foster or Childers.

- 5.8. Branch Ducts to Diffusers:** Round runouts to diffusers, up to and including 14" round, shall be 24 ga., G-60 galvanized, DuctMate Series GreenSeam +Snap Lock pipe with factory sealed longitudinal and transverse gaskets. Gasket for GreenSeam +Snap Lock pipe shall contain antioxidants, fungicides, adhesion promoters, zero VOCs and shall meet or exceed ASTM E-84 test requirements. 16" round to 20" round runouts shall be 24 ga. and equal to DuctMate Series Reeves Lock Pipe, G-60 galvanized pipe.
- 5.9. Branch Duct Take-Off:** Provide at all points where branch ducts take off from trunks, and where ducts divide. Refer to details on the drawings. Damper shall be minimum 22 Ga., G-90 Galvanized steel with 2" build out. Body shall be a minimum of 24 Ga., G-90, galvanized steel with 4" W.G. construction. Fitting shall have 1" flange with corner clips, pre-punched mounting holes and adhesive coated gasket. Take-off shall be Flexmaster LDS, BO3, GSI HETO (high efficiency take-off) HTS2, Elgen HET or preapproved equivalent.
- 5.10. Turns and Transitions:** Fabricate turns with an inside radius equal to width of duct. At 90-degree turns, Contractor may substitute square elbows, with standard factory-made, multiple, double-blade constructed vanes. Vanes shall be a double wall, true airfoil contour with smoothly rounded entry nose with extended trailing edge. Vanes shall be formed from a single piece of 26 ga., hot dipped galvanized steel and shall be 3" radiused vanes on 2.4" centers. Vanes shall be provided with two (2) tie rods and continuous internal tubes for stiffening and rigidity. Maximum pressure drop shall be .06" W.G. at 1500 FPM. Generated sound power level shall not exceed 54 decibels in band 4 at 2000 FPM (24"x24" duct size). **Single wall turning vanes are not allowed.** Vanes shall be as manufactured by Aero/Dyne Series HEP, Duro Dyne HTV/DHV, Hamlin Sheetmetal, Spiral Systems Inc or approved equivalent by DuctMate. Avoid abrupt changes in shape, with a slope of 4:1 the minimum allowed.
- 5.11. Return Air Platforms:** Return air platforms shall be constructed with 1-1/2"x1-1/2"x1/4" steel angle iron frame and 18 ga. G-90 galvanized steel all sides, top and bottom, then sealed airtight by welding or soldering. Insulate all sheet metal sides, top and bottoms with 2" thickness, 1.5 lb. density, unfaced duct liner, same as internally lined ductwork. Provide angle iron supplemental supports and pedestal type pipe columns to support the units and allow individuals to stand on the platform without platform deformation or failure. Platforms shall be a minimum of 24" tall, or as space permits. The bottom of all wall mounted return air registers that are connected to the return air platform shall be approximately 6" above the finish floor, i.e., above the Architectural base.
- No combustibles are allowed in the return air platform.**
- 5.12. Motorized Dampers Used with Automatic Controls:** See Controls at end of Section 15700.
- 5.13. Volume Dampers:** For round ducts less than 12" diameter and rectangular ducts less than 12" in height in either dimension: Single leaf, constructed with 18-gauge

galvanized metal with locking type control quadrant, single center U-bolt and pivot rod extending through opposite side of duct with brass bushing at both ends.

- 5.14. **Volume Dampers:** For round ducts greater than or equal to 12" diameter or rectangular ducts greater than or equal to 12" height in either direction, provide opposed blade, airfoil blades of 16 ga.-galvanized steel mounted in steel frames by 3/8" steel trunnions riding in brass bushing with dual U-bolts. Blade width shall not exceed 10 inches and individual blade length shall not exceed 48 inches. Extend one trunnion to permit operation from outside the duct. Provide manually operated dampers with cadmium plated steel locking quadrant. Dampers opening to the outside shall have felted edges.
- 5.15. **Stand-Off Mounting Brackets:** Locking-type quadrant operators for dampers, when installed on ducts to be externally insulated, shall be provided with standoff mounting brackets, bases or adapters to provide clearance between the duct surface and the operator not less than the thickness of the insulation. Standoff mounting items shall be integral with the operator or standard accessory of the damper Manufacturer.
- 5.16. **Access Panels/Doors:** Provide double wall access door in the side of the duct for each motorized damper and elsewhere indicated, specified or required for proper maintenance. Size and position to provide maximum access to all items. Typical doors shall be double metal faced, 22 ga. steel door panels and 22 ga. frame, internally insulated same as duct (1" minimum) fiberglass insulation, neoprene gasket seal and full length plated steel piano hinges with cam lock. Provide access panels/doors with cam locks only, where hinged access panels/doors cannot be completely opened without obstruction. When access panels/doors are provided with cam locks only, they shall be provided with a safety chain. Access panels/doors shall be rated for the anticipated duct pressure, plus 1". All access doors located outside shall be airtight and weatherproof.

Hinged access doors shall be Ruskin Series ADH22. Removable access doors/panels with cam locks shall be Ruskin Series ADC22 with minimum of two cam locks and safety chain. Nailor Industries Model 08SCL/Model 08SH, Kees ADH/ADC or Pottorff Series HAD/CAD will be acceptable.

For ducts 10" round and smaller, access doors shall be flush mounted, flat oval, 1" insulated, low leakage, 20 ga. steel door panels and frame, except with two large hand knobs or cam locks with safety chain, and equivalent to Ruskin Model ADR1 for round ducts or equivalent by Nailor, Kees or Pottorff.

Hinged access doors for round ductwork shall be flush mounted, flat oval, 1" insulated, low leakage, 20 ga. steel door panels and frame, except with two large hand knobs or cam locks with safety chain, and equivalent to Ruskin Model ADR2 for round ducts 12" round, up to and including, 16" round duct. Nailor Series 0800, Pottorff Series DMR or equivalent by Kees will be acceptable.

Refer to other sections for access doors required in kitchen hood exhaust ducts, moisture-laden ductwork, etc.

**Refer to Section 15010 for additional access door/panel requirements including identification.**

- 5.17. **Duct Instrument Test Holes:** Provide for each system four test holes (two in supply duct and two in return air plenum) at opposite ends near air handling units with screwed caps. In addition, at duct mounted coils and electric duct heaters provide

one on either side of the coil or duct heater.

- 5.18. Flexible Connections and Bonding Jumpers:** Install so that the cloth is in folds (not drawn tight). Connect all ducts to air handling equipment and fans, excepting dome type fans, with preassembled flexible connection. Fabric width shall be 6" for all air handling equipment. Ceiling mounted exhaust fans shall be 4" width.

Connectors for all air handling equipment shall be a factory fabricated and assembled unit with 6" dual fabric, heavy duty, 20 oz/sq. yd polyester/polyester fabric with flame resistant coating and mildew resistant per ASTM G-21. The assembly shall comply with NFPA 701, NFPA 90A, NFPA 90B and ASTM E-84. The unit shall be constructed of minimum 24 ga. galvanized steel meeting ASTM A-653-94-G60. Metal to fabric connectors shall be double locked, airtight and waterproof to 10" W.C. positive pressure and 10" W.C. negative pressure. Assembly shall be DuctMate PROflex with power lock connection or approved equivalent by DuroDyne.

Flexible connections for ceiling exhaust fans shall be preassembled flexible connection of 29 ounce fire-resistant, neoprene coated glass fiber cloth equal to Ventfabrics "Ventglas" (4" fabric width), as manufactured by Ventfabrics, Wiremold or Thermaflex.

Externally insulate all flexible connectors to prevent condensation with 2" thickness external duct insulation as specified later in this section. **Do not insulate flexible connectors until installation of the below specified bonding jumper has been verified.**

Prior to insulating, provide copper jumpers across all flexible connectors taking care that jumpers do not bind flexible connections. Provide compression lug and grounding connector screwed into the duct with two (2) screws, on both side of the flexible connector. Bonding wire shall be shielded 12 AWG.

- 5.19. Register and Grille Connections:** Where take-offs are in side of a duct, clinch lock short tee sections onto trunk. Install collars with slip joints and 3/4" flange at outlet end. At sheetrock and other hard surfaces, set collars exactly flush with surface.

Install boots above lay-in ceilings simultaneously with ceiling work.

At return air, relief air and exhaust air grilles 36" or more in either dimension, collars shall be 1" x 2" x 1/8 inch steel angle frames with corners mitered, welded and ground smooth. Frames in ceiling shall be independently suspended from the ceiling structure, or the duct shall have special reinforcing to prevent sagging of the boot.

Interior of all ductwork visible through grilles and diffusers shall be painted flat black with paint having a fire hazard rating not to exceed 25 for flame spread and 50 for fuel contributed and smoke developed as determined by ASTM E84.

- 5.20. Hangers and Supports:** Duct hangers shall NOT penetrate the external insulation vapor barrier. All duct hanger materials shall be external of the insulation materials, insulation jacket and vapor barriers. All vapor barriers shall be continuous and without penetrations. All supports, assemblies, related components, attachments and required appurtenances shall be sized for a minimum of 300% (3 times) the anticipated load carried by the respective assembly. Where the Contractor has doubt as to proper supporting requirements, he shall consult with, and seek the guidance of, the Architect and the Project Structural Engineer.

**“Sammy” bolts are prohibited.** Contractor shall provide supplemental steel between structural purlins, bar joists, etc., for duct support as required to meet support spacing specified. Supplemental steel shall be welded in place as directed and specified by the Structural Engineer. Support small (less than 40 united (w+h) inches) horizontal ducts without external insulation with 1-1/4” x 20 ga. band hangers. Provide in pairs close to each transverse joint and in no case more than six feet apart. Bands shall be turned 3” under the lower corner of ductwork and fastened with one (1) self-tapping screws into the bottom of the duct surface. Bands shall be attached up the sides of the ductwork at a maximum of 6” intervals and in the bottom of the duct. Seal all screws with duct sealer as specified for ductwork.

Support vertical runs larger than 40 united (w + h) inches with structural brackets with welded joints.

Support all non-externally insulated horizontal ducts larger than or equal to 40 united (w+h) inches on trapeze type hanger assembly same as specified below for externally insulated duct except without AP Armaflex surround on the Unistrut. Install inserts or clamps as required to accommodate overhead construction. Spacing shall not exceed 6 feet.

All 14” or less concealed round ducts with external insulation shall be provided with band hangers and saddles. Suspend ducts, at six (6) foot intervals with 8” long, 3” wide, 22 gauge galvanized metal saddles hung from structure with 22 gauge, 1” wide straps. Bands shall pass completely under and around round ducts. Loop strap under duct and attach to strap with two (2) galvanized bolts. Thereafter, loop top end of hanger over steel structural members above and fasten with two (2) galvanized bolts. Where concrete joists occur overhead, secure straps to side of joist with galvanized expansion or ramset bolts. Where flat concrete surface occurs overhead, secure with ramset or expansion bolt fasteners. See other Specification Sections in the Contract Documents for limitations on use of power driven fasteners.

All concealed and externally insulated rigid round metal ducts greater than or equal to 16”, all externally insulated rectangular ductwork, all externally insulated square ductwork, and all externally insulated flat oval ductwork that is specified to have external insulation with a vapor sealed facing **shall be supported with trapeze hangers consisting of Unistrut, threaded rods and inserts or clamps as required to accommodate overhead construction.** Threaded rods shall be of size required to provide support of three (3) times the anticipated load of the assembly. Trapeze hanger assembly spacing shall not exceed 8 feet.

**Where ducts are specified to have external insulation with a vapor sealed facing, support duct on trapeze hangers consisting of a Unistrut assembly with threaded rods.**

On externally insulated ducts, install 3/4” thickness, unslit AP Armaflex insulation of sufficient inside tubular diameter to slide over the Unistrut support, completely cover and snugly fit to the bottom horizontal Unistrut duct support. The insulation shall extend the full width of the duct plus a minimum of 6”, each side. Where channel shapes are used, orient the open side, down. Refer to Part Pipe and Miscellaneous Insulation Work for AP Armaflex material and installation methods specification. Space hangers a minimum of 6” (maximum of 12”) from the sides of the duct to permit the duct to be placed within the trapeze hangers.

All concealed internally insulated round ducts shall be supported as specified above for externally insulated ductwork except without saddle. Coordinate exposed duct support requirements with plan details.



Wherever any duct hanger support exceeds 36" length from the top of the supported duct to the structure above, Contractor shall provide a Unistrut support assembly and provide bracing of the assembly with minimum 1"x1"x1/4" angle iron, or as required for the weight of the particular duct. Weld angle iron to the Unistrut and attach to the overhead structure, as specified and directed by the Structural Engineer, to prevent swaying.

**5.21. Roof Exhaust Caps:** For exhaust ducts up to and including 12x12, shall be low profile, sloped, galvanized steel construction with built-in bird screen, integral flashing flange and all accessories required for a complete installation. Cap shall be Greenheck Series RJ, Cook Series RJ or Penn-Barry SL as required for sloped shingle roofs. Provide similar device for standing seam metal roofs as required by the roofing Manufacturer. All items furnished shall adhere to roofing Manufacturer's requirements so as not to void the roofing warranty. Hoods shall be factory primed for painting in the field or factory baked enamel finish. Architect shall select finish and color requirement.

**5.22. Flexible Air Ducts:** Flexible air duct shall be factory made and composed of an inner duct of woven and coated fiberglass providing an air seal and permanently bonded to coated steel wire helix, a fiberglass insulating blanket and low permeability outer vapor barrier of fiberglass reinforced metallized film laminate. R-value shall be a minimum R=8 per ASTM C-518.

Duct shall be rated for a maximum pressure of 16" (4-10 in. ID) or 10" (12-16 in. ID) water column positive and 2" water column maximum negative pressure and 5000 FPM maximum velocity and Listed by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., under UL Standard 181 as a Class 1 air duct and complying with NFPA Standards 90A and 90B. Duct shall have a maximum flame spread of 25 and a maximum smoke developed rating of 50.

Flexible duct length shall not exceed six (6) feet. Supply each duct with 1/2" wide, 200 Series **stainless steel worm gear driver and stainless steel band** at take-off fitting and supply fixture connections equal to Thermaflex Snaplock clamp. Zip tying is not allowed.

Suspend ducts, at three (3) foot intervals with 8" long, 3" wide, 22 gauge galvanized metal saddles hung from structure with 22 gauge 1" wide straps. Loop strap under duct and attach to strap with two (2) galvanized bolts. Thereafter, loop top end of hanger over steel structural members above and fasten with two (2) galvanized bolts. Branch duct connectors for connecting round low velocity branches to rectangular low velocity trunks shall be rectangular to round take-off fittings as detailed on the drawings with damper and standoff mounting bracket.

**Provide a full size radiused, galvanized sheet metal elbow transition piece from flexible duct connection to each diffuser boot.** Elbow gauge shall be as specified hereinbefore in Part, "Sheet Metal Ductwork" for respective duct size.

Flexible duct shall be GreenGuard Level 4 certified, Thermaflex M-KE, ATCO UPC #031 or Flexmaster Type 1M.

## **PART 6. DUCT INSULATION WORK (EXTERNAL)**

**6.1. General:** Mechanical Contractor shall not install the external duct insulation. All external duct insulation work shall be by an experienced insulation subcontractor

whose primary business is the installation of insulating materials in accordance with insulation manufacturers' recommendations and these specifications. Where a conflict exists between these specifications and the Manufacturer's recommendations, the strictest installation shall be provided.

The finished insulation system shall provide complete thermal barrier throughout the equipment and air distribution system, including effective and durable vapor barriers and vapor stops for any system or condition potentially subject to condensation. Insulation system shall be provided to prevent condensation or potential thereof, to prevent transmission of water vapor into the insulation system (vapor barriers), and to prevent transmission of water vapor within the insulation system should vapor barrier compromises occur during operation and/or maintenance of the building (vapor stops).

Duct must be clean, dry and pressure tested before covering is applied. Cover flexible connections with insulation material as hereinafter specified to same thickness as adjacent duct. All insulation materials (coatings and mastics) shall be fire resistive per NFPA Pamphlet No. 90, ASTM C 411, shall be UL listed and shall have a fire hazard rating not to exceed 25 for flame spread and 50 for fuel contributed and smoke developed as determined by ASTM E84, NFPA No. 255 or UL 723.

**Refer to Section Sheet Metal Ductwork, Paragraph Hangers and Supports, for miscellaneous insulating requirements for externally insulated ductwork.**

- 6.2. Material:** Provide GreenGuard certified glass fiber duct insulation with reinforced foil kraft laminate jacket, formaldehyde-free.

All **supply air and return air ducts** located outside the building insulation envelope shall be provided with a total of 3.5" thickness external insulation, in addition to the specified acoustical liner. The first layer shall be **1.5" thickness, 0.75 lb. density, without reinforced foil kraft laminate jacket** and with characteristics specified above. The second layer shall be **2" thickness, 1.5 lb. density, with reinforced foil kraft laminate jacket** and with characteristics specified below.

**OPTION:** In lieu of providing two layers of insulation for supply and return air ducts as specified above, the Contractor may substitute one layer of 4.25" thickness, 0.75 lb. density **with reinforced foil kraft laminate jacket** with characteristics specified below.

All **supply air and return air** ductwork located above the ceiling within the building insulation envelope, in chases and other similar areas shall be provided with **2" thickness, 1.5lb. density, duct wrap with reinforced foil kraft laminate jacket** as specified below. Note that this requirement does not apply to ductwork that is exposed to view in finished areas. Refer to internal duct insulation requirements for duct exposed to view in finished areas.

All **outside air and exhaust air** ductwork shall be provided with **1.0" thickness, .75lb. density, with reinforced foil kraft laminate jacket** as specified below.

Thermal conductivity for **1.0" thickness** per ASTM C-518, **0.75 lb. density** shall be not less than  $k=0.27 \text{ BTU}\cdot\text{in}/(\text{hr}\cdot\text{ft}^2\cdot^\circ\text{F})$  and minimum installed  $R=3.0$  at 75°F mean temperature with test based on material thickness compressed 25%.

Thermal conductivity for **1.5" thickness** per ASTM C-518, **0.75 lb. density** shall be not less than  $k=0.27 \text{ BTU}\cdot\text{in}/(\text{hr}\cdot\text{ft}^2\cdot^\circ\text{F})$  and minimum installed  $R=4.2$  at 75°F mean temperature with test based on material thickness compressed 25%.

Thermal conductivity for **2" thickness** per ASTM C-518, at its rated thickness, and **1.5 lb. density** shall be not less than  $k=0.24 \text{ BTU}\cdot\text{in}/(\text{hr}\cdot\text{ft}^2\cdot^\circ\text{F})$  and minimum installed  $R=6.3$  at 75°F mean temperature with test based on material thickness compressed 25%.

Thermal conductivity for **4.25" thickness** per ASTM C-518, **0.75 lb. density** shall be not less than  $k=0.27 \text{ BTU}\cdot\text{in}/(\text{hr}\cdot\text{ft}^2\cdot^\circ\text{F})$  and minimum installed  $R=12.0$  at 75°F mean temperature with test based on material thickness compressed 25%.

See "Duct Insulation (Internal)" for internal acoustical insulation required in addition to the external insulation specified hereinbefore.

Supply air, return air and outside air ducts within enclosed mechanical rooms do not require flexible, external, duct insulation. Instead, supply air, return air and outside air ducts in all mechanical rooms shall be insulated with 1" thickness, 4.25 lb. density,  $R=4.5$ , rigid glass fiber duct insulation to a point 8" vertically above the mechanical room ceiling into the attic or 8" horizontally above the ceiling of the adjacent conditioned space, as applicable. Seal all ends of bare, exposed insulation board with vapor barrier sealant as specified hereinbefore.

Facing shall be aluminum foil reinforced with fiberglass yarn and laminated with fire resistant adhesive to Kraft paper. Thermal conductivity value shall be per ASTM C-612, Type 1B, at its specified thickness and shall be not less than  $k=0.22 \text{ BTU}\cdot\text{in}/(\text{hr}\cdot\text{ft}^2\cdot^\circ\text{F})$  at 75°F mean temperature. Insulation shall meet or exceed the requirements of ASTM E 84, UL 723, ASTM C1136, Type II:FSK, NFPA 90A, NFPA 90B, NFPA 255, FHC 25/50 and ASTM795. Moisture sorption shall be less than 5% by weight and maximum moisture vapor transmission of 0.02 perms.

Insulation shall be Owens-Corning Series 815 Spin-Glas or equivalent material by Knauf, Schuller or CertainTeed. Rigid board insulation is not required when equipment is located in the attic or on a mechanical mezzanine.

- 6.3. Thickness:** Toilet and janitor closet/housekeeping exhaust ducts, louver and brick vent plenums, back panels of ceiling diffusers, return air and exhaust air registers and grilles, and outside air ducts: 1.0" thickness, 3/4 lb. density with reinforced foil kraft laminate jacket. All other locations: Minimum 2.0" thickness and density specified above with reinforced foil kraft laminate jacket. Coordinate with variations specified above for additional layers or 4.25" thickness and provide as required.

Where 2" internal acoustical insulation is specified for ductwork located above the ceiling within the building insulation envelope, the respective external insulation may be reduced by 1" total thickness with respective density previously specified. **No reduction in insulation thickness shall be taken for any ductwork located in the outside of the building insulation envelope.** See limits of acoustical insulation in Part Duct Insulation Work (Internal) below. Where duct board is specified within the mechanical rooms, external duct wrap insulation is not required.

- 6.4. Manufacturer:** Johns-Manville Micro-Lite EQ, Type 150 or Type 75 with thickness and density as specified above. Equivalent material by Knauf, Schuller, Owens Corning or CertainTeed will be accepted.

- 6.5. **Ducts to be Insulated Externally:** Supply air and return air ducts including ducts with acoustical liner, outside air ducts, toilet/housekeeping/janitor closet areas exhaust ducts, louver and brick vent plenums, short branch duct collar connections to grilles, registers and diffusers, all flexible canvas connectors and exterior rim/cone/panel of all ceiling diffusers, ceiling exhaust grilles and registers and ceiling return registers and grilles. See Part "Duct Insulation Work (Internal)" for sound attenuating insulation requirements of externally insulated ductwork.

**Do not externally insulate flexible canvas connectors until installation of the specified bonding jumper has been verified by the Engineer or the Authority having jurisdiction.**

- 6.6. **Application:** Sheet metal duct shall be clean, dry and tightly sealed at all joints and seams before applying duct wrap. Adhere insulation to metal with 4" wide strips of Foster 85-60, ITW Miracle-Kingco M595 Ultratack or Childers CP-127, low VOC insulation bonding adhesive meeting ASTM C916 at 8" on center on circumferential joints. Wrap insulation tightly on the ductwork with all circumferential joints butted and longitudinal joints overlapped a minimum of 2". The 2" flange of the facing shall be secured using 9/16" flare-door staples applied 6" on center and taped as specified hereinafter. On longitudinal joints, the overlap shall be secured using 9/16" flare-door staples applied 6" on center and taped as specified hereinafter. For rectangular ducts wider than 23", additionally support insulation with weld pins and speed clips 18" on center.

**Stop and point insulation around access doors and damper operators to allow operation without disturbing duct wrapping.** Insulate standing seams and stiffeners that protrude through the insulation with 2" thick, faced, flexible blanket insulation.

Vapor seal all seams, joints, pin penetrations, other breaks, circumferential and longitudinal joints with reinforcing mesh and coat with vapor barrier facing. Mesh shall be **4" wide pre-sized glass cloth** adhered and finished with two (2) coats of a white vapor barrier coating or as required to completely cover the mesh, Foster 30-33, Vimasco 749 or Childers CP-33. **No FSK tape will be allowed.** Fiberglass cloth shall be Great Lakes Textiles Style GL1658, 20x10 thread count per square inch, 0.004-inch thickness and 1.60 oz. /sq. yd., Childers Chil Glas #10 glass mesh, Foster Mast-A-Fab polyester mesh or equivalent product by 3M.

Any externally insulated duct with metallic vapor barrier that is in contact with metallic piping, conduits or metallic structural members shall be provided with a section of Rubatex insulation between ductwork and the metallic member. Rubatex shall be 3/4" thickness, AP Armaflex insulation of sufficient inside tubular diameter to slide over, completely cover and snugly fit the contacted item. The insulation shall extend the full width of the duct plus a minimum of 6", each side of the duct. Refer to Part Pipe and Miscellaneous Insulation Work for AP Armaflex material and installation methods specification. The use of AP Armaflex insulation between piping and the ductwork shall only be allowed when raising the effected duct is not an option.

- 6.7. **Insulation Pins and Washers:** **The use of adhesives for attaching pins and washers to the ductwork is prohibited.** Pins shall be cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins, zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135 inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation specified with integral 1-1/2 inch galvanized carbon-steel washer. Insulation retaining washers shall be self-locking type formed from 0.016-inch thick galvanized steel with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

- 6.8. **Hot Gas Reheat Coil and Cabinet:** Where hot gas reheat coils are specified and the coil is not within the insulated Heat Pump or Air Handling Unit equipment cabinet, externally insulate the hot gas reheat coil cabinet with 1.5" thickness, 4.25 lb. density, R=6.8, duct board equal to Owens-Corning Series 815 Spin-Glas. Protect external insulation with open weave glass or polyester cloth by Johns-Manville Duramesh, Childers Chil Glas #10 or Foster Mast-A-Fab, embedded between two 1/8" coats of Foster 60-91 (gray) Monolar Mastic or Childers Encacel X-1 (gray). Coordinate coil requirements with Mechanical Contractor prior to bid and provide as required.

**PART 7. DUCT INSULATION WORK (INTERNAL)**

- 7.1. **General:** All work by experienced applicators in accordance with Manufacturer's recommendations and these specifications. Where a conflict exists between these specifications and the Manufacturer's recommendations, the strictest installation shall be provided.

Duct liner, mastics and materials shall comply with all requirements and other building code requirements. All insulation materials (coatings and mastics) shall be fire resistive per NFPA Pamphlet No. 90A and 90B and shall be UL listed and shall have a fire hazard rating not to exceed 25 for flame spread and 50 for fuel contributed and smoke developed as determined by ASTM E84. Liner materials shall conform to the performance based ASTM C1071, which includes ASTM C518 Thermal Conductivity, ASTM C411 Temperature Resistance, ASTM C665 Corrosiveness, ASTM E84 Surface Burning Characteristics, ASTM C1338 Fungi Resistance, ASTM C1304 Odor Emissions and ASTM C1104 Moisture Vapor Sorption.

- 7.2. **Material:** Liner shall be a GreenGuard certified, low VOC, Type I liner as defined by ASTM C1071 and characteristics complying with ASTM E 84, UL 723, NFPA 255, NFPA 259 and ASHRAE 62. It shall have an acrylic coating formulated with an immobilized, EPA registered, protective agent to protect against growth of fungi and bacteria as required by ASTM C1071 and tests conducted in accordance with ASTM C 1338, ASTM G21 and ASTM G 22. It shall not support microbial growth and have glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. The airstream surface shall be protected with a reinforced coating with flexible glass cloth reinforcement. The liner shall have a reinforced factory applied edge coating and operate in an environment of a maximum of 250°F and maximum of 6,000 fpm air velocity. Thermal conductivity per ASTM C-518, at its rated thickness, shall be not less than  $k=0.16 \text{ BTU}\cdot\text{in}/(\text{hr}\cdot\text{ft}^2\cdot^\circ\text{F})$  and  $R=6.3$  at 75 F mean temperature in accordance with ASTM C18. Sound absorption coefficients for the liner shall be per ASTM C 423 and ASTM E 795 test methods and the table below. **Furnish sound characteristics for review with the material submittal.**

**Sound Absorption Coefficient at Frequency**

Thickness (In)	(Cycles per Second)						NRC
	125	250	500	1000	2000	4000	
1.5	0.10	0.47	0.85	1.01	1.02	0.99	0.80
2.0	0.25	0.66	1.00	1.05	1.02	1.01	0.95

- 7.3. **Manufacturer:** Shall be Johns Manville Linacoustic RC or equivalent material by Schuller, Knauf, Pittsburgh, CSG, Owens Corning or CertainTeed.

- 7.4. **Thickness:** 1.5 inches thickness. Return air platforms/plenums, relief air and transfer air (jumper and ATD) ducts 2.0" thickness.
- 7.5. **Ducts and Equipment to be Insulated Internally:** Return air plenums/platforms, transfer air (jumper and ATD) ducts and relief air ducts.
- 7.6. **Acoustical Duct Lining:** Line the first ten (10) linear feet of all single wall, supply and return air ducts downstream of all heat pumps and transfer air (jumper and ATD) ducts with insulation equal to Johns Manville Linacoustic RC and **2.0" thickness**. Sound absorption characteristics shall be as specified above.

Provide metal nosing as specified below when transitioning from 2" thickness to 1.5" thickness internal liner or, maintain 2" thickness without nosing. See detail on plans.

- 7.7. **Application:** Adhere insulation to the entire surface of the sheet metal with fire resistive, low VOC, UL labeled, fire resistive, water based, ASTM C 916, Type II compliant adhesive before the metal is broken. Adhesive shall be Foster 85-60 or Childers CP-127. Secure all sheets wider than 24 inches with sheet metal screws and washers or stud pins and clips 16 inches on center, each way. Joints shall be straight and smooth and shall be buttered with adhesive to prevent erosion and improve airflow. Product shall have factory applied edge coating to assure sealing of transverse edges per current SMACNA and NAIMA installation standards.

Damage to the liner shall be repaired using Johns Manville SuperSeal products as required or equivalent materials by other Manufacturers with their specific equivalent products.

- 7.8. **Metal Nosings:** All exposed leading and trailing edges shall be secured with sheet metal nosings to protect insulation edges. Metal nosings shall be securely installed over all transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream at forward and rear discharge towards coils, dampers, ducts, plenums, changes of insulation thicknesses of adjoining insulation, any exposed insulation ends and at any point where lined duct is preceded by unlined duct. See detail on the plans. All remaining miscellaneous exposed edges shall be sealed/coated. There shall be no exposed fiberglass ends in the airstream.

## **PART 8. REGISTERS, GRILLES AND DIFFUSERS**

- 8.1. **General:** All grilles, registers and diffusers shall be product of a single Manufacturer with baked enamel finish and standard or custom color as selected by the Architect. Architect may require painting of the diffusers, grilles, registers, etc., in the field. Where field painting is required, diffusers, grilles and registers shall be factory primed for painting in the field. Refer to Architectural Section "Painting", coordinate requirements and provide finish as required.

Where lay-in ceilings occur, all items specified shall have integral 2' x 2' or 2' x 4' aluminum modular lay-in ceiling panel with finish to match diffuser. Refer to Architectural reflected ceiling plan, check ceiling suspension system, wall and ceiling finishes and provide for proper interface as required.

All ceiling grilles, registers and diffusers not in integral lay-in metal panels and installed in gypsum board or other hard surfaces shall be mounted with aluminum-countersunk screws with finish to match respective items.

All ceiling diffusers, ceiling return air registers and grilles, ceiling exhaust grilles and registers, and ceiling mounted relief air grilles back panels shall be insulated with 1" thickness, foil backed insulation and securely attached. Contractor has the option of insulating manually or furnishing the item with factory furnished insulation from the item Manufacturer. Factory provided insulation shall be attached as shown on the plan details.

All grilles, registers and diffusers shall be ADC or approved equivalent Agency certified.

- 8.2. **Square Ceiling Diffusers with Round Neck:** Titus Model TMSA-AA, Price ASCDA, removable core type, aluminum construction, with baked enamel standard or custom finish color selected by the Architect, designed for four-way diffusion complete with Titus AG-85, Price VCR8E steel butterfly blade damper. Diffuser face shall be 24" x 24" with type frame to interface with ceiling system. Use lay-in type frame where lay-in ceilings occur.
- 8.3. **Wall Supply Air Registers:** Titus Model 300 FS-5-D-65, Price 620DAL-F-S-D-A-SW all aluminum adjustable 4-way deflection type. Provide with AG 35B aluminum opposed blade damper with worm gear, Allen Key operators and AG-225 extractors with No. 1 operator, auxiliary mounting frame with baked enamel standard or custom finish color selected by the Architect.
- 8.4. **Wall Return Air Registers:** Titus Model 33R-PF, Price Model 91-L-D-A-VCS3 gymnasium heavy duty steel register with 38 degree deflection 14 ga. blades, support bars on 6" centers Allen key operated aluminum opposed blade damper and auxiliary mounting frame with baked enamel standard or custom finish color selected by the Architect.
- 8.5. **Ceiling Mounted Return Air Registers:** Titus Model 50-F-0-5-D-25, Price Model 80DAL-F-SW-A all-aluminum fabricated egg-crate type, Allen key operated aluminum opposed blade damper and lay-in type frame with baked enamel standard or custom finish color selected by the Architect.
- 8.6. **Manufacturers:** Equivalents by Titus, Price, Metalaire and Krueger will be accepted. Titus and Price are basis of design.

## **PART 9. CONDENSATE DRAINAGE PIPING**

- 9.1. **General:** Cut accurately to measurements established at site and work into place without springing or forcing, properly clearing all building features. Arrange and install piping systems sizes as shown, as close as practical, straight, properly supported and run as directly as possible forming right angles or running parallel with building lines, true to line and grade, free of sags and bends. Locate piping as high as practical and in parallel groups as close together as practical. Route through previously built-in sleeves and avoid cutting or other weakening of the structure. Ream all pipes to remove burrs. Make changes in direction and size with fittings. Bushings are prohibited. Cap or plug open pipe ends during installation to keep out foreign material.

Before installation, piping shall be checked, upended, swabbed, and all dirt from storage or from lying on the ground shall be removed.

Make all connections to equipment using screwed unions. Install unions in all piping

connections to each piece of equipment, including traps, pumps, coils, etc. Refer to plan details for detailed requirements of the assembly.

All piping shall be concealed within walls, chases, above ceilings, etc., unless specifically noted otherwise.

- 9.2. Condensate Drain Piping and Drain Piping from All Drain Pans to Floor Drains, Hub Drains and Other Miscellaneous Condensate Receivers:** Interior condensate drainage piping material shall be Type L hard copper tubing with wrought copper solder joint fittings with 45° or 90° offset fittings. ProPress or similar type fittings/joints are not allowed.

All cooling coils and evaporator coils horizontal condensate drainage piping shall be sloped a minimum of 1/8" per foot. The condensate drain line size shall be full size of unit condensate outlet and in no case, less than 3/4 inch.

The condensate drainage assembly shall be made up of materials specified above. The assembly shall consist of p-trap, unions, air bleeder/open vent with 1/8" screen over open portion, etc., as required by the equipment Manufacturer. **Running p-traps are not allowed.**

In absence of the Manufacturer's requirements, condensate drainage assembly shall be as shown on the plans. **Condensate drain lines shall be configured to permit the clearing of blockages and performance of maintenance without requiring the drain line to be cut.** Refer to the details on the plans and the requirements below for unions required in the condensate piping.

Install a UL 508 conforming electric switch in the secondary drain line of each condensate producing piece of equipment. The switch shall automatically shut off the equipment served in the event the primary drain line becomes restricted.

- 9.3. Copper Joints:** Make assemblies with tin-antimony (95-5) solder and non-corrosive flux (this does not apply to refrigerant piping). Clean and polish the tube and the inside of the fittings, using No. 60 steel wool. Apply flux and place fitting on the tube. Heat joint evenly but take care not to overheat fitting. Apply solder until a solder line shows completely around the joint. Remove surplus solder and allow joint to cool. ProPress or similar type fittings/joints are not allowed.
- 9.4. Escutcheons:** Where pipes pass through cabinets, walls and ceilings of finished rooms provide pressed chrome-plated brass or stainless steel type securely fastened in place with screws. Pack penetrations with mineral wool insulation, seal with firestopping compound and install escutcheons to prevent passage of fire, smoke and vermin. Do not use split ring type escutcheons.
- 9.5. Unions:** Unions shall be of the following types:
- Copper Lines:** Ground joint, copper to copper.

## **PART 10. REFRIGERANT PIPING AND ACCESSORIES**

- 10.1. General:** All refrigerant piping shall be identified. **Note that refrigerant piping will require custom identification.** Refer to Section 15010, Identification for requirements.



- 10.2. Refrigerant Piping Sleeves:** Refer to Section 15010 and plan details and provide sleeves, firestopping and escutcheons as specified for typical piping. Sleeves for pipe passing through exterior walls that contain refrigerant piping shall be Schedule 80, ASTM D1785 PVC pipe, 1/2" larger in diameter than piping and piping covering. Refer to Section 15010 and below for requirements.

Coordinate wall sleeve sizes required for refrigerant piping with insulation and aluminum jacket requirements. Piping within wall cavities shall be seamless type with no joints.

- 10.3. Piping Diagram:** System shall be complete and sized to conform to current ACRMA standards, except that refrigerant suction risers shall be sized for a gas velocity not less than 2000 fpm.

Various Manufacturers of heat pump and mini-split systems have different reasons for the use of loops, traps, accumulators, receivers, etc., in piping arrangements, therefore, submit for review, the air conditioning equipment Manufacturer's recommended, dimensioned plan view and isometric piping diagram proposed for use for each system, showing all valves, loops, pipe sizes and all appurtenances, required for the proper operation of the respective system.

Submit catalog data and Manufacturer's ratings for all valves, catch-alls, etc. with diagram for each system. Identify all items for respective system and list capacities, pressure drops, etc. Secure approval of the heating and air conditioning equipment, and compressor Manufacturer before submitting for review.

Failure to provide the Manufacturers' approved diagram(s) shall make the Mechanical Contractor responsible for all required changes to the piping system and equipment without additional cost to the Owner or his Design Professionals should the installation not be as required by the Manufacturers.

Refrigerant piping support spacing shall be as specified in Section 15010. Cut accurately to measurements established at site and work into place without springing or forcing, properly clearing all building features. Arrange and install piping systems, as close as practical, straight, properly supported and run as directly as possible forming right angles or running parallel with building lines, true to line and grade, free of sags and bends. Locate piping as high as practical and in parallel groups as close together as practical. Route through previously built-in sleeves and avoid cutting or other weakening of the structure.

Refrigerant piping for all outdoor units mounted slab on grade shall enter the building at the respective building finish floor or crawl space level and at a maximum of 12" above finish floor of the facility. Contractor shall coordinate final refrigerant piping entrance into the building with the Architect's Field Representative prior to installing any refrigerant piping.

All refrigerant piping, including mini-split piping, shall be Type L hard drawn, ACR copper refrigerant tubing with wrought copper solder joint fittings. **Coiled copper and precharged line sets are NOT allowed unless specifically noted or specified.** All offsets and changes in direction shall be made with 90° or 45° elbows.

Where refrigerant piping is shown rising in the wall cavity and requires modifications to the block wall due to the size of the piping and insulated assembly, the block shall be neatly saw cut. Provide reinforcing to the affected portions of the wall as indicated on the structural drawings and details, the same as required at window and door openings. See the structural drawings for specifics. Extreme coordination is required

prior to the erection of the structural slab and wall. Coordinate with the General Contractor.

- 10.3. Refrigerant Piping Testing:** Two tests are required. The medium used for pressure testing the refrigerant system shall be oxygen-free nitrogen, helium or argon. Oxygen, air, combustible gases and mixtures containing such gases shall not be used as a test medium. Systems erected on the premises with tubing not exceeding 5/8 inch outside diameter shall be allowed to use the refrigerant identified on the nameplate label or marking as the test medium.

The refrigerant piping system shall be tested as a whole or separate tests shall be conducted for the low-pressure side and high-pressure side of the piping system. The refrigerant piping system shall be tested in accordance with both of the following methods:

**Test 1:** The system shall be pressurized for a period of not less than 60 minutes to not less than the lower of the design pressures or the setting of the pressure relief device(s). The design pressures for testing shall be the pressure listed on the label nameplate of the condensing unit, compressor, compressor unit, pressure vessel or other system component with a nameplate. Additional test gas shall not be added to the system after the start of the pressure test. The system shall not show loss of pressure on the test pressure measuring device during the pressure test for a minimum 24 hours.

**Test 2:** A vacuum of 500 microns shall be achieved. After achieving a vacuum, the system shall be isolated from the vacuum pump. The system pressure shall not rise above 1,500 microns for a period of not less than 60 minutes.

Where using refrigerant as a test medium as specified above, the test pressure shall be not less than the saturation dew point pressure at 77°F.

- 10.4. Joints: Brazed joints only. Flare joints nor press connect joining type systems are allowed.** Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An approved flux shall be applied where required by the braze filler metal Manufacturer. The piping being brazed shall be purged of air to remove the oxygen and filled with oxygen-free nitrogen, helium or argon. The piping system shall be prepurged with an inert gas for a minimum time corresponding to five volume changes through the piping system prior to brazing. The pre-purge rate shall be at a minimum velocity of 100 feet per minute. The inert gas shall be directly connected to the tube system being brazed to prevent the entrainment of ambient air.

After the pre-purge, the inert gas supply shall be maintained through the piping during the brazing operation at a minimum pressure of 1.0 psi and a maximum pressure of 3.0 psi. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to American Welding Society Publication AWS A5.8, Current Edition.

Piping within wall cavities and other inaccessible areas shall be seamless type with no joints.

- 10.5. Solenoid Valves (Where Required):** Install in liquid refrigerant connection to the evaporators. Valves shall be designed for the operating pressure and capacity as listed in Manufacturer's catalog with a pressure drop not exceeding 2 psi and shall be sufficient for the requirements of the installation. Install in horizontal runs with body vertical.

- 10.6. Expansion Valves (Where Required):** Properly sized diaphragm or bellows type, with external superheat adjustment set for 10 degrees F. superheat. Install in the liquid refrigerant supply lines to the evaporators. Expansion valves up to and including 7-1/2 tons capacity shall be Sporlan Type "S" or approved equivalent. Expansion valves over 7-1/2 ton capacity shall be Sporlan Type "O" or approved equivalent. Install Sporlan full size catch-all filter-drier ahead of valve.
- 10.7. Refrigerant Service Valves:** Provide for the proper servicing of the equipment. Per IMC 1101.9, all refrigerant circuit access ports located outdoors shall be fitted with color coated, all brass, and locking type tamper resistant caps. The locking caps shall be color coded for the refrigerant used. Caps shall be Novent Series 8668 for R-410 refrigerant with 86698 NV Multikey unlocking mechanism for R-410 refrigerant or equivalent by JB Industries Series Shield and DiversiTech Series Sentry. Provide Owner with minimum of six (6) spare keys.
- 10.8. Refrigerant Filter Drier (Catch-all):** Shall be Sporlan, three desiccants type filter drier or approved equivalent. Filter driers up to and including 10-ton capacity shall be sealed type. Filter driers over 10-ton capacity shall be replaceable core type. Units shall have minimum surface filtering area and capacity not less than that shown in Sporlan Valve Company Bulletin 40-10 or 40-10-8, as applicable, under sizes for "field replacement or field built up sizes". Careful attention must be given to providing the correct type of filter drier as it pertains to type of refrigerant used in the respective system.
- 10.9. Refrigerant Piping Identification:** Custom factory fabricated refrigerant piping labels are required. Stick-on, painted, stenciled or hand written type identification is not allowed. The Contractor is urged to carefully review the extensive requirements of Paragraph "Identification" in Section 15010 of the specifications and in particular the custom labels and installation requirements prior to certain site visits.
- 10.10. Miscellaneous Requirements:** Taping or zip tying of liquid lines to suction lines is not allowed. Coordinate wall sleeve sizes required for refrigerant piping with insulation and aluminum jacket requirements.

## **PART 11. PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- 11.1. General:** Refer to Section 15010 for sleeve/firestopping requirements. **This pipe hanger and support section does not apply to refrigerant piping.** Refer to Part Pipe and Miscellaneous Insulation Work below for refrigerant piping support requirements.
- 11.2. Painting of Hangers and Supports:** All non-galvanized and galvanized ferrous metal parts of hangers, piping and related items in mechanical rooms, crawl space, above ceilings, Unistrut and other assemblies used for supporting of ducts (except hanger straps and threaded rods), including black steel pipe, uncoated cast iron pipe, hangers, brackets, etc. shall be coated. All finishes and coatings shall have a fire hazard rating not to exceed 25 for flame spread and 50 for fuel contributed and smoke developed as determined by ASTM E84. Also, see specification section, "Identification" for additional requirements. Refer to Section 15010 for additional requirements.

## PART 12. PIPE INSULATION AND MISCELLANEOUS INSULATION WORK

- 12.1. **General Provisions:** All work by experienced applicators in accordance with Manufacturer's recommendations and these specifications. Where the specified installation conflicts with the Manufacturers recommendations, the strictest application shall be provided.

Piping must be clean, dry and pressure tested before covering is applied. Size pipe hangers to fit over insulated pipe size. **Hangers and supports shall not be in contact with bare pipe and shall not penetrate the vapor barrier.** See hangers and supports for requirements. Cover fittings, valves and flanges with insulation material as hereinafter specified to same thickness as adjacent pipe covering except screwed unions in hot and chilled piping and other specifically named items. Neatly bevel covering edges adjacent to unions and other points of termination or provide factory fabricated beveled insulation fitting.

All insulation materials including coatings and mastics shall have a composite rating for insulation, jacket or facing, including adhesives, not to exceed 25 flame spread and 50 for fuel contributed and smoke developed as determined by ASTM E-84, NFPA 255 and UL 723.

All piping shall be provided with sleeves/firestopping assemblies. Refer to Section 15010 for sleeve and firestopping requirements.

- 12.2. **Refrigerant Suction Lines, All Hot Gas Reheat Coils' Hot Gas Lines, All Exterior Refrigerant Piping Including Liquid Lines and Mini-Split System Liquid Lines:**

Preinsulated refrigerant piping is not allowed unless insulation meets the requirements specified below. Coiled nor precharged line sets are allowed unless noted or specified otherwise. Refer to other portions of this specification for refrigerant piping requirements. All liquid lines located outdoors shall be insulated and installed within the specified aluminum jacket. Refer to aluminum jacket requirements below for additional information.

Insulate with 1" thickness, UL fire and smoke rated unslit, black, flexible foamed, elastomeric, closed cell pipe insulation by AP Armaflex or equivalent by K-Flex or Aerocel AC EPDM. It shall be GreenGuard certified tubular insulation with Microban antimicrobial protection. Insulation shall have a 'k' factor of not more than 0.256 at 90°F mean temperature, water absorption percent by volume of 0.2 and a water vapor transmission rate of 0.05 perm-inches or less.

**Slip insulation onto pipe prior to erecting. Longitudinal cutting of the insulation is prohibited. Do not stretch or bend insulation at any turn, tee, etc.** Insulate sweat/brazed fittings with miter-cut pieces of insulation as recommended in AP Armaflex installation instructions or, provide factory fabricated, made to order prefabricated fittings for tees, elbows, unions, etc. the same size as on adjacent piping as manufactured by AP Armaflex, Aeroflex Aerofit, K-Flex K-Fit or Aerocell.

On piping with screwed fittings, make up fitting covers from Armaflex with an inside diameter large enough to overlap the insulation on the pipe next to the fitting. Fitting cover shall be long enough to overlap the pipe insulation by a minimum of one inch on each side. Glue the 1" overlap and seal to the adjacent pipe insulation with same adhesive and tape specified below.

Seal all butt joints of insulation and all butt joints at the specified refrigerant piping clamp with AP Armaflex BLV, Black, low VOC, liquid, air-drying contact adhesive. Do

not use aerosol adhesive. After gluing joints, wrap all joints with 3" wide, 1/8" thick AP Armaflex self-adhering tape.

**All insulated piping shall be continuous without cutting at clamp/support assemblies.** All interior refrigerant liquid lines which are not associated with a hot gas reheat coil or liquid lines NOT required to be insulated by the equipment Manufacturer shall not be insulated except, they shall be provided with insulated insert at clamps to Unistrut assemble as specified below.

Note that Various Manufacturers of mini-split systems require the insulating of refrigerant liquid lines. When required by the Manufacturer, they shall be insulated using materials specified above and in thickness required by the respective Manufacturer. Where the VRF or mini-split system Manufacturer requires less than 1" insulation, install thickness recommended with materials specified above using methods specified below.

- 12.3. Condensate Drain Lines Insulation:** To include discharge lines on all equipment specified with or provided with air conditioning condensate drainage pumps. Insulate using same methods and materials as specified for refrigerant piping except 3/4" thickness.
- 12.4. Refrigerant Pipe Supports and Clamp Assembly:** **Do not use clevis hangers for refrigerant piping.** All refrigerant piping, regardless of size, shall be supported with Unistrut assemblies. Provide Unistrut assembly, supporting horizontal refrigerant piping on intervals not exceeding 10 feet. Provide dielectric separation between dissimilar metals. Support piping so that no vibration will be transmitted to the building structure.

Provide an insulated piping clamp assembly at each Unistrut hanger, including the liquid line, suction line and any bare copper line attached to the assembly. The insulated clamp shall provide a crush resistant airtight seal and shall consist of a rigid, closed cell, foam insulation to support tubing and absorb vibration. The outer cover shall consist of a rubber coating that seals the cushion completely after installation to prevent condensation. Clamps shall be steel with electrochromate finish. Rated assembly temperature range shall be -50°F to +250°F. It shall be self-extinguishing as tested under ASTM D 635. After installing device, glue each butt joint and tape each joint with 3" wide, 1/8" thick AP Armaflex self-adhering tape AP Armaflex tape.

Insulated lines shall use ZSi-Foster Series Cush-A-Therm, ArmaFix Eco Light, AeroFix by Aeroflex with clamp assembly or approved equivalent. ZSi-Foster Series Cush-A-Therm is the basis of design.

For units on concrete pad, support piping with rustproof coated, 1-1/2" x 1-1/2" x 1/8" galvanized steel angle supports anchored to pad with steel base plate and bolts. Refrigerant piping shall be attached to the support with the insulating assembly specified above.

- 12.5. Condensate Drain Lines Pipe Supports and Clamp Assembly:** To include discharge lines on all equipment specified with or provided with air conditioning condensate drainage pumps shall be provided with an insulated piping clamp assembly. The insulated clamp shall provide a crush resistant airtight seal and shall consist of a rigid, closed cell, foam insulation to support the tubing. The outer cover shall consist of a rubber coating that seals the cushion completely after installation to prevent condensation. Clamps shall be steel with electrochromate finish. The assembly shall be self-extinguishing as tested under ASTM D 635.

After installing device, glue each butt joint with liquid adhesive and tape each joint with 3" wide, 1/8" thick AP Armaflex self-adhering tape AP Armaflex tape. Spray adhesive is not allowed.

For piping located on the finished floor, support piping with rustproof coated, 1-1/2" x 1-1/2" x 1/8" galvanized steel angle supports anchored to the floor with steel base plate and bolts. Condensate drainage piping shall be attached to the support with the insulating assembly specified above. Insulate using same methods and materials as specified for refrigerant piping (small, chilled water piping) except 1/2" thickness.

Combustion chamber condensate drain lines from high efficiency gas fired furnaces are not required to be insulated.

Condensate drain lines clamp assembly shall be ZSi-Foster Series Cush-A-Therm, ArmaFix Eco Light, Aerofix by Aeroflex with clamp assembly or approved equivalent.

- 12.6. Refrigerant Piping and Condensate Drainage Piping Aluminum Jacket:** All insulated exterior refrigerant piping, insulated exterior hot gas reheat coils hot gas piping and all insulated condensate drainage piping terminating in hub drains in mech/elec. room and any location that would subject the piping insulation to damage shall be covered with an aluminum jacket.

Where refrigerant piping rises within the wall cavity to above the ceiling, attic or similar space, the aluminum jacket shall terminate within the exterior wall cavity and sealed weather tight to the sleeve in the wall. Where the refrigerant piping extends from the outside, directly into the mechanical room, the aluminum jacket shall terminate a minimum of 8" into the space and sealed weather tight on both sides of the wall and sleeve.

The aluminum jacket shall be 18 ga., .04" thick, **smooth finish**, 3003 and 3105 series aluminum conforming to ASTM B-209 standards. Fittings shall be 18 ga., .04" thick, die shaped, and **smooth finish**, Type 1100 aluminum jacket meeting ASTM C585. Provide 1/2" wide, 18 ga., .04" thick, Type 3003 aluminum bands on maximum 24" centers but not less than two bands per jacket section. **Venture Clad or similar product is prohibited.**

Do not install aluminum jacket until refrigerant piping insulation installation has been inspected by the Engineer.

- 12.7. Painting and Identifying:** Paint and identify after installation is completed as specified in Section 15010, Part Identification. Where piping is specified with an aluminum jacket, painting is not required.

Provide identification on the insulation covering indicating unions, strainers and check valves. Refer to Section 15010, Identification and note special refrigerant piping identification requirements. **Custom factory fabricated refrigerant piping labels are required. Stick-on, painted, stenciled or hand written type identification is not allowed.**

The Contractor is urged to carefully review the extensive requirements of Paragraph "Identification" in Section 15010 of the specifications and note that certain identification is required to be completed before certain site visits.

- 12.8. Submittal Data:** Submit for review complete data on materials and application methods proposed.

- 12.9. **Manufacturers:** Approved equivalents by Pittsburgh Corning, CertainTeed, Baldwin-Ehret-Hill, Manville, Owens Corning, Armstrong Childers and 3M Company will be accepted.

### **PART 13. VENTILATION**

- 13.1. **General:** Provide all fans complete with ducts, grilles and required accessories.

Provide for all fans to be interlocked with air handling units a “hand” – “auto” – “off” switch.

All fans shall be certified in accordance with AMCA/ANSI Standards 210 and ANSI/ASHRAE 51. Fans wheels shall be balanced in accordance with AMCA Standard 204-05. Fans shall be UL 705 listed and shall bear the UL Label. Furnish for review capacity and sound power ratings.

All motors 1/2 HP and smaller shall have built-in overload protection.

All motors with scheduled capacity of less than 1 HP shall be ECM type as required by ASHRAE 90.1 and with minimum motor efficiency of 70% when rated in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431.

- 13.2. **Power:** Contractor shall verify all voltage and power requirements with Electrical Contractor, Electrical plans and at the site, prior to ordering equipment.
- 13.3. **Ceiling Mounted Cabinet Fans:** Penn Ventilator Company Model Zephyr, Series Z-3H thru Z-15H with RA right angle arrangement or TDA arrangement as shown on the plans, or approved equivalent, complete with all accessories, including unit mounted solid state speed control switch, factory baked enamel white metal ceiling grille, metal flanged inlet and outlet connections, acoustically insulated metal housing, direct drive, ECM motors, internally isolated centrifugal fan, integral backdraft damper and terminal cap, cast aluminum brick vent or soffit grille as shown on the plans. Fan wheel shall be steel. Provide aluminum wheel when fan exhausts shower areas. Fan shall be supported from the structure with 1/4” hanger rods, rubber in shear vibration isolators and Manufacturer furnished bracket for attaching rods to the fan and structure above. Refer to plan details for additional requirements.
- 35.1. **Acceptable Manufacturers:** Cook, Greenheck, Penn Barry. Cook is basis of design.

### **PART 14. SPLIT SYSTEM HEAT PUMP UNITS (HP)**

- 14.1. **General:** Furnish and install split system heat pump systems as manufactured by the Trane Company. All equipment (condenser/compressors) scheduled cooling capacities are based on 95°F ambient temperature. Indoor units with scheduled cooling capacity of 60 MBH or less shall be Trane Series GAM5. Related outdoor units with scheduled cooling capacity of 60 MBH or less shall be Trane Series 4TWA4. Equivalent units/systems by Carrier or Lennox will be considered. Trane is the basis of design.

Each unit is specified to be provided with UV-C lights. The unit Manufacturer shall coordinate with the UV-C Manufacturer the placement of the UV-C lights within the unit. UV-C lights shall be placed in number and location as required by the UV-C device Manufacturer for maximum irradiance. The HVAC unit Manufacturer shall

provide equipment such that any part subjected to irradiance from the UV lamp system shall be shielded from the UV-C light or constructed of a material that is capable of withstanding UV-C exposure levels expected in provided product without degrading.

Each unit shall be completely factory assembled and tested, and shall include hermetic compressor, outdoor condenser coil, indoor evaporator coil, primary and secondary condensate drainage stub outs, fan and high static, premium efficiency ECM motor drives (Series GAM5) interconnecting wiring, low voltage control transformer, prewired control panel and other necessary components mounted in weather resistant steel cabinet with baked on enamel finish.

External static pressure indicated on the plans is estimated. The equipment Manufacturer shall provide motors or drives for ECM motors as applicable and as required, to match field conditions for the ductwork as installed.

The unit shall be UL or ARL (Applied Research Labs) listed and labeled accordingly. The heat pump shall be sound rated per ARI Standard 270 and operation sound level shall not exceed acceptable limits. Heating and cooling capacities shall not be less than those indicated on the drawings. Indoor unit shall be provided with single point power connections (fan and heater). **Contractor shall verify all voltage and power requirements with Electrical Contractor, Electrical plans, and at the project site, prior to ordering equipment.**

Each unit shall be provided with sweat/brazed connections from the Manufacturer's factory. Flare connections are not allowed unless **specifically** required by the Manufacturer.

- 14.2. Special Considerations:** The equipment Manufacturer shall size the refrigerant piping for all the units and shall furnish all accessories and auxiliaries required for a complete and proper installation for the specific application shown on the drawings and the specified sequence of operation. Refer to Section Refrigerant Piping and Accessories for additional requirements.
- 14.3. Condensing Unit Cabinet:** Shall be heavy gauge galvanized steel cabinet with weather resistant baked enamel finish. Access to the electrical controls and compressor shall be made by removing two service panels.
- 14.4. Compressor System:** The unit shall contain a hermetic compressor. The compressor shall have high and low pressure protection, sump heat, compressor overload protection, 24-volt control transformer and magnetic contactors. Refrigerant circuit shall include service valves, pressure tap ports, check valves, switch over valve, refrigerant line filter-driers, and factory furnished holding charge of R-410a.
- Per IMC 1101.9, all refrigerant circuit access ports located outdoors shall be fitted with color coated, all brass locking type tamper resistant caps. The locking caps shall be color coded for the refrigerant used. Caps shall be Novent Series 8668 for R-410 refrigerant with 86698 NV Multikey unlocking mechanism for R-410 refrigerant or equivalent by JB Industries Series Shield and DiversiTech Series Sentry. Provide Owner with minimum of six (6) spare keys.
- 14.5. Outdoor Coil:** The outdoor coils shall be constructed of aluminum fins or Spine Fin mechanically bonded to seamless aluminum or copper tube and shall be protected by a unit Manufacturer furnished, heavy-duty metal hail guard. The outdoor coil shall have expansion valve refrigerant control during heating operation, and automatic time and temperature actuated defrost control system. Unit shall, as factory shipped,



cycle fan motor on outdoor thermostat for low ambient cooling down to 40°F outdoor temperature. Provide heavy-duty metal condenser coil hail guard.

- 14.6. **Controls:** Indoor units shall be provided with programmable touch screen panel. Controls shall be factory wired and readily accessible.
- 14.7. **Air Handler:** Air handler shall be heavy duty polymer. Air handler cabinet shall be internally lined with foil laced fiberglass insulation. The indoor coil shall be constructed of aluminum plate fins mechanically bonded to seamless copper tubes. The indoor (evaporator) coil shall have expansion valve control and be equipped with defrost control and provided with stainless steel drain pan. Refrigerant piping connections shall be sweat/brazed connections from the Manufacturer's factory. Flare connections are not allowed unless **specifically** required by the Manufacturer. Air handler shall be provided with low voltage terminal board and fan motor relay.
- 14.8. **Auxiliary Electric Heater:** Provide electric heater with a total heating output not less than indicated on the drawings. Heater assembly shall include power supply fusing, automatic resetting limit switches and heat limiters for thermal protection. Heater shall be provided with factory disconnect switch and fusing all per National Electrical Code and UL. The auxiliary heater cabinet shall be factory-sealed air tight and insulated to prevent condensation.
- Units with a specified cooling capacity of less than 40 MBH shall use the auxiliary resistance heater for reheat. Where the auxiliary resistance heater is specified for maintaining space temperature during dehumidification, the auxiliary resistance heater shall be provided in a minimum of two stages.
- 14.9. **Hot Gas Reheat Coil:** Each unit with scheduled cooling capacity greater than or equal to 40 MBH shall be provided with a refrigerant hot gas reheat coil with modulating reheat coil valve and located in the reheat position. The coil shall be of sufficient size to reheat all of the supply air. Provide, complete, with all necessary valves, controls, etc., as required for a complete and properly functioning installation. Provide manual isolation valves for each hot gas and liquid lines. Furnish for review air conditioning equipment Manufacturer approved refrigerant piping and controls diagram, and statement by the air conditioning Manufacturer on company letterhead that use of the hot gas reheat coil with the equipment is acceptable to the Manufacturer and will not affect any warranty or guarantee. **Equipment submittal will not be reviewed without a Manufacturers' approved diagram and referenced statement.** Minimum reheat capacity for supply air shall be 10°F. Maximum coil pressure drop is 0.10" static pressure. All connections to the unit/system shall be with sweat/brazed connections from the Manufacturer's factory. Flare connections are not allowed unless **specifically** required by the Manufacturer.
- 14.10. **Indoor Thermostat:** Manufacturer shall provide a combination 7-day programmable, two-stage heating automatic changeover heat pump thermostat. Thermostat shall have outdoor thermistor to compensate for thermostat droop, emergency heat switch with indicator light and auxiliary heat light. Thermostat shall have sub-base fan switch for "On-Auto" selection and manual "Heat-Cool" switch. Thermostat shall be hardwired and be provided with battery backup. Coordinate thermostat with specified sequence of operation and provide as required.
- Provide hinged metal guard with rounded corners, lock and key for each thermostat.
- 14.11. **Outdoor Thermostat:** Provide mounting box and one outdoor thermostat for control of second stage of electrical heaters.

- 14.12. Humidistat:** Humidistat is specified in "Automatic Controls" at the end of this 15700 Specification. At his option, the Unit Manufacturer may substitute a combined thermostat/humidistat. Verify with the Controls Sub-Contractor that the furnished thermostat/humidistat will perform all sequences of operation else provide separate devices as specified.
- 14.13. Factory Start-Up Service:** The Contractor shall provide a factory-trained mechanic, employed by the unit Manufacturer and not a sales representative, to check out all equipment, including hot gas reheat coils and UV-C lights, and furnish written report indicating equipment is installed in strict accordance with Manufacturer's recommendations. Also, provide temperature, pressure and amp readings taken during testing to substantiate unit performance including the range of the refrigerant hot gas reheat coil valve as applicable.
- 14.14. Power Wiring:** Unit shall be factory wired for power supply indicated on the electrical drawings. Any variation shall be the responsibility of the contractor.
- 14.15. Filter Frame and Filters:** Provide 2" thick, MERV 11, pleated filters equal to 30/30/ Farr Series. All filters shall be common industry standard size filters that are readily available and do not have to be fabricated. Cutting and taping of filter segments to make a proper filter is prohibited. Where indoor section sits on R.A. platform or is horizontally mounted in an attic space and the Manufacturer does not provide a filter access with thumbscrew access in the bottom of the unit, provide a filter frame that is designed to mount to the bottom (R.A. inlet) of the air unit. Frame shall be hinged and have thumbscrews or wing nuts to open the access door. Filter frame shall be as manufactured by E-Z Filter Base Mfg., Inc. or approved equivalent. **The Mechanical Contractor shall be responsible for quarterly filter changes during the guarantee period and shall inscribe onto the filters' casing the date filters were installed/replaced.**
- 14.16. Ultraviolet (UV-C) Lights:** Mechanical Contractor is responsible for wiring the devices and providing power for the UV-C lights if not shown on the Electrical plans. Air handling units shall be provided with power supply and connections within the unit cabinet for powering the UV-C lights. Mechanical Contractor shall be responsible for circuitry to UV-C lighting. UV-C lighting shall cycle on and off with the fan or operate continuously as recommended by the UV-C lighting Manufacturer.

Comply with UL / C-UL or ETL for Ultraviolet Fixturing. Store UV-C Fixturing in a clean, dry place and protect from weather, construction traffic and construction debris. UV-C products supplier shall provide proof of 100% inbound and outbound testing of equipment. The UV-C Power supply shall have been tested, listed and labeled as compliant with UL, CSA and CE. Plenum wiring loom shall meet UL Subject 13 and UL 1581, Article 725 of the NEC and meet UL VW-1 material ratings. There shall be a metallic Loom cladding and it shall be UL recognized DXUZ2 and constructed of flexible galvanized steel and cover the entire Loom. Each lamp shall contain no more than 5 milligrams of mercury consistent with current environmental practices. Lamp Watts shall be printed on all lamps, no exceptions. Lamps shall not produce ozone and shall be hermetically sealed within a layer of UV-C transmissible FEP to protect against lamp breakage and to contain lamp contents should breakage occur.

Lamps shall be installed in sufficient quantity and in such a manner to provide an equal distribution of UV-C energy. When installed, the UV-C energy produced shall be of the lowest possible reflected and shadowed-losses and shall produce 360-degree UV-C irradiance from the lamps within the UV cavity. Lamp Watts shall be printed on all lamps, no exceptions. Each lamp shall contain less than 5 milligrams of

mercury, consistent with current environmental practices. Lamp useful life shall be a minimum of 9,000 hours with no more than a 15% output loss at the end of the lamp's life (12 months of continuous use). Lamps shall be constructed with UV-C resistant bases and shall not produce ozone. Lamps shall produce the specified output in moving air of up to 1000 fpm and temperatures of 0-200°F. Lamps shall be hermetically sealed within a layer of UV-C transmissible FEP to provide protection against lamp breakage and to ensure Lamp contents from a broken Lamp, are contained.

**Fixture modeling shall be included in the submittal and must contain the necessary calculations to demonstrate that a minimum of 6 lamp watts, as recommended by ASHRAE, are distributed equally to each square foot of coil surface area to achieve a minimum of 100 microwatts per square centimeter equally distributed to the surfaces at the plenum sides, top and bottom.** All calculations are to be at 55 degrees F and 500 fpm air velocity, no exceptions.

The power supply housing shall be capable of installation within the air stream, secondary compartment or NEMA enclosure. Lamps shall be mounted to irradiate the intended surfaces as well as all of the available line of sight airstream through proper placement, 360° irradiation and incident angle reflection.

To protect personnel, all unit access panels and doors to the UV-C assembly and/or within view of the UV-C assembly shall include mechanical interlock switches to ensure that the UV-C assembly automatically de-energizes when any equipment access is opened. All UV-C devices shall fit and be installed within the unit cabinet. **Devices shall be hardwired, and UL labeled for the installation. Plug-in devices are not allowed per NEC.** The assembly shall be powered by 120v circuit or as required by the AC unit Manufacturer. Coordinate requirement and provide as required.

A redundant disconnect service switch shall be installed to provide a method to more specifically de-energize the UV-C lamp circuits prior to entering the lamp plenum. If not shown on the Electrical plans, the Mechanical Contractor shall provide a redundant disconnect service switch for the UV-C lighting device(s). The disconnect switch shall be a manual single pole, single throw switch mounted beside the Electricals' unit disconnect circuit to nearest receptacle circuit in the mechanical space with (2) #12 and (1) #12 Ground in 1/2" conduit.

**Provide warning signage on each access point to the UV-C lights and on each side of the unit.** Signage materials, methods and colors shall be as specified Section 15010, Part Identification. Signage shall read as follows: "***DANGER!! UV-C LIGHT SOURCE! DISCONNECT POWER BEFORE SERVICING UNIT OR UV-C LIGHTING!***" Do not use stick-on signage provided by the UV-C Manufacturer.

The redundant UV-C disconnect switch specified above shall be labeled with materials and methods specified in Section 15010, Part Identification. Signage shall read as follows: "***UNIT XX-YY UV-C LIGHTING REDUNDANT SHUT-OFF SWITCH.***" XX denotes the unit, and YY is the unit number or type, all as scheduled on the plans.

- 14.17. Unit Protection:** All equipment shall also be provided with equipment manufacturer factory installed surge protection and phase protection to insure against voltage unbalance, over/under voltage, phase loss, reversal, incorrect sequencing and rapid short cycling. Where manufacturer factory installed devices are not available, protection shall be provided for all 3-phase equipment utilizing ICM Controls Model 450 A Plus+ or equivalent. All single phase equipment with horsepower greater than

or equal to 1/8 HP shall be provided with protection utilizing ICM Controls Model ICM 492 or equivalent. Where phase protection device cannot be mounted within the respective equipment, provide a NEMA 4x or NEMA enclosure appropriate for the installation. The Contractor shall consult with the Owner's maintenance personnel and set up all programmable options based on the Owner's requirements, within the device's capabilities.

**14.18. Pad Mounted Supports:** Units shown on finished grade shall be anchored to the concrete pad. Concrete pads are specified under Division 2. Where concrete pads are not specified or not shown elsewhere, the Mechanical Contractor shall provide a minimum 4" thickness, 5,000-psi concrete pad with rounded edges and corners. Pad shall extend a minimum of 12" around three (3) sides of the unit and terminate at the building outside wall. Provide a strip of asphalt expansion joint between the concrete pad and the building exterior wall. Expansion joint shall be full width by full depth of concrete pad, 1" thickness, non-absorbing, self-sealing, ASTM D 994 compliant as manufactured by W.R. Meadows Inc. or approved equivalent.

**14.19. Warranty:** General warranties are specified in Section "General Mechanical Provisions". The Mechanical Contractor and equipment Manufacturer shall provide a non-prorated, total of five years replacement warranty for this equipment, to include all parts and components, belts, lubricants, compressors, refrigerant, etc., all labor and shipping of the items required to return the installation to its original operating condition.

The Mechanical Contractor shall be responsible for any parts, labor, etc. as specified above that is not provided by the equipment Manufacturer.

The Contractor and/or the Manufacturer shall respond within 24 hours upon notification that there has been a failure under the terms of the specified warranty. "Respond" shall mean having a Manufacturer certified technician onsite to evaluate the extent of the needed repairs/replacement and ordering of all items required for repair/replacement.

Shipping of the replacement compressor and any other related unit parts shall be via maximum of 2-day delivery if the unit is inoperable or cannot maintain a minimum indoor temperature of 78°F to the affected facility.

The warranty period shall begin on the date of substantial completion of the installation, as determined by the Architect, and shall continue for the full product warranty period specified above. Refer to Part, Air Cooled Condensing Units for condensing unit and compressor warranty.

## **PART 15. WALL MOUNTED DUCTLESS SPLIT HEAT PUMP SYSTEM UNIT (DHP)**

**15.1. General:** Provide ductless, wall mounted, split system type heat pump unit, equal to Trane/Mitsubishi Electric Series TPKA/TRUZ units with specified cooling capacity, complete with all accessories including wall hung evaporator blower unit, pad mounted outdoor condensing unit with lockable refrigerant charging valves, filter frame, filter, fixed, wall mounted, hardwired 7-day programmable, microprocessor electronic thermostat and control module, adjustable discharge louvers, factory installed heavy duty condensate pump (if drainage indicated on plumbing and HVAC plan is not gravity type), low ambient indoor coil thermistor, low ambient control to 14° F, outdoor microprocessor control, heavy duty metal condenser coil hail guard, sweat/brazed connection fittings from the Manufacturer's factory and other accessories required for a complete functional installation. Flare connections are not

allowed unless **specifically** required by the Manufacturer. Refer to Part Condensate Drainage Piping of this specification for drainage requirements. Compressors shall be warranted for 5 years.

All refrigerant circuit access ports located outdoors shall be fitted with color-coded, all brass, locking type tamper resistant caps. The locking caps shall be color coded for the refrigerant used. Caps shall be Novent Series 8668 for R-410 refrigerant with 86698 NV Multikey unlocking mechanism for R-410 refrigerant or equivalent by JB Industries Series Shield and DiversiTech Series Sentry. Provide Owner with minimum of six (6) spare keys.

- 15.2. Refrigerant Piping:** Coiled line sets and preinsulated line sets are not allowed. See other parts of 15700 for piping and insulation requirements. The equipment Manufacturer shall size the refrigerant piping for all the units and shall furnish all accessories and auxiliaries required for a complete and proper installation for the specific application shown on the drawings and the specified sequence of operation. **Piping connections shall be brazed/sweat connections** from the Manufacturer's factory. Flare connections are not allowed unless **specifically** required by the Manufacturer. Refer to Section Refrigerant Piping and Accessories for additional requirements.

All condensate and refrigerant piping that cannot be concealed in the walls in finished spaces shall be provided with Mitsubishi Line-Hide Linset Cover System. Note that this provision shall not be used to cover piping that can be otherwise concealed.

- 15.3. Condensate Pump:** Where gravity drainage is not indicated on the plans, condensate pumps for all indoor units shall be Blue Diamond, Series MaxiBlue or approved equivalent. Pump shall be thermally protected, up to 3.7 GPH flow rate, 23 ft. head, 15 ft. suction, self-priming, powered by the indoor unit and maximum 21-db sound level. Pump shall be provided with mounting feet, extension cables and multi-tank configuration as required. Mechanical Contractor to coordinate power requirements for pump, prior to bid, and provide as required.
- 15.4. Condensate Drainage:** Refer to Part Condensate Drainage Piping of this specification for drainage requirements.
- 15.5. Power Wiring Connection:** Coordinate wiring requirements (separate power for each indoor and outdoor unit or indoor unit powered by outdoor unit) with electrical plans and provide as required.
- 15.6. Pad Mounted Supports:** Concrete pad is specified under Division 2 for all units mounted on grade. Where concrete pads are not specified or shown, the Mechanical Contractor shall provide a minimum 4" thickness, 5,000 psi concrete pad with rounded edges and corners. Pad shall extend a minimum of 12" around three (3) sides of the unit and terminate at the building outside wall. Provide a strip of asphalt expansion joint between the concrete pad and the building exterior wall. Expansion joint shall be 1" thickness, non-absorbing, self-sealing, ASTM D 994 compliant and manufactured by W.R. Meadows Inc or equivalent.
- 15.7. Unit Protection:** All equipment shall also be provided with equipment manufacturer factory installed surge protection and phase protection to insure against voltage unbalance, over/under voltage, phase loss, reversal, incorrect sequencing and rapid short cycling. Where manufacturer factory installed devices are not available, protection shall be provided for all 3-phase equipment utilizing ICM Controls Model 450 A Plus+ or equivalent. All single phase equipment with horsepower greater than or equal to 1/8 HP shall be provided with protection utilizing ICM Controls Model ICM

492 or equivalent. Where phase protection device cannot be mounted within the respective equipment, provide a NEMA 4x or NEMA enclosure appropriate for the installation. The Contractor shall consult with the Owner's maintenance personnel and set up all programmable options based on the Owner's requirements, within the device's capabilities.

- 15.8. Warranty:** General warranties are specified in Section "General Mechanical Provisions". The Mechanical Contractor and equipment Manufacturer shall provide a non-prorated, total of five years replacement warranty for this equipment, to include all parts and components, belts, lubricants, compressors, refrigerant, etc., all labor and shipping of the items required to return the installation to its original operating condition.

The Mechanical Contractor shall be responsible for any parts, labor, etc. as specified above that is not provided by the equipment Manufacturer.

The Contractor and/or the Manufacturer shall respond within 24 hours upon notification that there has been a failure under the terms of the specified warranty. "Respond" shall mean having a Manufacturer certified technician onsite to evaluate the extent of the needed repairs/replacement and ordering of all items required for repair/replacement.

Shipping of the replacement compressor and any other related unit parts shall be via maximum of 2-day delivery if the unit is inoperable or cannot maintain a minimum indoor temperature of 78°F to the affected facility.

The warranty period shall begin on the date of substantial completion of the installation, as determined by the Architect, and shall continue for the full product warranty period specified above. Refer to Part, Air Cooled Condensing Units for condensing unit and compressor warranty.

- 15.9. Manufacturers:** Trane or equivalent by Mitsubishi, Lennox, LG or Carrier. **Trane is the basis of Design.**

## **PART 16. AUTOMATIC CONTROLS**

- 16.1. General:** Furnish and install a complete system of automatic temperature controls, as specified herein, as shown on the Drawings and as required for a complete installation. All temperature control equipment shall be of the electric type. All specified Sequences of Operation are subject to all equipment built-in safety requirements. Equipment safety requirements shall not be overridden.
- 16.2. Submittals:** The temperature control contractor shall submit a complete set of temperature control diagrams with written "sequence of operation" and factory-printed specification data sheets covering each control device proposed to be used for Engineer's review prior to installation of any equipment or part of system. Submittal data shall include a schedule of all devices to be installed.
- 16.3. Installation:** By trained and experienced mechanics. All work shall be done by an approved, independent HVAC Controls Contractor whose primary business is the installation and servicing of HVAC controls systems. The HVAC Controls Sub-Contractor shall have an adequate service facility to provide complete service and maintenance of the facility within 100 miles of the installation.

- 16.4. Identification:** Provide permanent nameplates for all control components and for all motor starters. Nameplates shall be engraved laminated plastic with letters sufficiently large to be legible under normal operating conditions. Refer to Section 15010, Identification for additional requirements, nameplate materials, etc.
- 16.5. Conduit, Controls Wiring and Instrumentation Cable:** The HVAC Controls Contractor shall be responsible for the furnishing and installation of a complete and functional system as specified, shown on the plans and as required to accomplish the specified sequences of operation.
- All HVAC control cabling and wiring shall be in EMT conduit (no “whips”) or on J-hooks. Above accessible lay-in ceilings, control wiring shall be installed on J-Hook assemblies. Above all hard, inaccessible ceilings, in all mechanical rooms and in areas with exposed structure (no ceilings), controls wiring shall be in conduit. Do not attach any wiring, cabling or conduits to refrigerant piping.
- Do not route control wiring through sleeves containing piping. Do not route control wiring through sleeves containing piping. **All control wiring penetrating any exterior wall, interior partition, floor, and similar construction shall be in EMT conduit. Through the base control wiring/conduit is not allowed.** EMT control conduit shall be as specified in the Electrical Division of the specifications and/or as shown on electrical drawings. Minimum HVAC Controls conduit size shall be 3/4” in size. All control conduit, power, relays, contactors, transformers, wiring, etc., required for a complete functional system as specified, shown on the plans, or as required to accomplish the specified sequences of operation, which is not shown or specified by the Electrical Division, shall be furnished and installed by the HVAC Controls Contractor. This shall include all power, interlock control wiring between the various components of the heating, ventilating and air conditioning system, lighting interlocks and all smoke detection system electrical wiring.
- Instrumentation cable shall be minimum AWG as specified or heavier AWG as recommended by the controls system Manufacturer.
- All thermostat and humidistat boxes shall be mounted 46” A.F.F. to the center of the box (ADA height). Where wall mounted CO<sub>2</sub> Sensors are indicated, they shall be mounted 58” A.F.F to the center of the box.
- 16.6. Space Thermostats:** Furnished by the equipment manufacturer. Space thermostats shall be 7-day programmable, microprocessor based, low voltage type with “Heating - Cooling” and fan “On-Off-Auto” switches sub-base. Coordinate thermostat requirements and options with Mechanical Contractor and provide as required to accomplish specified sequence of operation. Each thermostat shall have building power supply with transformer and battery back-up power.
- Provide hinged metal guard with rounded corners, lock and key for each thermostat.
- 16.7. Humidistats:** Heavy-duty industrial type. Provide metal guard as specified for thermostats. At his option, the unit Manufacturer/Controls Sub-Contractor may provide a combined thermostat/humidistat device. Coordinate requirement with the equipment manufacturer prior to bid and provide as required.
- 16.8. Condensate Drainage:** Refer to Part Condensate Drainage Piping of this specification for drainage requirements.
- 16.9. Motorized Dampers:** Equal to Ruskin Series CD-40 with heavy-duty Belimo actuator and 24-volt actuators. Coordinate power requirements with electrical contractor and

provide as required. Damper motors shall be located outside of the air stream. Provide weatherproof construction for outdoor installation of dampers and weatherproof enclosure.

**16.10. Typical Split System Heat Pump (HP) Unit or Packaged Heat Pump Unit (PHP)**

**Systems Sequence of Operation:** The control circuit for each unit shall be energized by its respective 7-day programmable thermostat. Occupied and unoccupied schedules shall be programmed by the Controls/Mechanical Contractor as desired by the Owner.

Thermostat shall be used to control heating and cooling. Provide for each heat pump unit an adjustable outdoor thermostat and wire to control the second stage of the auxiliary electric resistance heater.

Upon a call for the occupied schedule, the outside air damper shall open to its minimum scheduled outside air setpoint, and the unit shall start. Upon unit shutdown, the motorized outside air damper shall close.

Upon a call for the unoccupied schedule, the outside air damper shall remain closed, and the unit shall start.

Provide a space humidistat to override the cooling thermostat to provide for dehumidification.

Where specified or humidistats are indicated on the plans, units with a scheduled cooling capacity greater than or equal to 42 MBH shall utilize the specified hot gas reheat coil for reheat. Units with a specified cooling capacity of less than 42 MBH shall use the auxiliary resistance heater for reheat.

During dehumidification, the heat pump unit reversing valve shall be locked out to prevent switching to the heating mode and the compressor shall be commanded on for cooling. The space thermostat shall then modulate the refrigerant hot gas reheat coil valve or the first stage of the 2-stage heater, as specified above, to maintain the required space temperature.

**16.11. Exhaust Fan (EF) Controls:** Provide interlocks for certain fans as noted on fan schedule, including lighting interlocks if not shown on electrical.

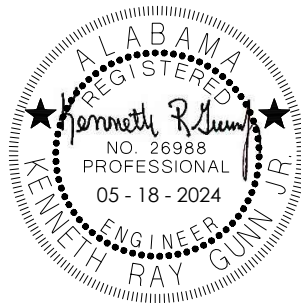
**16.12. Miscellaneous Controls:** Provide all other miscellaneous controls, wiring, dampers, valves, etc., as required for a complete functional control system.

**16.13. Service and Guarantee:** After completion of the installation, adjust all control equipment and place the complete system in operation subject to the review of the Engineer. Guarantee the control system to be free of defects and adequate to provide required control functions for a period of one year after acceptance of project. Provide free service and maintenance during the guarantee period.

**END OF SECTION**



DIVISION 16  
ELECTRICAL



---

Prepared by Kenneth R. Gunn Jr. P.E.

**SECTION 16100**  
**ELECTRICAL**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

---

**1.01. RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division-1 Specification sections apply to work specified in this section.

**1.02. QUALIFICATIONS OF ELECTRICAL CONTRACTORS:**

- A. Electrical contractor must be properly established as an electrical contractor by the State of Alabama. Electrical contractor shall have had previous experience in the satisfactory installation of at least three systems of this type and size in the State of Alabama.

**1.03. CODES, PERMITS AND INSPECTIONS:**

- A. Comply with applicable laws of the community, with latest edition of National Electrical Code (NEC), NFC 70, and the International Building Code (IBCC) or the edition adopted by the local authority having jurisdiction, where not in conflict with those laws, and with the service rules of the local utility company.
- B. Obtain and pay for all permits and deposits, and arrange for inspections as required.
- C. After completion of the work, submit certificate of final inspection and approval from the local electrical inspector, certifying that the installation complies with all regulations governing same.

**1.04. MATERIALS:**

- A. All materials shall be new, and UL approved where a standard has been established.
- B. Manufacturers' names and model numbers shown on the plans and in the specifications are given to indicate the type and general quality of items to be provided. Equal products by other manufacturers will be accepted.
- C. Material substitutions will be considered only when evidence of equality and suitability, satisfactory to the Architect/Engineer has been presented in writing, with samples if requested by the Architect/Engineer. All prior approvals must have the approval of the engineer of record at the offices of Gunn and Associates, P.C. located at 3102 Highway 14, Millbrook, AL 36054, Phone: 334-285-1273, Fax: 334-285-1274
- D. All proposed substitutions shall be approved in writing at least ten (10) days prior to the bid date.
- E. It shall be understood that the Architect/Engineer has the authority to reject any material or equipment used which is not specified or approved, or showing defects of manufacture or workmanship, before or after such material or equipment is installed.

**1.05. WORKMANSHIP:**

- A. Execute all work so as to present a neat and workmanlike appearance when completed.

**1.06. DESCRIPTION OF WORK:**

- A. Furnish all labor and materials required to complete the electrical work indicated on the drawings or herein specified. Major work included in Section 16 shall be:
- B. Arrange with the local utility companies for providing such electrical services as indicated on drawings or herein specified. Any charges for electrical service to the facility by the utility company shall be included in the contractor's bid price.
- C. Remove or relocate all electrical or electronic services located on or crossing through the project property, either above or below grade, which would obstruct the construction of the project or conflict in any manner with the complete project or any code pertaining thereto.
- D. Furnish and install a complete electrical light and power system including but not limited to the connection of all meters, switchboards, panelboards, circuit breakers, power outlets,

convenience outlets, lighting fixtures, switches, and/or other equipment forming part of the electrical system.

- E. Furnish and install a complete system of outlet boxes, face plates, conduit raceways, backboard, and service entrance conduit for the communications system.
- F. Furnish and install a complete system of outlet boxes, face plates, conduit raceways, Category 6 cables, backboards, patch panels, and fiber optic cables and patch panels for the Data System.
- G. Connect all electrical equipment whether furnished by this contractor or by others.
- H. Furnish and install all disconnect switches not included as an integral part of equipment.
- I. Furnish and install a complete Fire Alarm System compliant with applicable provisions of the International Building Code (IBC) and the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) Standard No. 72.
- J. Furnish and install a complete Intercom System.
- K. Complete the alterations, additions, and renovations to the electrical system in the existing building as specified herein or as shown on the drawings.
- L. Procure and pay for permits and certifications as required by local and state ordinances and Fire Underwriters certificate of inspection.
- M. Visit the site and determine conditions that affect this contract. Failure to do so will in no way relieve the Contractor of his responsibility under his contract.
- N. Submit to the Architect a certificate of final inspection from local and/or state inspection authorities.
- O. Establish and maintain temporary electrical services for construction purposes.

**1.07. DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS:**

- A. This Contractor shall examine drawings and Specifications relating to the work of all trades and become fully informed as to the extent and character of work required and its relation to all other work in the project prior to submission of bid and prior to the start of any construction.
- B. Drawings and Specifications shall be considered as complementary each to the other. What is called for by one shall be as binding as if called for by both. Where conflicts occur, secure clarification from the Architect in advance of bidding; otherwise incorporate the more stringent conditions into the bid price.
- C. Omissions from the drawings and specifications or the mis-description of details of work which are evidently necessary to carry out the intent of the drawings and specifications, or which are customarily performed, shall not relieve the Contractor from performing such omissions and details of work; they shall be performed as if fully and correctly set forth and described in the drawings and specifications
- D. The drawings indicate diagrammatically the extent, general character, and the approximate location of the work to be performed. In the interest of clearness, the work is not always shown to scale or exact location. Check all measurements, locations of conduit, fixtures, outlets, and equipment with the detailed architectural, structural, and mechanical drawings, and lay out work so as to fit in with ceiling grids, ductwork, sprinkler piping and heads, and other parts. Take finished dimensions at the job site in preference to using scale dimensions.
- E. Where the work is indicated but with minor details omitted, furnish and install the work complete so as to perform its intended functions.
- F. Where doubt arises as to the meaning of the plans and specifications, obtain the Architect's decision before proceeding with parts affected; otherwise assume liability for damage to other work and for making necessary corrections to work in question.
- G. Except as noted above, make no changes in or deviations from the work as shown or specified except on written order of the Architect.

**1.08. EXISTING CONDITIONS:**

- A. Before submitting a bid, visit the site and ascertain all existing conditions.

- B. Make such adjustments in work as are required by the actual conditions encountered.
- C. No consideration will be given after bid opening for alleged misunderstandings regarding utility connections, integration of work with existing system, or other existing conditions.

**1.09. SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Follow procedure outlined in Division 1.
- B. Submittals shall be bound together and shall include a coversheet indicating the following:
  - 1. Project name
  - 2. Trade contractor's name
  - 3. Supplier's name
  - 4. Name and phone number of supplier's contact person
  - 5. A list of each item submitted with manufacturers' names and model numbers.
- C. Within 20 days of award of contract and prior to beginning any work on the project submit six (6) copies of manufacturer's drawings/data sheets for the following items to the Engineer for review:
  - 1. Conductors
  - 2. Cable Pulling tensions. Provide cable pull tension calculations (lateral and longitudinal) on all underground cable runs over 150 feet for cables sized #1 and larger. Provide one line diagram indicating pulling tensions on each run and number and size of each pull box along anticipated route. Calculations shall include changes in direction or elevation of feeder runs.
  - 3. Wiring Devices
  - 4. Conduit Wrapping Tape
  - 5. Switchboards
  - 6. Panelboards
  - 7. Power system breaker coordination. Submit proper breaker settings recommendations with breaker coordination study.
  - 8. Contractor shall coordinate with mechanical/plumbing shop drawings prior to submitting power package to engineer. Adjust overcurrent devices accordingly.
  - 9. Disconnect Switches
  - 10. Dry Type Transformers
  - 11. Fire Stopping
  - 12. Lighting Control System:
  - 13. Lighting Fixtures (include photometric data for each fixture)
  - 14. Fixture Support Equipment
  - 15. Data/Telecommunications System
    - a. Cable
    - b. Equipment
    - c. Installer qualifications
    - d. Makes and Model Numbers of Testing Equipment to be used.
  - 16. Secondary Surge Arresters
  - 17. Transient Voltage Surge Suppressors(Surge Protective Devices)
  - 18. **Fire Alarm System: The fire alarm shop drawings shall bear the approval of the fire protection provider to insure all supervisory valves and flow switches are being monitored by the fire alarm system. Coordinate with fire protection provider prior to bid and provide monitoring for all supervisory valves and flow switches for entire building. Bid accordingly. Include conduit and cable layout, battery calculations, terminal to terminal wiring showing color code and wire numbers, and complete technical data on each system component. Additionally, the contractor or his/her fire alarm system vendor shall provide audibility calculations indicating compliance with all applicable provisions of NFPA 72 and the IBC. The contract drawings indicate a minimum design required to comply with applicable codes. However, since devices vary from manufacturer to manufacturer the contractor shall be responsible for furnishing any/all additional devices as required to provide audibility and visibility levels that comply with applicable sections of NFPA 72 and**

**IBC. Furnish the Owner one set of as built drawings at completion of the project. Provide a copy of the fire alarm contractor's Alabama State Fire Marshal's Permit with the submittals for approval.**

- 19. Intercom System
- 20. J-Hooks

- D. Submit samples upon request.
- E. The Contractor is responsible for verifying all quantities and for verifying and coordinating dimensional data with the available space for items other than the basis of design.
- F. Provide a 1/2"= 1'- 0" scale drawing of all electrical rooms containing more than a single panelboard section or containing a panelboard and other electrical and/or mechanical equipment. These drawings shall be submitted along with equipment data sheets.
- G. The contractor shall review and approve, or make appropriate notations on each item prior to submittal to the architect. Submittals without contractor's approval will be rejected.

**1.10. COORDINATION OF SERVICE WITH OTHER TRADES:**

- A. It shall be the responsibility of the Electrical Contractor to coordinate the electrical service characteristics to each piece of electrically operated equipment with all trades providing electrically operated equipment.
- B. Within ten (10) working days of notification to proceed with construction from the Architect, the Electrical Contractor shall notify, in writing, all trades providing electrically operated equipment the characteristic of the electrical power being supplied to each piece of electrically operated equipment.
- C. A copy of this notification shall be provided to the General Contractor and the Architect.
- D. Be informed as to equipment being furnished by other trades, but not liable for added cost incurred by equipment substitutions made by others which require excess electrical wiring or equipment above that indicated on drawings or specified.
- E. The contractor providing the equipment shall be responsible for the additional costs.

**1.11. PROGRESS OF WORK:**

- A. Schedule work as necessary to cooperate with other trades, Do not delay other trades. Maintain necessary competent mechanics and supervision to provide an orderly progression of the work.

**1.12. PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY DURING CONSTRUCTION:**

- A. Take all precautions necessary to provide safety and protection to persons and the protection of materials and property.
- B. Protect items of equipment from stains, corrosion, scratches, and any other damage or dirt, whether in storage, at job site or installed. No damaged or dirty equipment, lenses, or reflectors will be accepted.
- C. Live panelboards, outlets, switches, motor control equipment, junction boxes, etc., shall be protected against contact of live parts and conductors by personnel.

**1.13. CLEANING UP:**

- A. During the progress of work, keep the Owner's premises in a neat and orderly condition, free from accumulation of debris resulting from this work. At the completion of the work, remove all material, scrap, etc. not a part of this Contract.

**1.14. AS-BUILT DRAWINGS, AND OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS:**

- A. Prior to the Final Acceptance Inspection the Contractor shall turn over to the Architect one set of reproducible "as built" drawings, including corrected fire alarm system shop drawings, three (3) sets of all equipment catalogs and maintenance data, manufacturers' warranties, and three (3) sets of shop drawings on all equipment.

**1.15. TESTING:**

- A. Upon completion of the work, conduct a thorough test in the presence of Architect or his representative, and demonstrate that all systems are in perfect working condition.

**1.16. INSPECTIONS:**

- A. The contractor shall have all systems ready for operation and an electrician available to remove panel fronts, coverplates, fixture doors, etc., at the final inspection and any other scheduled inspections.
- B. It is the contractor's responsibility to have the job ready for inspections when they are scheduled. We will perform inspections as required by our contract. If project is not ready during inspection and requires a re-inspection by Gunn & Associates, then the contractor shall pay Gunn & Associates, P.C. for the re-inspection. The payment shall be made directly to Gunn & Associates, P.C. in the amount to be determined by engineer. Not to exceed \$1,500 for single re-inspection fee. Payment must be received by Gunn & Associates prior to scheduling re-inspection.
- C. Inspections for Temporary or Permanent Power required by any utility companies are not in our scope of work. If contractor needs Gunn & Associates, P.C. to perform inspections, contractor must include an inspection cost of \$1,500 per inspection in their base bid. Payment must be received by Gunn & Associates prior to scheduling inspection.

**1.17. DEMONSTRATION:**

- A. By on-off, stop-start operation, demonstrate to the Owner or his representative, the use, working, resetting, and adjusting of each and every system. Submit statement initialed by the Owner that such demonstration has been made.

**1.18. WARRANTY:**

- A. Warrant the entire electrical system in proper working order. Replace, without additional charge, all work or material that may develop defects (ordinary wear and tear or damage resulting from improper handling excepted) within a period of one year from date of final to general contractor. Provide the owner with two bound copies of all manufacturers' warranties.
- B. Data and Telecommunications system cabling shall be warranted for a minimum of 15 years.

**1.19. TEMPORARY SYSTEMS:**

- A. The Electrical Contractor shall be responsible for furnishing and installing equipment and materials necessary for providing electrical power and lighting where needed for the construction of the project.
- B. Electrical Contractor will be responsible for paying for and providing temporary construction power and lighting for entire job site. Coordinate with local jurisdictions and utility companies and pay all fees necessary to get temporary power to the job site. General Contractor shall be responsible for all monthly utility cost for duration of project or date of substantial completion.

**1.20. SERVICE INTERRUPTION CLEARANCE WITH OWNER:**

- A. Before submitting a proposal, check with the Owner concerning interruption of service to the existing electrical systems. No interruption shall be made except at such time and for such duration as approved by the Owner. The Contractor's bid shall include all necessary over-time and weekend work.

**1.21. DEFINITIONS:**

- "AWG" - American Wire Gauge
- "ADA" - Americans with Disabilities Act
- "As required" - Any and all items required to complete the installation of an item so as to perform its intended function.
- "Circuiting" - Conductors, raceways, raceway fittings, and associated hardware.
- "EMT" - Electrical Metallic Tubing, "thin wall"
- "IBC" - International Building Code
- "Install" - furnish, install, and make all necessary connections to and/or for the item(s) indicated or specified.

“NEC” - National Electrical Code, ANSI/NFPA 70, latest edition or the edition adopted by the authority having jurisdiction.

“Necessary” - Any and all items required to complete the installation of an item so as to perform its intended function.

“NEMA”- National Electrical Manufacturers’ Association

“NFPA” - National Fire Protection Association

“PVC Conduit” – Rigid Nonmetallic Polyvinyl Chloride conduit

“RGS Conduit” – Rigid galvanized steel conduit

“UL” - Underwriters’ Laboratories, Inc.

## **PART 2 - MATERIALS**

---

### **2.01. GENERAL:**

- A. This section includes all basic materials for raceways, fittings, busways, conductors, panelboards, switchboards, lighting fixtures and accessories, etc., as required for a complete installation.
- B. All materials shall be new and listed by the Underwriters Laboratories. Material substitutions will be considered only when evidence of equality and suitability, satisfactory to the Architect has been presented in writing, with samples if requested by the Architect.
- C. It shall be understood that the Architect/Engineer has the authority to reject any material or equipment used which is not specified or approved, or showing defects of manufacture or workmanship, before or after such material or equipment is installed.

### **2.02. CONDUITS:**

- A. Rigid Metal (Galvanized Steel-RGS) Conduit: Rigid metal conduit shall be mild steel piping, galvanized inside and outside, and conform to ASA Specification 080.1 and Underwriters’ Laboratories Specifications. By Sprang, Republic, Wheatland, Triangle or Pittsburgh.
- B. Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC): IMC shall be hot dipped galvanized inside and outside and manufactured in accordance with U.L. Standard #6 or #1242. By Allied or approved equal.
- C. Electrical Metallic Tubing (EMT): EMT shall be high grade steel electro-galvanized outside and lacquer or enamel coating inside and conform to ASA Specifications 080.1 and Underwriters’ Laboratories Specifications. By Sprang, Republic, Wheatland, Triangle or Pittsburgh.
- D. Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit (PVC): PVC conduit where exposed shall be high impact Schedule 80; below ground and below or in slab PVC shall be of high impact Schedule 40 PVC and shall conform to Underwriters’ Laboratories Standard UL-651. By Carlon, Kraley Pittsburgh, R.G. Sloan or Southwestern.
- E. Rigid Aluminum: Rigid Aluminum conduit shall be manufactured from 6063, t-1 aluminum alloy and shall meet the requirements of Federal Spec. WW-C-540c and ANSI C80.5 and shall be U.L. listed in accordance with UL-6. Equal to products by V.A.W. of America.

### **2.03. COUPLINGS, FITTINGS, AND CONNECTORS:**

- A. RGS & IMC: By Appleton, Crouse-Hinds, Efcor, O-Z/Gedney, Raco, or Republic.
- B. EMT: EMT fittings shall be all steel type setscrew or insulated throat compression type. Pressure indented or slip fit type will not be accepted. All connectors to be insulated. By Appleton, Efcor, Raco Steel City, or Thomas & Betts.
- C. PVC: PVC fittings shall be of high impact PVC Schedule 40 or Schedule 80 to match the installed conduit. Joints shall be made with PVC solvent cement as recommended by manufacturer. By Pittsburgh, R.G. Sloan or Carlon.
- D. Rigid Aluminum: Fittings used with Rigid Aluminum conduit shall be formed of the same alloy as the conduit or shall be copper free cast aluminum unless specifically indicated otherwise.

### **2.04. CONDUIT BODIES:**

- A. Conduit bodies shall be shall be malleable iron except in kitchen, dishwashing, and waste water treatment areas conduit bodies shall be copper free cast aluminum with stamped aluminum covers.
- B. Covers shall be screw retained with wedge nut or threaded body. Covers on bodies installed outdoors shall be approved and rated for installation outdoors.
- C. Bodies shall comply with NEC 370 and 373.
- D. RGS & IMC: By Appleton, Crouse-Hinds, Efcor, O-Z/Gedney, Raco, or Republic.
- E. Conduit cannot be used as ground. Provide separate insulated green grounding wire.

**2.05. BUSHINGS:**

- A. Bushings up to and including 1" shall have a tapered throat.
- B. Bushings 1-1/4" and larger shall be the insulating type.
- C. Grounding bushings shall be specification grade insulated grounding type bushings with tin plated copper grounding saddles and shall be equal to O-Z/Gedney Type BLG or HBLG.
- D. Bushings shall be zinc plated malleable iron or copper free cast aluminum.
- E. Bushings for terminating Data, Telecommunications, control, CATV, and similar conduits above ceilings and at backboards may be PVC or Polyethylene insulating bushings equal to those manufactured by Arlington Industries and Bridgeport Fittings.

**2.06. EXPANSION FITTINGS:**

- A. Conduit Expansion Joints shall be UL Listed.
- B. Expansion joints in rigid metal conduits shall consist of a threaded malleable iron body, pressure bushing, watertight packing, pressure ring, gasket, insulating bushing, and external grounding jumper, and shall be equal to O-Z Gedney Type AX with Type BJ bonding jumper.
- C. Expansion joints for EMT conduit shall be same as above with additional EMT couplings and connectors, and shall be equal to O-Z Gedney Type TX with Type BJ bonding jumper.
- D. Expansion joints in PVC conduit shall be equal to Carlon Series E945.
- E. Expansion joints shall provide a minimum of 4" of conduit movement.

**2.07. BELOW GRADE THRU WALL WATER SEALS:**

- A. Thru wall water seals for conduits penetrating exterior below grade concrete walls shall be seal systems by O-Z/Gedney or The Metraflex Company.
- B. Thru wall water seals for conduits penetrating exterior below grade concrete walls shall be Metraseal thru wall water seals by The Metraflex Company.

**2.08. CONDUIT ACCESSORIES:**

- A. Conduit clamps and supports for metallic conduit shall be galvanized steel by Efcor, Steel City, or Mineralac. Conduit fittings by Appleton, Crouse-Hinds, O-Z/Gedney, Pyle-National or approved equal.
- B. Conduit clamps and supports for nonmetallic conduit shall be nonmetallic high impact PVC by Carlon, Pittsburg, or Sloan.
- C. Conduit clamps for aluminum conduits shall be stainless steel or cast copper free aluminum with stainless steel fasteners.

**2.09. FLEXIBLE CONDUIT:**

- A. Liquidtight flexible metal conduit:
  - 1. Neoprene-jacketed liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
  - 2. Equal to Anaconda Sealite.

**2.10. ELECTRICAL TAPES:**

- A. General use electrical tape shall be 8 mil (.008") thick, minimum, premium grade, pressure sensitive, flame retardant, vinyl electrical tape meeting UL 510, ASTM-D-3005, and MIL-I-24391C. The tape shall be equal to 3M No. 88 or Plymouth Premium 85 CW.



- B. Rubber tape used as primary tape shall be a 30 mil (.030") thick, minimum self-amalgamating, low voltage rubber tape rated for use through 600 V. Rubber tape shall be equal to 3M No. 2150 or Plymouth 122 Rubber Tape.
- C. Electrical filler tape shall be a 125 mil (.125") thick, minimum, self-amalgamating, low voltage insulating compound rated for use through 5 kV. Filler tape shall be equal to 3M SCOTCHFILL or Plymouth 125 Electrical Filler Tape.

**2.11. PIPE WRAPPING TAPE:**

- A. Pipe wrapping tape shall be a 10 mil (.010") thick, minimum, pressure sensitive, vinyl tape manufactured for pipe wrapping applications.
- B. The tape shall be UV, bacteria, and fungus resistant.
- C. The manufacturer's name and tape type shall be printed on the back of the tape.
- D. Pipe wrapping tape shall be equal to Plymouth Rubber Co. PLYWRAP 11, or 3M No. 50.

**2.12. WIRE NUTS:**

- A. Wire nuts for conductor splicing shall be winged type connectors with a square, plated steel spring and flame retardant thermoplastic shell.
- B. The connector shall be rated for the number and size conductors being connected.
- C. The Wire Nuts shall be rated for 105°C. And UL 486C listed.
- D. Wire nuts shall be equal to connectors by Ideal/Buchanan, 3M/Scotch, or T & B,

**2.13. SPLIT BOLT CONNECTORS:**

- A. Split bolt connectors for splicing conductors shall be UL 486A listed, shall be tin plated copper, and shall have a hexagonal head and nut.
- B. Split bolt connectors for conductors size AWG #4 and larger shall have a serrated spacer bar between conductors.
- C. Split bolt connectors for splicing conductors AWG #12 through #6 shall be equal to IlSCO Type SEL and Type SK for AWG #4 and larger conductors.

**2.14. MULTI-TAP CONNECTORS:**

- A. Multi-tap connectors shall be insulated type
- B. Multi-tap connectors shall be rated for the conductor sizes indicated on the drawings.
- C. The connectors shall be provided for the number of conductors indicated, including any future taps shown, plus a minimum of one additional tap.
- D. Multi-tap connectors shall be equal to IlSCO Type PCT or Type PED-CP.

**2.15. WATERPROOF WIRE JOINTS:**

- A. Splices made below grade shall be made connectors, UL listed as waterproof, for below grade applications.
- B. Waterproof Twist On Connectors for Up to 2#6 W/1#12 tap Conductors: Single piece wire nut pre-filled with silicone sealant. Sealant shall be rated for 45-400 degrees F. Connectors shall have same insulation rating as conductors. Sizes shall be available for connecting up to 2 #6 w1#12 tap conductors. Connectors shall be UL listed as waterproof for below grade applications and equal to Ideal Buchanan B-Cap Twist and Seal Wire Connectors, King Safety Products, Tyco/Raychem GelCap SL, or equal.
- C. Waterproof Stub Splice Kit for up to #2/0 Conductors: Kit containing connector block, outer waterproof sleeve, and lubricant. Sleeve shall have same insulation rating as conductors. Kit shall be rated for feeder wire sizes #14 through #2/0 and tap wire sizes of #14 through #6. Connectors shall be UL listed as waterproof for below grade applications and equal to Tyco/Raychem GelCap SL.
- D. Waterproof In-line Splice Kit for up to #2/0 Conductors: Kit containing connector block, outer waterproof sleeve, and lubricant. Sleeve shall have same insulation rating as conductors. Kit

shall be rated for wire sizes #6 through #350 kcm. Connectors shall be equal to Tyco/Raychem GTAP.

- E. Waterproof Splice Kit for Conductors above #2/0: Kit containing connector block, outer waterproof sleeve, and lubricant. Sleeve shall have same insulation rating as conductors. Kit shall be rated for wire sizes #14 through #2/0. Connectors shall be equal to Tyco/Raychem GHFC.

**2.16. PLASTIC MARKING TAPE FOR MARKING UNDERGROUND CABLES AND CONDUITS:**

- A. Plastic marking tape shall be acid and alkali-resistant polyethylene film, 6 inches wide with minimum thickness of 0.004 inch.
- B. Tape shall have a minimum strength of 1750 psi lengthwise and 1500 psi crosswise.
- C. The tape shall be manufactured with integral wires, foil backing or other means to enable detection by a metal detector when the tape is buried up to 3 feet deep.
- D. The tape shall be of a type specifically manufactured for marking and locating underground utilities.
- E. The metallic core of the tape shall be encased in a protective jacket or provided with other means to protect it from corrosion.
- F. Tape color shall be as specified in the table below and shall bear a continuous printed inscription describing the specific utility.

Red:	Electric
Orange:	Data, Telephone, Television,

**2.17. FIRE STOPPING:**

- A. Fire sealant shall be intumescent caulk, putty, sheet and/or wrap/strip as required to attain the proper rating.
- B. Caulk shall be equal to 3M CP25 N/S and/or S/L.
- C. Putty shall be equal to 3M Fire Barrier Moldable Putty.
- D. Sheet equal to 3M CS195.
- E. Wrap/strip equal to 3M FS195.
- F. Equal products by Dow Corning, Hilti, and Metacaulk will be accepted.

**2.18. SPACERS FOR CONCRETE ENCASED ELECTRICAL DUCTS:**

- A. Spacers shall be interlocking high impact plastic assemblies, which provide horizontal and vertical spacing, and hold the ducts and re-bar, where applicable, in place.
- B. The spacers shall be equal to Carlon Snap-Lok Spacers.

**2.19. JUNCTION BOXES (THRU 4-11/16"):**

- A. Sheet Metal: To be standard type with knockouts made of hot dipped galvanized steel, By Steel City, Raco, Appleton or approved equal.
- B. Cast: To be type FS, FD, JB, GS or SEH as required for application.

**2.20. JUNCTION AND PULL BOXES (LARGER THAN 4-11/16"):**

- A. Shall be cast metal for all below grade exterior use and where indicated on plans. All other shall be oil tight, JIC boxes not less than 16 gauge, equal to Hoffman type "CH" boxes.

**2.21. PULL BOXES:**

- A. Galvanized sheet metal screw-cover type with UL label as produced by Austin, B & C Metal Stamping Company, E-Box, Hoffman, Wiegmann, or approved equal.

**2.22. JUNCTION AND TERMINAL BOXES FOR AUXILIARY SYSTEMS:**

- A. Junction boxes for auxiliary system circuiting splicing shall be formed of galvanized steel.
- B. Boxes shall have hinged front, locking door(s).
- C. Metal back plates shall be provided for mounting terminal strips or other devices.

- D. Screw terminal strips shall be provided with a minimum of 25 percent spare terminals.
- E. Boxes shall be sized to accommodate the terminal blocks and conductors, providing code required bending space.
- F. Boxes for auxiliary systems shall be manufactured by Austin, E-Box, Hoffman, or Wiegmann.
- G. Provide complete back boxes for all surface mounted devices. Back box shall have knockout on top and bottom as needed. Surface mounted junction boxes with devices mounted to it will not be accepted. Wiremold boxes will be accepted.

**2.23. AUXILIARY GUTTERS (WIRING TROUGHS):**

- A. Gutters shall be of sizes shown and/or required by the NEC (whichever is larger), constructed of code gauge, galvanized sheet steel, painted ANSI 61 gray.
- B. Gutters shall be UL listed and shall be of NEMA 3R construction in wet or damp locations or shall be as indicated on the drawings.
- C. Gutters shall be as produced by Austin, B & C Metal Stamping Company, E-Box, Hoffman, Wiegmann, or approved equal.

**2.24. STRUT SYSTEM FOR SUPPORT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT:**

- A. Strut shall be 1-5/8" except where heavier strut is required to support the load, for rigidity, or where specifically indicated otherwise.
- B. Cold-formed steel, ASTM A 570 or A 446 GR A.
- C. Stainless Steel Strut: Type 304, ASTM A 240.
- D. Hot Dipped Galvanized Steel Strut: Zinc coated after manufacturing operations are complete, ASTM A 123 or A 153
- E. Electro-galvanized Steel Strut: Electrolytically zinc coated, ASTM B 633 Type III SC 1.
- F. Fittings: Same material as strut, ASTM A 575, A 576, A 36, A 635, or A 240.
- G. Zinc Primer: As recommended by strut manufacturer.
- H. Strut Systems shall be as manufactured by B-Line, Erico, Globe, Kindorf, MasterStrut, Power Strut, T&B SuperStrut, or Unistrut.

**2.25. OUTLET BOXES:**

- A. General: Except as noted, boxes shall be standard hot dipped galvanized steel at least 1-1/2" deep, of metal at least 1/16" thick; sized to accommodate devices and conductors per NEC Article 370; product of Appleton, National, Steel City, or approved equal.
- B. Ceiling and Wall Bracket Outlets: 4" octagonal boxes with plaster rings appropriate for finish surface.
- C. Typical boxes (for switches, receptacles and auxiliary systems):
  - 1. 4" square boxes ganged as required. Box volume shall be in accordance with NEC Section 370 – provide extensions as required.
  - 2. Furnish with 3/4" plaster rings where employed in plaster, 1" tile covers where used in ceramic tile, 1" plaster rings where set in exposed concrete, and otherwise appropriate for surface and construction.
  - 3. Use 4-11/16" square, 2-1/8" deep boxes where more than 10 conductors enter the boxes. Provide extensions as required to provide volume per NEC.
  - 4. Where existing walls are furred out with shallow hatch channel and sheet rock then the contractor will be required to use a shallow junction as required.
  - 5. All exposed junction boxes for receptacles, communications devices, switches, and fire alarm devices shall be provided with back boxes. Do not use standard junction boxes when exposed. No exposed edges of devices plates will be allowed. No knockouts on the side of the box. Boxes shall be similar to Wiremold 500 & 700 Series.
- D. Boxes in Exposed (or Thin-Coat Plastered) Masonry: Where conduit connections permit, employ solid flush-type, square-cornered, masonry boxes with turned-in device holders; otherwise employ typical box with 1-1/2" square-cut tile cover.

- E. Multiple Outlet Floor Boxes:
  1. Floor boxes shall be multi-outlet type providing space for four separate services for duplex outlets and/or Data/Telecommunications outlets.
  2. Floor boxes shall be provided with covers equal to Walker S36CCTCAL(BK)(BS) flush access hatch with carpet trim for carpeted floors and S36BBTCAL(BK)(BS) trim for vinyl covered floors.
  3. Floor boxes shall be provided with 20 amp duplex grounding duplex receptacles, isolated ground receptacles, and Data/Telecommunications outlets as indicated on the drawings.
  4. Data outlets shall be modular type capable of housing up to six (6) Cat 5e jacks. Boxes shall be provided with two (2) active jacks unless indicated otherwise on the drawings. Provide with communications bracket(s) equal to Wiremold #RFB4-LPB.
  5. Provide blank plates for all unused openings.
  6. The boxes shall be equal to what is specified on drawings.
- F. Boxes used with Exposed Conduit: 4" square utility boxes.
- G. Exterior Boxes: Galvanized cast-metal boxes, Crouse-Hinds Type FS or FD as appropriate. Make weatherproof with gasketed covers. Equal products by Appleton, Killark, O-Z/Gedney, or approved equal will be accepted.
- H. Exterior Boxes: All receptacle boxes shall be recessed unless specifically called out not to be. This includes exterior receptacles in all masonry type walls including but not limited to Pre-cast, Brick, Block, etc.
- I. Boxes used with Recessed Lighting Fixtures: Provide a 4" square box with blank cover.
- J. Boxes in Dry Wall Construction: Sectional type switch boxes at least 2-1/2" deep may be used instead of typical box (but not where dry wall finish is applied over masonry back-up and not where multi-gang devices occur).
- K. Boxes installed exposed in kitchen and dishwashing areas shall be copper free cast aluminum with gasketed cast coverplates, without lift cover, unless specifically indicated otherwise on the drawings.

## 2.26. CONDUCTORS AND CABLES:

- A. Power Conductors
  1. The ungrounded conductors (phase) and the grounded conductor (neutral) of each voltage system being installed shall be phase identified the full length of the conductor with the color characteristics manufactured in the insulation of cable from the cable manufacturer. Required color cable will then be installed for the specific voltage system as identified in these specifications.
  2. All conductors shall be copper with not less than 98% conductivity and with current carrying capacities per N.E.C. for 60°C. for sizes through #1 AWG and 75°C for conductors #1/0 and above.
  3. All conductors shall have manufacturer's name, type insulation, and conductor size imprinted on jacket at regular intervals.
  4. Conductors of size #10 and smaller shall be solid copper conductors with 600 volt type THHN or THWN insulation.
  5. Conductors of size #8 and larger shall be stranded copper conductors with 600 volt type THHN or THWN insulation.
  6. All motor branch circuits, HVAC, and plumbing equipment shall be stranded copper conductors with 600 volt type RHH-RHW insulation.
  7. All conductors installed in conduit below grade shall be rated for wet location.
  8. Manufacturer: Conductors shall be products of GE, Triangle, Phelps- Dodge, Anaconda, Rome, Habirshaw, General Cable, or approved equal.
  9. Fixture Wire:
    - a. Conductors feeding into fixtures, other than fluorescent fixtures, of 300 watts or less shall be #14, 200°C., type SF-2, for fixtures of more than 300 watts #12, 200 °C., type SF-2 shall be used.
    - b. Conductors pulled through fluorescent fixtures shall have Type TFN or TFFN fixture wire, rated 90oC.

- c. Conductors shall be by Dodge, Anaconda, Rome General Cable or Southwire.
- B. Control and Signal Wire: Conductor type TFF, minimum size #16 copper and fully color-coded, shall be used. Conductors shall be by Anaconda, Houston Wire & Cable, General Cable, Phelps Dodge, Rome, or Southwire.

**2.27. WIRING DEVICES:**

- A. General: Manufacturer's and catalog numbers listed are used to establish style, type and quality. Unless otherwise indicated on drawings, all wiring devices shall be UL listed, side-wired specification grade.
- B. Manufacturers: Equal devices by Hubbell, Leviton, and P & S will be accepted. All devices shall have plaster ears.
- C. Wall switches: 120/277V, 20A, AC, flush enclosed, quiet type switches with thermoplastic body and polycarbonate toggles. Switches shall meet Federal Specification WS-896. Switches shall be, Hubbell 1200 series, Leviton 1200 series, or P & S PS20AC series single pole, 2-pole, 3-way, or 4-way as required.
- D. Duplex receptacles (general purpose): 125V/20A flush duplex back and side wired hard use specification grade receptacles, NEMA 5-20R configuration, with nylon face and body, grounding terminal and break-off fins for converting to 2-circuit use. Receptacles shall meet Federal Specification WC-596. Color to match wall switches. Equal to P & S 5362, Hubbell CR20, or Leviton 5362.
- E. Tamper Resistant Duplex receptacles,: 125V/20A flush duplex, hospital grade, tamper resistant receptacles, NEMA 5-20R configuration, with nylon face and body, grounding terminal. Receptacles shall meet Federal Specification WC-596. Color to match wall switches. Equal to P & S TR62-H, or Hubbell HBL8300SGDuplex combination 125/250 volt receptacles: receptacles shall be 20 amp, combination 125 volt(NEMA 5-20R)/250 volt(NEMA 6-20R) grounding receptacles.
- F. Ground Fault Circuit Interrupt Receptacles: 125V/20 amp ground fault circuit interrupting receptacle for personnel protection, NEMA 5-20R configuration, Equal to Hubbell #GF5362, Leviton #6599, or P & S 2091. Each GFCI symbol on drawing indicates a GFCI type receptacle. Do not through-wire non-GFCI receptacles from GFCI receptacles where ground fault protection is required. All exterior receptacles shall be ground fault interrupting type with weatherproof coverplates.
- G. Faceless Ground Fault Circuit Interrupter: 125V, 20 amp ground fault circuit interrupter UL listed for personnel protection, equal to Hubbell GFR5350 Series, Leviton 6490, or Pass & Seymour Series 2081.
- H. Single Receptacles: Flush Bakelite receptacles with side wiring and grounding terminal, voltage, amperage, and configuration as required for circuit indicated.
- I. Multioutlet Assemblies, Strip outlets, 15 amp, 125V, grounded, outlets on 6" centers, equal to Wiremold V20GBx06. Where x = length indicated on the drawings.
- J. Plugs for kitchen equipment to be plugged into wall mounted straight blade receptacles shall be angled type.
- K. Wiring devices shall be of color as directed by Architect. Devices must be available in ivory, brown, black, white, and gray. Devices connected to the emergency generator shall be red in color.
- L. All projects classified as an elementary school type facility shall be provided with tamper proof type receptacles.
- M. Pin and Sleeve Devices:
  - 1. Pin and Sleeve Devices shall be watertight plugs and receptacles of the ratings shown on the legend and/or schedules.
  - 2. Devices shall be listed to UL Standard 498 and UL Classified to IEC Standards 309-1 and 309-2.
  - 3. Devices shall be furnished as matching plugs and receptacles with cast aluminum angled backbox.

4. Devices shall be manufactured by Hubbell, Leviton, or P&S.

#### **2.28. DEVICE PLATES:**

- A. Type appropriate for the associated wiring device, equal to Sierra Stainless Steel Smoothline. Device plates shall be of color as directed by Architect. Devices must be available in ivory, brown, black, white, and stainless steel. Provide single plate of proper gang where more than one device occurs (do not gang dimmers with rocker switches).
- B. Damp Location: 20 amp, 125 and 250 volt receptacles - Covers shall be weatherproof when plugs are not installed, provide cast aluminum weatherproof coverplates with single lift cover and gasket equal to Hubbell CWP26H.
- C. Wet Locations, 20 amp, 125 and 250 volt receptacles: Covers shall be weatherproof In-Use covers, rated NEMA 3R when in use and shall be constructed of cast aluminum with sealing gasket. Covers shall be equal to products by Hubbell, Leviton, Steel City, T & B, and Taymac.
- D. Coverplates for exposed cast aluminum boxes in kitchen and dishwashing areas shall be cast coverplates, without lift cover, unless specifically indicated otherwise on the drawings.
- E. Color: Wiring device cover plates shall be of color as indicated on drawings or directed by Architect. Devices must be available in ivory, brown, black, white, gray, and stainless steel.
- F. Jumbo and Mini-Jumbo plates will not be accepted.

#### **2.29. OCCUPANCY SENSORS AND ACCESSORIES FOR LIGHTING CONTROL:**

- A. Occupancy sensors shall be totally passive in nature, in that the sensors shall not emit or interfere with any other electronic device, or human characteristic. Sensors shall be dual technology, i.e.: Passive Infrared (PIR) and Microphonic.
- B. PIR shall initiate an "on" condition and the PIR or microphones shall maintain the load "on".
- C. Upon detection of human activity by the detector the lights shall come on and a time delay shall be initiated to maintain the lights on for a pre-set time period. The time delay shall be factory set and field adjustable from 30 seconds to 20 minutes.
- D. All devices shall be factory warranted for 5 years.
- E. All sensors shall be low voltage, 12 to 24 volts and shall work in conjunction with remote power packs.
- F. Occupancy sensors shall be as shown on drawings.

#### **2.30. GROUNDING:**

- A. Ground Rods shall be  $\frac{3}{4}$ " x 10' copperclad steel.
- B. All grounding conductors shall be copper.

#### **2.31. LIGHTING FIXTURES**

- A. General:
  1. All Lighting Fixtures shall be UL labeled.
  2. Fixtures installed in fire rated ceilings or ceiling assemblies shall be rated for installation in fire rated ceilings.
  3. Furnish fixtures complete with lamps, ballasts and internal wiring factory installed.
  4. Fixtures shall be furnished as specified herein and as shown on the fixture schedule on the plans. Catalog numbers shown are for basic units; furnish all fixtures complete with flexible connections, trim, plaster frames, and all other appurtenances necessary to the installation.
  5. Substitutions: Reference to a specific manufacturer's product is made to establish a standard of quality and design, and to give a general description of the basic type desired. Equal products by the listed manufacturers will be accepted subject to the Engineer's approval.
  6. It shall be the responsibility of the contractor to verify the exact type ceiling, type fixture mounting and trim, and recessing depth of all recessed fixtures prior to purchasing any fixtures.

7. Stems on stem mounted fixtures shall be approved ball aligner type, swivel 30 degrees from vertical with swivel below canopy. Paint stems the same color as the fixture trim. Stems in unfinished areas may be unpainted conduit.
  8. High and low bay fixtures shall be equipped with safety chains. Every suspended fixture in gymnasium shall have safety chains.
  9. Fixtures installed on the exterior of buildings, on poles, or on pedestals shall be rated for wet location installation.
  10. All high bay fixtures installed in gymnasiums, hangars or similar use areas shall be provided with wire guard.
- B. Emergency and Exit lighting Fixtures shall be equipped with a Self-testing module which shall perform the following functions:
1. Continuous monitoring of charger operation and battery voltage with visual indication of normal operation and of malfunction.
  2. Monthly discharge cycling of battery with monitoring of transfer circuit function, battery capacity and emergency lamp operation with visual indication of malfunction. The battery capacity test may be conducted by using a synthetic load.
  3. Manual test switch to simulate a discharge test cycle.
  4. Modules shall have low voltage battery disconnect (LVD) and brownout protection circuit.
  5. All lighting fixtures and exit signs shown as emergency on drawings shall be provided with a minimum 1100 lumen emergency battery ballast capable of 90 minutes of illumination. No exceptions.
- C. Lamps: Type and size as scheduled, GE, Osram/Sylvania, Phillips, or approved equal.
1. LED bulb shape shall comply with ANSI C79.1. Lamp base shall comply with ANSI C81.61.
  2. Minimum CRI of LED lamps shall be 80 with a color temperature as shown on drawings.
  3. Rated life of all LED lamping shall be a minimum of 50,000 hours failure to 75% of lamp output.
  4. LED lamping shall be capable of dimming from 100% to 0%.

### **2.32. PANELBOARDS:**

- A. General: All panelboards shall be dead front type manufactured and installed in accordance with UL and NEMA standards, and shall carry a UL label. Ampacity, service voltage, and configuration shall be as indicated on drawings. Panelboards shall be clearly marked with ampacity, voltage, and maximum short current ratings.
- B. Manufacturer: Panelboards shall be as manufactured by Cutler-Hammer, GE, Square D, or Siemens.
- C. Enclosure:
1. Panelboard enclosures shall be as indicated on drawings.
  2. Unless otherwise indicated, all boxes shall be constructed of galvanized (or equivalent rust-resistant) sheet steel with hinged front trim.
  3. Fronts shall be door in door with two lockable latches to open door, lock, and latch. All panelboard locks shall be keyed alike. Piano hinges with screw latches will not be permitted.
  4. Fronts shall be finished with gray baked enamel over a rust-inhibiting phosphatized coating.
  5. All dual section panels shall be equal in size. Sub-Feed circuit breakers will not be allowed to feed second section.
  6. Sub-Feed circuit breakers feeding additional panels or equipment shall be branch mounted.
  7. Provide permanent numbering of the panelboards. Stickers are not considered permanent.
  8. Any panelboard schedule that indicates more than 42 circuits shall be provided in two equally sized panelboards.
  9. Main circuit breakers shall be centered mounted. Main breaker cannot be mounted on buss bars with other circuit breakers.
- D. Buss Assembly:

1. Bussing shall be copper.
  2. The buss assembly A.I.C. shall be rated as indicated on drawings. Ratings shall be established by heat rise tests, in accordance with UL Standard 67.
  3. All bussing shall accept bolt on circuit breakers.
  4. Current carrying parts of all bussing shall be plated. In lighting and receptacle panels, bussing shall be designed for connection to the branch circuit breakers in the phase sequence format. Distribution panelboards shall be fully bussed.
  5. Ground bars shall be provided in all panelboards.
  6. Neutral bar shall be fully sized with lugs suitable for incoming and outgoing conductors.
  7. Provide insulated ground buss where indicated on the panelboard schedules.
- E. Circuit Breakers:
1. Circuit breakers shall be quick-make, quick-break, thermal magnetic, molded case, bolt on type.
  2. Circuit Breakers shall be numbered and arranged as indicated on the panelboard schedules and/or single line wiring diagrams. Numbers shall be permanently attached to trim.
  3. SWD Circuit Breakers: Single pole circuit breakers rated 15 and 20 amperes and intended to switch 277 volts or less fluorescent lighting loads shall be UL rated for switching duty and shall be marked "SWD".
  4. HACR Circuit Breakers: Circuit breakers 60 amperes or below, 240 volts, 1-, 2-, or 3-pole, intended to protect multi-motor and combination-load installations involved in heating, air conditioning, and refrigerating equipment shall be UL listed as HACR type and shall be marked "Listed HACR Type."
  5. Circuit breakers serving fire alarm systems, dedicated emergency/exit lighting circuits, and area of rescue communications systems shall be equipped with a screw-on, mechanical handle blocking device which locks the circuit breaker in the "ON" position.
  6. Circuit breakers serving circuits in residential bedrooms shall be Arc Fault Interrupting(AFI) type circuit breakers and shall be UL 1699 listed.
- F. Directories:
1. Each panelboard shall be equipped with a metal directory frame with a clear cover welded to the inside of the door.
- G. Equipment Short Circuit Rating: Short Circuit Interrupting Ratings shall be as indicated on the plans and schedules. Unless specifically indicated otherwise all rating are "Fully Rated" capacities. Where no rating is given, the contractor shall verify the available short current with the serving utility and provide equipment rated accordingly.
- H. Lighting panelboard cans shall be a maximum of 20" wide and 5 3/4" deep. Cans of multi-section panelboards shall be the same size.
- I. Provide nameplate as called out on drawings.
- J. All circuit breakers 1200-amp and up shall comply with NEC Article 240.87 Arc Energy Reduction.
- K. All flush mounted panel shall be provided with six (6) 3/4" conduit stubbed up above accessible ceiling.

### **2.33. DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS:**

- A. Furnish and install distribution and power panelboards as indicated in the panelboard schedule(s) or single line wiring diagrams and where shown on the plans.
- B. Panelboards shall be dead front, safety type equipped with thermal magnetic, molded case circuit breakers with trip ratings as indicated on the schedule(s).
- C. Panelboard bussing shall be copper.
- D. Panelboard buss structure and main lugs or main breaker(s) shall have the fault current ratings as indicated on the drawings. Ratings shall be established by heat rise tests conducted according to UL Standard UL67.



- E. Circuit breakers shall be equipped with individually insulated, braced and protected connectors. The front faces of all circuit breakers shall be flush with each other.
- F. Main circuit breakers shall be centered mounted. Main breaker cannot be mounted on buss bars with other circuit breakers.
- G. An engraved phenolic label shall be permanently attached to the front of the panelboard adjacent to each circuit breaker identifying the load served by the circuit breaker.
- H. Automatic tripping shall be clearly shown by the breaker handle taking a position between ON and OFF when the breaker is automatically tripped.
- I. Provisions for additional breakers shall be such that no additional connectors or hardware will be required to add breakers.
- J. The panelboard assembly shall be enclosed in a steel cabinet. The rigidity and gauge of steel shall be as specified in UL Standards. End walls shall be removable. The size of wiring gutters shall be in accordance with the National Electrical Code, NEMA, and UL Standards for panelboards.
- K. Cabinets shall be equipped with four piece fronts.
- L. The panelboard interior assembly shall be dead front with panelboard front removed.
- M. Main lugs or main breaker shall be barriered on live sides.
- N. The barrier in front of the main lugs shall be hinged to a fixed part of the interior. The end of the buss structure opposite the mains shall be barriered.
- O. Circuit breakers serving Fire Alarm Systems, Security Systems, and/or Emergency/Exit lights shall be equipped with mechanical, screw-on type, locking devices. These devices shall not be padlock type devices.
- P. Panelboards shall be listed by Underwriters' Laboratories and to bear UL label. Panelboards shall be rated for use as Service Entrance Equipment where required by the National Electrical Code. Panelboards shall be by Cutler-Hammer, General Electric, Square D, or Siemens.
- Q. Provide nameplate as called out on drawings.
- R. All circuit breakers 1200-amp and up shall comply with NEC Article 240.87 Arc Energy Reduction.
- S. All flush mounted panel shall be provided with six (6) ¾" conduit stubbed up above accessible ceiling.
- T. All service entrance main circuit breakers shall be 100% rated.

#### **2.34. SWITCHBOARDS:**

- A. Construction.
  - 1. The Switchboard shall consist of the required number of vertical sections, bolted together to form a rigid assembly. Provide ventilators located on the top of the switchgear over the breaker and bus compartments to ensure adequate ventilation within the enclosure.
  - 2. Each vertical steel unit, forming part of the switchgear line-up, shall be a self-contained housing having one or more individual breaker or instrument compartments, a centralized bus compartment, and a rear cabling compartment.
  - 3. The switchgear shall be suitable for use as service entrance equipment and be labeled in accordance with UL requirements.
- B. Bussing
  - 1. Switchboard buss structure and main lugs or main breaker(s) shall have the fault current ratings as indicated on the drawings. Ratings shall be established by heat rise tests conducted according to UL Standard UL67.
  - 2. All bus bars shall be tin-plated copper. Main horizontal bus bars shall be mounted with all three phases arranged in the same vertical plane. Bus sizing shall be based on ANSI standard temperature rise criteria of 65 degrees C over a 40 degrees C ambient (outside the enclosure).

3. Provide a full capacity neutral bus.
  4. A copper ground bus shall be furnished firmly secured to each vertical section structure and shall extend the entire length of the switchgear. The ground bus short time withstand rating shall meet that of the largest circuit breaker within the assembly.
  5. All hardware used on conductors shall be high-tensile strength and zinc plated. All bus joints shall be provided with Belleville-type washers.
- C. Wiring/Terminations
1. A termination system shall be provided such that no additional cable bracing, tying or lashing is required to maintain the short circuit withstand ratings of the assembly through 200 kA.
  2. Lugs shall be provided in the incoming line section for connection of the main grounding conductor. Additional lugs for connection of other grounding conductors shall be provided as indicated on the drawings.
- D. An engraved phenolic label shall be permanently attached to the front of the switchboard adjacent to each circuit breaker identifying the load served by the circuit breaker.
- E. Automatic tripping shall be clearly shown by the breaker handle taking a position between ON and OFF when the breaker is automatically tripped.
- F. Provisions for additional breakers shall be such that no additional connectors or hardware will be required to add breakers.
- G. Circuit breakers shall be provided with the ratings indicated on the drawings.
- H. Switchboards shall be listed by Underwriters' Laboratories and to bear UL label.
- I. Switchboards shall be rated for use as Service Entrance Equipment where required by the National Electrical Code.
- J. All circuit breakers 1200-amp and up shall comply with NEC Article 240.87 Arc Energy Reduction.
- K. Switchboards shall be by Cutler-Hammer, General Electric, Square D, or Siemens.
- L. Provide electronic metering on the main for voltage, amps, kVA, & KW.
- M. All service entrance main circuit breakers shall be 100% rated.
- N. All switchboards shall be provided with a 6" concrete with housekeepers pad with 1" chamfer that extends out 6" past switchboard on all sides.

**2.35. SAFETY SWITCHES:**

- A. Furnish and install safety switches as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Switches installed on 277/480 volts systems shall be rated for 600 volts and those installed on 120/208 volt or 120/240 volt systems shall be rated for 240 volts.
- C. Switches shall be NEMA Heavy Duty Type HD and Underwriters' Laboratory listed. Safety switches shall be Cutler Hammer, Siemens, Square D, or General Electric.
- D. General Duty disconnects will not be accepted.
- E. Enclosures for switches mounted outdoors shall be NEMA 3R or as indicated on the plans.
- F. Enclosures for switches installed in kitchen and dishwashing areas shall be NEMA 4X stainless steel or as indicated on the plans.
- G. All safety switches for equipment with remote controls shall be equipped with a control circuit disconnect interlock.
- H. Switches shall be lockable in the "ON" and in the "OFF" positions.
- I. Provide each disconnect with a nameplate that indicates equipment name, voltage/phase, and feed from location.
- J. Provide keyed brass locks on all disconnects that is located on the exterior of the building or in any area that is accessible to children or the public. All the brass locks shall be keyed the same, and turn over 10 sets of keys to the owner at substantial completion.

- K. Disconnect locations shown on drawings is diagrammatically shown. Disconnects shall be coordinated with other trades and placed in the optimal locations to serve equipment and shall be installed in the least obtrusive location. Disconnects will have to be moved at the cost of the contractor when there is conflicts with NEC clearances, access to space, or servicing of equipment. Architect/Engineer will have final judgment of proper location.

**2.36. MANUAL MOTOR STARTERS (TUMBLER SWITCH TYPE WITH OVERLOAD PROTECTION):**

- A. Starting and thermal overload protection for single phase motors 1/8 Hp to 1 HP shall be provided by manual motor starters with overload units rated as required by the specific motor to be served.
- B. Switches installed for site disconnect switches shall be equipped with padlocking provisions.
- C. Starters shall be by Cutler Hammer, General Electric, or Siemens with NEMA Type 1 enclosure or NEMA Type 3R enclosure where installed outdoors.

**2.37. TRANSIENT VOLTAGE SURGE PROTECTORS (SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES):**

- A. Provide transient voltage surge protectors (Surge Protective Devices) where indicated on the plans. At a minimum provide on all service entrance panelboards/switchboards and any panelboard/switchboards on the secondary side of a dry-type transformer.
- B. Service Entrance Panelboards and at Subpanel Protectors shall be listed and labeled and components recognized in accordance with UL 1283 and UL 1449 Second Edition, including highest fault current of Section 37.3.
- C. All devices shall meet or exceed the following:
  - 1. NEMA LS 1-1992.
  - 2. Minimum surge current capability, single pulse rated, per mode:
    - a. Service Entrance – 100 kA (200 kA per phase)
    - a. Distribution and branch panelboards – 80 kA (160 kA per phase)
  - 3. UL 1449, Second Edition, Listed and Labeled, and Recognized Component Suppressed Voltage Ratings shall not exceed (1.2x50µs, 6kV open circuit and 8x20µs, 500A short circuit test wave forms at end of 6” lead):
 

Voltage	L-N	L-G	N-G	L-L
208Y/120v	400	400	330	700
  - 4. Testing shall be done at the end of 6” leads with the complete unit including any fuses and all other components making up the unit.
- D. The devices shall have a minimum EMI/RFI filtering of –50dB at 100kHz with an insertion ratio of 50:1 using MIL-STD-220A methodology.
- E. Devices shall utilize MOV’s of 25 mm diameter or larger, shall have pilot lights visible on the outside of the enclosure to indicate device operating condition, and shall provide contacts for remote monitoring of device condition.
- F. Devices shall be modular in design with individual module fusing and thermal protection.
- G. Devices shall incorporate visual alarm signals that indicate the failure of a single MOV and total loss of protection.
- H. Wye connected devices shall provide L-L, L-N, L-G, and N-G surge diversion with L-N/L-G bonded at service entrance devices. Delta connected devices shall provide L-L and L-G protection.
- I. Data Line Surge Protectors: Data Line Surge Protectors shall be UL 497B listed and labeled. The units shall be heavy duty devices utilizing a combination of silicone diodes and gas tube technology to provide surge protection.
- J. All devices shall have a minimum warranty period of five years, incorporating unlimited replacement of suppressor parts if they fail during the warranty period.
- K. Transient voltage surge suppressors shall be manufactured by AC Data Systems, Advanced Protection Technologies, Current Technologies, Cutler-Hammer, General Electric, Joslyn, Liebert, or MCG.

**2.38. SECONDARY SURGE ARRESTERS:**

- A. Secondary surge arresters shall be UL listed under UL Classification (Lightning Protection) Surge Arresters(OWHX).
- B. Surge arresters shall be rated at same voltage and phase configuration as service.
- C. Arresters shall be equal to Cooper Power Systems ASZH Series, Cutler-Hammer, GE Tranquell, Joslyn Electronic Systems, Leviton, models as required to match the voltage of the system served.

**2.39. FUSES:**

- A. General: Fuses shall be UL listed time delay types with a minimum interrupting rating of 100,000 amps symmetrical.
- B. 200 amps and below: Provide Class RK-5 current limiting, time delay, rejection type as manufactured by Busman Manufacturing, Ferraz Shawmut, or Littlefuse.
- C. 201 to 600 amps: Class RK-1, current limiting, time delay, rejection type as manufactured by Bussman, Ferraz Shawmut, or Littlefuse.
- D. Above 600 amps: Class L current limiting, time delay, as manufactured by Busman Manufacturing, Ferraz Shawmut, or Littlefuse.

**2.40. LABELING:**

- A. Provide laminated plastic nameplates for each panelboard, equipment enclosure, relay, switch, and device.
- B. Each nameplate inscription shall identify the function and, when applicable, the position. Nameplates shall be melamine plastic 0.125 inch thick, white with black center core.
- C. Provide red laminated plastic label with white center core where indicated.
- D. Surface shall be matte finish. Corners shall be square. Accurately align lettering and engrave into the core.
- E. Minimum size of nameplates shall be one by 2.5 inches.
- F. Lettering shall be a minimum of 0.25 inch high normal block style.
- G. See Panelboard details for proper labeling of all panelboards.

**2.41. PHOTOCELLS, TIME SWITCHES AND CONTACTORS:**

- A. Photocells: Units shall have 1" diameter, hermetically sealed, cadmium sulfide sensing cell with 3-prong NEMA locking plug, rated for wet locations. Units shall have built-in time delay. Units shall be equal to Tork 5231 of correct voltage to match load or use with matching receptacle equal to Tork 2421.
- B. Time switches:
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated on drawings, time switches shall be 24 hour electromechanical type having synchronous motor drive with two single pole double throw contacts rated 20 amps minimum.
  - 2. Unit shall have spring back up, with automatic rewind, capable of providing 16 hours minimum of reserve power upon electric power failure.
  - 3. Units shall be furnished in an enclosure, NEMA 1 indoor and NEMA 3 outdoors. Enclosures shall be flush mount unless otherwise indicated on drawings.
  - 4. Units shall be Tork 7120L, or equal by Paragon or Sangamo.
  - 5. Time switch(es) shall be digital, seven day format, two channel time switches with 9v lithium battery 30 day back-up and with metal indoor enclosure. The controllers shall be equal to Tork #DW200A-Y.
- C. Contactors: Units shall be electrically held or electrically operated mechanically held, as indicated on drawings, and shall be recommended by manufacturer for type of load served.
- D. Contacts shall double-break type of same ampere rating as line side circuit wiring.
- E. Contacts shall be field-convertible to normally open or normally closed.

- F. Contactor coils shall be encapsulated. Electrically held contactors shall have continuously rated coils. Mechanically held contactors shall be equipped with coil-clearing contacts to energize coils only when switching.
- G. Units shall be furnished in an enclosure, NEMA 1 indoor and NEMA 3 outdoors.
- H. Units shall be equal to GE CR460 series in NEMA 1 or NEMA 3R enclosure as indicated.

**2.42. FIRE ALARM SYSTEM (ADDRESSABLE):**

- A. General: The contractor shall furnish and install a complete power limited automatic and manual fire alarm system, as specified herein and indicated on the drawings. The system shall include a central control panel, power supply, signal initiating devices, audible and visual alarm devices, provisions for connection of remote monitoring, a wiring system, and all necessary devices required to provide a complete operating system. The system shall comply with the applicable provisions of the National Fire Protection Association Standard Number 72 and meet all requirements of the local authorities having jurisdiction. The Underwriter's Laboratories, Incorporated, or approved by the Factory Mutual Laboratories shall list all equipment and devices. To establish the type and quality of system desired, the equipment specified is that of Simplex Company. The equipment shall be FCI, Notifier or Simplex. No deviation will be considered unless submittals are received and approved in writing, not less than ten days prior to bid date.
- B. Fire Alarm Document Box: The contractor shall furnish and install a fire alarm document enclosure as mandated by NFPA 72 Chapter 7.7.2.1. The system records documents box shall be constructed of 18 gauge cold rolled steel. It shall have a red powder coat epoxy finish. The cover shall be permanently screened with 1" high lettering and read "FIRE ALARM DOCUMENTS" with white indelible ink. The access door shall be locked with a 3/4" barrel lock which is keyed the same as the manufacturer's fire alarm panel. The enclosure shall supply 4 mounting holes to securely fasten to the wall. Inside the enclosure will accommodate standard 8.5" x 11" manuals and loose document records that may be placed in a three ring binder. All documents & software will be protected within the enclosure. A legend sheet will be permanently attached to the door for system required documentation, key contacts, and system information. The fire alarm document will have securely mounted inside the enclosure a minimum of 4 Gigabyte digital flash memory drive with a standard USB type B connector for uploading and downloading electronic information. The drive shall not be accessible without tools to any person whom gains access to the enclosure. The enclosure shall also provide 2 Key ring holders with a location to mount standard business type cards for key contact personnel. The password to the fire alarm programming shall be provided to the owner in the fire alarm document box. The password must be provided, fire alarm contractors that refuse to give password will not be accepted. Contractor will be responsible for replacing the entire fire alarm system at their cost and cost of delaying the project if password is not provided.
- C. Control Panel: The control panel shall be an addressable type panel capable of handling up to 256 devices, with 60 hour minimum standby battery. The panel shall provide for the connection of alarm circuits as indicated and shall include the following features.
  - 1. The fire alarm panel shall detect the operation of any initiating device, indicate by annunciator lamps the area of the alarm condition, and operate all alarm auxiliary devices.
  - 2. A pilot light shall normally be on, indicating that the system is receiving power from the building service supply. A failure of the building service supply shall cause the lights to go out.
  - 3. A trouble light and trouble buzzer, operating together, shall signal any trouble condition. Failure of the building service supply, disarrangement in the system wiring, or alarm condition shall cause that trouble light to come on and the trouble buzzer to sound. A self restoring silencing switch shall be provides to silence the trouble buzzer, which shall be arranged so the trouble light will remain on until the system is restored to normal.
  - 4. All notification signals shall be automatically locked in at the control panel until the operating device is returned to its normal condition, and the panel is manually reset. A switch shall be provided on the control panel for silencing the notification devices. The

- manual reset switch and the alarm-silencing switch shall be of the self-restoring type, which cannot be left in the abnormal position.
5. The control panel shall provide relay contacts, of quantity as shown on the drawings, for control of heating, ventilation and air conditioning equipment. Such contacts shall be connected to air conditioning equipment, as indicated on drawings, for shutdown of individual units. Unit shutdown shall be initiated by duct-mounted smoke detectors unless otherwise indicated. Operation of any initiating device shall open all control contacts and release all mechanically held doors.
  6. The control panel shall be equipped with a front mounted Drill switch.
  7. Metal oxide varistors (MOV's) shall be provided on the system power supply and the municipal connection circuit to provide transient suppression protection to the control panel.
  8. Power Supply: The power supply shall be 24 Volt DC, filtered and regulated, and shall provide sufficient power for all system functions. The fire alarm system main power supply shall operate at 120 Volt AC obtained from the building service. The 120-volt AC main power shall be converted to low voltage direct current for system operation. The system shall operate on 24 volts DC with trickle charged batteries provided as an emergency source of supply for operating the system in the event of interruption of main power. A changeover relay in the control panel shall transfer to standby power automatically upon main power failure and automatically reconnect to main power upon restoration.
- D. Manual Stations: Manual Fire alarm stations shall be an addressable double acting, semi-flush mounted type. Stations with two sets of contacts will not be acceptable.
  - E. Smoke Detectors: Smoke detectors shall be addressable photoelectric type with base.
  - F. Heat Detectors: Addressable 135 degree/rate of rise type with base.
  - G. Duct Mounted Smoke Detectors: Duct detectors shall be addressable photoelectric type with sampling tube.
  - H. Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating prior to bid with mechanical drawings to confirm all duct mounted smoke detector locations and quantities. Contractor shall include in their base bid price the cost of all additional duct mounted smoke detectors and circuitry needed for locations.
  - I. Duct Detector Remote Test Station: Test stations shall be keyed with indicator light.
  - J. Audible/Visual Notification Devices: Audible/visual notification devices shall be four wire, horn/strobe units capable of 90 dB audible output, 100 candela-second output, shall be ADA compliant. Devices using incandescent lamps will not be acceptable.
  - K. Visual Notification Devices: Visual notification devices shall be strobe units capable of 100 candela-second visual output, shall be ADA compliant. Devices using incandescent lamps will not be acceptable.
  - L. Voice Control Panel: The Voice Control Panel shall play a digitally recorded message or microphone input for evacuation instructions.. The unit shall be installed next to the FACP, shall be equipped with emergency battery power, and shall provide a minimum of 75 watts of amplification.
  - M. Remote Microphone Panel: Remote Microphone Panels shall have a keyswitch control and shall be supervised.
  - N. Remote Amplifier: Remote amplifiers shall be 120 watt with battery backup.
  - O. Speaker/Visual Notification Devices: Speaker/Visual Notification devices shall be semi-flush, wall mounted, combination strobe/speaker assemblies with a minimum strobe output of 100 candela-second and equal to Simplex #4903-9144 Notifier #E70-24110W-FR for wall installation or Notifier #E70-W for speaker only ceiling installations.
  - P. Interface Relay:
    1. Provide addressable control modules equal to Notifier #CMX-2 or interface relays equal to Notifier #MR-101/CR as required for interface of the Fire Alarm System with HVAC shut

- down, door holders, kitchen hood fire suppression system, and fan shut down, and any other locations required for proper interface and operation of systems.
2. A control module or interface relay shall be provided for each duct mounted smoke detector and shall be the point of interface between the Fire Alarm System and the HVAC Control System.
  3. Contacts shall be rated for 10 A at 120 V.
- Q. Flow and Tamper switch Monitoring: Individual Addressable Module.
- R. **UL Fire Listed Cellular Communicator: Terminals and other necessary facilities shall be provided in the control panel to permit automatic transmission of trouble and alarm signals over a UL listed cellular communicator to the fire, police, or other continuously manned facility, so designated for response to fire emergency. Provide 2-years of cellular and monitoring for the fire alarm system in the base bid from the date of substantial completion.**
- S. Annunciator Panel: Provide and install an annunciator that provides an audible and visual indication of an alarm or trouble condition for each zone, an alarm silence switch, and a key operated test and reset switch..
- T. Auxiliary Remote Power Supplies/Notification Appliance Circuit Extenders (NAC Panels):
1. Provide auxiliary power supplies and/or NAC Panels where required for notification devices, door holders, annunciators, or for other devices requiring supplemental power.
  2. Remote power supplies shall include a filtered and regulated 24 VDC output, provisions for automatic transfer to battery back-up in case of primary power failure, and batteries sized for 60 hours of operation.
- U. Wire Guards: Wire guards shall be made of 3/16" minimum steel wire with a corrosion resistant coating equipped with integral mounting rings. Provide wire guards for all devices located in gymnasium.
- V. All devices installed on the exterior shall be weatherproof.
- W. All A/V devices in gymnasium at bleachers or any other facility with bleachers shall mount the fire alarm devices 80" above top of bleachers.
- X. **Monitoring - Provide 2-years of monitoring for the fire alarm system in the base bid from the date of substantial completion.**

#### 2.43. INTERCOM SYSTEM:

- A. General: Intercom system in new construction shall be added to the existing intercom system Master Control Console.
- B. Loudspeakers: Soundolier #C10, recessed ceiling mounted with flush baffle, back box, and necessary mounting hardware.
- C. Call-in-switch: pushbutton with privacy control.
- D. Wiring: Cable shall be 4 conductor 20 gauge, 2 shielded and 2 unshielded. Use West Penn #359 cable.

#### 2.44. CONCRETE:

- A. Concrete for electrical requirements shall be:
  1. Composed of fine aggregate (sand), coarse aggregate (graded from three-sixteenth (3/16) inch to one (1) inch), Portland cement, and water proportioned and mixed so as to produce a plastic, workable mixture.
  2. Aggregates shall be free from detrimental amounts of dirt, vegetable matter, soft fragments, or other foreign substances.
  3. Water shall be fresh, clean, and free from salts, alkali, organic matter, and other impurities.
  4. Concrete shall have a minimum 3000 psi ultimate twenty-eight day compressive strength and a maximum three (3) inch slump.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

---

### **3.01. GENERAL:**

- A. This section includes the installation of the complete electrical system.

### **3.02. ELECTRICAL SYSTEM DEMOLITION:**

- A. Before any new work begins the Contractor shall determine and document in writing to the satisfaction of the Engineer the condition of existing electrical work and auxiliary systems that are to remain in service. After the new work begins any existing electrical work or systems that are found to be inoperative or defective and not so documented shall be repaired or replaced by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner.
- B. Existing electrical equipment and materials to be reused shall be tested and repaired as required and installed for first class operation.
- C. General: The manner in which the remaining portions of the electrical system are terminated, supported and generally maintained for permanent use shall comply with all applicable regulations of the National Electrical Code, applicable NFPA codes and any local codes.
- D. Refer carefully to construction drawings prior to commencing with demolition to determine the intent of demolition. Contact the Engineer if there appears to be any conflict between the demolition and construction drawings.
- E. See "Renovation" Section regarding modification and relocation of circuits.
- F. Phasing: Phasing shall be as coordinated by the General Contractor.
- G. Work in Occupied Areas: Coordinate work carefully with General Contractor to provide minimum disruption to occupied portions of project. Provide minimum of 24 hours advance notice to Owner of demolition activities that will affect Owner's normal operation.
- H. Protections: Take necessary measures as required for protection of the Owner's personnel and the general public, as well as Owner's property. Provide temporary barricades, partitions, bracing, and weather protection as needed. Remove all temporary protections at completion of work.
- I. Flame Cutting: Do not use cutting torches for removal until work area is cleared of flammable materials. Maintain portable fire suppression equipment during flame-cutting operations.
- J. System Protection: Protect and maintain all portions of existing system not indicated for demolition, including but not limited to light fixtures, panelboards and circuits.
- K. Fire Protection: Coordinate with general contractor to insure that all penetrations of fire-rated decks and partitions are properly sealed.
- L. Removal of Circuits: All circuits indicated for removal shall be entirely removed, including raceway, back to take-off point or as far as possible without chasing (unless chasing is indicated). Where it is not possible to remove conduit, all conductors shall be removed and the conduit shall be permanently capped. Floor outlets indicated for removal shall be entirely removed, including outlet box, and capped below floor level (minimum 4" below floor level if in slab).
- M. Where floor slab is damaged in the course of demolition, it shall be permanently repaired as soon as practicable.
- N. Leave existing branch circuits and feeders which run through reworked areas and serve existing equipment to remain in service, continuous and uninterrupted.
- O. Where service interruptions are required, obtain approval for interruptions in writing from Architect 14 days prior to interruption. Submit schedule of work to be performed and the time required to accomplish work with request for interruption.
- P. Disposition of Material: Where electrical equipment is indicated for removal and not indicated for re-use, the owner shall have the option of taking possession of the equipment, the Contractor shall deliver any such material to a local site designated by the owner. The Contractor shall be responsible for disposing of all other materials in accordance with applicable codes and laws.

### **3.03. ELECTRICAL SYSTEM RENOVATION:**



- A. General: Provide renovations as indicated on drawings and specified herein as required for a complete, operational system, even though every item is not indicated.
  - 1. This Section is intended to serve as a supplement to the applicable sections within this Division, and in no way relieves the contractor from the requirements of any other Section.
  - 2. All renovations shall comply with all applicable regulations of the National Electric Code, applicable NFPA codes and any local codes
- B. Materials and workmanship: Execute all work so as to present a neat and workmanlike appearance when completed. Except where otherwise indicated, all materials shall be new, UL approved where a standard has been established. Where specific means and methods for affecting renovations are not covered in drawings and specifications, the contractor shall exercise prudent judgment in following accepted practices.
- C. Modifications: All major deviations from the drawings and specifications shall be approved in writing by the Engineer.
- D. Inspection:
  - 1. Inspect all existing electrical system components which are accessible, including fixtures, wiring devices, raceway and panelboards.
  - 2. Perform minor repairs to loose or damaged connections, damaged or missing supports, replacement of broken devices, replacement of missing plates and junction box covers and other visible damage or disrepair.
  - 3. Report major damage to Engineer.
- E. Renovation Services: In addition to the scope of work indicated on the drawings and specified herein, it shall be the responsibility of this Division to provide minor modification and repair services made necessary to electrical system components through the normal course of renovation. Such services shall include but not be limited to minor repair or relocation of branch circuits necessitated by the work of other trades, as coordinated by the General Contractor.
- F. Penetrations: Coordinate penetrations of existing walls, decks, and roofs required for electrical system with General Contractor. Do not cut structural members without the prior consent of Structural Engineer.
- G. Raceway.
  - a. Unless specifically indicated otherwise, existing raceway may not be used.
  - b. Where existing raceway is indicated for possible re-use, it shall be the responsibility of this Division to verify that the condition and configuration of the raceway is in compliance with the NEC.
- H. Panelboards: Where new circuits are run to an existing panelboard, thoroughly inspect the panelboard for any indications of arcing, overheating, or other damage. Report damage to the Engineer. Unless specifically allowed, tandem circuit breakers shall not be utilized.
- I. Clearing of Neutral Faults: Any and all neutral faults to ground on existing system shall be corrected.
- J. Service Ground: Visually inspect existing service ground electrode system for damage and code compliance. Check continuity from panel to each electrode with a meter. Make repairs as required.
- K. Lighting Fixtures: Where existing lighting fixtures are indicated for re-use, they shall be thoroughly cleaned and relamped, no exceptions. Where existing lighting fixtures are indicated for replacement, it shall be the responsibility of this Division to verify the compatibility of new fixtures with existing ceiling type, existing penetrations, available support, and other existing conditions prior to submittal of fixtures. Any variances or required modifications shall be clearly indicated on the fixture submittal.
- L. Backfilling, Grading, and Sodding:
  - 1. Restore surface features, including vegetation, at areas disturbed by Work of this Section.
  - 2. Reestablish original grades, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. If sod has been removed, replace it as soon as possible after backfilling is completed.
  - 4. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other activities to their original condition.

5. Include application of topsoil, fertilizer, lime, seed, sod, sprig, and mulch. Comply with Division 2 Section "Landscaping." Maintain restored surfaces.
6. Restore disturbed paving as indicated.

#### **3.04. ELECTRICAL SERVICE:**

- A. General: Arrange with local electric Utility Company for service to be brought to the building, and for installation of meter. Provide all material and labor not supplied by Utility Company so as to produce a complete installation meeting the Utility regulations.
- B. Service requirements: It is the responsibility of this Section, prior to bid, to reaffirm with the Utility Companies involved, that locations, arrangement, Power Company voltage, phase, metering required, and connections to utility service are in accordance with their regulations and requirements. If their requirements are at variance with these drawings and specifications, contract price shall include an additional cost necessary to meet those regulations without extra cost to Owner after bids are accepted.
- C. Notify Architect of any changes required before proceeding with work.
- D. Fees and deposits:
  1. The Electrical Contractor shall be responsible for verification and payment of all utility fees associated with installation of the electrical service.
  2. The Owner shall pay the cost of establishing an electrical service account and permanent meter deposit.
- E. Metering: Obtain metering equipment from Utility Company and install in compliance with the Utility Company's requirements. The Electrical Contractor shall provide and install all necessary metering raceways, fittings, supports, connectors and ground conductor necessary for a complete installation. Provide 100# pull wire in all metering conduits.
- F. Main Service Equipment: Provide UL approved service entrance components as indicated on drawings or specified herein.
- G. Provide a full size copy of the AS-BUILT Power Riser Diagram framed behind plexiglass screwed to the wall near service entrance in main electrical room.
- H. Service lateral or feeder: Extend lateral or feeder of the size shown on drawings from service equipment to the point of service as indicated (verify exact location with Utility Company).
  1. For Overhead Service, provide and install service entrance fitting on conduit and leave sufficient slack conductor for connection to utility feeder 10' above finish grade, 12' above drive and 18' above street.
  2. For Underground Service, provide and install underground conduit to utility riser, as directed by Utility Company. Conduit shall be of size and quantity as indicated on drawings. Provide 480# polypropylene pull line in each empty conduit.
  3. For Underground Service, provide and install transformer pad, primary underground conduit to utility riser as directed by Utility Company, underground secondary conduit, and secondary conductors. Conduit shall be of size and quantity as indicated on drawings. Provide spare 4" conduit in transformer pad extending 2' beyond edge of pad with PVC cap. Provide 480# polypropylene pull line in each empty conduit.
  4. On service transformers with multiple taps, it shall be the responsibility of this section to coordinate tap selection with the electric utility to insure the proper nominal voltage.

#### **3.05. GROUNDING:**

- A. Bond the neutral conductor and various conductive materials in the building per NEC Article 250.
- B. Grounding Electrode System: A bare copper grounding conductor shall be bonded to grounding electrodes as specified below. This conductor shall serve as ground for system neutral and for building equipment bonding. Where conductor is #6, or smaller, or is subject to injury, it shall be run in conduit, Schedule 80 PVC or Rigid Galvanized to which the conductor shall be bonded at both ends.
  1. Grounding electrodes shall be as follows:

- a. Cold water piping, if metal and in direct contact with the earth for 10 feet or more, at the point of entry into the building. Grounding electrode shall be attached with UL approved bronze clamp.
  - b. Building structural steel, if present and accessible.
  - c. Grounding electrode shall be attached with exothermic weld connector.
  - d. Foundation reinforcing bar system. Coordinate with General Contractor to provide turned up re-bar (sleeved) near service point for attachment of grounding electrode above grade. Grounding electrode shall be attached with UL approved bronze clamp or exothermic weld connector.
  - e. Driven ground rod(s).
    - 1) Three 3/4" x 10' copper weld rods shall be driven into the ground at the lowest point adjacent to the building, spaced a minimum of 10' apart.
    - 2) Ground rods shall be driven to 12" below grade.
    - 3) The grounding electrode conductor shall be attached to the rod(s) with UL approved bronze clamp or exothermic weld connector.
  - f. Existing grounding electrode system. If an existing electrical service is in place, it must be bonded to the new grounding electrode system.
- C. Connections to grounding rods, building structure, counterpoise, and conductor junctions shall be made by exothermic weld unless specifically noted otherwise.
- D. Electric system (neutral) ground: The current carrying neutral leg of the wiring system shall be of insulated conductor, and shall be connected to the grounding electrode conductor only via the neutral connection at the service equipment. Each branch circuit or multi-outlet branch circuit shall be provided with a dedicated neutral conductor.
- E. Equipment grounding conductors:
- 1. An equipment grounding conductor (copper with green insulation except where bare copper is used) shall be provided in all wiring raceways.
  - 2. Sizes shall be in accordance with NEC 250.
  - 3. The equipment grounding conductor shall originate in the same panelboard, panelboard section, as the circuit conductors.
  - 4. The equipment grounding conductor bonding the sections of multi-section panelboards shall be sized per NEC 250.
  - 5. The equipment grounding conductor is not included in number of branch circuit conductors indicated on the drawings.
- F. Gas piping: Bond interior above grade gas piping to the grounding electrode.
- G. Telephone service ground: provide a minimum #6 bare, solid copper grounding conductor from the electrical service grounding connection to the TBB. Leave six (6) feet minimum of free conductor. Install the conductor in PVC conduit where inside the building.
- H. Computer backboard ground: provide a minimum #6 bare, solid copper grounding conductor from the electrical service grounding connection to the CBB. Leave six (6) feet minimum of free conductor. Install the conductor in PVC conduit where inside the building.
- I. Fence grounding:
- 1. Fences shall be grounded on each side of all gates, at each corner, at the closest approach to each building located within 50 feet of the fence, and where the fence alignment changes more than 15 degrees. Grounding locations shall not exceed 650 feet apart.
  - 2. Each gate panel shall be bonded with a flexible bond strap to its gatepost.
  - 3. Fences crossed by power lines of 600 volts or more shall be grounded at or near the point of crossing and at distances not exceeding 150 feet on each side of crossing.
  - 4. Grounding conductor shall consist of No. 8 AWG solid copper wire. Ground conductor shall be clamped to the fence and electrodes with bronze grounding clamps to create electrical continuity between fence posts, fence fabric, and ground rods.
  - 5. Ground rods shall be 3/4 inch by 10 foot long copper-clad steel rod. Rods shall be driven into the earth so that the top of the rod is at least 6 inches below the grade. Where driving

is impracticable, rods shall be buried a minimum of 12 inches deep and radially from the fence. The top of the rod shall be not less than 2 feet or more than 8 feet from the fence.

6. After installation the total resistance of fence to ground shall not be greater than 25 ohms.]

- J. Grounding electrode resistance shall be less than 15 ohms. The resistance of the grounding electrode shall be tested by the Fall of Potential Method.
- K. Lighting Standards (Poles): Install 10' driven ground rod at each pole. On non-metallic poles, ground metallic components of lighting unit and foundations. Connect fixtures to grounding system with No. 6 AWG conductor.
- L. Each grounding conductors at the service entrance ground bus bar shall be provided with a brass round identifying tag. Tag shall indicate where ground wire is terminated.

### **3.06. EXCAVATION, CUTTING AND BACKFILLING:**

- A. Provide cutting and patching, under the supervision of the General Contractor, as required for the work in Section 16.
- B. Locate all existing below grade and/or below floor utilities prior to beginning any site excavation or cutting of existing floor slabs. The Contractor shall repair any damage to existing utilities or systems.
- C. Saw cut existing concrete slabs and asphalt paving.
- D. Trenching:
  - 1. Dig trenches true to line, with a flat, even bottom.
  - 2. Width of the trench shall provide not less than 3 inches clearance from the conduit to each side of the trench.
  - 3. Insure that foundation walls and footings and adjacent load bearing soils are not disturbed in any way.
  - 4. Conduits shall be installed below footings where possible. Where a line passes under a footing, make crossing with the smallest possible trench to accommodate the conduits/sleeves.
  - 5. Where a line must pass adjacent to and below the bottom of a column footing, or the corner of a continuous footing, backfill the trench with concrete up to the level of the footing bottom, for a distance away from the footing equal to the depth of the fill.
  - 6. Keep excavation free from water, by pumping if necessary.
  - 7. Where rock, soft spots, or sharp-edged materials are encountered, excavate the bottom for an additional 3 inches, fill and tamp level to proper elevation with sand or earth free from particles that would be retained on a 1/4 inch sieve.
  - 8. Remove and relocate existing obstructions as directed.
  - 9. The Contractor shall be responsible for the repair and/or replacement of any damage to existing utilities, structure, or finishes.
  - 10. Coordinate work with other trades as work progresses so cutting and patching will be minimal.
  - 11. Refer to Section "Earthwork" for shoring, sub-soil assumptions and data, work around trees, surplus earth, etc.
- E. See Section 16100, "Conduit Installation, Below grade and below slab conduit installation", for installation of conduits in trenches.
- F. Backfilling:
  - 1. Immediately after inspection, cover conduits with 3" of compacted sand or earth free from particles that would be retained on a 1/4 inch sieve. Do not to disturb the alignment or joints of the conduits.
  - 2. Carefully backfill with 4" of earth free from clods, brick, etc., firmly puddling and tamping.
  - 3. Thereafter, puddle and tamp every vertical 4" for hand tamping or 8" for heavy duty mechanical tamping.
  - 4. Backfill shall meet the compaction requirements set forth in Division 2.
  - 5. Backfilling Beneath Slabs and Pavement: Trenches beneath future slabs or pavement, including but not limited to buildings, drives, parking areas, sidewalks, playground surfaces, and equipment pads, shall be backfilled, from 3" above top of conduits to final

grade, with crushed aggregate, AHD 825, type B, compacted in 4" layers to 100% ASTM 698.

6. Install marking tape above conduits at 12 inches below grade.

**3.07. SLEEVES, INSERTS, AND SUPPORTS:**

- A. Provide and install No. 16 gauge galvanized steel or iron sleeves in all walls, floors, ceilings, and partitions. Sleeves shall have no more than 1/2" clearance around pipes and insulation.
- B. The contractor shall furnish to other responsible trades all sleeves, inserts, anchors and other required items which are to be built in by other trades for securing of all hangers or other supports by the Contractor.
- C. The contractor shall assume all responsibility for the placing and sizing of all sleeves, inserts, etc., and shall either directly supervise or give explicit instructions to other trades for their installation.
- D. The contractor shall seal all conduits through floors, smoke partitions, and floor partitions, with a sealant approved for the application.
- E. All sleeves through sound barrier walls and partitions shall be sealed with mineral wool.
- F. Through the floor conduit penetrations shall be sealed watertight.
- G. Furnish and install steel angles and channels as required for mounting and bracing heavy equipment and conduits. Steel shall be securely bolted or welded to structure and equipment bolted to the steel framework. Obtain the approval of the Architect prior to welding.

**3.08. BELOW GRADE THRU WALL WATER SEALS:**

- A. Each conduit penetrating exterior, below grade, cast concrete walls shall have the annular space around the conduit sealed with an approved Thru Wall Water Seal System.
- B. Where the system includes water seal thru wall sleeves, the Electrical shall provide properly sized sleeves to the contractor responsible for constructing the walls and shall be responsible for the proper location of each sleeve.
- C. Where openings are to be core drilled, the Electrical Contractor shall be responsible for the core drilling and for coordinating proper sizing and location of each opening.

**3.09. FIRE STOPPING:**

- A. The Electrical Contractor shall be responsible for firestopping of all penetrations of fire rated partitions made by any and all lighting, power, and auxiliary circuiting, sleeves and/or equipment.
- B. The Electrical Contractor shall submit manufacturers' UL System drawings for the systems to be utilized. The systems shall be compatible with the partition ratings as indicated on the Architectural drawings and in accordance with details on the Electrical drawings.
- C. Penetrations of fire rated partitions shall be sealed with an approved fire sealant resulting in the completed penetration having the same fire rating as the partition.
- D. The installation shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's UL system detail and installation instructions to attain the required fire partition rating.
- E. Empty sleeves through 1 and 2 hour rated partitions shall be plugged with mineral wool.
- F. Sleeves through 4 hour rated partitions shall be plugged with mineral wool and fire stopping material.

**3.10. ROOF PENETRATIONS:**

- A. Furnish roof flashing for all equipment, installed under Section 16, which penetrates through the roof. Flashing shall be approved by the Architect prior to installation.

**3.11. CONDUIT INSTALLATION:**

- A. Conduits shall be as follows:
  1. Overhead Service Entrance - Rigid Galvanized Steel (RGS) Conduit or IMC.
  2. Underground Service Laterals: Schedule 40 rigid PVC in horizontal runs with rigid galvanized steel elbows turning up to vertical RGS.

3. Where subject to moisture or mechanical injury - RGS conduit.
  4. ALL conduits exposed to moisture or subject to mechanical damage shall be RGS. Where conduit exits building, the changeover from EMT to rigid shall be inside exterior wall.
  5. In open shop and industrial installations RGS shall be run to 10' A.F.F.
  6. All conduit exposed on the outside of the building envelope shall be Rigid Galvanized Steel (RGS) conduit. This includes all conduits on and/or under canopies or awnings.
  7. In concrete or solid masonry – RGS conduit
  8. Above furred spaces or in cells of hollow masonry - EMT
  9. Concealed inside drywall construction walls and above lay-in ceilings – EMT.
  10. Exposed conduits:
    - a. Conduits installed exposed in shop, warehouse, and manufacturing areas shall be RGS up to 12' A.F.F. Conduits in such spaces above 12' A.F.F. may be EMT unless indicated otherwise on the drawings.
    - b. Exposed indoors in non-hazardous unfinished areas not subject to physical damage - EMT
    - c. Exposed in kitchen and dishwashing areas: Rigid aluminum.
  11. Branch circuits in slab (3/4") - PVC. Turn up through slab with RGS ells - no exceptions. Extend rigid turn-ups 2" minimum above finish floor level.
  12. Circuits beneath building vapor barrier - PVC. Turn up through slab with RGS ells - no exceptions. All elbows 45° and greater shall be RGS. Extend RGS turn-ups 2" minimum above finish floor level.
  13. Below Grade – PVC with RGS, or rigid aluminum where applicable, elbows turning up to vertical. All below grade elbows 45° and greater shall be RGS.
  14. Motor, HVAC equipment, and vibrating equipment connections - flexible metal conduit, liquid tight flexible metal conduit outdoors, in kitchen and dishwashing area, or in other wet areas. Liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit shall be used only where specifically indicated.
  15. IMC may be used where RGS is indicated.
- B. Conduit sizes:
1. Unless specifically indicated otherwise herein or on the drawings, the minimum conduit size shall be 3/4".
    - a. All conduits installed below grade or below slab shall be 3/4" minimum.
    - b. The minimum size for flexible lighting fixture "whips" shall be 3/8" and the maximum length shall be 6 feet. Lighting fixture "whips" shall be defined as flexible conduits with conductors feeding one or more recessed lighting fixtures installed in suspended, lay-in, acoustical ceiling systems from a single junction box.
    - c. 1/2" conduit may be for final connections to equipment or fixtures where conduit is less than three (3) feet in length and is extended from a junction box or from a 3/4" conduit stub up.
  2. Conduits shall be sized in accordance with the National Electrical Code as adopted by the local authority having jurisdiction or as amended to date, except where a larger size is indicated on the drawings or specified herein.
- C. Layout:
1. Generally follow the conduit layout shown on the drawings. However, the layout is diagrammatic only and must be adjusted for structural conditions, built-in equipment and other factors. Offsets are not indicated and must be furnished as required.
  2. Install all conduits concealed except in equipment rooms and where exposed runs are specifically indicated.
  3. Install conduit runs to avoid proximity to steam or hot water pipes. In no place shall a conduit be run within 6" of such pipes except where crossings are unavoidable, then conduit shall be kept at least 1" from the covering of the pipe crossed.
  4. Eliminate trapped runs insofar as possible.
  5. Do not chase new work, but instead build in conduit as work progresses.
  6. Do not run conduit in cavity of exterior walls.

7. Run concealed conduits in direct line with long sweep bends and offsets where practicable.
  8. Install exposed conduit with runs parallel or perpendicular to walls, structural members, or intersections of vertical planes and ceilings, with right-angle turns consisting of cast-metal fittings or symmetrical bends.
  9. Where conduits are indicated exposed overhead, runs down to wall outlets shall be concealed in wall.
- D. Conduit Installation:
1. Securely fasten conduits to all sheet metal outlets, cabinets, junction and pull boxes with locknuts and bushings, taking care to see that stout mechanical and solid electrical connections are obtained.
  2. All conduits shall have bushings with smooth beveled throats installed at both ends prior to installing conductors. Split bushings around conductors shall be taken to indicate that the conductors were pulled into conduit without the proper bushings installed and a basis for requiring the replacing of the conductors.
  3. Conduits entering service enclosures (panelboards, disconnect switches, switchboards, motor control centers, etc. used as service entrance equipment) shall be provided with specification grade, insulating, grounding type bushings. Grounding bushing shall be bonded together and bonded to the service grounding buss.
  4. Support:
    - a. Raceways shall be securely and rigidly supported to the building structure in a neat and workmanlike manner, and wherever possible, parallel runs or horizontal conduit shall be grouped together on adjustable trapeze hangers.
    - b. Support shall be provided at appropriate intervals not exceeding eight(8) feet with straps, hangers, and brackets specifically designed for the application.
    - c. Channels shall be 1 inch for 18-inch wide trapeze, 1-3/8 inch for 24 to 30 inch, and 1-5/8 inch for over 30 inch wide trapeze.
    - d. Perforated steel straphangers, "butterfly clips", or tie-wire supports are not acceptable.
    - e. Conduits shall not be supported from ceiling support wires.
    - f. Conduits installed along wall surfaces shall be supported with galvanized steel brackets specifically designed for conduits and sized for the conduit used.
    - g. PVC conduits shall be supported per the NEC with PVC or stainless clamps and stainless steel hardware.
    - h. Attach to supporting devices with screws, bolts, expansion sleeves or other workmanlike means appropriate to the surface.
    - i. In stud walls, anchors shall be completely rattle proof.
    - j. For conduits in damp and wet locations, use stainless steel clamps and stand-offs, or galvanized malleable or cast iron clamps and spacers.
    - k. All mounting hardware for aluminum conduit shall be stainless steel.
    - l. Surface mounted conduits installed in kitchen and dishwashing areas shall be supported off walls approximately 3/16".
  5. Thread rigid conduits so that the ends meet in couplings; cut ends square, ream smooth and draw up tight.
  6. All field cut threads shall be cleaned with a solvent such as mineral spirits and painted with two coats of galvanize primer.
  7. Cap conduit ends to keep out water and trash during construction.
  8. Field made bends:
    - a. Avoid field-made bends where possible, but where necessary, use a proper hickey or conduit-bending machine.
    - b. Field made bends in PVC conduit shall be made with a heated PVC conduit bender.
    - c. Make no bends with radius less than six times the conduit diameter, nor more than 90 degrees.
  9. Make changes in direction with pull boxes, symmetrical bends and/or cast-metal fittings.
  10. Total bends in any conduit run shall not exceed the equivalent of four, quarter (90°) bends for a total of 360°, per NEC, between pull boxes.
  11. Replace any crushed or deformed conduits.

12. Conduits passing through roofs shall be in place before roof is installed.
  13. Conduits installed in concrete/grout filled CMU walls shall be Rigid steel or IMC conduits installed field wrapped with 0.010 inch thick pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlay. Painted on coating shall not be acceptable.
  14. Where conduits pass through or across building expansion joints, provide hot-dipped galvanized expansion fittings with bonding jumpers.
  15. Insure that all penetrations of firewalls are sealed per NEC and IBCC.
  16. Right and left couplings shall not be used; conduit couplings of the Erikson type shall be used at location requiring such joints.
  17. Paint all conduits exposed in finished spaces. Paint shall consist of one coat of zinc rich primer plus two top coats of water-based latex paint, color to match adjacent finishes. Verify colors and paint system with Architect.
  18. All conduit runs entering the building from outdoors shall be sealed against moisture migration and condensation by filling with insulating type foam.
  19. All conduits passing through walls of coolers or freezers shall have seal fitting installed on the outside of the cooler/freezer wall and within 3" of the wall. Fitting shall be sealed per manufacturer's recommendations.
  20. Install telephone, data, intercom, and signal system raceways, 2-inch trade size and smaller, in maximum lengths of 150 feet and with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes where necessary to comply with these requirements, in addition to requirements above.
- E. Below grade and below slab conduit installation:
1. See Section 16100, "Excavation, Cutting, and Backfilling" for trenching and backfilling requirements.
  2. Rigid steel or IMC conduits installed below slab-on-grade or in the earth shall be field wrapped with 0.010 inch thick pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlay, or shall have a factory-applied polyvinyl chloride, plastic resin, or epoxy coating system. Painted on coatings shall not be acceptable. Wrap shall extend a minimum of 1" above slabs or 3" above finished grade where there is no slab. Alternate methods must be approved by Engineer prior to bids.
  3. Top of the conduit shall be not less than 30 inches below grade.
  4. Run conduit in straight lines except where a change of direction is necessary.
  5. Conduits stubbed up from below grade or slab into exterior walls shall be turned toward the interior of the building below slab fill perpendicular to the wall. Conduits shall not be turned out toward the exterior unless specifically indicated to do so.
  6. Placing of conduits below slab on grade:
    - a. Conduits 1-1/4" and larger shall be installed a minimum of 12" below the bottom of slab in the clay/sand fill below any gravel fill material.
    - b. Conduits 1" and smaller may be installed in the porous/gravel fill below the vapor barrier.
  7. Multiple Conduits:
    - a. Separate multiple conduits by a minimum distance of 2-1/2 inches horizontally and 3 inches vertically, except that light and power conduits shall be separated from control, signal, and telephone conduits by a minimum distance of 3 inches horizontally and vertically.
    - b. Where multiple layers of conduits are to be placed in a trench, each layer shall be placed in the trench, straight and parallel, clear fill material (see Excavation, Cutting, and Backfilling) placed and tamped in place to provide the specified spacing, and each subsequent layer placed in the same manner.
    - c. Stagger the joints of the conduits by rows and layers to strengthen the conduit assembly.
    - d. Conduits shall not be placed haphazardly in the trench.
  8. Where conduits pass through footings or foundation walls:
    - a. Conduits roughed in beneath slab shall exit the foundation perpendicular to the building spaced approximately 3" apart. Conduits shall be arranged in a single horizontal row where practical.



- b. Secure approval from the Architect and Structural Engineer prior to penetrating any footing or foundation wall.
  - c. Schedule 40 PVC sleeves shall be cast in the footings or foundation wall for the conduits to pass through.
  - d. Multiple sleeves shall have 3" clearance, vertically and horizontally, between the sleeves unless directed otherwise by the Architect and/or Structural Engineer.
9. Where PVC conduit is installed below grade a PVC to rigid metallic conduit coupling shall be installed in the horizontal run and a rigid galvanized steel conduit elbow installed to turn up to above grade. Where above grade conduits are indicated to be rigid aluminum the elbow turning up to vertical shall be rigid aluminum.
  10. Rigid aluminum conduit shall be wrapped same as RGS through concrete from 2" each side of the concrete.
  11. Rigid galvanized conduit shall extend a minimum of 6" above the finished floor level.
  12. In hazardous areas the coupling shall be below grade and a single section of conduit installed up to 18" A.F.F. to accept the required seal fitting.
  13. Wiring shall be extended in rigid threaded conduit to equipment, except that where required, flexible conduit may be used from 6 inches above the floor to the served equipment.
  14. Conduits shall exit concrete slabs vertically.
    - a. Where adequate support cannot be obtained by wiring to reinforcing steel, obtain support with solid iron stakes (which may be driven through membrane) cut off flush with slab after pouring.
    - b. At turn-ups of adjacent runs of exposed conduit, obtain alignment by wiring members to a temporary horizontal member.
  15. Empty or spare conduit stub-ups shall be capped with a threaded cap.
  16. Encasement Under Roads, Structures, and at other locations indicated on the drawings:
    - a. Under roads, paved areas, railroad tracks, and other locations indicated on the plans install conduits in concrete encasement of rectangular cross-section providing a minimum of 3 inch concrete cover around ducts.
    - c. Provide plastic duct spacers that interlock vertically and horizontally. Spacer assemblies shall consist of base spacers, intermediate spacers, and top spacers to provide a completely enclosed and locked-in conduit assembly.
    - d. Install #4 rebar at each corner of the encasement and at not more than 18" on center vertically and horizontally on the sides of the encasement. #4 rebar hoops shall be installed at not more than 18" on center along the length of the encasement.
    - e. Concrete encasement shall extend at least 5 feet beyond the edges of paved areas and roads, and 12 feet beyond the rails on each side of railroad tracks.
  17. Conduits to be installed under existing paved areas, which are not to be disturbed, and under roads and railroad tracks, shall be installed through a zinc coated, rigid steel, sleeve, jacked into place.
  18. Conduits installed between handholes, manholes or other accessible areas shall have a minimum slope of 3 inches in each 100 feet away from buildings and toward manholes and other necessary drainage points.
  19. The contractor shall provide properly rated and sized junction and pull boxes as required on all underground conduit runs 150 feet and greater so as to minimize pulling tensions on cables to be installed in conduits. In no case shall pull or junction boxes be further than 300 feet apart. Provide pulling tension calculations on all underground runs over 200 feet as required in Paragraph 1.09 Submittals.
- F. Conduit Installation in concrete slabs:
1. Conduit installed in concrete slabs shall be rigid steel or IMC. Rigid steel or IMC conduits installed in slabs-on-grade shall be field wrapped with 0.010 inch thick pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlay, or shall have a factory-applied polyvinyl chloride, plastic resin, or epoxy coating system. Painted on coatings shall not be acceptable.
  2. At slabs on grade, conduit, 3/4" maximum, may be run in the slab; larger conduit shall be run below slab.

3. Where adequate support cannot be obtained by wiring to reinforcing steel, obtain support with solid iron stakes (which may be driven through membrane) cut off flush with slab after pouring.
  4. At turn-ups of adjacent runs of exposed conduit, obtain alignment by wiring members to a temporary horizontal member.
- G. Flexible conduit:
1. At motor or equipment connections:
    - a. The maximum length allowable for flexible conduit shall be 36 inches except at lighting fixtures.
    - b. Flexible conduit installed outdoors shall be installed so as to provide an 8 inch minimum drip loop as measured from the lowest end of the conduit.
  2. At lighting fixture connections provide flexible steel conduit by one of the manufacturers named for rigid.
    - a. Maximum length allowable shall be 72 inches.
    - b. Support flexible conduit such that it does not contact the ceiling system, ductwork, or other equipment above the ceiling. The conduit shall not be attached to a ceiling or ceiling support system.
    - c. All fixture whips shall be supported within 12" of outlet/junction boxes with single hole clamps.
- H. Empty conduit:
1. Install a #14 galvanized fish wire or polypropylene pull cord with 14-inch free ends in all empty power and/or auxiliary conduits.
  2. All conduits indicated to be terminated above the ceiling shall have an elbow turned out above the ceiling and shall be terminated with an insulating bushing.
  3. Empty conduits stubbed out of buildings below grade:
    - a. Empty conduits stubbed out of buildings below grade shall extend 5 feet outside of the building foundation.
    - b. Install a 12"x 12"x 6" concrete marker at grade, above the end of the conduits, with "ELEC" inscribed on top.
    - f. Note on as-built drawings the exact location where empty conduit(s) are stubbed out below grade to the building exterior. Indicate conduit sizes and number of each size.
    - g. The contractor shall provide properly rated and sized junction and pull boxes as required on all underground conduit runs 150 feet and greater. In no case shall pull or junction boxes be further than 200 feet apart.
- I. Conduit entries into enclosures, panelboards, and wiring troughs:
1. Layout conduit entries carefully to allow clearances for the number and sizes of conduits, electrical equipment, and future expansion.
  2. In sheet metal equipment use Greenlee Knock-Out punch, or equal, to cut holes for conduit installation. Do not drill holes, or cut holes out with snips or torch.
  3. In cast enclosures and boxes drill conduit openings with correct size drill for tight fit.
- J. **All junction box covers above the ceiling shall be labeled to which circuits or systems they contain.**

### 3.12. CONDUIT BODIES:

- A. Conduit bodies shall be sized in accordance with NEC 370, and 373.
1. Conduit bodies for conductor sizes AWG #4 and larger shall be mogul type bodies sized in accordance with NEC 370-28.
  2. Conduit bodies for conductor sizes AWG #6 and smaller shall be sized in accordance with NEC 370-16(c).

### 3.13. JUNCTION AND PULL BOXES:

- A. Junction and pull boxes shall be sized per NEC to accommodate the installed number and size of conductors and conduits.
- B. Boxes shall be securely fastened in place.

- C. Boxes serving lighting fixtures installed in accessible, suspended ceilings:
  1. Provide number of boxes as required to maintain fixture whips within the 6' maximum length.
  2. Generally attach to underside of structure above, in accessible location, to accommodate a maximum 6' flexible conduit connection to each fixture or fixture run.
  3. Where the structure above is more than 18" above the ceiling the boxes shall be supported within 18 inches of the ceiling with all thread rod and/or strut.
- D. Install galvanized steel utility box plates, by box manufacturer, at exposed conduit fittings or boxes.
- E. **All junction box covers above the ceiling shall be labeled to which circuits or systems they contain.**

**3.14. WIRE AND CABLE INSTALLATION:**

- A. No conductor shall be smaller than #12 except where so designated on the drawings or specified elsewhere.
- B. Multiwire lighting branch circuits shall be used where indicated.
- C. Wiring devices shall be connected such that each device can be removed without interrupting the neutral or equipment grounding conductors serving other outlets on the same circuit(s).
- D. Joints and splices in wire shall be made with solderless connectors, and covered so that insulation is equal to conductor insulation. Wire nuts shall not be used for conductor #8 and larger.
- E. No splices shall be pulled into conduit.
- F. Both conductors and conduit shall be continuous from outlet to outlet.
- G. No conductor shall be pulled into the conduit until the conduit is cleaned of all foreign matter.
- H. When installing parallel conductors, it is mandatory that all conductors making up the feeder be exactly the same length, the same size, and type of conductor with the same insulation. Each group of conductors making up a phase or neutral must be bonded together at both ends in an approved manner.
- I. MC cable or Romex cable will not be accepted unless specifically called for on drawings.
- J. Wiring thru light fixtures and receptacles will not be accepted.

**3.15. AUXILIARY GUTTERS (WIRING TROUGHS):**

- A. Auxiliary Gutters shall be sized per NEC to accommodate the installed number, size, and orientation of conductors and conduits.
- B. Conductors serving a gutter shall be extended without reduction in size, for the entire length of the gutter.
- C. All taps and splices shall be made with insulated multi-tap connectors.

**3.16. CIRCUITS AND BRANCH CIRCUITS:**

- A. Outlets shall be connected to branch circuits as indicated on the drawings by circuit number adjacent to outlet symbols, and no more outlets than are indicated shall be connected to a circuit.

**3.17. WIRE JOINTS:**

- A. Except for motor circuits, wire joints for #8 and smaller wire shall be made with twist on connectors.
- B. Wire joints and splices for motor circuits, for conductors #6 and larger, and for smaller conductors where other connectors are not rated for the number of conductors involved shall be made with split bolt connectors rated for the applicable conductor size, number of conductors, and conductor material.
  1. Properly tape and insulate all joints to attain the same insulation rating as the cable insulation.

2. Splices for #6 through #1 shall have a minimum of two (2) layers of rubber tape covered by a minimum of three (3) layers of electrical tape.
  3. Splices for #1/0 and larger conductors shall have a minimum of two (2) layers of electrical filler tape covered by a minimum of three (3) layers of electrical tape.
- C. Splices in control conductors shall be avoided as much as possible. Stranded control conductor up to #12 may be connected or spliced with hand crimped type compression connectors. The connectors shall be of the proper size for the conductors being connected.
  - D. Splices and joints made with mechanical/hydraulic type compression connectors:
    1. Connections and splices shall be made with connectors rated for the applicable conductor size and conductor material.
    2. Dies used shall leave the die number embossed in the connector. The Contractor shall provide the Engineer with the Manufacturer's connector and die chart prior to final inspection.
  - E. Taps and splices in auxiliary gutters/troughs shall be made with insulated multi-tap connectors.
  - F. Wire joints and splices made below grade shall be made with UL listed waterproof connectors, wire nuts, or splice kits.
  - G. All joints and splices shall be made in junction boxes, wiring troughs, or conduit bodies sized per NEC.
  - H. All connections to switchboards, panelboards, transformers, generators, ATS, or any other type electrical distribution type equipment shall be compression type fittings. Mechanical fittings will not be accepted in these applications.

**3.18. STRUT SYSTEM FOR SUPPORT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT:**

- A. Strut Systems: Strut shall be utilized to rack exposed piping vertically or horizontally on walls and across slabs (where applicable). Strut may be utilized to support piping above ceilings, for support of equipment, and elsewhere as deemed appropriate.
  1. Strut in conditioned spaces and above accessible ceilings shall be electro-galvanized.
  2. Strut installed outdoors, in mechanical rooms, and in other unconditioned spaces shall be hot-dipped galvanized.
  3. Strut installed in waste water treatment facilities, kitchens, dishwashing spaces, and labs shall be stainless steel.
  4. Strut fittings and hardware, including anchors, shall be same material as strut.
  5. Saw cut strut square, 6" minimum lengths. Strut on continuous runs of pipe shall be same length. File or grind burrs from saw cuts.
  6. After installation, electro-galvanized and hot-dipped galvanized strut shall be painted with two coats of zinc primer.

**3.19. OUTLET BOX INSTALLATION:**

- A. General: The drawings indicate approximate locations only; determine the exact location at the building in view of all structural and architectural conditions. Obtain Architect's verification of final locations.
- B. Outlet boxes shall be sized per NEC to accommodate the installed number and size of conductors, wiring devices, and conduits.
- C. Ceiling and Wall Bracket Outlets: 4" octagonal boxes with plaster rings appropriate for finish surface.
- D. Typical boxes (for switches, receptacles and auxiliary systems): 4" square boxes ganged as required. Furnish with 3/4" plaster rings where employed in plaster, 1" tile covers where used in ceramic tile, 1" plaster rings where set in exposed concrete, and otherwise appropriate for surface and construction.
- E. Boxes in Exposed (or Thin-Coat Plastered) Masonry: Where conduit connections permit, employ solid flush-type, square-cornered, masonry boxes with turned-in device holders; otherwise employ typical box with 1-1/2" square-cut tile cover. .
- F. Multiple Outlet Floor Boxes:

1. Verify the exact location of the floor boxes with the Architect prior to rough-in.
  2. Set the boxes in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
  3. Boxes shall be set so that the box is flush with the finished floor; the boxes shall not cause a rise or fall in the floor.
  4. The power outlets shall be connected to the circuits indicated by the numbers next to the symbol.
  5. For Data outlets, install a 1" C. to above the nearest corridor ceiling..
- G. Boxes used with Exposed Conduit: 4" square utility boxes.
- H. Exterior Boxes: Cast-metal boxes, Crouse-Hinds Type FS or FD as appropriate. Make weatherproof with gasketed covers. Equal products by Appleton, Killark, O-Z/Gedney, or approved equal will be accepted.
- I. Boxes used with Recessed Lighting Fixtures in suspended acoustical tile ceilings:
1. Provide a 4" square box with blank cover adjacent to each fixture or fixture group.
  2. Install a flexible metal conduit fixture "whip" from the box to the fixtures. The "whip" shall not be longer than 72".
  3. Attach the box to the underside of the structure above, in an accessible location, not more than 18" above the lay-in ceiling.
  4. Where structure is more than 18" above the ceiling, the boxes shall be supported from all-thread rods, strut, or a combination of rod and strut.
- J. Boxes in Dry Wall Construction:
1. Outlet boxes shall be securely fastened in place.
  2. Outlet boxes installed in metal stud construction shall be supported by brackets screwed to studs. Clip on brackets shall not be accepted.
    - a. Where a single outlet box is installed adjacent to a stud, brackets may attach to a single stud with a brace against the back of the opposite wall. Use a bracket equal to Caddy Fasteners "H" Series.
    - b. Where outlets do not fall next to a stud or where more than one outlet is installed between studs use a metal bracket attached to both studs. Brackets shall be equal to Caddy Fasteners "SGB", "TSGB", or "RBS" series brackets.
    - c. Outlet boxes three gangs and wider shall be supported with support member screwed to the two adjacent studs. Brackets equal to Caddy Fasteners SGB or TSGB brackets may be used.
- K. Sectional type switch boxes at least 2-1/2" deep may be used instead of typical box (but not where dry wall finish is applied over masonry back-up and not where multi- gang devices occur).
- L. Outlets in unfinished masonry walls may be slightly adjusted upward or downward to suit masonry courses, provided outlets are mounted at uniform heights throughout the installation.
- M. Coordinate installation of outlet boxes in masonry walls with the masonry contractor to insure that boxes are flush with face of wall and grouted smooth around boxes such that covers, fixtures or devices install flush on face of wall.
- N. Where outlets at different levels are shown adjacent, install in one vertical line where possible. Avoid conflict with wainscot caps, splash backs and upper cabinets by adjusting height slightly up or down as directed.
- O. Back to back boxes shall be staggered with at least 3 inches between boxes.
- P. Back to back boxes in fire rated partitions shall have a minimum of 24" horizontal and/or vertical separation between them.
- Q. Backs of boxes three gang and larger installed in fire rated partitions shall be wrapped with self adhesive fire stopping tape.
- R. Locate switch outlets on the lock side of doors and so that the first switch in a single or gang installation is approximately 6" to 10" from the doorjamb. Verify door swings on Architectural Drawings.

- S. Dimmers shall be ganged together in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions where appropriate, but shall not be ganged with toggle switches.
- T. Coordinate carefully with appropriate trades the size and orientation (vertical, horizontal) of outlet boxes for thermostats, data outlets, fire alarm equipment, security equipment, and other control and communications outlets.
- U. Mounting Heights:  
 Confirm all mounting height with local codes and authorities prior to bid and adjust as required:
 

Switches, generally	48" A.F.F. to top of outlet
Safety switches	Center of Switch 48" A.F.F. or as required.
Receptacles, generally	16" A.F.F. to bottom of outlet
Receptacles over counters	Bottom of outlet 6" above countertops or 2" above backsplashes
Telephone Outlets	16" A.F.F. to bottom of outlet
Computer Outlets	16" A.F.F. to bottom of outlet
Television Outlets	16" A.F.F. to bottom of outlet or as indicated
Wall mounted exit and emergency lights	Bottom of fixture 7'- 6" A.F.F. or 12" below Ceiling whichever is lower
Thermostat	Top of outlet 48" A.F.F. or as noted by mechanical drawings.
Clocks & clock outlets	Top of outlet 12" below ceiling, 8' maximum.
Brass bell	Top of outlet 12" below ceiling, 8' maximum.
Electric Water Coolers	Coordinate location with plumbing contractor to locate the receptacle(s) concealed within the EWC enclosure per manufacturer's installation instructions.
- V. Install blank coverplates on all unused power and auxiliary outlet boxes. Blank coverplates shall match other cover plates installed in the facility.
- W. Furnish blank plates, matching those on the other outlets in the same area, on TV outlets and other outlets installed for future use.

**3.20. WIRING DEVICES:**

- A. Install wall devices vertically unless otherwise noted, so that all devices of any given height will align exactly.
- B. Where boxes are not flush or square with the finished wall surface install wiring devices utilizing a leveler and retainer equal to Caddy #RLC or Steel City #SSF-SR.
- C. Plates shall be plumb and true with all four edges contacting wall surface.
- D. Mount receptacles with grounding terminals down.
- E. Do not install devices until plastering or other type wall covering has been completed; install ahead of painting work, but protect from paint spatter.
- F. Use screw terminal connections only.
- G. Do not gang dimmer switches with toggle switches.
- H. Each single or multi outlet receptacle, other than straight blade, 15 or 20 amp, 120 volts, NEMA 5-15R or NEMA 5-20R, shall be provided with matching cord plugs and a minimum of 8 feet of Type SOW cable matching the receptacle size and configuration.
- I. Pin and sleeve plugs for food service equipment shall be provided with a Type SOW cable connected to the equipment and plug of sufficient length to reach from the equipment to the plug with a minimum of 18" slack cord. Minimum length shall be 6 feet from equipment to plug.
- J. Provide "Kellums" type grips at the plug, cord connector, and for overhead support on all overhead cord connector drops.

**3.21. OCCUPANCY SENSORS AND ASSOCIATED DEVICES FOR LIGHTING CONTROL:**

- A. Occupancy sensors and associated devices and circuiting shall be installed in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

- B. Wall, corner mounted sensors shall be mounted as close to the ceiling as possible on the manufacturer" corner mounting bracket.
- C. Power packs shall be mounted above the ceiling. Power packs shall be installed utilizing two(2) 4" x 4" x 2-1/8" deep boxes joined together using the nipple on the powerpack in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. One of the boxes shall contain the power pack and control wiring and the other shall contain the power wiring.
- D. All control and power circuiting shall be in EMT conduit. Where the devices are not equipped with conduit connections the conduit shall be brought up as close as possible to the device and terminated with insulating bushings.

### **3.22. ELECTRICALLY POWERED EQUIPMENT AND CONTROLS:**

- A. Provide and install power circuits for all electrically powered equipment and controls.
- B. Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Control Wiring and Conduit:
  - 1. The electrical contractor shall be responsible for installing outlet boxes for flush mounted HVAC system thermostats in dry wall or masonry wall construction and, where called for on the plans, for surface mounted metallic reaway in finished areas. Extend 3/4" conduit from the outlet to above nearest accessible ceiling and terminate horizontally. Refer to the Mechanical/HVAC plans for thermostat locations and coordinate exact type outlet required and orientation with the Mechanical/HVAC contractor.
  - 2. The Mechanical Contractor shall be responsible for the installation of all outlets and conduit for surface mounted devices in unfinished areas such as shops, warehouses, industrial facilities, etc.
  - 3. The mechanical contractor shall furnish and install all low and line voltage control wiring required for the temperature control and/or ventilation systems.
- C. Where Fire Alarm system duct mounted smoke detectors and HVAC shut down interface relays are provided, the Electrical contractor shall provide wiring from the smoke detectors to the HVAC shut down interface relay. All circuiting from the shut down relay to the HVAC controls and/or starters shall be provided and installed by the Mechanical/Controls contractor.
- D. The mechanical contractor shall furnish all motor starters for the temperature control and/or ventilation equipment unless otherwise indicated on the electrical plans or elsewhere in these electrical specifications. The electrical contractor shall install all motor starters, except for equipment with factory installed starters, for the temperature control and/or ventilation equipment.
- E. Where exhaust fans are supplied with field installed speed controllers, the Electrical Contractor shall provide all necessary circuiting to the fan/speed controller and between the fan and the speed controller.

### **3.23. DISCONNECTING MEANS:**

- A. Where required by the National Electrical Code and/or other applicable codes or authorities, or where indicated on the electrical plans, the electrical contractor shall furnish and install an approved disconnecting means for all electrically powered equipment and/or controllers for such equipment whether the disconnecting means is or is not shown on the electrical plans.
  - 1. The location, rating, and enclosure for the disconnecting means shall be as required by the National Electrical Code and/or other applicable codes or authorities.
  - 2. Manual motor starters with thermal overload protection may be used in lieu of safety switches for individual motors under 1 horsepower.
  - 3. Motor rated switches may be used for the disconnecting means when supplied of correct voltage, phase, amperage rating, and enclosure type.
  - 4. The disconnecting means shall be as manufactured by General Electric, Cutler Hammer, or Siemens. Square D will not be accepted.
- B. Where the disconnecting means shown on the electrical plans has a rating greater than the required code rating, the greater rating device shall be installed.

- C. An approved horsepower rated fusible safety switch shall be installed where the circuit overcurrent protection does not provide overload protection for the equipment served and where required to meet the equipment's listing requirements.
- D. Motor rated switches may be used as service disconnect switches when supplied with a padlockable, handle locking guard.
- E. Install an engraved phenolic nameplate on the front of each switch enclosure identifying the equipment served by the safety switch and source of power (i.e., panel name and circuit number). Plates shall be white with black lettering. The plates shall be permanently installed with stainless steel screws or stainless steel rivets.
- F. All disconnects installed in public areas or in areas readily accessible to the public shall be lockable and shall be furnished with a brass lock. Provide 10 keys for each lock. All disconnect locks furnished on the project shall be keyed alike.

### **3.24. LIGHTING FIXTURES:**

- A. The installation and support of all lighting fixtures shall be the responsibility of the Electrical Contractor.
- B. Lay out work as shown, and to provide attractive and efficient arrangement.
- C. Install fixtures level, plumb, and true with ceiling and walls, and in alignment with adjacent lighting fixtures.
- D. Provide adequate and substantial supports for fixtures in accordance with manufacturers' directions and as specified herein.
- E. A Re-lock system will not be accepted for installing lights.
- F. Wire grid mounted luminaries individually to junction boxes with flexible conduit not more than 6 feet in length. Individual flexible connections shall be 2 #14 and 1 #14 ground THHN in 3/8" flexible conduit. Ground wire shall be bonded at each end.
- G. LED fixtures with center baskets shall have all fixtures in a room installed with the baskets oriented in the same direction.
- H. Fixtures mounted in inverted "T" grids:
  - 1. For round fixtures or fixtures smaller in size than the ceiling grid, provide a minimum of four wires per fixture located within 4 inches of each corner of the ceiling grid in which the fixture is located. Do not support fixtures by ceiling acoustical panels. Fixtures shall be supported independent of the ceiling system or shall be supported by at least two metal channels spanning the grid system, and secured to, the ceiling tees. One support wire shall be attached to the center of the fixture or to each of the metal channels.
  - 2. Surface mounted fixtures:
    - a. Surface mounted fixtures installed on lay-in ceiling systems shall be supported independent of the ceiling system from the building structure with a minimum of two (2) 3/8", minimum, all-thread rods.
    - b. Install nuts and washers on inside and outside of the fixture housing to provide a rigid installation.
    - c. Provide cross bracing as required such that fixtures have no lateral movement.
- I. All stems on fluorescent fixtures shall be installed as follows: (except fixtures with slide grip hangers) first and last stem in row in first knockout from end of fixture. One stem shall be installed between each two fixtures, stem shall center joint, where fixtures join, and attach by use of "jointing plates". Nipples with lock nuts and bushings shall connect all fixtures in continuous rows other than recessed grid type.
- J. All suspended lighting fixtures shall be provided with chain or cable sway bracing to keep fixtures from swinging.
- K. Fixtures installed in fire rated assemblies shall be tented in accordance with the specified assembly.
- L. Means shall be provided to keep insulation 4" minimum away from fixtures not rated for direct contact with insulation.



- M. Prior to final inspection clean fixtures and lamps with a soft cloth or sponge and detergent (not soap) solution.
- N. All lighting fixtures installed in gymnasiums, hangars, high bay or similar use areas shall be equipped with wire guards.
- O. All emergency and exit lights designated on drawings shall be provided with an 1100-lumen battery ballast.
- P. All light fixtures shall be supported to the structure independent of the ceiling system on two opposite sides. Support wires shall be different color from ceiling support wires. Engage all ceiling mounting clips. If light fixture is not provided with grid support clips, then the contractor will be responsible to support the fixture on all four sides with support wires. See "Typical Lay-In Luminaire Detail" on drawings for further requirements.

### **3.25. PANELBOARDS AND SWITCHBOARDS:**

- A. Panelboards and switchboards shall be installed where shown on the drawings.
- B. Ratings and configurations shall be as scheduled and/or indicated on the drawings.
- C. The Electrical Contractor shall coordinate installation of equipment in Electrical and Electrical/Mechanical spaces with other trades such that Code required clearances and working space around the electrical equipment is maintained.
- D. Conduit termination:
  - 1. In general use panelboards with blank ends, without knockouts.
  - 2. Layout conduit entries carefully to allow clearances for drywall or CMU wall thickness, and to accommodate the number and sizes of home run conduits and specified spare conduits.
  - 3. Use Greenlee Knock-Out punch, or equal, to cut holes in panelboard ends and/or sides for conduit installation. Do not drill holes, or cut holes out with snips or torch.
- E. Phase arrangement in panelboards shall be per the NEC, phase A, B, C from front to back, top to bottom, or left to right as viewed from the front.
- F. In Delta connected systems the "high" leg shall be the B phase and shall be clearly marked with an orange outer finish.
- G. Multi-Section Panelboards:
  - 1. Sub-feed conductors shall be the same size as the conductors feeding the main section.
  - 2. Circuiting originating in one section shall not pass through another section.
  - 3. Circuit conductors and grounding conductors shall originate in the same panelboard section.
  - 4. A separate isolated grounding conductor shall be installed from the main section to the sub-feed section(s).
  - 5. Where the panelboard is rated for service entrance equipment the each sub-feed section shall have a separate isolated ground buss fed from the main section ground buss.
- H. Labeling:
  - 1. Each panelboard shall have an engraved phenolic plate permanently installed on the front of the panel with the panel name, current rating, and voltage rating.
  - 2. Where there is more than one nominal voltage system the panel shall also have an engraved phenolic plate describing the means of identification used to identify the phase and system of each ungrounded conductor of the system served by the panel.
  - 3. Plates shall be white with black lettering.
  - 4. Panelboard circuit numbers shall be as indicated on the panelboard schedules.

### **3.26. PHOTOELECTRIC CELLS, TIMERS, AND CONTACTORS FOR LIGHTING CONTROL:**

- A. Install time clocks where accessible.
- B. Install photoelectric cells so that lighting fixtures do not affect the cell.
- C. Adjust time clock(s) and photoelectric cells as required for proper operation.

### **3.27. IDENTIFICATION AND LABELING:**

- A. Feeder Designation:
  - 1. Non-ferrous identifying tags or pressure sensitive labels shall be securely fastened to all cables, feeders, and power circuits in vaults, pull boxes, manholes, switch gear and at termination of cables. Tags or labels shall be stamped or printed to correspond with markings on drawings so that feeder or cable number and phase can be readily identified.
  - 2. Where there is more than one nominal voltage system, each ungrounded system conductor shall be identified by phase and system wherever accessible per NEC. The means of identification shall be permanently posted at each branch-circuit panelboard.
- B. Color Coding of Conductors:
  - 1. The ungrounded (phase) conductors and the grounded (neutral) conductors of each voltage system shall be identified by the following color coding method:
    - a. 120/240 Volts, Single Phase, 3 Wire:
      - 1) Grounded (Neutral) Conductor --- White
      - 2) Ungrounded (Phase) Conductors --- Red, Black
    - a. 120/240 Volts, Three Phase, 4 wire:
      - 1) Grounded (Neutral) Conductor --- White
      - 2) Ungrounded (Phase) Conductors --- Red, Orange, Black
    - b. 120/208 Volts, 3 Phase, 4 Wire:
      - 1) Grounded (neutral) Conductor --- White
      - 2) Ungrounded (phase) Conductors --- Black, Blue, Red
    - c. 277/480 Volts, 3 Phase, 4 Wire:
      - 1) Grounded (neutral) Conductor --- Gray
      - 2) Ungrounded (phase) Conductors --- Brown, Orange, Yellow
  - 2. Green shall be used for equipment grounding conductors only.
  - 3. The insulation color shall be visible for the entire length of wire.
- C. Panelboard:
  - 1. Each Lighting and Power Panelboard shall contain a typed circuit directory listing all circuit breakers and the load served by each.
  - 2. Panelboard directories shall be typewritten, and shall include adequate descriptions for proper identification of individual circuits. Do not write in or on panelboards.
  - 3. On Distribution panelboards, provide and install an engraved laminated label for each circuit, indicating circuit's number and load served.
  - 4. Each panelboard shall have an engraved phenolic plate permanently installed on the front of the panel with the panel name, current rating, and voltage rating.
  - 5. Where there is more than one nominal voltage system each panelboard shall have an engraved phenolic plate describing the means of identification used to identify each phase, neutral, and grounding conductors of the system served by the panelboard per NEC.
  - 6. Plates shall be white with black lettering.
- D. Wall Switches: Where three or more switches are ganged, and elsewhere as indicated, identify each switch with approved legend engraved on the wall plate.
- E. Receptacles: Install a label on the face of the coverplate and tags or wire markers inside the outlet box identifying the panelboard and circuit number from which the outlet is served. Use machine-printed, pressure-sensitive, abrasion-resistant label tape on face of coverplate- black print on clear tape on light colored or stainless steel plates and white print on clear tape on dark colored plates. Embossed tape labels will not be accepted. Use durable wire markers or tags within outlet boxes.
- G. Disconnect Switches:
  - 1. Install an engraved phenolic nameplate on the front of each switch enclosure identifying the equipment served by the safety switch and source of power (i.e., panel name and circuit number).
  - 2. Plates shall be white with black lettering.
  - 3. The plates shall be permanently installed with stainless steel screws or stainless steel rivets. Plates installed with glue or other adhesives will not be accepted.

4. Where motor rated switches are used as service disconnect switches, labeling shall be as described for receptacles.
- H. Junction boxes: Identify circuits enclosed in concealed junction boxes on the cover with permanent marking pen.
  1. For power and lighting circuits indicate panelboard of origin and panelboard circuit number(s).
  2. For auxiliary systems circuiting indicate the system and zone served.
- I. Service disconnects:
  1. An additional engraved sign shall be permanently attached next to panelboard circuit breakers, on enclosed circuit breaker enclosures, and/or on disconnect switches used as service disconnects to identify each main service disconnect.
  2. The sign shall be red with white lettering a minimum of 1/2" high.
  3. Where multiple main disconnects are utilized the labels shall identify each as one of a group, i.e., "Service Disconnect 1 of 3", etc. where there are three service disconnects.

### 3.28. FIRE ALARM SYSTEM:

- A. The installation shall be by a Certified Fire Alarm Contractor who has qualified and received a permit from the Alabama State Fire Marshal, with an NICET Level III on staff.
- B. All wiring shall be in accordance with the National Electric Code and the local code having jurisdiction.
- C. Unless otherwise specified, minimum wire size shall be 14 gauge for AC and power supply connections, 14 gauge for audible alarm and auxiliary circuits, and 18 gauge for signal initiating circuits. Diagrams shall be provided for device and power wiring. Color coding and permanent numbering shall be used as recommended by the equipment supplier.
- D. All system wiring shall be installed in metal raceway in accordance with Section "Raceways".
- E. Junction boxes shall have covers painted red with the letters "FA" stenciled on the cover in 2" high white letters.
- F. Auxiliary Remote Power Supplies/Notification Appliance Circuit Extender (NAC panel):
  1. Power supplies shall be sized at 133% of proposed load. Fire Alarm submittals shall include power supply capacity and loading data.
  2. Remote power supplies shall be supervised by the FACP.
  3. The power supplies shall be installed, accessible, below ceiling, in electrical rooms or where indicated on the drawings.
- G. Where air handler shut down is controlled from the fire alarm system, the fire alarm system installer shall provide circuiting as required between the Duct Mounted Smoke Detectors and the HVAC interface/shut down relays. Circuiting connecting the relay output contacts to the HVAC control system shall be provided and installed by the Mechanical/Controls contractor.
- H. Each air handling unit shall be a separate fire alarm initiating zone.
- I. Install wire guards on all smoke detectors and notification devices installed in gymnasiums or similar use areas.
- J. **Install UL fire listed cellular communicator for monitoring of the fire alarm system. Provide all material and labor as needed for complete functioning system at the completion of construction.**
- K. Final connections to the Fire Alarm Control Panel and Voice Panel shall be made by a factory certified, NICET Level III, technician.
- L. A factory-trained representative of the manufacturer shall supervise connections and final testing of this system and shall complete a Certificate of Completion per NFPA 72. The Certificate of Completion shall be completed and copies delivered to the Owner, Architect, and Engineer prior to the final inspection.
- M. On completion of the acceptance tests, the Owner or his representative shall be instructed in the operation and testing of the system.

- N. **At the acceptance tests, contractor shall provide engineer with smoke detector diagnostic reports for all smoke detectors. All smoke detectors more than 10% dirty shall be either cleaned or replaced until test show value less than 10%.**
- O. The fire alarm system shall be warranted free from defects in workmanship and materials, under normal use and service, for a period of one year from the date of acceptance or beneficial occupancy, whichever is earlier. Any equipment shown to be defective in workmanship or material shall be repaired, replaced, or adjusted free of charge.
- P. Identification and labeling:
  - 1. Provide a framed building drawing identifying each zone and/or building area.
  - 2. Each building zone on the Fire Alarm Control panel shall relate to the building drawing in a manner that will direct the fire department to the area of a fire.
  - 3. On addressable systems each addressable device shall be given a name displayed on the control panel readout that will direct the fire department to the area of the fire, i.e. – South End of Zone(Building) 5; AHU-1 – Mechanical Room 201 – Building 2. Any room number reference shall be to final room numbers assigned to rooms on completion of construction.
  - 4. Building drawing, schedule of zones, and device identification schedule shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval prior to final inspection and acceptance.
  - 5. On addressable systems the contractor shall label each device with an alpha-numeric identifier that is unique to that device. This identifier shall correspond to the identifier programmed in the fire alarm control panel such that maintenance personnel may quickly and readily identify the device.

### **3.29. SECONDARY SURGE ARRESTERS:**

- A. Secondary surge arresters shall be installed in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Arrester may be mounted to the side of a surface mounted panelboard or trough. If such a surface is not available, the arrester shall be mounted on a bracket in its own flush mount enclosure located immediately adjacent to the service panel. Insure that all leads are attached per manufacturer's recommendations. Excess lead length shall be cut off prior to making connections.

### **3.30. CONCRETE:**

- A. The Electrical Contractor shall be responsible for placing concrete for electrical equipment pads, lighting standard bases, electrical equipment supports, and at other locations as indicated on the electrical drawings and/or specified herein.
- B. This Contractor shall be responsible for size, location, and orientation of the pads, bases, etc. Any required additions or modifications to concrete due to incorrect size, location, or orientation shall be the responsibility of this contractor.
- C. Concrete shall be cured for a period of not less than seven (7) days prior to setting poles, transformers, switchgear, motor control centers, or other pad mounted equipment.
- D. Forms shall be completely removed after concrete has cured and prior to setting equipment.
- E. A smooth wood float finish shall be given to exposed, unformed concrete.
- F. Honeycombed, or otherwise defective areas of concrete shall be repaired by patching with cement mortar.

### **3.31. INTERCOM SYSTEM:**

- A. Coordinate the locations of ceiling speakers with lighting fixtures and HVAC system devices and as close to where indicated as possible. Speaker baffles shall be pulled up tight against the ceiling tiles.
- B. Install Call-in switches in single gang outlet boxes where indicated on the plans.
- C. A cable must be run from each speaker to intercom control panel where shown. Cables shall be run in conduit.
- D. Cables shall be routed in EMT conduit from speaker outlets to above corridor ceiling.

- E. Cables above corridor ceilings:
  1. Cables shall be neatly bundled and supported with J-Hooks attached to the building structure a maximum of 4 feet on center.
  2. Intercom cables shall be installed on J-Hooks separate from all other auxiliary systems cables.
  3. Cables shall not come in contact with conduits, ceilings, lighting fixtures, ductwork, or water, sewer, or steam piping.
- F. Above inaccessible ceilings, cables shall be installed in EMT conduits. Conduits shall be terminated at each end with insulating bushings. Each end of conduit shall be easily accessible.
- G. Cables routed through finished spaces which do not have suspended ceilings shall be installed in conduit. Conduits shall be concealed above ceilings or in hollow spaces if possible. Routing of any exposed conduit shall be coordinated with the architect.

### **3.32. SPARE MATERIAL:**

- A. Provide two exit signs and four emergency wall packs and 50 feet of circuiting in conduit for each device complete with all labor and material for installation in a location as directed by the engineer or architect.
- B. Provide four type NEMA 5-20R receptacles complete with 75 feet of circuiting in conduit. For each device provide complete with all additional labor and materials for installation in a location as directed by the architect or engineer.
- C. Provide two type NEMA 5-20R GFCI receptacles complete with 75 feet of circuiting in conduit. For each device provide complete with all additional labor and materials for installation in a location as directed by the architect or engineer.
- D. Provide four duplex communications outlets complete with all labor, material, cabling and conduit necessary to install outlet 300 feet from the nearest communications IDF closet and terminate outlet cables on patch panels in rack. Outlets to be installed in a location as directed by architect or engineer.
- E. Provide two of each type of fire alarm notification devices (speaker/strobe units, strobe only units) and 75 feet of circuiting in conduit for each device complete with all labor, programming, and material for installation in a location as directed by the engineer or architect.
- F. Provide two of each type of fire alarm heat detector devices and 75 feet of circuiting in conduit for each device complete with all labor, programming, and material for installation in a location as directed by the engineer or architect.
- G. Provide two of each type of initiating device (pull station, zone module, duct detector, smoke detector) and 75 feet of circuiting in conduit for each device complete with all labor and material for installation in a location as directed by the engineer or architect.
- H. Provide one spare set of fuses for each size and type fuse used.

### **3.33. EQUIPMENT TOUCHUP AND PAINTING:**

- A. Clean damaged and disturbed areas on all painted surfaces of enclosures, cabinets, and equipment, sand smooth, and apply primer, intermediate, and finish coats of paint to suit the degree of damage at each location. Paint shall be the manufacturer's supplied touch up paint or a matching paint. Prep all surfaces to be painted by removing all rust, dirt, oil, and any other material that might inhibit good paint adhesion by mechanical means and/or with solvents.
- B. Follow paint manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation and for timing and application of successive coats.
- C. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with two coats of zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
  1. Paint cut ends.
  2. Paint all drilled and punched holes.
  3. Paint all knicks and scratches.

4. Paint all field cut conduit threads.
- D. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 16715

### DATA/TELECOMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM

#### PART 1. GENERAL

##### 1.01. PURPOSE

- A . This document defines the products and the execution requirements required to furnish and install a complete distribution system utilizing a structured cabling system.
- B . All cables and related terminations, support and grounding hardware shall be furnished, installed, tested, and documented by the structured cabling contractor as detailed in this document.
- C . The distribution system shall be all inclusive and represent a complete installation at the sites shown on the attached drawings and in the attached specifications. The Vendor shall be responsible for all parts, labor, and all other associated apparatus necessary to completely install, test and turnover for acceptance to the Customer the cabling system detailed herein.
- D . Product specifications and general design considerations are provided in this document. Quantities of telecommunication outlets, typical installation details, cable routing and outlet types will be provided as an attachment to this document. The successful vendor shall meet or exceed all requirements for the cable system described in this document.
- E . Refer to contract drawings for additional requirements to include color coding of faceplates, jacks and cables, labeling, installation, etc.

##### 1.02. RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A . Drawings and general provision of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions, Division-1 Specification, and Division 16 Electrical sections apply to work in this section.

##### 1.03. REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A . ANSI/TIA/EIA-568B.1-Commercial building Telecommunications Cabling Standard, Part 1:General Requirements
- B . ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.2-Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard, Part 2:Balanced Twisted Pair Cabling Components.
- C . ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.3- Optical Fiber Cabling Components Standard.
- D . ANSI/TIA/EIA-569B-Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and spaces.
- E . ANSI/TIA/EIA-606(A)-The Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings.
- F . ANSI-J-STD-607(A)- Commercial Building Grounding and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications.
- G . TIA-526-7-OFSTP-7 Measurement of Optical Power Loss of Installed Single-Mode Fiber Cable Plant.
- H . TIA-526-14A-OFSTP-14 Optical Power Loss Measurements of Installed Multimode Fiber Cable Plant.
- I . ANSI/TIA/EIA-758(A)- Customer-Owned Outside Plant Telecommunications Cabling Standard.
- J . TIA TSB-140 Additional Guidelines for Field Testing Length, Loss and Polarity of Optical

- K . ANSI/TIA/EIA 568 B-2.10- 10GIG ETHERNET
- L . Install Cabling in accordance with the most recent edition of BICSI publications.
  - 1 . BICSI-Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual.
  - 2 . BICSI-Installation Transport Systems information Manual.
  - 3 . BICSI-Network Design Reference Design Manual.
  - 4 . BICSI-Outside Plant Design Reference Manual.
- M . Federal, State and local codes, rules, regulations, and ordinances governing the work, are fully part of the specifications as if herein repeated or hereto attached.
- N . If the contractor should note items in the drawings or the specifications, construction of which would be a code violations, promptly call them to the attention of the owner's representative in writing.
- O . Where the requirements of other sections of the specifications are more stringent than applicable codes, rules, regulations, and ordinances, the specifications shall apply.
- P . All material shall be listed by UL or other National Independent testing standard shall apply.
- Q . If this document and any of the documents listed above are in conflict, then the more stringent requirement shall apply. All documents listed are believed to be the most current releases of the documents. The Vendor has the responsibility to determine and adhere to the most recent release when developing the proposal for installation.
- R . This document does not replace any code, either partially or wholly. The Contractor must be aware of local codes that may impact this project.

#### **1.04. APPROVED CONTRACTOR**

- A . A copy of certification documents must be submitted with the product submittals in order for such quote to be valid. The telecommunications contractor is responsible for workmanship and installation practices in accordance with the manufacturer's written policies.
- B . The cable and connectivity manufacturer will extend a 25 year manufacturer's warranty for all products installed in this project to the end user once the telecommunications contractor fulfills all requirements under these specifications.
- C . The Telecommunications cabling contractor must provide a reference list with contact names and phone numbers for three (3) projects' of similar scope.
- D . Vendor must be a certified contractor with the Connectivity or Cable manufacturer specified in this document and be in good standing with Manufacturers 25 year warranty program.
- E . Vendor must have a RCDD on staff and be responsible for this project. RCDD credentials shall be submitted with bid.
- F . Lead project manager must have BICSI Installer Level II certification and must be full time employee of contractor.
- G . The owner reserves the right to require the Vendor to remove from the project any such employee the Owner deems to be incompetent, careless or insubordinate.
- H . All clean up activity related to work performed will be the responsibility of the Contractor and must be completed daily before leaving he site.

#### **1.05. SUBMITTALS**

- A . See Section 01300 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B . Submit to the engineer/designer shop drawings, product data (including cut sheets and catalog information), and samples required by the contract documents. Submit shop drawings, product data, and samples with such promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the work or in the activities of other contractors, The engineer/designer will indicate approval of shop drawings, product data, and samples submitted to the engineer by stamping submittals "APPROVED" with a stamp. Submitted shop drawings shall be initialed or signed by the contractor's legitimate firm name.



1. By submitting shop drawings, product data, and samples, the Vendor represents that he/she carefully reviewed and verified materials, quantities, field measurements, and field construction criteria related thereto. It also represents that the Vendor has checked, coordinated, and verified that information contained within shop drawings, product data, and samples conform to the requirements of the work and of the contract documents. The engineer/designer remains responsible for the design concept expressed in the contract documents as defined herein.
  2. The engineer's/designer's approval of shop drawings, product data, and samples submitted by the Vendor shall not relieve the Vendor of responsibility for deviations from requirements of the contract documents, unless the Vendor has specifically informed the engineer/designer in writing of such deviation at time of submittal, and the engineer/designer has given written approval of the specific deviation. The vendor shall continue to be responsible for deviations from requirements of the contract documents not specifically noted by the Vendor in writing, and specifically approved by the engineer in writing.
  3. The engineer's/designer's approval of shop drawings, product data, and samples shall not relieve the Vendor of responsibility for errors or omissions in such shop drawings, product data, and samples.
  4. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  5. Installation method.
- C. Shop Drawings: Show compliance with requirements on isometric schematic diagram of network layout, showing cable routings, telecommunication closets, rack and enclosure layouts and locations, service entrance, and grounding, prepared and approved by BICSI Registered Communications Distribution Designer (RCDD).
- D. Submit proof from manufactures good standing in manufactures warranty program.
- E. Submit letter from manufacture stating that the manufacture will provide twenty-five year (25) warranty in accordance with the requirements stated in this document.
- F. Submit copy of Contractors RCDD certification.
- G. Test Plan: Complete and detailed plan, with list of test equipment, procedures for inspection and testing, and intended test date; submit at least 10 days prior to intended test date.
- H. Upon request by the engineer/designer, furnish a list of references with specific information regarding type of project and involvement in providing of equipment and systems.
- I. Submit references as required.
- J. At completion of project, Contractor shall submit the following:
1. Copper certification test results printouts and diskettes.
  2. Optical fiber power meter/light source certification test results.
  3. Project Record Documents : Prepared and approved by BICSI Registered Communications Distribution Designer (RCDD).
    - a) . Submit 1/2" = 1'0"- drawing for each MDF and each IDF showing all racks, patch panels, 110 blocks etc.
    - b) . Identify distribution frames and equipment rooms by room number on contract drawings.
    - c) . Copper certification test results printouts and diskettes.
    - d) . Optical fiber power meter/light source test results.
    - e) . Labeling and administration documentation.
    - f) . Manufactures 25 year warranty certificate.
- K. Work shall not proceed without the Engineer's approval of the submitted items.
- L. The Contractor shall receive approval from the Engineer on all substitutions of material. No substituted materials shall be installed except by written approval from the engineer.

#### **1.06. QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. The Contractor shall be fully capable and experienced in the structured cabling system

- specified. The contractor shall have at least 3 years experience in structured cabling.
- B . The contractor shall employ the following.
    - 1 . The onsite project manager shall be a BICSI Registered Communications Distribution Designer (RCDD).
    - 2 . Supervisors and (25%) installer's factory certified by manufacturers of products to be installed.
  - C . Equipment and materials of the type for which are independent standard testing requirements, listings, and labels, shall be listed and labeled by the Independent testing laboratory.
  - D . Material and equipment shall be new, and conform to grade, quality, and standards specified. Equipment and materials of the same type shall be a product of the same manufacturer throughout installation.
  - E . Product Requirements:
    - 1 . Product shall be manufactured by an ISO 9001-2000 Certified Facility.
    - 2 . Product shall be free from defects in material and workmanship.
    - 3 . Manufacturers' must have a field representative who is industry qualified to provide quality control inspections during he life of the project.

**1.07. DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A . Products must be stored according manufactures recommendations as a minimum.
- B . Keep stored products clean and dry.
- C . If the Telecommunications Contractor wishes to have a trailer on site for storage of materials, arrangements shall be made with the owner.

**1.08. DRAWINGS**

- A . It shall be understood that the electrical details and drawings provided with the specification package are diagrammatic. They are included to show the intent of the specifications and to aid the Telecommunications Contractor in bidding the job. The Telecommunications Contractor shall make allowance in bid proposal to cover what ever work is required to comply with the intent of the plans and specifications.
- B . The Telecommunications Contractor shall verify all dimensions at the site and be responsible for their accuracy.
- C . Prior to submitting the bid, the telecommunications Contractor shall call the attention of the Engineer to any materials or apparatus the Telecommunication Contractor believes to be inadequate and to any necessary items of work omitted.

**1.09. WARRANTY**

- A . See Section 01780 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B . The Contractor shall provide a manufactures warranty to guarantee end-to-end high performance cabling systems that meet application requirements. The guarantee shall include Horizontal and Backbone cable and connectivity components and have one point of contact for all cabling system issues. The system shall be warranted for a period of at least 25 years.
- C . Materials and workmanship hereinafter specified shall be fully guaranteed by the vendor for a (1) one year period after Date of Substantial Completion against any defects. Defects which may occur as the result of faulty materials or workmanship within one year after installation and acceptance by The Customer shall be corrected by the Vendor at no additional cost to the Customer. The Vendor shall promptly, at no cost to The Customer, correct re-perform (including modifications or additions as necessary) any nonconforming or defective work within one year after completion of the project of which the work is part.

## **PART 2. PRODUCTS**

### **2.010. EQUIVALENT PRODUCTS**

- A . Due to the nature and type of communications all products, including but not limited to racks, patch panels, jacks, faceplates, patch cords, J-hooks shall be manufactured by Panduit, Hubbell Premise or Hellermann Tyton.
- B . All copper and optical fiber cable shall be manufactured by General Cable, Panduit, Hubbell, Draka or South Wire.
- C . Provide products of manufacturers as named in individual articles.
- D . Where no manufacturer is specified, provide products of manufacturers in compliance with requirements.
- E . The request for substitutions must be received (10) ten days prior to bid opening by Engineer in writing, listing any and all physical and technical differences between product specified and product request for substitution. Product samples of each item must accompany written request.
- F . Accepted substitutions will be approved by means of addendum.

### **2.011. APPROVED PRODUCTS**

### **2.012. WORK AREA OUTLETS**

- A . Work area outlets shall each be terminated at their designated work area location in the connector types described below.
- B . The same orientation and positioning of jacks and connectors shall be utilized throughout the installation. Prior to installation, the Telecommunications Contractor shall submit the proposed configuration for each outlet assembly, with labeling, for review by owner.
- C . The wiring scheme for this project shall be T568B unless otherwise directed by customer.

#### **D . Modular Jack**

- 1 . Mini-COM TX6 Category 6 Jack Modules.. The termination cap shall provide strain relief on the cable jacket, ensure cable twist are maintained to within 1/8" and include a wiring scheme label.
- 2 . Where color is not indicated coordinate with Engineer prior to installation.
- 3 . Approved Product
  - a) . Panduit
    - 1) Mayer Electric part # PANCJ688TG\*\* Color as indicated on contract drawings.
  - b) . Hubbell Premise
    - 1) Mayer Electric part# HUBHXJ6\*\* Color as indicated on contract drawings
  - c) . Hellermann Tyton

#### **E . Modular Jack for Wireless Access Point**

- 1 . Mini-COM TX6 Category 6 Jack Modules.. The termination cap shall provide strain relief on the cable jacket, ensure cable twist are maintained to within 1/8" and include a wiring scheme label.
- 2 . Contractor shall install a minimum of (2) Category 6 cables and a minimum of (2) Category 6 Green jacks for each Wireless access point location.
- 3 . Approved Product
  - a) . Panduit
    - 1) Mayer Electric part # PANCJ688TGGR
  - b) . Hubbell Premise
    - 1) Mayer Electric part# HUBHXJ6\*\* Green in color as indicated on contract drawings.

- c) . Hellermann Tyton

**F. Category 6 UTP Patch Cords**

- 1 . Category 6 Patch Cords shall be factory terminated with modular plugs featuring a tangle-free latch design and clear strain-relief boots to support easy moves, adds and changes. Each patch cord shall be 100% performance tested at the factory to the TIA/EIA Category 6 standard. Each patch cord shall be made by the same factory as the Cat6 jacks and patch panels used in the project.
- 2 . Contractor shall provide these exact lengths and quantities to the customer at end of project.
- 3 . List of Cat6 patch cords to be provided:

- 1 for every CAT cable:
  - 50% 1 foot
  - 50% 3 feet

Approved Product

- a) Panduit part number UTPSPxx\*\*
- b) Hubbell Premise part number HC6xx\*\*
- c) Hellermann Tyton part number PC6xxx\*\*

**2.013. Fiber Optic Patch Cords**

- A . Contractor shall provide four (4) ST to LC 3 meter multimode OM3 fiber optic patch cord for each IDF and CBB.
- B . Contractor shall provide four (4) ST to ST 3 meter multimode OM3 fiber optic patch cord for each IDF and CBB.
- 1 . Approved Product
  - a) . Panduit
  - b) . Hubbell Premise
  - c) . Hellermann Tyton

**2.014. MODULAR PATCH PANELS**

- A . All horizontal voice and data cables shall be installed in modular patch panels.
- B . Workstation jack module, cable and patch panel jack module shall be the same in color. The mixing of colors in the same modular patch panel shall not be allowed.
- C . All modular patch panels shall be 48 port design, with all ports filled. No port shall be left empty of the appropriate category 6 jack module. Blank Modules shall not be used.
- D . Modular Patch Panel
  - 1 . Rear mounted faceplates allow modules to be flush with front of patch panel. Pre-printed numbers above each port for easy identification. Mount to standard EIA 19" racks or 23" racks with optional extender brackets. All patch panels shall be 48 port design.
  - 2 . Approved Product
    - a) . Panduit
    - b) . CPPL48WBLY Loaded with 48 Category 6 jacks color and type to match workstation Jack module.
  - 3 . Approved Product
    - a) . Hubbell Premise
    - b) . Hellermann Tyton

**2.015. Stainless steel faceplates with label slots**

- a) . Approved Product

- 1) Panduit CFPL\*SY Stainless Steel, match electrical. Number of ports as required.
- 2) Hubbell Premise
- 3) Hellermann Tyton

**2.016. Lightning Protection**

- A . Contractor shall provide lightning protection for any copper communication cable installed under this contract that enters or leaves a building.
- 1 . Approved Product
    - a) . Circa
    - b) . Pre-approved equal

**2.017. J-Hooks**

- A . The J-hook cable support shall be manufactured from a non-conductive material suitable for use in air-handling space. The cable support must maintain complete horizontal and vertical 1" bend radius control and must manage up to 50 four pair UTP cables. Do not exceed EIA/TIA standards or manufactures recommendations on number of cables installed in each cable support.
- B . Approved Product
- 1 . Panduit
    - a) . Mayer Electric part# J-MOD or J-PRO Cable support System

**2.018. Fiber Patch Panel**

- A . Shall mount in standard 19" or 23" EIA rack or cabinet. Shall have front and rear access on all modules via molded-hinged doors. Must have radius control and cable management for fiber patch cords. Shall have multiple cable entry locations. Include fiber optic cable routing kit (grommets, cable ties, saddle clips, strain relief bracket and ID/caution labels for various cable management solutions.
- B . Approved Product
- 1 . Panduit
    - a) . FRME1U
    - b) . FRME2U
    - c) . FRME3
    - d) . FRME4
  - 2 . Hubbell Premise
  - 3 . Hellermann Tyton

**2.019. Multimode Fiber Adapter Panels 50/125 um OM3**

- A . All adapter panels shall use zirconia ceramic split sleeves. Use blank adapters in each empty port.
- B . Approved Product
- 1 . Panduit
    - a) . FAP3WAQDLCZ Aqua in color type LC
    - b) . FAP6WAQDLCZ Aqua in color type LC
    - c) . FAPB Blank Fiber Adapter
  - 2 . Hubbell Premise
  - 3 . Hellermann Tyton

**2.020. Single-mode Fiber Adapter Panels**

- A . All adapter panels shall use zirconia split sleeves. Use blank adapters in each empty port.
- B . Approved Product
- 1 . Panduit
    - a) . FAP6WBULCZ Blue in color type LC

- b) . Hubbell Premise
- c) . Hellermann Tyton

**2.021. Multimode Fiber Optic Connectors**

- A . Approved Product
  - 1 . Panduit
  - 2 . Hubbell Premise
  - 3 . Hellermann Tyton

**2.022. Single-mode Fiber Optic Connectors**

- A . Approved Product
  - 1 . Panduit
  - 2 . Hubbell Premise
  - 3 . Hellermann Tyton

**2.023. RACKS**

- A . Secure racks to floor per manufactures instructions and install 18" equipment tray from top of each rack to wall.
- B . Ground each rack per ANSI/TIA/EIA-607 Requirements.
- C . Maintain 36" clearance from the front and rear of rack and on one side.
- D . If more than one rack is installed, install in a line side to side, with appropriate vertical cable management on each side and between racks.
- E . Rack System
  - 1 . Waterfall cable management shall be provided at top of each rack for protection and to maintain proper bend radius and cable support.
  - 2 . The rack shall be UL listed for 1200-pound load rating. The rack shall be installed to support 19" equipment.
  - 3 . Approved Product 2 post rack
    - a) . Panduit
      - 1) Mayer Electric Part# PANCMR19X84
      - 2) B-Line
- F . Wall mount racks
  - 1 . Be as specified on plans
    - a) . Approved Product
      - 1) Panduit
      - 2) B-Line
        - a Hubbell

**2.024. UPS Battery Back Up**

- A . Contractor shall install one UPS in each 2 post rack. Each 2 post rack installation will require a 2 post rack installation kit to support the UPS.
- B . Each UPS installed shall be provided with a network card.

**2.025. Horizontal Wire Management**

- 1 . Contractor shall install 2U horizontal front & rear cable management above, between and below each copper 48 port patch panel. Horizontal wire management shall be capable of managing the maximum number of patch cords.
- 2 . Approved Product
  - a) . Panduit NM2
  - b) . Hubbell Premise HC219CC3P
  - c) . Hellermann Tyton WMB2H

**2.026. Vertical Cable Management and Doors.**

1. Cable management shall be provided on each side and between each set of racks, using the Patch Runner Vertical Cable Management System. Contractor to confirm vertical cable management will support number of cables installed with 25% growth for future. Doors are required to be installed on all vertical managers.
2. Approved Product
  - a). B-Line
    1. Mayer Electric part number SB86086D084FB
  - b). Panduit
  - c). Hellermann Tyton

**2.027. Rack Mount Power Strip**

1. Contractor shall install (1) vertical 30 amp, metered rack mount power strip with network interface in each floor mount or wall mount rack.
  - a). Approved Product
    - 1) Hubbell
    - 2) Panduit
    - 3) Tripp-Lite part number PDUMV30NET

**B . Telecommunications Grounding Busbar and Accessories**

1. Approved Product
  - a). Panduit
    - 1) GB4B0624TPI-1 TMGB
    - 2) GB2B0312TPI-1 TGB
  - b). B-line
  - c). Hubbell

**C . Other Products as required to meet all codes and standards.**

**2.028. EQUIPMENT TRAY FOR TELECOMMUNICATION ROOMS**

- A . All Equipment tray shall be 18" in width with adjustable rungs.
- B . Furnish and install 18" Equipment tray from each floor mount rack/server cabinet to wall. Furnish and install 18" equipment tray around wall as required to support cables. (A minimum of (2) walls shall be completely covered by Equipment tray).
- C . Furnish and install cable retaining post on each side of tray every 4ft as required to support cables.
- D . Approved Product
  1. B-Line
    - a). Mayer Electric part# BLNSB13AL18FB 18" Equipment tray with adjustable / removable rungs
    - b). Cable Retaining post part number SB12606FB.

**2.029. HORIZONTAL DISTRIBUTION CABLE**

- A . All Horizontal Voice and Data station cables shall terminate on modular patch panels in their respective Telecommunication Room or Equipment Room as specified on the drawings.
- B . All cable, workstation jack modules and patch panel jack modules shall be the same color as designated on prints. If colors are not designated Coordinate color with Engineer.
- C . Unshielded Twisted-Pair Cabling
- D . Unshielded twisted-Pair cabling
  1. Horizontal Copper Cable- Enhanced Category 6 Cable
  2. Cable construction shall be four twisted pairs of insulated solid bare annealed copper conductors with "Cross-web" separator.

3. Outer jacket shall meet NEC requirements and have a Nominal Cable diameter not to exceed .235 for CMR and .225 for CMP (in)
4. Cable shall have a minimum bend radius 1.0 (in).
5. Delay Skew (max) 38ns/100m.
6. Must have positive PSACR beyond 250 MHz.
7. Application assurance warranty.
8. All transmission performance parameters shall be independently verified by UL or ETL third party testing organization.
9. Contractor shall use the appropriately rated cable jacket for the environment the cables are installed in.
10. Approved Product
  - 1) General Cable Mayer Electric part numbers as indicated below:
    - a GCC7131900 GenSPEED 6000e Category 6e CMP Blue
    - b GCC7131901 GenSPEED 6000e Category 6e CMP White
    - c GCC7131906 GenSPEED 6000e Category 6e CMP Green
  - 2) Hubbell Premise
    - a HUBC6RPB Hubbell Category 6 CMP Blue
    - b HUBC6RPW Hubbell Category 6 CMP White
    - c HUBC6RPGREEN Hubbell Category 6 CMP Green
  - 3) South Wire

#### **2.030. BACKBONE FIBER CABLING SYSTEM**

1. Backbone Fiber Cabling
2. Furnish and install a minimum of one 12 strand 50/125 OM3 multi-mode fiber from MDF to each IDF. Any fiber length that exceeds 1600 ft, furnish a minimum of a 6 strand single mode fiber in addition to the multi-mode, unless otherwise indicated on backbone Riser diagram.
3. See Riser diagram
4. All indoor/outdoor fiber shall be tight buffered plenum rated and shall be installed in inner duct rated for the appropriate application.
5. All outdoor fiber shall be loose tube and shall be installed in inner duct rated for the appropriate application.
6. All multi-mode fiber shall be
  - a) . Approved Product
    - 1) Mayer Electric part # 's as indicated below
      - a GCCBE0121ANU.BK 12 strand Indoor/Outdoor Plenum 50/125 OM3 10Gig.

#### **2.031. CATV HORIZONTAL CABLES**

- A. Coax Cable
  1. Approved Product
    - a) . General Cable
    - b) . South Wire
- B. Coax connectors
 

All coax shall be terminated with ICM "Double Bubble" compression connectors. All corresponding strippers and crimp tools shall be used for a complete and proper termination.

  1. Approved Product
    - a). Mayer Electric part number ICMD6PL2-50R for plenum coax.
    - b). Mayer Electric part number ICMD6U-50R for CMR coax.



## **PART 3. EXECUTION**

### **3.032. PRE-INSTALLATION SITE SURVEY**

- A . Prior to start of system, meet at the project site with owner's representative and representatives of trades performing related work to coordinate efforts. Review areas of potential interference and resolve conflicts before proceeding with the work. Facilitation with the General Contractor will be necessary to plan the crucial schedule completions of the equipment room and telecommunication closet.
- B . Examine areas and conditions under which the system is to be installed. Do not proceed with work until satisfactory conditions have been achieved.

### **3.033. INSTALLATION GUIDELINES**

- A . The work included under this specification, consist of furnishing all labor, equipment, material, and supplies and performing all operations necessary to complete the installation of this structured cabling system in compliance with the specifications and drawings. The Telecommunications contractor will provide and install all of the required material to form a complete system whether specifically addressed in the technical specification or not.
- B . All work performed on this project will be installed in accordance with the current edition of the National Electrical code, the current edition of The National Electrical Safety Code, the current issue of the National Electrical Code, The current edition of ANSI/NECA/BICSI-568- Standard for Installing Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling, the current edition of the BICSI Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual, the current edition of the BICSI Cabling Installation Manual, the latest issue of ANSI/TIA/EIA Standards as published Global Engineering Documents as ANSI/TIA/EIA Telecommunications Building Wiring Standards, and all local codes and ordinances. Should conflicts exist with the foregoing, the authority having jurisdiction for enforcement will have responsibility for making interpretation.
- C . If this document and any other documents listed above are in conflict, then the more stringent requirements shall apply. All documents listed are believed to be the most current release of the documents. The Vendor has the responsibility to determine and adhere to the most current release.
- D . This document does not replace any code, either partially or wholly. The Vendor must be aware of local codes that may impact this project. All, local, State and federal codes are to be followed.
- E . All materials shall be UL Listed or listed by other National Independent testing agency and shall be marked as such.
- F . Section Includes: Equipment, materials, labor, and services to provide a complete structured cabling system including, but not limited to:
  - 1 . Furnish and install a complete telecommunications wiring infrastructure.
  - 2 . Furnish, install, terminate and test all copper and Optical fiber cables.
  - 3 . Furnish and install Raceway, boxes, and cable tray.
  - 4 . Furnish and install all wall plates, jacks, patch panels, and patch cords as described.
  - 5 . Furnish and install all required cabinets and/or racks as required and as indicated.
  - 6 . Furnish any other material required to form a complete system.
  - 7 . Perform Link testing (100% of horizontal and/or backbone links) and certification of all components. All test must meet or exceed link testing requirements as specified in this document.
  - 8 . Furnish test results of all cabling to the owner on disk and paper format, listed by each closet, then by workstation ID.
  - 9 . Provide owner test results and documentation. (Testing documentation and as-built drawings).
  - 10 . Removal of abandoned cable, if required.

### **3.034. INSTALLATION**

- A . Install materials and equipment in accordance with applicable standards, codes, requirements, and recommendations of national, state, and local authorities having jurisdiction, and current National Electrical Code and with manufacturer's instructions.
- B . Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C . All cable shall conform to the requirements for communications circuits defined by the National Electrical code (Article 800) and the Canadian Building Code. Cable listed to NEC Article 800-51(a) will be used for "Plenum" installations. Cable listed to NEC Article 800-51(b) shall be installed in vertical runs penetrating more than one floor.
- D . Adhere to manufacturer's specifications for pulling tension, minimum bend radii, and sidewall pressure when installing cables.
  - 1 . Where manufacturer does not provide bending radii information, minimum-bending radius shall be 15 times cable diameter. Arrange and mount equipment and materials in a manner acceptable to the engineer and the owner.
- E . Penetrations through floor and fire-rated walls shall utilize intermediate metallic conduit (IMC) or galvanized rigid conduit (GRC) sleeves and shall be fire stopped after installation and testing, utilizing a fire stopping assembly for that application.
- F . Install station cabling to the nearest telecommunications room (TR), unless otherwise noted.
- G . Installation shall conform to the following basic guidelines.
  - 1 . Use of approved wire, cable, and wiring devices.
  - 2 . Neat and uncluttered wire termination.
- H . Where cable tray is not used, attach cables to permanent structure with suitable attachments at intervals of 48 to 60 inches. Support cables above removable ceilings.
- I . Follow manufacturer's recommendations on spacing and number and type of cables installed in j-hooks or cable tray to avoid cable stress.
- J . Separation and physical barriers between communication cabling and power cables must be maintained at all times.
- K . Install adequate support structure for 10 foot of service slack at each TR.
- L . Support riser cables every (3) floors and at top of run with cable grips.
- M . Limit number of four-pair data riser cables per grip to fifty (50).
- N . Install cables in one continuous piece. Splices or taps will not be allowed.
- O . Provide overvoltage protection on both ends of cabling exposed to lightning or accidental contact with power conductors.

### **3.035. GROUNDING**

- A . Grounding shall conform to ANSI-J-STD607(A)- Commercial building Grounding and bonding Requirements for Telecommunications, National Electrical Code, ANSI/NECA/BICSI-568 and manufacturer's grounding requirements as minimum.
- B . Bond and ground equipment racks, housings, messenger cables, and raceways.
- C . Connect cabinets, racks, and frames to single-point ground which is connected to building ground system via (minimum #6) green insulated copper grounding conductor.

### **3.036. LABELING**

- A . Label each outlet with permanent self-adhesive label.
- B . Label each cable within 1" of termination on each end.
- C . Use labels on face of patch panels. Provide facility assignment records in a protective cover at each telecommunications closet location that is specific to the facilities therein.
- D . Use color-coded labels for each termination field that conforms to ansi/TIA/EIA-606(A) standard color codes for termination blocks.
- E . Labels shall be machine-printed. Hand written labels shall not be acceptable.
- F . Mark up floor plans showing outlet locations, type, and cable marking of cables. Turn these drawings over to the owner two (2) weeks prior to move in date.
- G . Three (3) sets of as-built drawings shall be delivered to the owner within four (4) weeks of acceptance of project by the owner. a set of as-built drawings shall be provided to the

owner in electronic form utilizing CAD software that is acceptable to the owner. The electronic media shall be delivered to the owner within six (6) weeks of acceptance of project by owner.

### **3.037. TESTING**

- A . Testing shall conform to ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.1 standard. Testing shall be accomplished using a level IIe or higher field testers.
- B . All testing shall meet or exceed Manufactures recommendation for 25 year warranty program,
- C . Test each pair and shield of each cable for opens, shorts, grounds, and pair reversal. Correct grounded and reversed pairs.
- D . If copper backbone cable contains more than one (1) percent bad pairs, remove and replace entire cable.
- E . If horizontal cable contains bad conductors or shield, remove and replace cable.
- F . Test optical cable with a light source and power meter utilizing procedures as stated in ANSI/TIA/EIA-526-14a: OFSTP-14A Optical Power Loss Measurements of Installed Multimode Fiber Cable Plant and ANSI/TIA/EIA-526-7 Measurements of Optical Power Loss of Installed Singlemode Fiber Cable Plant. Measure results shall be plus/minus 1 dB of submitted loss budget calculations. Correct improper splices and replace damaged cables at no charge to the owner.
  - 1 . Cables shall be tested at 850 and 1300 nm for multimode optical fiber cables. Cables shall be tested at 1310 and 1550 for singlemode optical fiber.
  - 2 . Testing procedures shall utilize "Method B"- one jumper reference.
  - 3 . Bi-directional testing of optical fiber is required.
  - 4 . Submit printout for each cable tested. The use of handwritten test results will not be acceptable.

### **3.038. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A . Employ job superintendent or project manager during the course of the installation to provide coordination of work of this specification and of other trades, and provide technical information when requested by other trades. This person shall maintain current RCDD (Registered Communication Designer) registration and shall be responsible for quality control during installation, equipment set-up, and testing.
- B . Installation personnel shall meet manufacturer's training and education requirements for implementation of extended warranty program.

**END OF SECTION**